INTERNATIONAL TELECOMMUNICATION UNION

CCITT

THE INTERNATIONAL
TELEGRAPH AND TELEPHONE
CONSULTATIVE COMMITTEE

BLUE BOOK

VOLUME VI – FASCICLE VI.11

DIGITAL SUBSCRIBER SIGNALLING SYSTEM No. 1 (DSS 1), NETWORK LAYER, USER-NETWORK MANAGEMENT

RECOMMENDATIONS Q.930-Q.940

IXTH PLENARY ASSEMBLY
MELBOURNE, 14-25 NOVEMBER 1988

Geneva 1989

INTERNATIONAL TELECOMMUNICATION UNION

CCITT

THE INTERNATIONAL
TELEGRAPH AND TELEPHONE
CONSULTATIVE COMMITTEE

BLUE BOOK

VOLUME VI – FASCICLE VI.11

DIGITAL SUBSCRIBER SIGNALLING SYSTEM No. 1 (DSS 1), NETWORK LAYER, USER-NETWORK MANAGEMENT

RECOMMENDATIONS Q.930-Q.940

IXTH PLENARY ASSEMBLY
MELBOURNE, 14-25 NOVEMBER 1988

Geneva 1989

ISBN 92-61-03551-5

CONTENTS OF THE CCITT BOOK
APPLICABLE AFTER THE NINTH PLENARY ASSEMBLY (1988)

BLUE BOOK

FASCICLE III.6 – Line transmission of non-telephone signals. Transmission of sound-programme and television signals. Series H and J Recommendations (Study Group XV).

FASCICLE III.7 – Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN) – General structure and service capabilities. Recommendations I.110-I.257 (Study Group XVIII).

FASCICLE III.8 – Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN) – Overall network aspects and functions, ISDN user-network interfaces. Recommendations I.310-I.470 (Study Group XVIII).

FASCICLE III.9 – Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN) – Internetwork interfaces and maintenance principles. Recommendations I.500-I.605 (Study Group XVIII).

Volume IV

FASCICLE IV.1 – General maintenance principles: maintenance of international transmission systems and telephone circuits. Recommendations M.10-M.782 (Study Group IV).

FASCICLE IV.2 – Maintenance of international telegraph, phototelegraph and leased circuits. Maintenance of the international public telephone network. Maintenance of maritime satellite and data transmission systems. Recommendations M.800-M.1375 (Study Group IV).

FASCICLE IV.3 – Maintenance of international sound-programme and television transmission circuits. Series N Recommendations (Study Group IV).

FASCICLE IV.4 – Specifications for measuring equipment. Series O Recommendations (Study Group IV).

Volume V – Telephone transmission quality. Series P Recommendations (Study Group XII).

Volume VI

FASCICLE VI.1 – General Recommendations on telephone switching and signalling. Functions and information flows for services in the ISDN. Supplements. Recommendations Q.1-Q.118 *bis* (Study Group XI).

FASCICLE VI.2 – Specifications of Signalling Systems Nos. 4 and 5. Recommendations Q.120-Q.180 (Study Group XI).

FASCICLE VI.3 – Specifications of Signalling System No. 6. Recommendations Q.251-Q.300 (Study Group XI).

FASCICLE VI.4 – Specifications of Signalling Systems R1 and R2. Recommendations Q.310-Q.490 (Study Group XI).

FASCICLE VI.5 – Digital local, transit, combined and international exchanges in integrated digital networks and mixed analogue-digital networks. Supplements. Recommendations Q.500-Q.554 (Study Group XI).

FASCICLE VI.6 – Interworking of signalling systems. Recommendations Q.601-Q.699 (Study Group XI).

FASCICLE VI.7 – Specifications of Signalling System No. 7. Recommendations Q.700-Q.716 (Study Group XI).

FASCICLE VI.8 – Specifications of Signalling System No. 7. Recommendations Q.721-Q.766 (Study Group XI).

FASCICLE VI.9 – Specifications of Signalling System No. 7. Recommendations Q.771-Q.795 (Study Group XI).

FASCICLE VI.10 – Digital subscriber signalling system No. 1 (DSS 1), data link layer. Recommendations Q.920-Q.921 (Study Group XI).

FASCICLE VI.11 – Digital subscriber signalling system No. 1 (DSS 1), network layer, user-network management. Recommendations Q.930-Q.940 (Study Group XI).

FASCICLE VI.12 – Public land mobile network. Interworking with ISDN and PSTN. Recommendations Q.1000-Q.1032 (Study Group XI).

FASCICLE VI.13 – Public land mobile network. Mobile application part and interfaces. Recommendations Q.1051-Q.1063 (Study Group XI).

FASCICLE VI.14 – Interworking with satellite mobile systems. Recommendations Q.1100-Q.1152 (Study Group XI).

Volume VII

FASCICLE VII.1 – Telegraph transmission. Series R Recommendations. Telegraph services terminal equipment. Series S Recommendations (Study Group IX).

FASCICLE VII.2 – Telegraph switching. Series U Recommendations (Study Group IX).

FASCICLE VII.3 – Terminal equipment and protocols for telematic services. Recommendations T.0-T.63 (Study Group VIII).

FASCICLE VII.4 – Conformance testing procedures for the Teletex Recommendations. Recommendation T.64 (Study Group VIII).

FASCICLE VII.5 – Terminal equipment and protocols for telematic services. Recommendations T.65-T.101, T.150-T.390 (Study Group VIII).

FASCICLE VII.6 – Terminal equipment and protocols for telematic services. Recommendations T.400-T.418 (Study Group VIII).

FASCICLE VII.7 – Terminal equipment and protocols for telematic services. Recommendations T.431-T.564 (Study Group VIII).

Volume VIII

FASCICLE VIII.1 – Data communication over the telephone network. Series V Recommendations (Study Group XVII).

FASCICLE VIII.2 – Data communication networks: services and facilities, interfaces. Recommendations X.1-X.32 (Study Group VII).

FASCICLE VIII.3 – Data communication networks: transmission, signalling and switching, network aspects, maintenance and administrative arrangements. Recommendations X.40-X.181 (Study Group VII).

FASCICLE VIII.4 – Data communication networks: Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) – Model and notation, service definition. Recommendations X.200-X.219 (Study Group VII).

FASCICLE VIII.5 – Data communication networks: Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) – Protocol specifications, conformance testing. Recommendations X.220-X.290 (Study Group VII).

FASCICLE VIII.6 – Data communication networks: interworking between networks, mobile data transmission systems, internetwork management. Recommendations X.300-X.370 (Study Group VII).

FASCICLE VIII.7 – Data communication networks: message handling systems. Recommendations X.400-X.420 (Study Group VII).

FASCICLE VIII.8 – Data communication networks: directory. Recommendations X.500-X.521 (Study Group VII).

Volume IX – Protection against interference. Series K Recommendations (Study Group V). Construction, installation and protection of cable and other elements of outside plant. Series L Recommendations (Study Group VI).

Volume X

FASCICLE X.1	– Functional Specification and Description Language (SDL). Criteria for using Formal Description Techniques (FDTs). Recommendation Z.100 and Annexes A, B, C and E, Recommendation Z.110 (Study Group X).
FASCICLE X.2	– Annex D to Recommendation Z.100: SDL user guidelines (Study Group X).
FASCICLE X.3	– Annex F.1 to Recommendation Z.100: SDL formal definition. Introduction (Study Group X).
FASCICLE X.4	– Annex F.2 to Recommendation Z.100: SDL formal definition. Static semantics (Study Group X).
FASCICLE X.5	– Annex F.3 to Recommendation Z.100: SDL formal definition. Dynamic semantics (Study Group X).
FASCICLE X.6	– CCITT High Level Language (CHILL). Recommendation Z.200 (Study Group X).
FASCICLE X.7	– Man-Machine Language (MML). Recommendations Z.301-Z.341 (Study Group X).

CONTENTS OF FASCICLE VI.11 OF THE BLUE BOOK

Recommendations Q.930 to Q.940

Digital subscriber Signalling System No. 1 (DSS 1), Network layer, user-network management

SECTION 2 – *User-network management*

PRELIMINARY NOTES

1 The strict observance of the specifications for standardized international signalling and switching equipment is of the utmost importance in the manufacture and operation of the equipment. Hence these specifications are obligatory except where it is explicitly stipulated to the contrary.

The values given in Fascicles VI.1 to VI.14 are imperative and must be met under normal service conditions.

2 The Questions entrusted to each Study Group for the Study Period 1989-1992 can be found in Contribution No. 1 to that Study Group.

3 In this Volume, the expression "Administration" is used for shortness to indicate both a telecommunication Administration and a recognized private operating agency.

FASCICLE VI.11

Recommendations Q.930 to Q.940

DIGITAL SUBSCRIBER SIGNALLING SYSTEM No. 1 (DSS 1), NETWORK LAYER, USER-NETWORK MANAGEMENT

PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

PAGE LAISSEE EN BLANC INTENTIONNELLEMENT

SECTION 1

NETWORK LAYER

Recommendation Q.930 [1)]

ISDN USER-NETWORK INTERFACE LAYER 3 – GENERAL ASPECTS

1 General

1.1 *Introduction*

This Recommendation describes in general terms the D-channel layer 3 functions and protocol employed across an ISDN user-network interface. Details are provided in Recommendation Q.931(I.451) [1] and in Recommendation Q.932(I.452) [2].

The term "Layer 3" is a general term used in these Recommendations to refer to the procedures described in Recommendation Q.931(I.451) and in Recommendation Q.932(I.452).

The layer 3 protocol provides the means to establish, maintain and terminate network connections across an ISDN between communicating application entities. In addition, it provides generic procedures which may be used for the invocation and operation of supplementary services. The detailed description of the layer 3 protocol in Recommendation Q.931(I.451) and Recommendation Q.932(I.452) make use of the definition and terminology concepts of the ISDN protocol reference model given in Recommendation I.320 [3]. Recommendation Q.931(I.451) and Recommendation Q.932(I.452) do not at present cover all functions which may be specified for layer 3. Recommendation Q.931(I.451), Recommendation Q.932(I.452) and Recommendation I.320 are not presently completely consistent in their structure of protocols. Further study is required to enhance these Recommendations in order to resolve these inconsistencies.

Alignment/interworking between facilities defined in the Q.930-series Recommendations and the services defined in the I.250-series Recommendations is for further study.

The application of Recommendations Q.931 and Q.932 to the detailed operation of each individual supplementary service will be the subject for the future Recommendations in the Q.930 series.

1.2 Connection control by the user of an ISDN requires:

a) application of layer 3 protocol for control of circuit-switched connections and/or packet-switched connections, in combination with;

b) application of an appropriate data link layer service (supported by an appropriate physical layer service).

Layer 3 provides to the user the functions associated with the establishment and operation of a network connection. Layer 3 makes invisible to the user how it utilizes underlying resources such as data link connections to provide a network connection.

[1)] This Recommendation appears in the I-series of Recommendations as Recommendation I.450.

1.3 *Services provided by the data link layer*

Layer 3 utilizes functions and services provided by the data link as defined in Recommendations Q.920(I.440) [4] and Q.921(I.441) [5]. These services are summarized below:

a) establishment of data link connections;

b) error-protected transmission of data;

c) re-establishment of data link connection (indicating loss of information).

1.4 *Symmetry of the layer 3 protocol*

It is intended that the layer 3 protocol is fully symmetrical to enable direct user-to-user communication (e.g., PABX-to-PABX communication over a leased circuit).

In order to achieve this objective, several options are incorporated in Recommendation Q.931. They are described in Annex D to Recommendation Q.931.

2 Structure of layer 3

2.1 *Categories of functions*

There are two categories of functions performed at layer 3 and services provided by layer 3 in the establishment of network connections. The first category contains those functions which directly control the connection establishment.

The second category contains those functions relating to the transport of messages additional to the functions provided by the data link layer. An example of the additional layer 3 functions is the provision of re-routing of signalling messages on an alternate D-channel (where provided) in the event of D-channel failure. Other possible functions in this category may include multiplexing and message segmenting and blocking.

It is intended that the communications between these two categories will be aligned as far as possible with the primitives used between the user parts and the message transfer part in Signalling System No. 7.

Further study is required to determine the functions to be included in each category.

2.2 *Layer 3 functions*

The layer 3 protocol described in this Recommendation is designed to effect the establishment and control of circuit-switched and packet-switched connections. The functions support procedures for both basic call and call control in conjunction with network-provided supplementary facilities. Furthermore, services involving the use of connections of different types, according to user's specification, may be effected through "multi-media" call control procedures.

Functions performed by layer 3 include the following:

a) processing of primitives for communicating with the data link layer;

b) generation and interpretation of layer 3 messages for peer-level communication;

c) administration of timers and logical entities (e.g., call-references) used in the call control procedures;

d) administration of access resources including B-channels and packet-layer logical channels (e.g., Recommendation X.25 [6]);

e) checking to ensure that services provided are consistent with user requirements (e.g., as expressed by bearer capability, addresses, low layer and high layer compatibilities).

This list of layer 3 functions is not exhaustive, and it is not intended to imply that all functions are provided on both the terminal and the network side of the user-network interface.

The following general functions may also be performed by layer 3:

a) routing and relaying;

b) network connection control;

c) conveying user-to-network and network-to-user information;

d) network connection multiplexing;

e) segmenting and reassembly;

f) error detection;

g) error recovery;

h) sequencing;

i) congestion control and user data flow control; and

j) restart.

2.2.1 *Routing and relaying*

Network connections exist either between users or between users and ISDN exchanges. Network connections may involve intermediate systems which provide relays to other interconnecting subnetworks and which facilitate interworking with other networks. Routing functions determine an appropriate route between layer 3 addresses.

2.2.2 *Network connection control*

This function includes mechanisms for providing network connections making use of data link connections provided by the data link layer.

2.2.3 *Conveying user information*

This function may be carried out with or without the establishment of a circuit-switched connection.

2.2.4 *Network connection multiplexing*

Layer 3 provides multiplexing of call control information for multiple calls onto a single data link connection.

2.2.5 *Segmenting and reassembly*

Layer 3 may segment and reassemble Recommendation Q.931 messages for the purpose of facilitating their transfer across local user-network interface.

2.2.6 *Error detection*

Error detection functions are used to check for procedural errors in the layer 3 protocol. Error detection in layer 3 uses, among other information, error notification of loss of information from the data link layer.

2.2.7 *Error recovery*

This function includes mechanisms for recovering from detected errors.

2.2.8 *Sequencing*

This function includes mechanisms for providing the service of sequenced delivery of layer 3 information over a given network connection when requested. In normal conditions layer 3 ensures the delivery of information in the sequence it is submitted by the user.

2.2.9 *Congestion control and user data flow control*

Layer 3 may indicate rejection or unsuccessful indication for connection establish requests to control congestion within a network. Flow control for the user-to-user signalling messages is described in Recommendation Q.931(I.451).

2.2.10 *Restart*

This function is used to return channels and interfaces to an idle condition to recover from certain abnormal conditions.

3 Structure of layer 3 Recommendations

The following is the structure of the layer 3 Recommendations:

Q.930(I.450) – ISDN user-network interface layer 3 – General aspects

Q.931(I.451) – ISDN user-network interface layer 3 specification for basic call control

Q.932(I.452) – Generic procedures for the control of ISDN supplementary services

4 Interface between layer 3 and the adjacent layers

4.1 *Overview of the interfaces*

ISDN user-network interface layer 3 provides its services to the upper layer via layer 3 service access point (SAP), and receives services from the data link layer via data link layer SAP, as is shown in Figure 1/Q.930. A particular service is provided to the upper layer, or received from the data link layer, by exchanging a corresponding sequence of primitives across the SAP.

4.2 *Interface between layer 3 and data link layer*

Overview of the interface between ISDN user-network interface layer 3 and the data link layer from the view point of the data link layer is given in § 2 of Recommendation Q.920(I.440). Primitives and primitive procedures for this interface are specified in § 4 of Recommendation Q.921(I.441).

4.3 *Interface between layer 3 and upper layer*

Primitives and primitive procedures for this interface are left for further study.

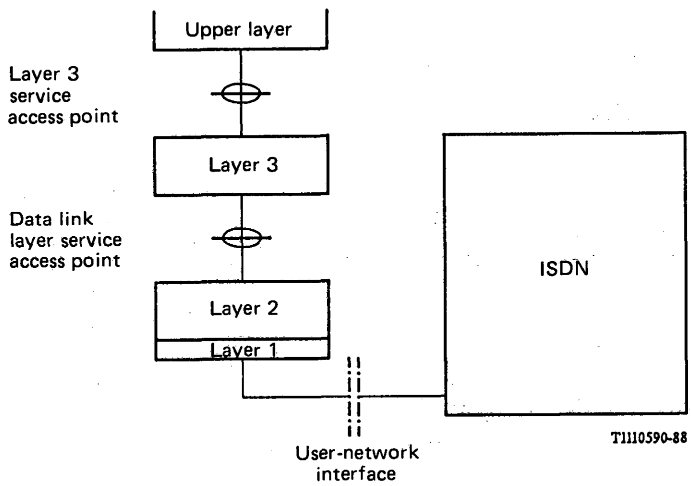


FIGURE 1/Q.930

Overview of interfaces between layer 3 and adjacent layers

References

[1] CCITT Recommendation *ISDN user-network interface layer 3 specification for basic call control*, Vol, VI(III), Rec. Q.931(I.451).

[2] CCITT Recommendation *Generic procedures for the control of ISDN supplementary services*, Vol. VI(III), Rec. Q.932(I.452).

[3] CCITT Recommendation *ISDN protocol reference model*, Vol. III, Rec. I.320.

[4] CCITT Recommendation *ISDN user-network interface data link layer – General aspects*, Vol. VI(III), Rec. Q.920(I.440).

[5] CCITT Recommendation *ISDN user-network interface data link layer specification*, Vol. VI(III), Rec. Q.921(I.441).

[6] CCITT Recommendation *Interface between data terminal equipment (DTE) and data circuit terminating equipment (DCE) for terminals operating in the packet mode and connected to public data networks by dedicated circuit*, Vol. VIII, Rec. X.25.

Abbreviations used in Recommendations Q.930(I.450) and Q.931(I.451)

See list at the end of Recommendation Q.931.

ISDN USER-NETWORK INTERFACE LAYER 3 SPECIFICATION FOR BASIC CALL CONTROL

1 General

This Recommendation specifies the procedures for the establishing, maintaining, and clearing of network connections at the ISDN user-network interface. These procedures are defined in terms of messages exchanged over the D-channel of basic and primary rate interface structures. The functions and procedures of this protocol, and the relationship with other layers, are described in general terms in Recommendation Q.930 (I.450) [1].

This Recommendation is intended to specify the essential features, procedures, and messages required for call control in the D-channel. However, there are some details of procedure which have not yet been specified, and which will be the subject of further study.

1.1 *Scope of the Recommendation*

The procedures currently described in this Recommendation are for the control of circuit-switched connections, user-to-user signalling connections, and packet-switched connections. The transport of other message-based information flows on the D-channel is a subject for further study and will be included in related Recommendations.

Note 1 – The term "layer 3" is used for the functions and protocol described in this Recommendation [see Recommendation Q.930 (I.450)]. The terms "data link layer" and "layer 2" are used interchangeably to refer to the layer immediately below layer 3.

Note 2 – Alignment of the functions and protocol with those of OSI network layer is for further study.

1.2 *Application to interface structures*

The layer 3 procedures apply to the interface structures defined in Recommendation I.412 [2]. They use the functions and services provided by layer 2. The unacknowledged information transfer service is used by layer 3 to provide point-to-multipoint operation as described in § 5.2.

The layer 3 procedures request the services of layer 2 and receive information from layer 2 using the primitives defined in Recommendation Q.921 [3]. These primitives are used to illustrate the communication between the protocol layers and are not intended to specify or constrain implementations.

2 Overview of call control

In this Recommendation the terms "incoming" and "outgoing" are used to describe the call as viewed by the user side of the interface.

In the paragraphs which follow states are defined for circuit switched calls in § 2.1 (call states), for packet mode access connections in § 2.2 (access connection states) for temporary signalling connections in § 2.3 (call states), and for the interface in § 2.4 (global call reference states).

This paragraph defines the basic call control states that individual calls may have. These definitions do not apply to the state of the interface itself, any attached equipment, the D-channel, or the logical links used for signalling on the D-channel. Because several calls may exist simultaneously at a user-network interface, and each call may be in a different state, the state of the interface itself cannot be unambiguously defined.

Note – Additional states and SDL diagrams may be defined when new procedures are developed.

Detailed description of the procedures for call control are given in §§ 5, 6, 7, and 8 in terms of: (a) the messages defined in § 3 which are transferred across the user-network interface; and (b) the information processing and actions that take place at the userside and the network side. Overview and detailed SDL diagrams for call control of circuit-switched calls are contained in Annex A.

Throughout this Recommendation, references are made to B-channels. For services using H-channels, the references to B-channels should be taken to refer to the appropriate H-channel. Further study may be needed on other enhancements to support such services.

2.1 *Circuit switched calls*

This paragraph defines the basic call control states for circuit switched calls. The procedures for call control are given in § 5.

Annex D contains optional procedures (as an extension to the basic procedures) to allow symmetric signalling. These states are defined in Annex D.

2.1.1 *Call states at the user side of the interface*

The states which may exist on the user side of the user-network interface are defined in this paragraph.

2.1.1.1 *Null state (U0)*

No call exists.

2.1.1.2 *Call initiated (U1)*

This state exists for an outgoing call, when the user requests call establishment from the network.

2.1.1.3 *Overlap sending (U2)*

This state exists for an outgoing call when the user has received acknowledgement of the call establishment request which permits the user to send additional call information to the network in overlap mode.

2.1.1.4 *Outgoing call proceeding (U3)*

This state exists for an outgoing call when the user has received acknowledgement that the network has received all call information necessary to effect call establishment.

2.1.1.5 *Call delivered (U4)*

This state exists for an outgoing call, when the calling user has received an indication that remote user alerting has been initiated.

2.1.1.6 *Call present (U6)*

This state exists for an incoming call when the user has received a call establishment request but has not yet responded.

2.1.1.7 *Call received (U7)*

This state exists for an incoming call when the user has indicated alerting but has not yet answered.

2.1.1.8 *Connect request (U8)*

This state exists for an incoming call when the user has answered the call and is waiting to be awarded the call.

2.1.1.9 *Incoming call proceeding (U9)*

This state exists for an incoming call when the user has sent acknowledgement that the user has received all call information necessary to effect call establishment.

2.1.1.10 *Active (U10)*

This state exists for an incoming call when the user has received an acknowledgement from the network that the user has been awarded the call. This state exists for an outgoing call when the user has received an indication that the remote user has answered the call.

2.1.1.11 *Disconnect request (U11)*

This state exists when the user has requested the network to clear the end-to-end connection (if any) and is waiting for a reponse.

2.1.1.12 *Disconnect indication (U12)*

This state exists when the user has received an invitation to disconnect because the network has disconnected the end-to-end connection (if any).

2.1.1.13 *Suspend request (U15)*

This state exists when the user has requested the network to suspend the call and is waiting for a response.

2.1.1.14 *Resume request (U17)*

This state exists when the user has requested the network to resume a previously suspended call and is waiting for a response.

2.1.1.15 *Release request (U19)*

This state exists when the user has requested the network to release and is waiting for a response.

2.1.1.16 *Overlap receiving (U25)*

This state exists for an incoming call when the user has acknowledged the call establishment request from the network and is prepared to receive additional call information (if any) in overlap mode.

2.1.2 *Network call states*

The call states that may exist on the network side of the user-network interface are defined in this paragraph.

2.1.2.1 *Null state (N0)*

No call exists.

2.1.2.2 *Call initiated (N1)*

This state exists for an outgoing call when the network has received a call establishment request but has not yet responded.

2.1.2.3 *Overlap sending (N2)*

This state exists for an outgoing call when the network has acknowledged the call establishment request and is prepared to receive additional call information (if any) in overlap mode.

2.1.2.4 *Outgoing call proceeding (N3)*

This state exists for an outgoing call when the network has sent acknowledgement that the network has received all call information necessary to effect call establishment.

2.1.2.5 *Call delivered (N4)*

This state exists for an outgoing call when the network has indicated that remote user alerting has been initiated.

2.1.2.6 *Call present (N6)*

This state exists for an incoming call when the network has sent a call establishment request but has not yet received a satisfactory response.

2.1.2.7 *Call received (N7)*

This state exists for an incoming call when the network has received an indication that the user is alerting but has not yet received an answer.

2.1.2.8 *Connect request (N8)*

This state exists for an incoming call when the network has received an answer but the network has not yet awarded the call.

2.1.2.9 *Incoming call proceeding (N9)*

This state exists for an incoming call when the network has received acknowledgement that the user has received all call information necessary to effect call establishment.

2.1.2.10 *Active (N10)*

This state exists for an incoming call when the network has awarded the call to the called user. This state exists for an outgoing call when the network has indicated that the remote user has answered the call.

2.1.2.11 *Disconnect request (N11)*

This state exists when the network has received a request from the user to clear the end-to-end connection (if any).

2.1.2.12 *Disconnect indication (N12)*

This state exists when the network has disconnected the end-to-end connection (if any) and has sent an invitation to disconnect the user-network connection.

2.1.2.13 *Suspend request (N15)*

This state exists when the network has received a request to suspend the call but has not yet responded.

2.1.2.14 *Resume request (N17)*

This state exists when the network has received a request to resume a previously suspended call but has not yet responded.

2.1.2.15 *Release request (N19)*

This state exists when the network has requested the user to release and is waiting for a response.

2.1.2.16 *Call abort (N22)*

This state exists for an incoming call for the point-to-multipoint configuration when the call is being cleared before any user has been awarded the call.

2.1.2.17 *Overlap receiving (N25)*

This state exists for an incoming call when the network has received acknowledgement of the call establishment request which permits the network to send additional call information (if any) in the overlap mode.

2.2 *Packet-mode access connections*

This paragraph defines the basic packet-mode access connection control states for access to the ISDN virtual circuit bearer service (case B). The procedures for access connection control are given in § 6.

2.2.1 *Access connection states at the user side of the interface*

The states which may exist on the user side of the user-network interface are defined in this paragraph.

2.2.1.1 *Null state (U0)*

No access connection exists.

2.2.1.2 *Call initiated (U1)*

This state exists for an outgoing access connection, when the user requests access connection establishment from the network.

2.2.1.3 *Outgoing call proceeding (U3)*

This state exists for an outgoing access connection when the user has received acknowledgement that the network has received all access connection information necessary to effect access connection establishment.

2.2.1.4 *Call present (U6)*

This state exists for an incoming access connection when the user has received a access connection establishment request but has not yet responded.

2.2.1.5 *Call received (U7)*

This state exists for an incoming access connection when the user has indicated alerting but has not yet answered.

2.2.1.6 *Connect request (U8)*

This state exists for an incoming access connection when the user has accepted the access connection and is waiting to be awarded the access connection.

2.2.1.7 *Incoming call proceeding (U9)*

This state exists for an incoming access connection when the user has sent acknowledgement that the user has received all access connection information necessary to effect access connection establishment.

2.2.1.8 *Active (U10)*

This state exists for an incoming access connection when the user has received an acknowledgement from the network that the user has been awarded the access connection. This state exists for an outgoing access connection when the user has received an indication that the local network has completed the access connection.

2.2.1.9 *Disconnect request (U11)*

This state exists when the user has requested the local network to clear the access connection and is waiting for a response.

2.2.1.10 *Disconnect indication (U12)*

This state exists when the user has received an invitation to disconnect because the network has disconnected the access connection to-end connection (if any).

2.2.1.11 *Release request (U19)*

This state exists when the user has requested the network to release the access connection and is waiting for a response.

2.2.2 *Access connection states at the network side of the interface*

The states which may exist on the network side of the user-network interface are defined in this paragraph.

2.2.2.1 *Null state (N0)*

No access connection exists.

2.2.2.2 *Call initiated (N1)*

This state exists for an outgoing access connection when the network has received an access connection establishment request but has not yet responded.

2.2.2.3 *Outgoing call proceeding (N3)*

This state exists for an outgoing access connection when the network has sent acknowledgement that the network has received all access connection information necessary to effect access connection establishment.

2.2.2.4 *Call present (N6)*

This state exists for an incoming access connection when the network has sent an access connection establishment request but has not yet received a satisfactory response.

2.2.2.5 *Call received (N7)*

This state exists for an incoming access connection when the network has received an indication that the user is alerting but has not yet received an answer.

2.2.2.6 *Connect request (N8)*

This state exists for an incoming access connection when the network has received an answer but the network has not yet awarded the access connection.

2.2.2.7 *Incoming call proceeding (N9)*

This state exists for an incoming access connection when the network has received acknowledgment that the user has received all access connection information necessary to effect access connection establishment.

2.2.2.8 *Active (N10)*

This state exists for an incoming access connection when the network has awarded the access connection to the called user. This state exists for an outgoing access connection when the local network has indicated that the access connection has been completed.

2.2.2.9 *Disconnect request (N11)*

This state exists when the network has received a request from the user to clear the access connection.

2.2.2.10 *Disconnect indication (N12)*

This state exists when the network has sent an invitation to disconnect the user-network access connection.

2.2.2.11 *Release request (N19)*

This state exists when the network has requested the user to release the access connection and is waiting for a response.

2.2.2.12 *Call abort (N22)*

This state exists for an incoming access connection for the point-to-multipoint configuration when the access connection is being cleared before any user has been awarded the access connection.

2.3 *Temporary signalling connections*

This paragraph defines the basic call control states for user-to-user signalling not associated with circuit switched calls. The procedures for call control are given in § 7.2.

2.3.1 *Call states at the user side of the interface*

The states which may exist on the user side of the user-network interface are defined in this paragraph.

2.3.1.1 *Null state (U0)*

No call exists.

2.3.1.2 *Call initiated (U1)*

This state exists for an outgoing call, when the user requests call establishment from the network.

2.3.1.3 *Overlap sending (U2)*

This state exists for an outgoing call when the user has received acknowledgement of the call establishment request which permits the user to send additional call information to the network in overlap mode.

2.3.1.4 *Outgoing call proceeding (U3)*

This state exists for an outgoing call when the user has received acknowledgement that the network has received all call information necessary to effect call establishment.

2.3.1.5 *Call delivered (U4)*

This state exists for an outgoing call, when the calling user has received an indication that remote user alerting has been initiated.

2.3.1.6 *Call present (U6)*

This state exists for an incoming call when the user has received a call establishment request but has not yet responded.

2.3.1.7 *Call received (U7)*

This state exists for an incoming call when the user has indicated alerting but has not yet answered.

2.3.1.8 *Connect request (U8)*

This state exists for incoming call when the user has answered the call and is awaiting to be awarded the call.

2.3.1.9 *Incoming call proceeding (U9)*

This state exists for an incoming call when the user has sent acknowledgement that the user has received all call information necessary to effect call establishment.

2.3.1.10 *Active (U10)*

This state exists for an incoming call when the user has received an acknowledgement from the network that the user has been awarded the call. This state exists for an outgoing call when the user has received an indication that the remote user has answered the call.

2.3.1.11 *Release request (U19)*

This state exists when the user has requested the network to release and is waiting for a response.

2.3.1.12 *Overlap receiving (U25)*

This state exists for an incoming call when the user has acknowledged the call establishment request from the network and is prepared to receive additional call information (if any) in overlap mode.

2.3.2 *Network call states*

The call states that may exist on the network side of the user-network interface are defined in this paragraph.

2.3.2.1 *Null state (N0)*

No call exists.

2.3.2.2 *Call initiated (N1)*

This state exists for an outgoing call when the network has received a call establishment request but has not yet responded.

2.3.2.3 *Overlap sending (N2)*

This state exists for an outgoing call when the network has acknowledged the call establishment request and is prepared to receive additional call information (if any) in overlap mode.

2.3.2.4 *Outgoing call proceeding (N3)*

This state exists for an outgoing call when the network has sent acknowledgement that the network has received all call information necessary to effect call establishment.

2.3.2.5 *Call delivered (N4)*

This state exists for an outgoing call when the network has indicated that remote user alerting has been initiated.

2.3.2.6 *Call present (N6)*

This state exists for an incoming call when the network has sent a call establishment request but has not yet received a satisfactory response.

2.3.2.7 *Call received (N7)*

This state exists for an incoming call when the network has received an indication that the user is alerting but has not yet received an answer.

2.3.2.8 *Connect request (N8)*

This state exists for an incoming call when the network has received an answer but the network has not yet awarded the call.

2.3.2.9 *Incoming call proceeding (N9)*

This state exists for an incoming call when the network has received acknowledgement that the user has received all call information necessary to effect call establishment.

2.3.2.10 *Active (N10)*

This state exists for an incoming call when the network has awarded the call to the called user. This state exists for an outgoing call when the network has indicated that the remote user has answered the call.

2.3.2.11 *Release request (N19)*

This state exists when the network has requested the user to release and is waiting for a response.

2.3.2.12 *Call abort (N22)*

This state exists for an incoming call for the point-to-multipoint configuration when the call is being cleared before any user has been awarded the call.

2.3.2.13 *Overlap receiving (N25)*

This state exists for an incoming call when the network has received acknowledgement of the call establishment request which permits the network to send additional call information (if any) in the overlap mode.

2.4 *States associated with the global call reference*

This paragraph defines the states that the protocol may adopt using the global call reference. The procedures for use of the global call reference for RESTART are contained in § 5.5.

There is only one global call reference per interface.

2.4.1 *Call states at the user side of the interface*

The states which may exist on the user side of the user network interface are defined in this paragraph.

2.4.1.1 *Null (Rest 0)*

No transaction exists.

2.4.1.2 *Restart request (Rest 1)*

This state exists for a restart transaction when the user has sent a restart request but has not yet received an acknowledgement response from the network.

2.4.1.3 *Restart (Rest 2)*

This state exists when a request for a restart has been received from the network and responses have not yet been received from all locally active call references.

2.4.2 *Call states at the network side of the interface*

The states which may exist on the network side of the user-network interface are defined in this paragraph.

2.4.2.1 *Null (Rest 0)*

No transaction exists.

2.4.2.2 *Restart request (Rest 1)*

This state exists for a restart transaction when the network has sent a restart request but has not yet received an acknowledgement response from the user.

2.4.2.3 *Restart (Rest 2)*

This state exists when a request for a restart has been received from the user and a response has not yet been received from all locally active call references.

3 Message functional definitions and content

This paragraph provides an overview of the Q.931 message structure, which highlights the functional definition and information content (i.e. semantics) of each message. Each definition includes:

a) A brief description of the message direction and use, including whether the message has:
   1) Local significance, i.e. relevant only in the originating or terminating access;
   2) Access significance, i.e. relevant in the originating and terminating access, but not in the network;
   3) Dual significance, i.e. relevant in either the originating or terminating access and in the network; or
   4) Global significance, i.e. relevant in the originating and terminating access and in the network.

b) A table listing the codeset 0 information elements in the order of their appearance in the message (same relative order for all message types). For each information element the table indicates:
   1) the section of this Recommendation describing the information element;
   2) the direction in which it may be sent; i.e., user to network ('u → n'), network to user ('n → u'), or both;

Note – The user-network terminology in § 3 refers to the TE-TE, TE-NT2, and NT2-ET interface structures. Annex D contains a description of the information element usage for symmetric NT2-NT2 interfaces.

3) whether inclusion is mandatory ('M') or optional ('O'), with a reference to notes explaining the circumstances under which the information element shall be included;

4) the length of the information element (or permissible range of lengths), in octets, where '*' denotes an undefined maximum length, which may be network or service dependant.

Note – All messages may contain information elements from codesets 5, 6 and 7 and corresponding locking and non-locking shift information elements which comply with the coding rules specified in §§ 4.5.2-4.5.4. None of these information elements, however, are listed in any of the tables in § 3.

c) Further explanatory notes, as necessary.

3.1 *Messages for circuit mode connection control*

Table 3-1/Q.931 summarizes the messages for circuit-mode connection control.

TABLE 3-1/Q.931

Messages for circuit-mode connection control

	Reference
Call establishment messages:	
ALERTING	3.1.1
CALL PROCEEDING	3.1.2
CONNECT	3.1.4
CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE	3.1.5
PROGRESS	3.1.10
SETUP	3.1.16
SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE	3.1.17
Call information phase messages:	
RESUME	3.1.13
RESUME ACKNOWLEDGE	3.1.14
RESUME REJECT	3.1.15
SUSPEND	3.1.20
SUSPEND ACKNOWLEDGE	3.1.21
SUSPEND REJECT	3.1.22
USER INFORMATION	3.1.23
Call clearing messages:	
DISCONNECT	3.1.6
RELEASE	3.1.11
RELEASE COMPLETE	3.1.12
Miscellaneous messages:	
CONGESTION CONTROL	3.1.3
FACILITY	3.1.7
INFORMATION	3.1.8
NOTIFY	3.1.9
STATUS	3.1.18
STATUS ENQUIRY	3.1.19

3.1.1 *Alerting*

This message is sent by the called user to the network and by the network to the calling user to indicate that called user alerting has been initiated. See Table 3-2/Q.931.

TABLE 3-2/Q.931

ALERTING message content

Message type: ALERTING
Significance: global
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Channel identification	4.5	both (Note 10)	O (Note 1)	2 - *
Facility	4.6	both	O (Note 9)	2 - *
Progress indicator	4.5	both	O (Note 2)	2 - 4
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 3)	Note 4
Signal	4.5	n → u	O (Note 5)	2 - 3
Feature activation	4.6	u → n	O (Note 6)	2 - 4
Feature indication	4.6	n → u	O (Note 6)	2 - 5
User-user	4.5	both	O (Note 7)	Note 8

Note 1 – Mandatory if this message is the first message in response to SETUP, unless the user accepts the B-channel indicated in the SETUP message.

Note 2 – Included in the event of interworking. Included in the network to user direction in connection with the provision of in-band information/patterns. Included in the user to network direction in connection with the provision of in-band information/patterns if Annex N is implemented.

Note 3 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 4 – The minimum length is 2 octets: the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

Note 5 – Included if the network optionally provides additional information describing tones (see § 8).

Note 6 – As a network option, may be used for stimulus operation of supplementary services (see § 8).

Note 7 – Included in the user to network when the called user wants to return information to the calling user, or in the network to user direction if the called user included a user-user information element in the ALERTING message. Conditions for this transfer are described in § 7.

Note 8 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the default standard maximum length is 131 octets.

Note 9 – May be used for functional operation of supplementary services (see § 7).

Note 10 – Included in the network to user direction for support of the procedures in Annex D.

3.1.2 *Call proceeding*

This message is sent by the called user to the network or by the network to the calling user to indicate that the requested call establishment has been initiated and no more call establishment information will be accepted. See Table 3-3/Q.931.

TABLE 3-3/Q.931

CALL PROCEEDING message content

Message type: CALL PROCEEDING
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Channel identification	4.5	both	O (Note 1)	2 - *
Progress indicator	4.5	both	O (Note 2)	2 - 4
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 3)	Note 4

Note 1 – Mandatory in the network-to-user direction if this message is the first message in response to SETUP. Mandatory in the user-to-network direction if this message is the first message in response to SETUP, unless the user accepts the B-channel indicated in the SETUP message.

Note 2 – Included in the event of interworking. Included in the network to user direction in connection with the provision of in-band information/patterns. Included in the user to network direction in connection with the provision of in-band information/patterns if Annex N is implemented.

Note 3 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 4 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

3.1.3 *Congestion control*

This message is sent by the user or the network to indicate the establishment or termination of flow control on the transmission of USER INFORMATION messages. See Table 3-4/Q.931.

TABLE 3-4/Q.931

CONGESTION CONTROL message content

Message type: CONGESTION CONTROL
Significance: local (Note 1)
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Congestion level	4.5	both	M	1
Cause	4.5	both	O (Note 2)	4 - 32
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 3)	Note 4

Note 1 – This message has local significance, but may carry information of global significance.

Note 2 – Included if user-to-user information has been discarded as a result of a congestion situation.

Note 3 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 4 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

3.1.4 *Connect*

This message is sent by the called user to the network and by the network to the calling user to indicate call acceptance by the called user. See Table 3-5/Q.931.

TABLE 3-5/Q.931

CONNECT message content

Message type: CONNECT
Significance: global
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Channel identification	4.5	both (Note 11)	O (Note 1)	2 - *
Facility	4.6	both	O (Note 2)	2 - *
Progress indicator	4.5	both	O (Note 3)	2 - 4
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 4)	Note 5
Signal	4.5	n → u	O (Note 6)	2 - 3
Switchhook	4.6	u → n	O (Note 7)	2 - 3
Feature activation	4.6	u → n	O (Note 7)	2 - 4
Feature indication	4.6	n → u	O (Note 7)	2 - 5
Low layer compatibility	4.5	both	O (Note 8)	2 - 16
User-user	4.5	both	O (Note 9)	Note 10

Note 1 – Mandatory if this message is the first message in response to SETUP, unless the user accepts the B-channel indicated in the SETUP message.

Note 2 – May be used for functional operation of supplementary services (see § 7).

Note 3 – Included in the event of interworking or in connection with the provision of in-band information/patterns.

Note 4 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 5 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

Note 6 – Included if the network optionally provides additional information describing tones (see § 8).

Note 7 – As a network option, may be used for stimulus operation of supplementary services (see §§ 7 and 8).

Note 8 – Included in the user-to-network when the answering user wants to return low layer compatibility information to the calling user. Included in the network-to-user direction if the user awarded the call included a low layer compatibility information element in the CONNECT message. Optionally included for low layer compatibility negotiation, but some networks may not transport this information element to the calling user (see Annex M).

Note 9 – Included in the user-to-network direction when the answering user wants to return user information to the calling user. Included in the network-to-user direction if the user awarded the call included a user-user information element in the CONNECT message. Conditions for this transfer are described in § 7.

Note 10 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the default standard maximum length is 131 octets.

Note 11 – Included in the network to user direction for support of the procedures in Annex D.

3.1.5 *Connect acknowledge*

This message is sent by the network to the called user to indicate the user has been awarded the call. It may also be sent by the calling user to the network to allow symmetrical call control procedures. See Table 3-6/Q.931.

TABLE 3-6/Q.931

CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message content

Message type: CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Channel identification	4.5	n → u	O (Note 1)	2 - *
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 2)	Note 3
Signal	4.5	n → u	O (Note 4)	2 - 3

Note 1 – Available for use by supplementary services (e.g., call waiting).

Note 2 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 3 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

Note 4 – Included if the network optionally provides additional information describing tones (see § 8).

3.1.6 *Disconnect*

This message is sent by the user to request the network to clear an end-to-end connection or is sent by the network to indicate that the end-to-end connection is cleared. See Table 3-7/Q.931.

TABLE 3-7/Q.931

DISCONNECT message content

Message type: DISCONNECT
Significance: global
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Cause	4.5	both	M	4 - 32
Facility	4.6	both	O (Note 1)	2 - *
Progress indicator	4.5	Note 2	O (Note 3)	2 - 4
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 4)	Note 5
Signal	4.5	n → u	O (Note 6)	2 - 3
Feature indication	4.6	n → u	O (Note 6)	2 - 5
User-user	4.5	both	O (Note 7)	Note 8

Note 1 – May be used for functional operation of supplementary services, such as the user-user service (see § 7).

Note 2 – Included in the network-to-user direction if the network provides in-band tones. See Annex D for usage in the user-to-network direction.

Note 3 – Included by the network if in-band tones are provided. However, the user may include the progress indicator and provide in-band tones (see Annex D). But in this case the network will ignore this information element and will not convey the in-band tones.

Note 4 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 5 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

Note 6 – As a network option, may be used for stimulus operation of supplementary services (see §§ 7 and 8).

Note 7 – Included when the user initiates call clearing and wants to pass user information to the remote user at call clearing time. Conditions for this transfer are described in § 7.

Note 8 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the standard default maximum length is 131 octets.

3.1.7 *Facility*

This message is defined in Recommendation Q.932 [4].

3.1.8 *Information*

This message is sent by the user or the network to provide additional information. It may be used to provide information for call establishment (e.g. overlap sending and receiving) or miscellaneous call-related information. See Table 3-8/Q.931.

TABLE 3-8/Q.931

INFORMATION message content

Message type: INFORMATION
Significance: local (Note 1)
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M (Note 2)	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Sending complete	4.5	both	O (Note 3)	1
Cause	4.5	n → u	O (Note 8)	2 - 32
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 4)	Note 5
Keypad facility	4.5	u → n	O (Note 6, 8)	2 - 34
Signal	4.5	n → u	O (Note 7)	2 - 3
Switchhook	4.6	u → n	O (Note 8)	2 - 3
Feature activation	4.6	u → n	O (Note 8)	2 - 4
Feature indication	4.6	n → u	O (Note 8)	2 - 5
Called party number	4.5	both	O (Note 9)	2 - *

Note 1 – This message has local significance, but may carry information of global significance.

Note 2 – This message may be sent with the dummy call reference defined in § 4.3 when feature key management procedures are used (see § 8); otherwise the minimum length is 2 octets.

Note 3 – Included if the user optionally indicates completion of overlap sending to the network, or if the network optionally indicates completion of overlap receiving to the user.

Note 4 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 5 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

Note 6 – Either the Called party number or the Keypad facility information element is included by the user to convey called party number information to the network during overlap sending. The Keypad facility information element may also be included if the user wants to convey other call establishment information to the network or to convey supplementary service information (see §§ 7 and 8).

Note 7 – Included if the network optionally provides additional information describing tones (see § 8).

Note 8 – As a network option, may be used for stimulus operation of supplementary services (see §§ 7 and 8).

Note 9 – Either the Called party number or the Keypad facility information element is included by the user to convey called party number information to the network during overlap sending. The Called party number information element is included by the network to convey called party number information to the user during overlap receiving.

3.1.9 *Notify*

This message is sent by the user or the network to indicate information pertaining to a call, such as user suspended. See Table 3-9/Q.931.

TABLE 3-9/Q.931

NOTIFY message content

Message type: NOTIFY
Significance: access
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Bearer capability	4.5	n → u	O (Note 1)	2 - 13
Notification indicator	4.5	both	M	3
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 2)	Note 3

Note 1 – Included by the network to indicate a change of the bearer capability (see Annex O).

Note 2 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 3 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

3.1.10 *Progress*

This message is sent by the user or the network to indicate the progress of a call in the event of interworking or in relation with the provision of in-band information/patterns. See Table 3-10/Q.931.

TABLE 3-10/Q.931

PROGRESS message content

Message type: PROGRESS
Significance: global
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Cause	4.5	both	O (Note 1)	2 - 32
Progress indicator	4.5	both	M	4
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 2)	Note 3
User-user	4.5	n → u	O (Note 4)	Note 5

Note 1 – Included by the user or the network to provide additional information concerning the provision of in-band information/patterns.

Note 2 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 3 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

Note 4 – Included when the PROGRESS message is sent by the network to indicate that the call has been cleard by the remote user before it reached the active state, and the remote user wants to pass user information at call clearing time. Conditions for this transfer are described in § 7.

Note 5 – The minimum length is 2 octets: the standard default maximum length is 131 octets.

3.1.11 *Release*

This message is sent by the user or the network to indicate that the equipment sending the message has disconnected the channel (if any) and intends to release the channel and the call reference, and that the receiving equipment should release the channel and prepare to release the call reference after sending RELEASE COMPLETE. See Table 3-11/Q.931.

TABLE 3-11/Q.931

RELEASE message content

Message type: RELEASE
Significance: local (Note 1)
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Cause	4.5	both	O (Note 2)	2 - 32
Facility	4.6	both	O (Note 3)	2 - *
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 4)	Note 5
Signal	4.5	n → u	O (Note 6)	2 - 3
Feature indication	4.6	n → u	O (Note 6)	2 - 5
User-user	4.5	both	O (Note 7)	Note 8

Note 1 – This message has local significance; however, it may carry information of global significance when used as the first call clearing message.

Note 2 – Mandatory in the first call clearing message, including when the RELEASE message is sent as a result of an error handling condition.

Note 3 – May be included for functional operation of supplementary services, (see § 7).

Note 4 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 5 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

Note 6 – As a network option, may be used for stimulus operation of supplementary services (see §§ 7 and 8).

Note 7 – Included when the RELEASE message is the first call clearing message, and the user initiates call clearing and wants to pass user information to the remote user at call clearing time. Conditions for this transfer are described in § 7.

Note 8 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the standard default maximum length is 131 octets.

3.1.12 *Release complete*

This message is sent by the user or the network to indicate that the equipment sending the message has released the channel (if any) and call reference, the channel is available for reuse, and the receiving equipment shall release the call reference. See Table 3-12/Q.931.

TABLE 3-12/Q.931

RELEASE COMPLETE message content

Message type: RELEASE COMPLETE
Significance: local (Note 1)
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Cause	4.5	both	O (Note 2)	2 - 32
Facility	4.6	both	O (Note 3)	2 - *
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 4)	Note 5
Signal	4.5	n → u	O (Note 6)	2 - 3
Feature indication	4.6	n → u	O (Note 6)	2 - 5
User-user	4.5	u → n	O (Note 7)	Note 8

Note 1 – This message has local significance; however, it may carry information of global significance when used as the first call clearing message.

Note 2 – Mandatory in the first call clearing message, including when the RELEASE COMPLETE message is sent as a result of an error handling condition.

Note 3 – May be used for functional operation of supplementary services (see § 7).

Note 4 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 5 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

Note 6 – As a network option, may be used for stimulus operation of supplementary services (see §§ 7 and 8).

Note 7 – Included when the RELEASE COMPLETE message is the first call clearing message, and the user initiates call clearing and wants to pass user information to the remote user at call clearing time. Conditions for this transfer are described in § 7.

Note 8 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the standard default maximum length is 131 octets.

3.1.13 *Resume*

This message is sent by the user to request the network to resume a suspended call. See Table 3-13/Q.931.

TABLE 3-13/Q.931

RESUME message content

Message type: RESUME
Significance: local
Direction: user to network

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	u → n	M	1
Call reference	4.3	u → n	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	u → n	M	1
Call identity	4.5	u → n	O (Note)	2 - 10

Note – Included when the SUSPEND message used to suspend the call included a Call identity information element.

3.1.14 *Resume acknowledge*

This message is sent by the network to the user to indicate completion of a request to resume a suspended call. See Table 3-14/Q.931.

TABLE 3-14/Q.931

RESUME ACKNOWLEDGE message content

Message type: RESUME ACKNOWLEDGE
Significance: local
Direction: network to user

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	n → u	M	1
Call reference	4.3	n → u	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	n → u	M	1
Channel identification	4.5	n → u	M	3 - *
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 1)	Note 2

Note 1 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 2 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

3.1.15 *Resume reject*

This message is sent by the network to the user to indicate failure of a request to resume a suspended call. See Table 3-15/Q.931.

TABLE 3-15/Q.931

RESUME REJECT message content

Message type: RESUME REJECT
Significance: local
Direction: network to user

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	n → u	M	1
Call reference	4.3	n → u	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	n → u	M	1
Cause	4.5	n → u	M	4 - 32
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 1)	Note 2

Note 1 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 2 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

3.1.16 *Setup*

This message is sent by the calling user to the network and by the network to the called user to initiate call establishment. See Table 3-16/Q.931.

TABLE 3-16/Q.931

SETUP message content

Message type: SETUP
Significance: global
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Sending complete	4.5	both	O (Note 1)	1
Repeat indicator	4.5	both	O (Note 2)	1
Bearer capability	4.5	both	M (Note 3)	4 - 13
Channel identification	4.5	both	O (Note 4)	2 - *
Facility	4.6	both	O (Note 5)	2 - *
Progress indicator	4.5	both	O (Note 6)	2 - 4
Network specific facilities	4.5	both	O (Note 7)	2 - *
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 8)	Note 9
Keypad facility	4.5	u → n	O (Note 10, 12)	2 - 34
Signal	4.5	n → u	O (Note 11)	2 - 3
Switchhook	4.6	u → n	O (Note 12)	2 - 3
Feature activation	4.6	u → n	O (Note 12)	2 - 4
Feature indication	4.6	n → u	O (Note 12)	2 - 5
Calling party number	4.5	both	O (Note 13)	2 - *
Calling party subaddress	4.5	both	O (Note 14)	2 - 23
Called party number	4.5	both	O (Note 15)	2 - *
Called party subaddress	4.5	both	O (Note 16)	2 - 23
Transit network selection	4.5	u → n	O (Note 17)	2 - *
Low layer compatibility	4.5	both	O (Note 18)	2 - 16
High layer compatibility	4.5	both	O (Note 19)	2 - 4
User-user	4.5	both	O (Note 20)	Note 21

Note 1 – Included if the user or the network optionally indicates that all information necessary for call establishment is included in the SETUP message.

Note 2 – The Repeat indicator information element is included immediately before the first Bearer capability information element when either the in-call modification procedure or the bearer capability negotiation procedure is used (see Annex O).

Note 3 – May be repeated if the bearer capability negotiation procedure is used. For bearer capability negotiation, either two or three Bearer capability information elements may be included in descending order of priority, i.e., highest priority first.

Note 4 – Mandatory in the network-to-user direction. Included in the user-to-network direction when the user wants to indicate a channel. If not included, its absence is interpreted as "any channel acceptable".

Note 5 – May be included for functional operation of supplementary services (see § 7).

Note 6 – Included in the event of interworking or in connection with the provision of in-band information/patterns.

Note 7 – Included by the calling user or the network to indicate network-specific facilities information (see Annex E).

Note 8 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 9 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

Note 10 – Either the Called party number or the Keypad facility information element is included by the user to convey called party number information to the network. The Keypad facility information element may also be included by the user to convey other call establishment information to the network.

Note 11 – Included if the network optionally provides additional information describing tones (see § 8).

Note 12 – As a network option, may be used for stimulus operation of supplementary services (see §§ 7 and 8).

Note 13 – May be included by the calling user or the network to identify the calling user.

Note 14 – Included in the user-to-network direction when the calling user wants to indicate the calling party subaddress. Included in the network-to-user direction if the calling user included a Calling party subaddress information element in the SETUP message.

Note 15 – Either the Called party number or the Keypad facility information element is included by the user to convey called party number information to the network. The Called party number information element is included by the network when called party number information is conveyed to the user.

Note 16 – Included in the user-to-network direction when the calling user wants to indicate the called party subaddress. Included in the network-to-user direction if the calling user included a Called party subaddress information element in the SETUP message.

Note 17 – Included by the calling user to select a particular transit network (see Annex C).

Note 18 – Included in the user-to-network direction when the calling user wants to pass low layer compatibility information to the called user. Included in the network-to-user direction if the calling user included a Low layer compatibility information element in the SETUP message.

Note 19 – Included in the user-to-network direction when the calling user wants to pass High layer compatibility information to the called user. Included in the network-to-user direction if the calling user included a High layer compatibility information element in the SETUP message.

Note 20 – Included in the user-to-network direction when the calling user wants to pass user information to the called user. Included in the network-to-user direction if the calling user included a user-user information element in the SETUP message. Conditions for this transfer are described in § 7.

Note 21 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the standard default maximum length is 131 octets.

3.1.17 *Setup acknowledge*

This message is sent by the network to the calling user or by the called user to the network to indicate that call establishment has been initiated, but additional information may be required. See Table 3-17/Q.931.

TABLE 3-17/Q.931

SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE message content

Message type: SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Channel identification	4.5	both	O (Note 1)	2 - *
Progress indicator	4.5	both	O (Note 2)	2 - 4
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 3)	Note 4
Signal	4.5	n → u	O (Note 5)	2 - 3

Note 1 – Mandatory in all cases, except when the user accepts the specific B-channel indicated in the SETUP message.

Note 2 – Included in the event of interworking or in connection with the provision of in-band information/patterns.

Note 3 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 4 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

Note 5 – Included if the network optionally provides additional information describing tones (e.g., activate dial tone) (see § 8).

3.1.18 *Status*

This message is sent by the user or the network in response to a STATUS ENQUIRY message or at any time during a call to report certain error conditions listed in § 5.8. See Table 3-18/Q.931.

TABLE 3-18/Q.931

STATUS message content

Message type: STATUS
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Cause	4.5	both	M	4 - 32
Call state	4.5	both	M	3
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 1)	Note 2

Note 1 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 2 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

3.1.19 *Status enquiry*

This message is sent by the user or the network at any time to solicit a STATUS message from the peer layer 3 entity. Sending a STATUS message in response to a STATUS ENQUIRY message is mandatory. See Table 3-19/Q.931.

TABLE 3-19/Q.931

STATUS ENQUIRY message content

Message type: STATUS ENQUIRY
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 1)	Note 2

Note 1 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 2 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

3.1.20 *Suspend*

This message is sent by the user to request the network to suspend a call. See Table 3-20/Q.931.

TABLE 3-20/Q.931

SUSPEND message content

Message type: SUSPEND
Significance: local
Direction: user to network

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	u → n	M	1
Call reference	4.3	u → n	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	u → n	M	1
Call identity	4.5	u → n	O (Note)	2 - 10

Note – Included if the user later wants to identify the suspended call explicitly.

3.1.21 *Suspend acknowledge*

This message is sent by the network to the user to indicate completion of a request to suspend a call. See Table 3-21/Q.931.

TABLE 3-21/Q.931

SUSPEND ACKNOWLEDGE message content

Message type: SUSPEND ACKNOWLEDGE
Significance: local
Direction: network to user

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	n → u	M	1
Call reference	4.3	n → u	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	n → u	M	1
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 1)	Note 2

Note 1 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 2 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

3.1.22 *Suspend reject*

This message is sent by the network to the user to indicate failure of a request to suspend a call. See Table 3-22/Q.931.

TABLE 3-22/Q.931

SUSPEND REJECT message content

Message type: SUSPEND REJECT
Significance: local
Direction: network to user

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	n → u	M	1
Call reference	4.3	n → u	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	n → u	M	1
Cause	4.5	n → u	M	4 - 32
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 1)	Note 2

Note 1 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 2 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

3.1.23 *User information*

This message is sent by the user to the network to transfer information to the remote user. This message is also sent by the network to the user to deliver information from the other user. This message is used if the user-to-user transfer is part of an allowed information transfer as defined in §§ 7.1.4 or 7.1.5. See Table 3-23/Q.931.

TABLE 3-23/Q.931

USER INFORMATION message content

Message type: USER INFORMATION
Significance: access
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
More data	4.5	both	O (Note 1)	1
User-user	4.5	both	M	Note 2

Note 1 – Included by the sending user to indicate that another USER INFORMATION message pertaining to the same message block will follow.

Note 2 – The minimum length of the user-user information element is 3 octets. The default maximum length is 131 octets; however some networks may only support a maximum length of 35 octets. Procedures for interworking are not currently defined and are for further study.

3.2 *Messages for packet-mode access connection control*

Table 3-24/Q.931 summarizes the messages for packet-mode access connection control. The message tables in this paragraph should be used for Case B (packet switched access to an ISDN virtual circuit service) as defined in § 6. For Case A (circuit switched access to PSPDN services) the message tables in § 3.1 should be used.

TABLE 3-24/Q.931

Messages for packet-mode access connection control

	Reference
Access connection establishment messages:	
ALERTING	3.2.1
CALL PROCEEDING	3.2.2
CONNECT	3.2.3
CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE	3.2.4
PROGRESS	3.2.6
SETUP	3.2.9
Access connection clearing messages:	
DISCONNECT	3.2.5
RELEASE	3.2.7
RELEASE COMPLETE	3.2.8
Miscellaneous messages:	
STATUS	3.2.10
STATUS ENQUIRY	3.2.11

3.2.1 *Alerting*

This message is sent by the called user to the network to indicate that called user alerting has been initiated. See Table 3-25/Q.931.

TABLE 3-25/Q.931

ALERTING message content

Message type: ALERTING
Significance: local
Direction: user to network

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	u → n	M	1
Call reference	4.3	u → n	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	u → n	M	1
Channel identification	4.5	u → n	O (Note 1)	2 - *
Progress indicator	4.5	u → n	O (Note 2)	2 - 4

Note 1 – Mandatory if this message is the first message in response to SETUP, unless the user accepts the channel indicated in the SETUP message.

Note 2 – Included in the event of interworking within a private network.

3.2.2 *Call proceeding*

This message is sent by the called user to the network or by the network to the calling user to indicate that the requested access connection establishment has been initiated. See Table 3-26/Q.931.

TABLE 3-26/Q.931

CALL PROCEEDING message content

Message type: CALL PROCEEDING
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Channel identification	4.5	both	O (Note 1)	2 - *
Progress indicator	4.5	u → n	O (Note 2)	2 - 4
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 3)	Note 4

Note 1 – Mandatory in the network-to-user direction if this message is the first message in response to SETUP. Mandatory in the user-to-network direction if this message is the first message in response to SETUP, unless the user accepts the channel indicated in the SETUP message.

Note 2 – Included in the event of interworking within a private network.

Note 3 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 4 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

3.2.3 *Connect*

This message is sent by the called user to the network and by the network to the calling user to indicate acceptance of the access connection. See Table 3-27/Q.931.

TABLE 3-27/Q.931

CONNECT message content

Message type: CONNECT
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Channel identification	4.5	u → n	O (Note 1)	2 - *
Progress indicator	4.5	u → n	O (Note 4)	2 - 4
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 2)	Note 3

Note 1 – Mandatory if this message is the first message in response to SETUP, unless the user accepts the channel indicated in the SETUP message.

Note 2 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 3 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

Note 4 – Included in the event of interworking within a private network.

3.2.4 *Connect acknowledge*

This message is sent by the network to the called user to indicate the user has been awarded the access connection. It may also be sent by the calling user to the network to allow symmetrical access connection control procedures. See Table 3-28/Q.931.

TABLE 3-28/Q.931

CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message content

Message type: CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 1)	Note 2

Note 1 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 2 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

3.2.5 *Disconnect*

This message is sent by the user to request the network to clear an access connection or is sent by the network to the user to indicate that the access connection has been cleared. See Table 3-29/Q.931.

TABLE 3-29/Q.931

DISCONNECT message content

Message type: DISCONNECT
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Cause	4.5	both	M	4 - 32
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 1)	Note 2
User-user	4.5	u → n	O (Note 3)	Note 4

Note 1 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 2 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

Note 3 – May be sent if the access connection has not yet reached the active state. However, user-user information is not sent after the access connection has reached the active state since X.25 procedures would be used for this information transfer.

Note 4 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the standard default maximum length is 131 octets.

3.2.6 *Progress*

This message is sent by the called user to indicate the progress of an access connection establishment in the event of interworking within a private network. See Table 3-30/Q.931.

TABLE 3-30/Q.931

PROGRESS message content

Message type: PROGRESS
Significance: local
Direction: user to network

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	u → n	M	1
Call reference	4.3	u → n	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	u → n	M	1
Cause	4.5	u → n	O (Note)	2 - 32
Progress indicator	4.5	u → n	M	4

Note – Included by the caller user to provide additional information.

3.2.7 *Release*

This message is sent by the user or the network to indicate that the equipment sending the message has disconnected the channel (if any) and intends to release the channel and the call reference, and that the receiving equipment should release the channel and prepare to release the call reference after sending RELEASE COMPLETE. This message is sent by the network to the user to indicate that the access connection is awarded on either the D-channel or an existing channel and that the network intends to release the call reference. See Table 3-31/Q.931.

TABLE 3-31/Q.931

RELEASE message content

Message type: RELEASE
Significance: local (Note 1)
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Cause	4.5	both	O (Note 2)	2 - 32
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 3)	Note 4
User-user	4.5	u → n	O (Note 5)	Note 6

Note 1 – This message has local significance; however, it may carry information of global significance when used as the first call clearing message.

Note 2 – Mandatory in the first clearing message, including when the RELEASE message is sent as a result of an error handling condition.

Note 3 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 4 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

Note 5 – User-user information may be sent if RELEASE is the first clearing message and the access connection has not yet reached the active state and Q.931/X.25 mapping service is provided by the network. However, user-user information is not sent if the access connection has reached the active state since X.25 procedures would be used for this information transfer.

Note 6 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the standard default maximum length is 131 octets.

3.2.8 *Release complete*

This message is sent by the user or the network to indicate that the equipment sending the message has released the channel (if any) and call reference, the channel is available for reuse, and the receiving equipment shall release the call reference. See Table 3-32/Q.931.

TABLE 3-32/Q.931

RELEASE COMPLETE message content

Message type: RELEASE COMPLETE
Significance: local (Note 1)
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Cause	4.5	both	O (Note 2)	2 - 32
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 3)	Note 4
User-user	4.5	u → n	O (Note 5)	Note 6

Note 1 – This message has local significance; however, it may carry information of global significance when used as the first call clearing message.

Note 2 – Mandatory in the first clearing message, including when the RELEASE COMPLETE message is sent as a result of an error handling condition.

Note 3 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 4 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

Note 5 – User-user information may be sent if RELEASE COMPLETE is the first clearing message and the access connection has not yet reached the active state and Q.931/X.25 mapping service is provided by the network. However, user-user information is not sent if the access connection has reached the active state since X.25 [5] procedures would be used for this information transfer.

Note 6 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the standard default maximum length is 131 octets.

3.2.9 *Setup*

This message is sent by the calling user to the network and by the network to the called user to initiate access connection establishment. See Table 3-33/Q.931.

TABLE 3-33/Q.931

SETUP message content

Message type: SETUP
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Bearer capability	4.5	both	M (Note 1)	4 - 13
Channel identification	4.5	both	O (Note 2)	2 - *
Progress indicator	4.5	u → n	O (Note 3)	2 - 4
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 4)	Note 5
Information rate	4.7	n → u	O (Note 6)	2 - 6
End-end transit delay	4.7	n → u	O (Note 8)	2 - 11
Transit delay selection and indication	4.7	n → u	O (Note 7)	2 - 5
Packet layer binary parameters	4.7	n → u	O (Note 9)	2 - 3
Packet layer window size	4.7	n → u	O (Note 10)	2 - 4
Packet size	4.7	n → u	O (Note 11)	2 - 4
Calling party number	4.5	n → u	O (Note 12)	2 - *
Calling party subaddress	4.5	n → u	O (Note 13)	2 - 23
Called party number	4.5	n → u	O (Note 14)	2 - *
Called party subaddress	4.5	n → u	O (Note 15)	2 - 23
Redirecting number	4.7	n → u	O (Note 16)	2 - *
User-user	4.5	n → u	O (Note 17)	Note 18

Note 1 – May be used to describe a CCITT telecommunication service involving packet-mode access connections, if appropriate.

Note 2 – Mandatory in the network-to-user direction. Included in the user-to-network direction when the user wants to indicate a channel. If not included, its absence is interpreted as "any channel acceptable".

Note 3 – Included in the event of interworking within a private network.

Note 4 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 5 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

Note 6 – Included in the network-to-user direction if the network implements X.25 [5]/Q.931 information element mapping and provides indication to the called user of the information rate for the call.

Note 7 – Included in the network-to-user direction if the network implements X.25/Q.931 information element mapping and provides indication to the called user of the maximum permissible transit delay for the call.

Note 8 – Included in the network-to-user direction if the network implements X.25/Q.931 information element mapping and provides indication to the called user of the end-end transit delay for the call.

Note 9 – Included in the network-to-user direction if the network implements X.25/Q.931 information element mapping and provides indication to the called user of the packet layer binary parameters for the call.

Note 10 – Included in the network-to-user direction if the network implements X.25/Q.931 information element mapping and provides indication to the called user of the packet layer window size for the call.

Note 11 – Included in the network-to-user direction if the network implements X.25/Q.931 information element mapping and provides indication to the called user of the packet size for the call.

Note 12 – Included in the network-to-user direction if the network implements X.25/Q.931 information element mapping and provides indication to the called user of the calling party number.

Note 13 – Included in the network-to-user direction if the network implements X.25/Q.931 information element mapping and provides indication to the called user of the calling party subaddress.

Note 14 – Included in the network-to-user direction if the network implements X.25/Q.931 information element mapping and provides indication to the called user of the called party number.

Note 15 – Included in the network-to-user direction if the network implements X.25/Q.931 information element mapping and provides indication to the called user of the called party subaddress.

Note 16 – Included in the network-to-user direction if the network implements X.25/Q.931 information element mapping and provides indication to the called user of the number from which a call diversion or transfer was invoked.

Note 17 – Included in the network-to-user direction if the calling user included user information and the network implements X.25/Q.931 information element mapping.

Note 18 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the standard default maximum length is 131 octets.

3.2.10 *Status*

This message is sent by the user or the network in response to a STATUS ENQUIRY message or at any time to report certain error conditions listed in § 5.8. See Table 3-34/Q.931.

TABLE 3-34/Q.931

STATUS message content

Message type: STATUS
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Cause	4.5	both	M	4 - 32
Call state	4.5	both	M	3
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 1)	Note 2

Note 1 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 2 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

3.2.11 *Status enquiry*

This message is sent by the user or the network at any time to solicit a STATUS message from the peer layer 3 entity. Sending a STATUS message in response to a STATUS ENQUIRY message is mandatory. See Table 3-35/Q.931.

TABLE 3-35/Q.931

STATUS ENQUIRY message content

Message type: STATUS ENQUIRY
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 1)	Note 2

Note 1 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 2 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

3.3 *Messages for user-to-user signalling not associated with circuit switched calls*

Table 3-36/Q.931 summarizes the messages for the control of non-call associated temporary signalling connections and the transfer of user-user information.

TABLE 3-36/Q.931

Messages for temporary signalling connection control

	Reference
Call establishment messages:	
ALERTING	3.3.1
CALL PROCEEDING	3.3.2
CONNECT	3.3.4
CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE	3.3.5
SETUP	3.3.9
SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE	3.3.10
Call information phase messages:	
USER INFORMATION	3.3.13
Call clearing messages:	
RELEASE	3.3.7
RELEASE COMPLETE	3.3.8
Miscellaneous messages:	
CONGESTION CONTROL	3.3.3
INFORMATION	3.3.6
STATUS	3.3.11
STATUS ENQUIRY	3.3.12

3.3.1 *Alerting*

This message is sent by the called user to the network and by the network to the calling user to indicate that called user alerting has been initiated. See Table 3-37/Q.931.

TABLE 3-37/Q.931

ALERTING message content

Message type: ALERTING
Significance: global
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Channel identification	4.5	u → n	O (Note 1)	2 - *
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 2)	Note 3
User-user	4.5	both	O (Note 4)	Note 5

Note 1 – Mandatory if this message is the first message in response to SETUP, unless the user accepts the D-channel indicated in the SETUP message.

Note 2 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 3 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

Note 4 – Included in the user-to-network direction when the called user wants to return user information to the calling user. Included in the network-to-user direction if the called user included a User-user information element in the ALERTING message. Conditions for this transfer are described in § 7.

Note 5 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the standard default maximum length is 131 octets.

3.3.2 *Call proceeding*

This message is sent by the called user to the network and by the network to the calling user to indicate that the requested establishment has been initiated and no more call establishment information will be accepted. See Table 3-38/Q.931.

TABLE 3-38/Q.931

CALL PROCEEDING message content

Message type: CALL PROCEEDING
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Channel identification	4.5	both	O (Note 1)	2 - *
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 2)	Note 3

Note 1 – Mandatory in the network-to-user direction if this message is the first message in response to SETUP. Mandatory in the user-to-network direction if this message is the first message in response to SETUP, unless the user accepts the D-channel indicated in the SETUP message.

Note 2 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 3 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

3.3.3 *Congestion control*

This message is sent by the user or the network to indicate the establishment or termination of flow control on the transmission of USER INFORMATION messages. See Table 3-39/Q.931.

TABLE 3-39/Q.931

CONGESTION CONTROL message content

Message type: CONGESTION CONTROL
Significance: local (Note 1)
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Congestion level	4.5	both	M	1
Cause	4.5	both	M	4 - 32
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 2)	Note 3

Note 1 – This message has local significance, but may carry information of global significance.

Note 2 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 3 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

3.3.4 *Connect*

This message is sent by the called user to the network and by the network to the calling user to indicate call acceptance by the called user. See Table 3-40/Q.931.

TABLE 3-40/Q.931

CONNECT message content

Message type: CONNECT
Significance: global
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Channel identification	4.5	u → n	O (Note 1)	2 - *
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 2)	Note 3
User-user	4.5	both	O (Note 4)	Note 5

Note 1 – Mandatory if this message is the first message in response to SETUP, unless the user accepts the D-channel indicated in the SETUP message.

Note 2 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 3 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

Note 4 – Included in the user-to-network direction when the answering user wants to return user information to the calling user. Included in the network-to-user direction if the user awarded the call included a user-user information element in the CONNECT message. Conditions for this transfer are described in § 7.

Note 5 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the standard default maximum length is 131 octets.

3.3.5 *Connect acknowledge*

This message is sent by the network to the called user to indicate the user has been awarded the call. It may also be sent by the calling user to the network to allow symmetrical call control procedures. See Table 3-41/Q.931.

TABLE 3-41/Q.931

CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message content

Message type: CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 1)	Note 2

Note 1 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 2 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

3.3.6 *Information*

This message is sent by the user or the network to provide additional information. It may be used to provide information for call establishment (e.g. overlap sending and receiving) or miscellaneous call-related information. See Table 3-42/Q.931.

TABLE 3-42/Q.931

INFORMATION message content

Message type: INFORMATION
Significance: local (Note 1)
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Sending complete	4.5	both	O (Note 2)	1
Cause	4.5	n → u	O (Note 3)	2 - 32
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 4)	Note 5
Keypad facility	4.5	u → n	O (Note 6)	2 - 34
Called party number	4.5	both	O (Note 7)	2 - *

Note 1 – This message has local significance, but may carry information of global significance.

Note 2 – Included if the user optionally indicates completion of overlap sending to the network, or if the network optionally indicates completion of overlap receiving to the user.

Note 3 – Included when the network optionally conveys additional information pertaining to user-user signaling (see § 7).

Note 4 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 5 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

Note 6 – Either the Called party number or the Keypad facility information element is included by the user to convey called party number information to the network during overlap sending. The Keypad facility information element may also be included by the user to convey other call establishment information to the network.

Note 7 – Either the Called party number or the Keypad facility information element is included by the user to convey called party number information to the network during overlap sending. The Called party number information element is included by the network to convey called party number information to the user during overlap receiving.

3.3.7 *Release*

This message is sent by the user or the network to indicate that the equipment sending the message has disconnected the channel (if any) and intends to release the channel and the call reference, and that the receiving equipment should release the channel and prepare to release the call reference after sending RELEASE COMPLETE. See Table 3-43/Q.931.

TABLE 3-43/Q.931

RELEASE message content

Message type: RELEASE
Significance: local (Note 1)
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Cause	4.5	both	O (Note 2)	2 - 32
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 3)	Note 4
User-user	4.5	both	O (Note 5)	Note 6

Note 1 – This message has local significance; however, it may carry information of global significance when used as the first call clearing message.

Note 2 – Mandatory in the first call clearing message, including when the RELEASE message is sent as a result of an error handling condition.

Note 3 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 4 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

Note 5 – Included when the user initiates call clearing and wants to pass user information to the remote user at call clearing time. Conditions for this transfer are described in § 7.

Note 6 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the standard default maximum length is 131 octets.

3.3.8 *Release complete*

This message is sent by the user or the network to indicate that the equipment sending the message has released the channel (if any) and call reference, the channel is available for reuse, and the receiving equipment shall release the call reference. See Table 3-44/Q.931.

TABLE 3-44/Q.931

RELEASE COMPLETE message content

Message type: RELEASE COMPLETE
Significance: local (Note 1)
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Cause	4.5	both	O (Note 2)	2 - 32
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 3)	Note 4
User-user	4.5	both	O (Note 5)	Note 6

Note 1 – This message has local significance; however, it may carry information of global significance when used as the first call clearing message.

Note 2 – Mandatory in the first call clearing message, including when the RELEASE COMPLETE message is sent as a result of an error handling condition.

Note 3 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 4 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

Note 5 – Included when the RELEASE COMPLETE message is the first call clearing message, and the user initiates call clearing and wants to pass user information to the remote user at call clearing time. Conditions for this transfer are described in § 7.

Note 6 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the standard default maximum length is 131 octets.

3.3.9 *Setup*

This message is sent by the calling user to the network and by the network to the called user to initiate call establishment. See Table 3-45/Q.931.

TABLE 3-45/Q.931

SETUP message content

Message type: SETUP
Significance: global
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Sending complete	4.5	both	O (Note 1)	1
Bearer capability	4.5	both	M (Note 2)	6 - 8
Channel identification	4.5	both	M	2 - *
Network specific facilities	4.5	both	O (Note 3)	2 - *
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 4)	Note 5
Keypad facility	4.5	u → n	O (Note 6)	2 - 34
Calling party number	4.5	both	O (Note 7)	2 - *
Calling party subaddress	4.5	both	O (Note 8)	2 - 23
Called party number	4.5	both	O (Note 9)	2 - *
Called party subaddress	4.5	both	O (Note 10)	2 - 23
Transit network selection	4.5	u → n	O (Note 11)	2 - *
Low layer compatibility	4.5	both	O (Note 12)	2 - 16
High layer compatibility	4.5	both	O (Note 13)	2 - 4
User-user	4.5	both	O (Note 14)	Note 15

Note 1 – Included if the user or the network optionally indicates that all information necessary for call establishment is included in the SETUP message.

Note 2 – The Bearer capability and compatibility information elements may be used to describe a CCITT telecommunication service, if appropriate.

Note 3 – Included by the calling user or the network to indicate network specific facilities information (see Annex E).

Note 4 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 5 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

Note 6 – Either the Called party number or the Keypad facility information element is included by the user to convey called party number information to the network during overlap sending. The Keypad facility information element may also be included by the user to convey other call establishment information to the network.

Note 7 – May be included by the calling user or the network to identify the calling user.

Note 8 – Included in the user-to-network direction when the calling user wants to indicate the calling party subaddress. Included in the network-to-user direction if the calling user included a Calling party subaddress information element in the SETUP message.

Note 9 – Either the Called party number or the Keypad facility information element is included by the user to convey called party number information to the network. The Called party number information element is included by the network when called party number information is conveyed to the user.

Note 10 – Included in the user-to-network direction when the calling user wants to indicate the called party subaddress. Included in the network-to-user direction if the calling user included a Called party subaddress information element in the SETUP message.

Note 11 – Included by the calling user to select a particular transit network (see Annex C).

Note 12 – Included in the user-to-network direction when the calling user wants to pass low layer compatibility information to the called user. Included in the network-to-user direction if the calling user included a low layer compatibility information element in the SETUP message.

Note 13 – Included in the user-to-network direction when the calling user wants to pass high layer compatibility information to the called user. Included in the network-to-user direction if the calling user included a high layer compatibility information element in the SETUP message.

Note 14 – Included in the user-to-network direction when the calling user wants to pass user information to the called user. Included in the network-to-user direction if the calling user included a user-user information element in the SETUP message. Conditions for this transfer are described in § 7.

Note 15 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the standard default maximum length is 131 octets.

3.3.10 *Setup acknowledge*

This message is sent by the network to the calling user or by the called user to the network to indicate that call establishment has been initiated, but additional information may be required. See Table 3-46/Q.931.

TABLE 3-46/Q.931

SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE message content

Message type: SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Channel identification	4.5	both	O (Note 1)	2 - *
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 2)	Note 3

Note 1 – Mandatory in all cases, except when the user accepts the D-channel indicated in the SETUP message.

Note 2 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 3 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

3.3.11 *Status*

This message is sent by the user or the network in response to a STATUS ENQUIRY message or at any time to report error conditions listed in § 5.8. See Table 3-47/Q.931.

TABLE 3-47/Q.931

STATUS message content

Message type: STATUS
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Cause	4.5	both	M	4 - 32
Call state	4.5	both	M	3
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 1)	Note 2

Note 1 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 2 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

3.3.12 *Status enquiry*

This message is sent by the user or the network at any time to solicit a STATUS message from the peer layer 3 entity. Sending a STATUS message in response to a STATUS ENQUIRY message is mandatory. See Table 3-48/Q.931.

TABLE 3-48/Q.931

STATUS ENQUIRY message content

Message type: STATUS ENQUIRY
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 1)	Note 2

Note 1 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 2 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

3.3.13 *User information*

This message is sent by the user to the network to transfer information to the remote user. This message is also sent by the network to the user to deliver information from the other user. See Table 3-49/Q.931.

TABLE 3-49/Q.931

USER INFORMATION message content

Message type: USER INFORMATION
Significance: access
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
More data	4.5	both	O (Note)	1
User-user	4.5	both	M	2 - 255

Note – Included by the sending user to indicate that another USER INFORMATION message pertaining to the same message block will follow.

3.4 *Messages used with the global call reference*

Table 3-50/Q.931 summarizes the messages which may use the global call reference defined in § 4.3.

TABLE 3-50/Q.931

Messages used with the global call reference

	Reference
Messages:	
RESTART	3.4.1
RESTART ACKNOWLEDGE	3.4.2
STATUS	3.4.3

3.4.1 *Restart*

This message is sent by the user or the network to request the recipient to restart (i.e., return to idle condition) the indicated channel(s) or interface. See Table 3-51/Q.931.

TABLE 3-51/Q.931

RESTART message content

Message type: RESTART
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M (Note 1)	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Channel identification	4.5	both	O (Note 2)	2 - *
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 3)	Note 4
Restart indicator	4.5	both	M	3

Note 1 – This message is sent with the global call reference defined in § 4.3.

Note 2 – Included when necessary to indicate the particular channel(s) to be restarted.

Note 3 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 4 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

3.4.2 *Restart acknowledge*

This message is sent to acknowledge the receipt of a RESTART message and to indicate that the requested restart is complete. See Table 3-52/Q.931.

TABLE 3-52/Q.931

RESTART ACKNOWLEDGE message content

Message type: RESTART ACKNOWLEDGE
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M (Note 1)	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Channel identification	4.5	both	O (Note 2)	2 - *
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 3)	Note 4
Restart indicator	4.5	both	M	3

Note 1 – This message is sent with the global call reference defined in § 4.3.

Note 2 – Included when necessary to indicate the particular channel(s) which have been restarted.

Note 3 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 4 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

3.4.3 *Status*

This message is sent by the user or the network at any time during a call to report certain error conditions listed in § 5.8. See Table 3-53/Q.931.

TABLE 3-53/Q.931

STATUS message content

Message type: STATUS
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3	both	M (Note 1)	2 - *
Message type	4.4	both	M	1
Cause	4.5	both	M	4 - 32
Call state	4.5	both	M	3
Display	4.5	n → u	O (Note 2)	Note 3

Note 1 – This message may be sent with the global call reference defined in § 4.3.

Note 2 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 3 – The minimum length is 2 octets; the maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

4 General message format and information elements coding

The figures and text in this section describe message contents. Within each octet, the bit designated "bit 1" is transmitted first, followed by bits 2, 3, 4, etc. Similarly, the octet shown at the top of each figure is sent first.

4.1 *Overview*

Within this protocol, every message shall consist of the following parts:

a) protocol discriminator;

b) call reference;

c) message type;

d) other information elements, as required.

Information elements a), b) and c) are common to all the messages and shall always be present, while information element d) is specific to each message type.

This organization is illustrated in the example shown in Figure 4-1/Q.931.

Bits

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
Protocol discriminator								
0	0	0	0	Length of call reference value (in octets)				2
Call reference value								3
0	Message type							etc.
Other information elements as required								

FIGURE 4-1/Q.931

General message organization example

A particular message may contain more information than a particular (user or network) equipment needs or can understand. All equipment should be able to ignore any extra information, present in a message, which is not required for the proper operation of that equipment. For example, a user may ignore the calling party number if that number is of no interest to the user when a SETUP message is received.

Unless specified otherwise, a particular information element may be present only once in a given message.

The term "default" implies that the value defined should be used in the absence of any assignment, or the negotiation of alternative values.

When a field, such as the call reference value, extends over more than one octet, the order of bit values progressively decreases as the octet number increases. The least significant bit of the field is represented by the lowest numbered bit of the highest-numbered octet of the field.

4.2 *Protocol discriminator*

The purpose of the protocol discriminator is to distinguish messages for user-network call control from other messages (to be defined) within this Recommendation. It also distinguishes messages of this Recommendation from those OSI network layer protocol units which are coded to other CCITT Recommendations and other standards.

Note – A protocol discriminator field is also included in the user-user information element to indicate the user protocol within the user information; however, the coding of the protocol discrimination in this case is shown in § 4.5.29.

The protocol discriminator is the first part of every message. The protocol discriminator is coded according to Table 4-1/Q.931.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octet
Q.931 (I.451) user-network call control messages								
0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1
protocol discriminator								

FIGURE 4-2/Q.931

Protocol discriminator

TABLE 4-1/Q.931

Protocol discriminator

	Bits 8 7 6 5	4 3 2 1	
	0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0	
through	0 0 0 0	0 1 1 1	assigned in § 4.5.29; not available for use in the message protocol discriminator.
	0 0 0 0	1 0 0 0	Q.931/(I.451) user-network call control messages
	0 0 0 1	0 0 0 0	
through	0 0 1 1	1 1 1 1	reserved for other network layer or layer 3 protocols, including Recommendation X.25 (Note)
	0 1 0 0	0 0 0 0	
through	0 1 0 0	1 1 1 1	national use.
	0 1 0 1	0 0 0 0	
through	1 1 1 1	1 1 1 0	reserved for other network layer or layer 3 protocols, including Recommendation X.25 (Note)
			All other values are reserved.

Note – These values are reserved to discriminate these protocol discriminators from the first octet of a Rec. X.25 packet including general format identifier.

4.3 *Call reference*

The purpose of the call reference is to identify the call or facility registration/cancellation request at the local user-network interface to which the particular message applies. The call reference does not have end-to-end significance across ISDNs.

The call reference is the second part of every message. The call reference is coded as shown in Figure 4-3/Q.931. The length of the call reference value is indicated in octet 1, bits 1-4. The default maximum length of the call reference information element is three octets long. The actions taken by the receiver are based on the numerical value of the call reference and are independent of the length of the call reference information element.

At a minimum, all networks and users must be able to support a call reference value of one octet for a basic user-network interface, and a call reference value of two octets for a primary rate interface.

As a network option for a primary rate interface, the call reference value may be one octet also. In this case, a call reference value up to 127 may be sent in one or two octets.

The call reference information element includes the call reference value and the call reference flag.

Call reference values are assigned by the originating side of the interface for a call. These values are unique to the originating side only within a particular D-Channel layer two logical link connection. The call reference value is assigned at the beginning of a call and remains fixed for the lifetime of a call (except in the case of call suspension). After a call ends, or, after a successful suspension, the associated call reference value may be reassigned to a later call. Two identical call reference values on the same D-Channel layer two logical link connection may be used when each value pertains to a call originated at opposite ends of the link.

The call reference flag can take the values "0" or "1". The call reference flag is used to identify which end of the layer two logical link originated a call reference. The origination side always sets the call reference flag to "0". The destination side always sets the call reference flag to a "1".

Hence the call reference flag identifies who allocated the call reference value for this call and the only purpose of the call reference flag is to resolve simultaneous attempts to allocate the same call reference value.

Note 1 – The call reference information element containing a dummy call reference is one octet long and is coded "0000 0000". The use of the dummy call reference is specified in Recommendation Q.932.

Note 2 – The numerical value of the global call reference is zero. The equipment receiving a message containing the global call reference should interpret the message as pertaining to all call references associated with the appropriate data link connection identifier. See Figure 4-5/Q.931.

Bits

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	0	0	0	Length of call reference value (in octets)				1
flag	Call reference value							2 etc.

Call reference flag (octet 2)

bit

8
0 the message is sent *from* the side that originates the call reference.

1 the message is sent *to* the side that originates the call reference.

FIGURE 4-3/Q.931

Call reference information element

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octet
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
				Length of call reference value				

FIGURE 4-4/Q.931

Dummy call reference

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1
				Length of call reference value				
0/1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2
flag	Call reference value							

a) One octet call reference value.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
				Length of call reference value				
0/1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2
flag	Call reference value							
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	3

b) Two octet call reference value.

FIGURE 4-5/Q.931

Examples of the encoding for global call reference

4.4 *Message type*

The purpose of the message type is to identify the function of the message being sent.

The message type is the third part of every message. The message type is coded as shown in Figure 4-6/Q.931 and Table 4-2/Q.931.

Bit 8 is reserved for possible future use as an extension bit.

4.5 *Other information elements*

4.5.1 *Coding rules*

The coding of other information elements follows the coding rules described below. These rules are formulated to allow each equipment which processes a message to find information elements important to it, and yet remain ignorant of information elements not important to that equipment.

Two categories of information elements are defined:

a) single octet information elements (see Figure 4-7a) and b)/Q.931);

b) variable length information elements (see Figure 4-7c)/Q.931).

For the information elements listed below, the coding of the information element identifier bits is summarized in Table 4-3/Q.931.

The descriptions of the information elements below are organized in alphabetical order. However, there is a particular order of appearance for each information element in a message within each codeset (see § 4.5.2). The code values of the information element identifier for the variable length formats are assigned in ascending numerical order, according to the actual order of appearance of each information element in a message. This allows the receiving equipment to detect the presence or absence of a particular information element without scanning through an entire message.

Single octet information elements may appear at any point in the message. Two types of single octet information elements have been defined. Type 1 elements provide the information element identification in bit positions 7, 6, 5. The value "010" in these bit positions is reserved for Type 2 single octet elements.

Where the description of information elements in this Recommendation contains spare bits, these bits are indicated as being set to "0". In order to allow compatibility with future implementation, messages should not be rejected simply because a spare bit is set to "1".

The second octet of a variable length information element indicates the total length of the contents of that information element regardless of the coding of the first octet (i.e., the length starting with octet 3). It is the binary coding of the number of octets of the contents, with bit 1 as the least significant bit (2^0).

An optional variable-length information element may be present, but empty. For example, a SETUP message may contain a called party number information element, the content of which is of zero length. This should be interpreted by the receiver as equivalent to that information element being absent. Similarly, an absent information element should be interpreted be the receiver as equivalent to that information element being empty.

The following rules apply for the coding of variable length information elements (octets 3 etc.):

a) The first digit in the octet number identifies one octet or a group of octets.

b) Each octet group is a self contained entity. The internal structure of an octet group may be defined in alternative ways.

c) An octet group is formed by using some extension mechanism. The preferred extension mechanism is to extend an octet (N) through the next octet(s) (Na, Nb, etc.) by using bit 8 in each octet as an extension bit. The bit value "0" indicates that the octet continues through the next octet. The bit value "1" indicates that this octet is the last octet. If one octet (Nb) is present, also the preceding octets (N and Na) must be present.

   In the format descriptions appearing in § 4.5.5 etc., bit 8 is marked "0/1 ext" if another octet follows. Bit 8 is marked "1 ext" if this is the last octet in the extension domain.

   Additional octets may be defined later ("1 ext" changed to "0/1 ext") and equipments shall be prepared to receive such additional octets although the equipment need not be able to interpret or act upon the content of these octets.

d) In addition to the extension mechanism defined above, an octet (N) may be extended through the next octet(s) (N1, N2 etc.) by indications in bits 7-1 (of octet N).

e) The mechanisms in c) and d) may be combined.

f) Optional octets are marked with asterisks (*).

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octet
0	Message type							1

FIGURE 4-6/Q.931

Message type

TABLE 4-2/Q.931

Message types

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	escape to nationally specific message type; see Note.
0	0	0	-	-	-	-	-	*Call establishment message:*
			0	0	0	0	1	– ALERTING
			0	0	0	1	0	– CALL PROCEEDING
			0	0	1	1	1	– CONNECT
			0	1	1	1	1	– CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE
			0	0	0	1	1	– PROGRESS
			0	0	1	0	1	– SETUP
			0	1	1	0	1	– SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE
0	0	1	-	-	-	-	-	*Call information phase message:*
			0	0	1	1	0	– RESUME
			0	1	1	1	0	– RESUME ACKNOWLEDGE
			0	0	0	1	0	– RESUME REJECT
			0	0	1	0	1	– SUSPEND
			0	1	1	0	1	– SUSPEND ACKNOWLEDGE
			0	0	0	0	1	– SUSPEND REJECT
			0	0	0	0	0	– USER INFORMATION
0	1	0	-	-	-	-	-	*Call clearing messages:*
			0	0	1	0	1	– DISCONNECT
			0	1	1	0	1	– RELEASE
			1	1	0	1	0	– RELEASE COMPLETE
			0	0	1	1	0	– RESTART
			0	1	1	1	0	– RESTART ACKNOWLEDGE
0	1	1	-	-	-	-	-	*Miscellaneous messages:*
			0	0	0	0	0	– SEGMENT
			1	1	0	0	1	– CONGESTION CONTROL
			1	1	0	1	1	– INFORMATION
			0	0	0	1	0	– FACILITY
			0	1	1	1	0	– NOTIFY
			1	1	1	0	1	– STATUS
			1	0	1	0	1	– STATUS ENQUIRY

Note – When used, the message type is defined in the following octet(s), according to the national specification.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octet
1	Information element identifier			Contents of information element				1

a) Single octet information element format (type 1)

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octet
1	Information element identifier							1

b) Single octet information element format (type 2)

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octet
0	Information element identifier							1
Length of contents of information element (octets)								2
Contents of information element								3 etc.

c) Variable length information element format

FIGURE 4-7/Q.931

Formats of information elements

TABLEAU 4-3/Q.931

Information element identifier coding

Bits 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1		Section reference	Maximum length (octets) (Note 1)
1 : : : - - - -	*Single octet information elements:*		
0 0 0 - - - -	Reserved		
0 0 1 - - - -	Shift (Note 2)	4.5.3/4.5.4	1
0 1 0 0 0 0 0	More data	4.5.19	1
0 1 0 0 0 0 1	Sending complete	4.5.26	1
0 1 1 - - - -	Congestion level	4.5.14	1
1 0 1 - - - -	Repeat indicator	4.5.23	1
0 : : : : : : :	*Variable length information element:*		
0 0 0 0 0 0 0	Segmented message	4.5.25	
0 0 0 0 1 0 0	Bearer capability (Note 2)	4.5.5	13
0 0 0 1 0 0 0	Cause (Note 2)	4.5.12	32
0 0 1 0 0 0 0	Call identity	4.5.6	10
0 0 1 0 1 0 0	Call state	4.5.7	3
0 0 1 1 0 0 0	Channel identification (Note 2)	4.5.13	(Note 4)
0 0 1 1 1 0 0	Facility (Note 2)	4.6.2	(Note 4)
0 0 1 1 1 1 0	Progress indicator (Note 2)	4.5.22	4
0 1 0 0 0 0 0	Network-specific facilities (Note 2)	4.5.20	(Note 4)
0 1 0 0 1 1 1	Notification indicator	4.5.21	3
0 1 0 1 0 0 0	Display	4.5.15	34/82
0 1 0 1 0 0 1	Date/time	4.6.1	8
0 1 0 1 1 0 0	Keypad facility	4.5.17	34
0 1 1 0 1 0 0	Signal (Note 2)	4.5.27	3
0 1 1 0 1 1 0	Switchhook	4.6.5	3
0 1 1 1 0 0 0	Feature activation	4.6.3	4
0 1 1 1 0 0 1	Feature indication	4.6.4	5
1 0 0 0 0 0 0	Information rate	4.7.1	6
1 0 0 0 0 1 0	End-to-end transit delay	4.7.2	11
1 0 0 0 0 1 1	Transit delay selection and indication	4.7.7	5
1 0 0 0 1 0 0	Packet layer binary parameters	4.7.3	3
1 0 0 0 1 0 1	Packet layer window size	4.7.4	4
1 0 0 0 1 1 0	Packet size	4.7.5	4
1 1 0 1 1 0 0	Calling party number	4.5.10	(Note 4)
1 1 0 1 1 0 1	Calling party subaddress	4.5.11	23
1 1 1 0 0 0 0	Called party number	4.5.8	(Note 4)
1 1 1 0 0 0 1	Called party subaddress	4.5.9	23
1 1 1 0 1 0 0	Redirecting number	4.7.6	(Note 4)
1 1 1 1 0 0 0	Transit network selection (Note 2)	4.5.28	(Note 4)
1 1 1 1 0 0 1	Restart indicator	4.5.24	3
1 1 1 1 1 0 0	Low layer compatibility (Note 2)	4.5.18	16
1 1 1 1 1 0 1	High layer compatibility (Note 2)	4.5.16	5
1 1 1 1 1 1 0	User-user	4.5.29	35/131
1 1 1 1 1 1 1	Escape for extension (Note 3)		
All other values are reserved (Note 5)			

Notes to Table 4-3/Q.931

Note 1 – The length limits described for the variable length information elements take into account only the present CCITT standardized coding values. Future enhancements and expansions to this Recommendation will not be restricted to these limits.

Note 2 – This information element may be repeated.

Note 3 – This escape mechanism is limited to codesets 5, 6 and 7 (see § 4.5.2). When the escape for extension is used, the information element identifier is contained in octet-group 3 and the content of the information element follows in the subsequent octets as shown in Figure 4-8/Q.931.

Note 4 – The maximum length is network dependent.

Note 5 – The reserved values with bits 5-8 coded "0000" are for future information elements for which comprehension by the receiver is required (see § 5.8.7.1).

Bits

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
	Escape for extension							
0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Length of information element contents								2
1 ext	Information element identifier							3
Contents of information element								4 etc.

FIGURE 4-8/Q.931

Information element format using escape for extension

4.5.2 *Extensions of codesets*

There is a certain number of possible information element identifier values using the formatting rules described in § 4.5.1; 128 from the variable length information element format and at least 8 from the single octet information element format.

One value in the single octet format is specified for shift operations described below. One other value in both the single octet and variable format is reserved. This leaves at least 133 information element identifier values available for assignment.

It is possible to expand this structure to eight codesets of at least 133 information element identifier values each. One common value in the single octet format is employed in each codeset to facilitate shifting from one codeset to another. The contents of this Shift information element identifies the codeset to be used for the next information element or elements. The codeset in use at any given time is referred to as the "active codeset". By convention, codeset 0 is the initially active codeset.

Two codeset shifting procedures are supported: locking shift and non-locking shift.

Codeset 5 is reserved for information elements reserved for national use.

Codeset 6 is reserved for information elements specific to the local network (either public or private).

Codeset 7 is reserved for user-specific information elements.

The coding rules specified in § 4.5.1 shall apply for information elements belonging to any active codeset.

Transitions from one active codeset to another (i.e., by means of the locking shift procedure) may only be made to a codeset with a higher numerical value than the codeset being left.

An information element belonging to codesets 5, 6, or 7, may appear together with information elements belonging to codeset 0 (being the active codeset) by using the non-locking shift procedure (see § 4.5.4).

A user of network equipment shall have the capability to recognize a Shift information element and to determine the length of the following information element, although the equipment need not be able to interpret and act upon the content of the information element. This enables the equipment to determine the start of a subsequent information element.

Codeset 7 information element shall be handled according to the procedures for unrecognized information elements (see § 5.8.7.1) by the first exchange in the local network, unless allowed by a future service definition, bilateral agreement, or provision is made to support this across the local network for a specific user.

Codeset 6 is reserved for information elements specific to the local network (either public or private). As such they do not have significance across the boundaries between local networks, or across a national, or international boundary. Therefore, codeset 6 information elements shall be handled according to the procedures for unrecognized information elements (see § 5.8.7.1) beyond local network boundary, unless allowed by bilateral agreement.

Codeset 5 is reserved for information elements reserved for national use. As such they do not have significance across an international boundary. Therefore, codeset 5 information elements shall be handled according to the procedures for unrecognized information elements (see § 5.8.7.1) at the first exchange beyond the international boundary, unless there are bilateral agreements to the contrary.

4.5.3 *Locking shift procedure*

The locking shift procedure employs an information element to indicate the new active codeset. The specified codeset remains active until another locking shift information element is encountered which specifies the use of another codeset. For example, codeset 0 is active at the start of message content analysis. If a locking shift to codeset 5 is encountered, the next information elements will be interpreted according to the information element identifiers assigned in codeset 5, until another shift information element is encountered.

This procedure is used only to shift to a higher order codeset than the one being left.

The locking shift is valid only within that message which contains the locking Shift information element. At the start of every message content analysis, the active codeset is codeset 0.

The locking Shift information element uses the single octet information element format and coding shown in Figure 4-9/Q.931 and Table 4-4/Q.931.

Bits

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octet
1	0	Shift 0 identifier	1	0	New codeset identification			1

↑
"0" in this position indicates locking shift

FIGURE 4-9/Q.931

Locking Shift information element

TABLE 4-4/Q.931

Locking Shift information element

Codeset identification (bits 3 to 1):

Bits 3 2 1	
0 0 0	not applicable
0 0 1 to 1 0 0	reserved
1 0 1	codeset 5: information elements for national use
1 1 0	codeset 6: information elements specific to the local network (either public or private)
1 1 1	codeset 7: user-specific information elements

4.5.4 *Non-locking shift procedure*

The non-locking shift procedure provides a temporary shift to the specified lower or higher codeset. The non-locking shift procedure uses a single octet information element to indicate the codeset to be used to interpret the next single information element. After the interpretation of the next single information element, the active codeset is again used for interpreting any following information elements. For example, codeset 0 is active at the beginning of message content analysis. If a non-locking shift to codeset 6 is encountered, only the next information element is interpreted according to the information element identifiers assigned in codeset 6. After this information element is interpreted, codeset 0 will again be used to interpret the following information elements. A non-locking Shift information element indicating the current codeset shall not be regarded as an error.

A locking Shift information element shall not follow directly on a non-locking Shift information element. If this combination is received, it shall be interpreted as though a locking Shift information element only had been received.

The non-locking Shift information element uses the single octet information element format and coding shown in Figure 4-10/Q.931 and Table 4-5/Q.931.

Bits

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octet
1	0 Shift identifier	0	1	1	Temporary codeset identification			1

↑
"1" in this position indicates
non-locking shift

FIGURE 4-10/Q.931

Non-locking Shift information element

TABLE 4-5/Q.931

Non-locking Shift information element

Codeset identification (bits 3 to 1):

Bits 3 2 1	
0 0 0	Codeset 0 (initially active): Q.931 information elements
0 0 1 to 1 0 0	reserved
1 0 1	codeset 5: information elements for national use
1 1 0	codeset 6: information elements specific to the local network (either public or private)
1 1 1	codeset 7: user-specific information elements

4.5.5 *Bearer capability*

The purpose of the Bearer capability information element is to indicate a requested Recommendation I.231 [6] bearer service to be provided by the network. It contains only information which *may* be used by the network (see Annex L). The use of the bearer capability information element in relation to compatibility checking is described in Annex B.

The Bearer capability information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-11/Q.931 and Table 4-6/Q.931.

Examples of the coding of the Bearer capability information element is shown in Annex H.

No default bearer capability may be assumed by the absence of this information element.

The maximum length of this information element is 13 octets when CCITT standard coding is used.

Note – Future extensions to the codings of the Bearer capability information element should not be in conflict with the currently defined coding of the Low layer compatibility information element (see § 4.5.18).

4.5.6 *Call identity*

The purpose of the Call identity information element is to identify the suspended call. The call identity provided by the user is guaranteed by the network to be unique over the user-network interface on which the user resides. The call identity is assigned at the start of the call suspension, and is available for re-use after the resume procedure has completed successfully.

The Call identity information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-12/Q.931.

The default maximum length of this information element is ten octets.

4.5.7 *Call state*

The purpose of the Call state information element is to describe the current status of a call, (see § 2.1) or an access connection (see § 2.2) or a global interface state (see § 2.4).

The Call state information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-13/Q.931 and Table 4-7/Q.931.

The maximum length of this information element is three octets when CCITT standard coding is used.

4.5.8 *Called party number*

The purpose of the Called party number information element is to identify the called party of a call.

The Called party number information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-14/Q.931 and Table 4-8/Q.931.

The maximum length of this information element is network dependent.

4.5.9 *Called party subaddress*

The purpose of the Called party subaddress information element is to identify the subaddress of the called party of a call. For the definition of subaddress see Recommendation I.330 [18].

The Called party subaddress is coded as shown in Figure 4-15/Q.931 and Table 4-9/Q.931.

The maximum length of this information element is 23 octets.

Bits

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
	Bearer capability							
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1
	Information element identifier							
Length of the bearer capability contents								2
1 ext	Coding standard		Information transfer capability					3
0/1 ext	Transfer mode		Information transfer rate					4
0/1 ext	Structure			Configuration		Establishment		4a* (Note 1)
1 ext	Symmetry		Information transfer rate (destination → origination)					4b* (Note 1)
0/1 ext	0 Layer 1 ident.	1	User information layer 1 protocol					5*
0/1 ext	Synch./ asynch.	Negot.	User rate					5a* (Note 4)
0/1 ext	Intermediate rate		NIC on Tx	NIC on Rx	Flow control on Tx	Flow control on Rx	0 Spare	5b* (Note 2)
0/1 ext	Hdr/ no Hdr	Multi frame support	Mode	LLI negot.	Assignor/ assignee	In-band/ out-band negot.	0 Spare	5b* (Note 3)
0/1 ext	Number of stop bits		Number of data bits		Parity			5c* (Note 4)
1 ext	Duplex mode	Modem type						5d* (Note 4)
1 ext	1 Layer 2 ident.	0	User information layer 2 protocol					6*
1 ext	1 Layer 3 ident.	1	User information layer 3 protocol					7*

Note 1 – If default values are used for all fields of octets 4a and 4b, then these octets shall not be included. If default values are used for all fields of octet 4b, but not for one or more fields of octet 4a, then only octet 4a shall be included. Otherwise, both octets 4a and 4b shall be included.

Note 2 – This octet may be present only if octet 5 indicates CCITT standardized rate adaption V.110 [7]/X.30 [8].

Note 3 – This octet is present only if octet 5 indicates CCITT standardized rate adaption V.120 [9].

Note 4 – This octet may be present if octet 5 indicates either of the CCITT standardized rate adoptions V.110/X.30 or V.120 [9].

FIGURE 4-11/Q.931

Bearer capability information element

TABLE 4-6/Q.931 (Sheet 1 of 8)

Bearer capability information element

Coding standard (octet 3):

Bits 7 6	
0 0	CCITT standardized coding as described below
0 1	reserved for other international standards (Note)
1 0	national standard (Note)
1 1	standard defined for the network (either public or private) present on the network side of the interface (Note)

Note – These other coding standards should be used only when the desired bearer capability can not be represented with the CCITT-standardized coding.

Information transfer capability (octet 3)

Bits 5 4 3 2 1	
0 0 0 0 0	speech
0 1 0 0 0	unrestricted digital information
0 1 0 0 1	restricted digital information
1 0 0 0 0	3.1 kHz audio
1 0 0 0 1	7 kHz audio
1 1 0 0 0	Video

All other values are reserved.

Transfer mode (octet 4)

Bits 7 6	
0 0	circuit mode
1 0	packet-mode

All other values are reserved.

Bearer capability information element

Information transfer rate (octets 4 and 4b, bits 5 to 1)

Bits 5	4	3	2	1	*Circuit mode*	*Packet-mode*
0	0	0	0	0	–	This code shall be used for packet mode calls
1	0	0	0	0	64 kbit/s	–
1	0	0	0	1	2 × 64 kbit/s	–
1	0	0	1	1	384 kbit/s	–
1	0	1	0	1	1536 kbit/s	–
1	0	1	1	1	1920 kbit/s	–

All other values are reserved.

Note 1 – When octet 4b is omitted, the bearer capability is bidirectional symmetric at the information transfer rate specified in octet 4. When octet 4b is included, the information transfer rate in octet 4 refers to the origination → destination direction.

Note 2 – When the information transfer rate 2 × 64 kbit/s is used, the coding of octets 3 and 4 refer to both 64 kbit/s channels.

Structure (octet 4a)

Bits 7	6	5	
0	0	0	default (see Note 1)
0	0	1	8 kHz integrity (Note 2)
1	0	0	service data unit integrity
1	1	1	unstructured

Note 1 – If octet 4a is omitted, or the structure field is coded "000", then the value of the structure attribute is according to the following:

Transfer mode	*Transfer capability*	*Structure*
circuit	speech	8 kHz integrity
circuit	unrestricted digital	8 kHz integrity
circuit	restricted digital	8 kHz integrity
circuit	audio	8 kHz integrity
circuit	video	8 kHz integrity
packet	unrestricted digital	service data unit integrity

Note 2 – When the information transfer rate 2 × 64 kbit/s is used, 8 kHz integrity with Restricted Differential Time Delay (RDTD) is offered.

TABLE 4-6/Q.931 (Sheet 3 of 8)

Bearer capability information element

Configuration (octet 4a)

Bits
4 3

0 0 point-to-point

All other values are reserved.

Note – If octet 4a is omitted, the configuration is assumed to be point-to-point.

Establishment (octet 4a)

Bits
2 1

0 0 demand

All other values are reserved.

Note – If octet 4a is omitted, the method of establishment is assumed to be "demand".

Symmetry (octet 4b)

Bits
7 6

0 0 bidirectional symmetric

All other values are reserved.

Note – If octet 4b is omitted, bidirectional symmetric is assumed.

Bearer capability information element

User information layer 1 protocol (octet 5)

Bits 5 4 3 2 1	
0 0 0 0 1	CCITT standardized rate adaption V.110/X.30. This implies the presence of octet 5a and optionally octets 5b, 5c and 5d as defined below.
0 0 0 1 0	Recommendation G.711 μ-law [10]
0 0 0 1 1	Recommendation G.711 A-law [10]
0 0 1 0 0	Recommendation G.721 [11] 32 kbit/s ADPCM and Recommendation I.460
0 0 1 0 1	Recommendations G.722 [12] and G.725 [35] 7 kHz audio
0 0 1 1 0	Recommendation H.261 [13] for 384 kbit/s video
0 0 1 1 1	Non-CCITT standardized rate adaption. This implies the presence of octet 5a and, optionally, octets 5b, 5c and 5d. The use of this code point indicates that the user rate specified in octet 5a is defined in accordance with the non-CCITT standardized rate adoption scheme. Additionally, octets 5b, 5c and 5d, if present, are defined consistent with the specified rate adoption.
0 1 0 0 0	CCITT standardized rate adaption V.120 [9]. This implies the presence of octets 5a and 5b as defined below, and optionally octets 5c and 5d.
0 1 0 0 1	CCITT standardized rate adaption X.31 [14] HDLC flag stuffing.

All other values are reserved.

Note – If the transfer mode is "circuit mode", and if the information transfer capability is "unrestricted digital information" or "restricted digital information", and if the user information layer 1 protocol is not to be identified to the network, octet 5 shall be omitted. If the transfer mode is packet mode, octet 5 may be omitted. Otherwise, octet 5 shall be present.

Synchronous/asynchronous (octet 5a)

Bit 7	
0	Synchronous
1	Asynchronous

Note – Octets 5b-5d may be omitted in case of synchronous user rates.

Negotiation (octet 5a)

Bit 6	
0	In-band negotiation not possible
1	In-band negotiation possible

Note – See Recommendations V.110 [7] and X.30 [8].

Bearer capability information element

User rate (octet 5a)

Bits 5	4	3	2	1	
0	0	0	0	0	rate is indicated by E-bits specified in Recommendation I.460 [15]
0	0	0	0	1	0.6 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 [16] and X.1 [17]
0	0	0	1	0	1.2 kbit/s Recommendation V.6
0	0	0	1	1	2.4 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 and X.1
0	0	1	0	0	3.6 kbit/s Recommendation V.6
0	0	1	0	1	4.8 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 and X.1
0	0	1	1	0	7.2 kbit/s Recommendation V.6
0	0	1	1	1	8 kbit/s Recommendation I.460
0	1	0	0	0	9.6 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 and X.1
0	1	0	0	1	14.4 kbit/s Recommendation V.6
0	1	0	1	0	16 kbit/s Recommendation I.460
0	1	0	1	1	19.2 kbit/s Recommendation V.6
0	1	1	0	0	32 kbit/s Recommendation I.460
0	1	1	1	0	48 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 and X.1
0	1	1	1	1	56 kbit/s Recommendation V.6
1	0	1	0	1	0.1345 kbit/s Recommendation X.1
1	0	1	1	0	0.100 kbit/s Recommendation X.1
1	0	1	1	1	0.075/1.2 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 and X.1 (Note)
1	1	0	0	0	1.2/0.075 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 and X.1 (Note)
1	1	0	0	1	0.050 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 and X.1
1	1	0	1	0	0.075 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 and X.1
1	1	0	1	1	0.110 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 and X.1
1	1	1	0	0	0.150 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 and X.1
1	1	1	0	1	0.200 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 and X.1
1	1	1	1	0	0.300 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 and X.1
1	1	1	1	1	12 kbit/s Recommendation V.6

All other values are reserved.

Note – The first rate is the transmit rate in the forward direction of the call. The second rate is the transmit rate in the backward direction of the call.

Octet 5b for V.110/X.30 rate adaption

Intermediate rate (octet 5b)

Bits 7	6	
0	0	Not used
0	1	8 kbit/s
1	0	16 kbit/s
1	1	32 kbit/s

Network independent clock (NIC) on transmission (Tx) (octet 5b) (Note 1)

Bit 5	
0	Not required to send data with network independent clock
1	Required to send data with network independent clock

Note 1 – Refers to transmission in the forward direction of the call.
Note 2 – See Recommendations V.110 and X.30.

Bearer capability information element

Network independent clock (NIC) on reception (Rx) (octet 5b) (Note 1)

Bit 4	
0	Cannot accept data with network independent clock (i.e., sender does not support this optional procedure)
1	Can accept data with network independent clock (i.e., sender does support this optional procedure)

Note 1 – Refers to transmission in the backward direction of the call.
Note 2 – See Recommendations V.110 [7] and X.30 [8].

Flow control on transmission (Tx) (octet 5b) (Note 1)

Bit 3	
0	Not required to send data with flow control mechanism
1	Required to send data with flow control mechanism

Note 1 – Refers to transmission in the forward direction of the call
Note 2 – See Recommendations V.110 and X.30.

Flow control on reception (Rx) (octet 5b) (Note 1)

Bit 2	
0	Cannot accept data with flow control mechanism (i.e., sender does not support this optional procedure)
1	Can accept data with flow control mechanism (i.e., sender does support this optional procedure)

Note 1 – Refers to transmission in the backward direction of the call
Note 2 – See Recommendations V.110 and X.30.

Octet 5b for V.120 [9] rate adaption

Rate adaption header/no header (octet 5b)

Bit 7	
0	rate adaption header not included
1	rate adaption header included

Multiple frame establishment support in data link (octet 5b)

Bit 6	
0	Multiple frame establishment not supported. Only UI frames allowed.
1	Multiple frame establishment supported.

Mode of operation (octet 5b)

Bit 5	
0	Bit transparent mode of operation
1	Protocol sensitive mode of operation

Logical link identifier negotiation (octet 5b)

Bit 4	
0	Default, LLI = 256 only
1	Full protocol negotiation (Note)

Note – A connection over which protocol negotiation will be executed is indicated in bit 2 of octet 5b.

TABLE 4-6/Q.931 (Sheet 7 of 8)

Bearer capability information element

Assignor/assignee (octet 5b)

Bit 3	
0	Message originator is "Default assignee"
1	Message originator is "Assignor only"

In-band/out-band negotiation (octet 5b)

Bit 2	
0	Negotiation is done with USER INFORMATION messages on a temporary signalling connection
1	Negotiation is done in-band using logical link zero.

Number of stop bits (octet 5c)

Bits 7	6	
0	0	Not used
0	1	1 bit
1	0	1.5 bits
1	1	2 bits

Number of data bits excluding parity Bit if present (octet 5c)

Bits 5	4	
0	0	Not used
0	1	5 bits
1	0	7 bits
1	1	8 bits

TABLE 4-6/Q.931 (Sheet 8 of 8)

Bearer capability information element

Parity information (octet 5c)

Bits 3	2	1	
0	0	0	Odd
0	1	0	Even
0	1	1	None
1	0	0	Forced to 0
1	0	1	Forced to 1

All other values are reserved.

Duplex mode (octet 5d)

Bit 7	
0	Half duplex
1	Full duplex

Modem type (octet 5d)

Bits 6-1 coded according to network specific rules.

User information layer 2 protocol (octet 6)

Bits 5	4	3	2	1	
0	0	0	1	0	Recommendation Q.921 (I.441) [3]
0	0	1	1	0	Recommendation X.25 [5], link layer

All other values are reserved.

Note – If the transfer mode is "packet mode", octet 6 shall be present. For other cases, if the user layer 2 protocol is to be identified to the network, then octet 6 shall be present; otherwise octet 6 shall be omitted.

User information layer 3 protocol (octet 7)

Bits 5	4	3	2	1	
0	0	0	1	0	Recommendation Q.931 (I.451)
0	0	1	1	0	Recommendation X.25, packet layer

All other values are reserved.

Note – If the user information layer 3 protocol is to be identified to the network, octet 7 shall be present; otherwise octet 7 shall be omitted.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
	Call identity							
0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1
	Information element identifier							
Length of call identity contents								2
Call identity (any bit pattern allowed e.g. IA5 characters)								3 etc.

FIGURE 4-12/Q.931

Call identity information element

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
	Call state							
0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	1
	Information element identifier							
Length of call state contents								2
Coding standard		Call state value / global interface state value (state value is coded in binary)						3

FIGURE 4-13/Q.931

Call state information element

TABLE 4-7/Q.931

Call state information element

Coding standard (octet 3)

Bits 8 7	
0 0	CCITT standardized coding, as described below
0 1	reserved for other international standards (Note)
1 0	national standard (Note)
1 1	standard defined for the network (either public or private) present on the network side of the interface (Note)

Note – These other coding standards should be used only when the desired call state can not be represented with the CCITT-standardized coding.

Call state value (octet 3)

Bits 6 5 4 3 2 1	*user state*	*network state*
0 0 0 0 0 0	U0 – Null	N0 – Null
0 0 0 0 0 1	U1 – Call initiated	N1 – Call initiated
0 0 0 0 1 0	U2 – Overlap sending	N2 – Overlap sending
0 0 0 0 1 1	U3 – Outgoing call proceeding	N3 – Outgoing call proceeding
0 0 0 1 0 0	U4 – Call delivered	N4 – Call delivered
0 0 0 1 1 0	U6 – Call present	N6 – Call present
0 0 0 1 1 1	U7 – Call received	N7 – Call received
0 0 1 0 0 0	U8 – Connect request	N8 – Connect request
0 0 1 0 0 1	U9 – Incoming call proceeding	N9 – Incoming call proceeding
0 0 1 0 1 0	U10 – Active	N10 – Active
0 0 1 0 1 1	U11 – Disconnect request	N11 – Disconnect request
0 0 1 1 0 0	U12 – Disconnect indication	N12 – Disconnect indication
0 0 1 1 1 1	U15 – Suspend request	N15 – Suspend request
0 1 0 0 0 1	U17 – Resume request	N17 – Resume request
0 1 0 0 1 1	U19 – Release request	N19 – Release request
0 1 0 1 1 0	– – – – – – –	N22 – Call abort
0 1 1 0 0 1	U25 – Overlap receiving	N25 – Overlap receiving

Global interface state value (octet 3)

Bits 6 5 4 3 2 1	*State*
0 0 0 0 0 0	REST 0 – null
1 1 1 1 0 1	REST 1 – restart request
1 1 1 1 1 0	REST 2 – restart

All other values are reserved.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="8">Bits</th><th></th></tr>
<tr><th>8</th><th>7</th><th>6</th><th>5</th><th>4</th><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th>Octets</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="7">Called party number
1 1 1 0 0 0 0
Information element identifier</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Length of called party number contents</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
ext</td><td colspan="3">Type of number</td><td colspan="4">Numbering plan identification</td><td>3</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="7">Number digits
(IA5 characters – see Note)</td><td>4
etc.</td></tr>
</table>

Note – The number digits appear in multiple octet 4's in the same order in which they would be entered, that is, the number digit which would be entered first is located in the first octet 4.

FIGURE 4-14/Q.931

Called party number information element

TABLE 4-8/Q.931

Called party number information element

Type of number (octet 3) (Note 1)

Bits 7 6 5	
0 0 0	unknown (Note 2)
0 0 1	international number (Note 3)
0 1 0	national number (Note 3)
0 1 1	network specific number (Note 4)
1 0 0	subscriber number (Note 3)
1 1 0	abbreviated number
1 1 1	reserved for extension

All other values are reserved.

Note 1 – For the definition of international, national and subscriber number, see Recommendation I.330 [18].

Note 2 – The type of number "unknown" is used when the user or the network has no knowledge of the type of number, e.g., international number, national number, etc. In this case the number digits field is organized according to the network dialling plan; e.g., prefix or escape digits might be present.

Note 3 – Prefix or escape digits shall not be included.

Note 4 – The type of number "network specific number" is used to indicate administration/service number specific to the serving network, e.g., used to access an operator.

Numbering plan identification (octet 3)

Numbering plan (applies for type of number = 000, 001, 010 and 100)

Eléments binaires 4 3 2 1	
0 0 0 0	unknown (Note)
0 0 0 1	ISDN/telephony numbering plan (Recommendation E.164 [19]/E.163 [20])
0 0 1 1	data numbering plan (Recommendation X.121 [21])
0 1 0 0	telex numbering plan (Recommendation F.69 [22])
1 0 0 0	national standard numbering plan
1 0 0 1	private numbering plan
1 1 1 1	reserved for extension

All other values are reserved.

Note – The numbering plan "unknown" is used when the user or the network has no knowledge of the numbering plan. In this case the number digits field is organized according to the network dialling plan; e.g., prefix or escape digits might be present.

Number digits (octets 4, etc.)

This field is coded with IA5 characters, according to the formats specified in the appropriate numbering/dialling plan.

<table>
<tr><td colspan="8">Bits</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td>Octets</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="7">Called party subaddress
1 1 1 0 0 0 1
Information element identifier</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Length of called party subaddress contents</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
ext</td><td colspan="3">Type of subaddress</td><td>odd/even
indicator</td><td colspan="3">0 0 0
Spare</td><td>3</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Subaddress information</td><td>4
etc.</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 4-15/Q.931

Called party subaddress information element

TABLE 4-9/Q.931

Called party subaddress information element

Type of subaddress (octet 3)

Bits

7 6 5	
0 0 0	NSAP(X.213 [23]/ISO 8348 AD2 [24])
0 1 0	User specified

All other values are reserved.

Odd/even indicator (octet 3)

Bit

4	
0	even number of address signals
1	odd number of address signals

Note – The odd/even indicator is used when the type of subaddress is "user specified" and the coding is BCD.

Subaddress information (octet 4, etc.)

The NSAP X.213/ISO8348AD2 address, shall be formatted as specified by octet 4 which contains the Authority and Format Identifier (AFI). The encoding is made according to the "preferred binary encoding" as defined in X.213/ISO 8348 AD2. For the definition of this type of subaddress, see Recommendation I.334 [25]. Coding examples are given in Annex H.

For user specified subaddress, this field is encoded according to the user specification, subject to a maximum length of 20 octets. When interworking with X.25 [5] networks BCD coding should be applied.

Note – It is recommended that users apply the NSAP subaddress type since this subaddress type allows the use of decimal, binary and IA5 characters in a standardized manner.

4.5.10 *Calling party number*

The purpose of the Calling party number information element is to identify the origin of a call.

The Calling party number information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-16/Q.931, and Table 4-10/Q.931. The maximum length of this information element is network dependent.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	Calling party number 1	1	0	1	1	0	0 Information element identifier	1
Length of calling party number contents								2
0/1 ext	Type of number			Numbering plan identification				3
1 ext	Presentation indicator		0	0 Spare	0	Screening indicator		3a
0	Number digits (IA5 characters)							4

FIGURE 4-16/Q.931

Calling party number information element

TABLE 4-10/Q.931 (Sheet 1 of 2)

Calling party number information element

Type of number (octet 3) (Note 1)

Bits 7 6 5	
0 0 0	unknown (Note 2)
0 0 1	international number (Note 3)
0 1 0	national number (Note 3)
0 1 1	network specific number (Note 4)
1 0 0	subscriber number (Note 3)
1 1 0	abbreviated number
1 1 1	reserved for extension

All other values are reserved.

Note 1 – For the definition of international, national and subscriber number, see Recommendation I.330 [18].

Note 2 – The type of number "unknown" is used when the user or the network has no knowledge of the type of number, e.g., international number, national number, etc. In this case the number digits field is organized according to the network dialling plan; e.g., prefix or escape digits might be present.

Note 3 – Prefix or escape digits shall not be included.

Note 4 – The type of number "network specific number" is used to indicate administration/service number specific to the serving network, e.g., used to access an operator.

Numbering plan identification (octet 3)

Numbering plan (applies for type of number = 000, 001, 010 and 100)

Bits 4 3 2 1	
0 0 0 0	unknown (Note)
0 0 0 1	ISDN/telephony numbering plan (Recommendation E.164 [19]/E.163 [20])
0 0 1 1	data numbering plan (Recommendation X.121 [21])
0 1 0 0	telex numbering plan (Recommendation F.69 [22])
1 0 0 0	national standard numbering plan
1 0 0 1	private numbering plan
1 1 1 1	reserved for extension

All other values are reserved.

Note – The numbering plan "unknown" is used when the user or the network has no knowledge of the numbering plan. In this case the number digits field is organized according to the network dialling plan; e.g., prefix or escape digits might be present.

TABLE 4-10/Q.931 (Sheet 2 of 2)

Calling party number information element

Presentation indicator (octet 3a)

Bits 7 6	
0 0	Presentation allowed
0 1	Presentation restricted
1 0	Number not available due to interworking
1 1	Reserved

Note – At the originating user-network interface, the presentation indicator is used for indicating the intention of the calling user for the presentation of the calling party number to the called user. This may also be requested on a subscription basis. If octet 3a is omitted, and the network does not support subscription information for the calling party number information restrictions, the value "00 – presentation allowed" is assumed.

Screening indicator (octet 3a)

Bits 2 1	
0 0	User-provided, not screened
0 1	User-provided, verified and passed
1 0	User-provided, verified and failed
1 1	Network provided

Note – If octet 3a is omitted, "00 – User provided not screened" is assumed.

Number digits (octets 4, etc.)

This field is coded with IA5 characters, according to the formats specified in the appropriate numbering/dialling plan.

4.5.11 *Calling party subaddress*

The purpose of the Calling party subaddress is to identify a subaddress associated with the origin of a call. For the definition of subaddress, see Recommendation I.330.

The Calling party subaddress information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-17/Q.931 and Table 4-11/Q.931.

The maximum length of this information element is 23 octets.

Bits

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	Calling party subaddress 1	1	0	1	1	0	1 Information element identifier	1
Length of calling party subaddress contents								2
1 ext	Type of subaddress			odd/even indicator	0	0 Spare	0	3
Subaddress information								4 etc.

FIGURE 4-17/Q.931

Calling party subaddress information element

TABLE 4-11/Q.931

Calling party subaddress information element

Type of subaddress (octet 3)

Bits 7 6 5	
0 0 0	NSAP (X.213 [23]/ISO 8348 AD2 [24])
0 1 0	User specified

All other values are reserved.

Odd/even indicator (octet 3)

Bit 4	
0	even number of address signals
1	odd number of address signals

Note – The odd/even indicator is used when the type of subaddress is "user specified" and the coding is BCD.

Subaddress information (octet 4, etc.)

The NSAP X.213/ISO8348AD2 address, shall be formatted as specified by octet 4 which contains the Authority and Format Identifier (AFI). The encoding is made according to the "preferred binary encoding" as defined in X.213/ISO 8348 AD2. For the definition of this type of subaddress, see Recommendation I.334 [25]. Coding examples are given in Annex H.

For user specified subaddress, this field is encoded according to the user specification, subject to a maximum length of 20 octets. When interworking with X.25 [5] networks BCD coding should be applied.

Note – It is recommended that users apply the NSAP subaddress type since this subaddress type allows the use of decimal, binary and IA5 characters in a standardized manner.

4.5.12 *Cause*

The purpose of the Cause information element is to describe the reason for generating certain messages, to provide diagnostic information in the event of procedural errors and to indicate the location of the cause originator.

The Cause information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-18/Q.931 and Tables 4-12/Q.931 and 4-13/Q.931. The maximum length of this information element is 32 octets.

The Cause information element and diagnostic may be repeated in a message, e.g., to report multiple errors associated with a single call but only one cause value is transferred to the remote user through the network.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	Cause 0	0	0	1	0	0	0 Information element identifier	1
Length of cause contents								2
0/1 ext	Coding standard		0 Spare	Location				3
1 ext	Recommendation							3a* (Note)
1 ext	Cause value							4
Diagnostic(s) (if any)								5*

Note – If the default value applies for the Recommendation field octet 3a shall be omitted.

FIGURE 4-18/Q.931

Cause information element

TABLE 4-12/Q.931 (Sheet 1 of 2)

Cause information element

Coding standard (octet 3)

Bits 7 6	
0 0	CCITT standardized coding, as described below
0 1	reserved for other international standards (Note)
1 0	national standard (Note)
1 1	standard specific to identified location (Note)

Note – These other coding standards should be used only when the desired cause can not be represented with the CCITT-standardized coding.

Location (octet 3)

Bits 4 3 2 1	
0 0 0 0	user
0 0 0 1	private network serving the local user
0 0 1 0	public network serving the local user
0 0 1 1	transit network
0 1 0 0	public network serving the remote user
0 1 0 1	private network serving the remote user
0 1 1 1	international network
1 0 1 0	network beyond interworking point

All other values are reserved.

Note 1 – Depending on the location of the users, the local public network and remote public network may be the same network.

Note 2 – Examples of location values to be used for various busy/congestion conditions appear in Annex J.

Recommendation (octet 3a) (Note 1)

Bits 7 6 5 4 3 2 1	
0 0 0 0 0 0 0	Q.931 (Note 2)
0 0 0 0 0 1 1	X.21 [26]
0 0 0 0 1 0 0	X.25 [5]

All other values are reserved.

Note 1 – If octet 3a is omitted, Recommendation Q.931 is assumed.

Note 2 – This value is used only when octet 3a is extended and the cause in octet 4 is from Table 4-13/Q.931.

TABLE 4-12/Q.931 (Sheet 2 of 2)

Cause information element

Cause value (octet 4)

The cause value is divided in two fields, a class (bits 5 through 7) and a value within the class (bits 1 through 4).

The class indicates the general nature of the event.

Class (000) : normal event
Class (001) : normal event
Class (010) : resource unavailable
Class (011) : service or option not available
Class (100) : service or option not implemented
Class (101) : invalid message (e.g. parameter out of range)
Class (110) : protocol error (e.g. unknown message)
Class (111) : interworking

The cause values are listed in Table 4-13/Q.931 below, and defined in Annex G and Appendix I.

Diagnostics (octet 5)

Diagnostic information is not available for every cause, see Table 4-13/Q.931 below. The inclusion of diagnostics is optional. When available the coding of diagnostic(s) is the same as for the corresponding information element in § 4.

TABLE 4-13/Q.931 (Sheet 1 of 2)

Cause information element

Cause value: Class 7 6 5	Cause value: Value 4 3 2 1	Cause number	Cause	Diagnostics
0 0 0	0 0 0 1	1.	Unallocated (unassigned) number	Note 12
0 0 0	0 0 1 0	2.	No route to specified transit network	Transit network identity (Note 11)
0 0 0	0 0 1 1	3.	No route to destination	Note 12
0 0 0	0 1 1 0	6.	Channel unacceptable	–
0 0 0	0 1 1 1	7.	Call awarded and being delivered in an established channel	–
0 0 1	0 0 0 0	16.	Normal call clearing	Note 12
0 0 1	0 0 0 1	17.	User busy	–
0 0 1	0 0 1 0	18.	No user responding	–
0 0 1	0 0 1 1	19.	No answer from user (user alerted)	–
0 0 1	0 1 0 1	21.	Call rejected	Note 12. User supplied diagnostic (Note 4)
0 0 1	0 1 1 0	22.	Number changed	New destination (Note 5)
0 0 1	1 0 1 0	26.	Non-selected user clearing	–
0 0 1	1 0 1 1	27.	Destination out of order	–
0 0 1	1 1 0 0	28.	Invalid number format	–
0 0 1	1 1 0 1	29.	Facility rejected	Facility identification (Note 1)
0 0 1	1 1 1 0	30.	Response to STATUS ENQUIRY	–
0 0 1	1 1 1 1	31.	Normal, unspecified	–
0 1 0	0 0 1 0	34.	No circuit/channel available	–
0 1 0	0 1 1 0	38.	Network out of order	–
0 1 0	1 0 0 1	41.	Temporary failure	–
0 1 0	1 0 1 0	42.	Switching equipment congestion	–
0 1 0	1 0 1 1	43.	Access information discarded	Discarded information element identifier(s) (Note 6)
0 1 0	1 1 0 0	44.	Requested circuit/channel not available	–
0 1 0	1 1 1 1	47.	Resources unavailable, unspecified	–
0 1 1	0 0 0 1	49.	Quality of service unavailable	Note 12
0 1 1	0 0 1 0	50.	Requested facility not subscribed	Facility identification (Note 1)
0 1 1	1 0 0 1	57.	Bearer capability not authorized	Note 3
0 1 1	1 0 1 0	58.	Bearer capability not presently available	Note 3
0 1 1	1 1 1 1	63.	Service or option not available, unspecified	–

TABLE 4-13/Q.931 (Sheet 2 of 2)

Cause information element

Cause value		Cause number	Cause	Diagnostics
Class	Value			
7 6 5	4 3 2 1			
1 0 0	0 0 0 1	65.	Bearer capability not implemented	Note 3
1 0 0	0 0 1 0	66.	Channel type not implemented	Channel type (Note 7)
1 0 0	0 1 0 1	69.	Requested facility not implemented	Facility identification (Note 1)
1 0 0	0 1 1 0	70.	Only restricted digital information bearer capability is available	–
1 0 0	1 1 1 1	79.	Service or option not implemented, unspecified	–
1 0 1	0 0 0 1	81.	Invalid call reference value	–
1 0 1	0 0 1 0	82.	Identified channel does not exist	Channel identity
1 0 1	0 0 1 1	83.	A suspended call exists, but this call identity does not	–
1 0 1	0 1 0 0	84.	Call identity in use	–
1 0 1	0 1 0 1	85.	No call suspended	–
1 0 1	0 1 1 0	86.	Call having the requested call identity has been cleared	Clearing cause
1 0 1	1 0 0 0	88.	Incompatible destination	Incompatible parameter (Note 2)
1 0 1	1 0 1 1	91.	Invalid transit network selection	–
1 0 1	1 1 1 1	95.	Invalid message, unspecified	–
1 1 0	0 0 0 0	96.	Mandatory information element is missing	Information element identifier(s) (Note 6)
1 1 0	0 0 0 1	97.	Message type non-existent or not implemented	Message type
1 1 0	0 0 1 0	98.	Message not compatible with call state or message type non-existent or not implemented	Message type
1 1 0	0 0 1 1	99.	Information element non-existent or not implemented	Information element identifier(s) (Notes 6, 8)
1 1 0	0 1 0 0	100.	Invalid information element contents	Information element identifier(s) (Note 6)
1 1 0	0 1 0 1	101.	Message not compatible with call state	Message type
1 1 0	0 1 1 0	102.	Recovery on timer expiry	Timer number (Note 9)
1 1 0	1 1 1 1	111.	Protocol error, unspecified	–
1 1 1	1 1 1 1	127.	Interworking, unspecified	–

All other values are reserved.

Notes to Table 4-13/Q.931

Note 1 – The coding of facility identification is network dependent.

Note 2 – Incompatible parameter is composed of incompatible information element identifier.

Note 3 – The format of the diagnostic field for causes number 57, 58 and 65 is as shown in Figure 4-19/Q.931 and Table 4-14/Q.931.

Note 4 – User supplied diagnostics field is encoded according to the user specification, subject to the maximum length of the cause information element. The coding of user supplied diagnostics should be made in such a way that it does not conflict with the coding described in Note 12 below.

Note 5 – New destination is formatted as the called party number information element, including information element identifier. Transit network selection may also be included.

Note 6 – Locking and non-locking shift procedures described in § 4.5 are applied. In principle, information element identifiers are ordered in the same order as the information elements in the received message.

Note 7 – The following coding is used:
Bit 8: Extension bit
Bit 7-5: spare
Bit 4-1: according to the Table 4-15/Q.931 octet 3.2, channel type.

Note 8 – When only locking shift information element is included and no variable length information element identifier follows, it means that the codeset in the locking shift itself is not implemented.

Note 9 – The timer number is coded in IA5 characters, e.g., T308 is coded as "3" "0" "8". The following coding is used in each octet:
Bit 8: Spare "0"
Bit 7-1: IA5 character

Note 10 – Examples of cause values to be used for various busy/congestion conditions appear in Annex J.

Note 11 – The diagnostic field contains the entire transit network selection or network specific facilities information element, as applicable.

Note 12 – The following coding is used:
Bit 8: 1
Bit 7-3: 00000
Bit 2-1: Condition as follows:
00 – Unknown
01 – Permanent
10 – Transient.

Bits								
8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0/1 ext	Attribute number							5
0/1 ext	Rejected attribute							5a
1 ext	Available attribute							5b*

Note 1 – When diagnostics information is provided, octet 5 and 5a shall be present. Octet 5b is optional.

Note 2 – Octets 5-5b may be repeated to report multiple rejected attributes.

FIGURE 4-19/Q.931

Coding of the diagnostic field for causes number 57, 58 and 65

TABLE 4-14/Q.931 (Sheet 1 of 2)

Coding of the diagnostic field for causes number 57, 58 and 65

Attribute number (octet 5)

Bits 7	6	5	4	3	2	1	No.	
0	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	Information transfer capability
0	1	1	0	0	1	0	2	Information transfer mode
0	1	1	0	0	1	1	3	Information transfer rate
0	1	1	0	1	0	0	4	Structure
0	1	1	0	1	0	1	5	Configuration
0	1	1	0	1	1	0	6	Establishment
0	1	1	0	1	1	1	7	Symmetry
0	1	1	1	0	0	0	8	Information transfer rate (dest. → orig.)
0	1	1	1	0	0	1	9	Layer identification

TABLE 4-14/Q.931 (Sheet 2 of 2)

Coding of the diagnostic field for causes number 57, 58 and 65

Rejected attribute (octet 5a)

Attribute No.

1. *Information transfer capability:*

   Bits 7-6 : 00
   Bits 5-1 according to Table 4-6/Q.931, octet 3.

2. *Information transfer mode:*

   Bits 7-6 according to Table 4-6/Q.931, octet 4.
   Bits 5-1 : 00000

3. *Information transfer rate:*

   Bits 7-6 : 00
   Bits 5-1 according to Table 4-6/Q.931, octet 4.

4. *Structure:*

   Bits 7-5 according to Table 4-6/Q.931, octet 4a.
   Bits 4-1 : 0000

5. *Configuration:*

   Bits 7-5 : 000
   Bits 4-3 according to Table 4-6/Q.931, octet 4a.
   Bits 2-1 : 00

6. *Establishment:*

   Bits 7-3 : 00000
   Bits 2-1 according to Table 4-6/Q.931, octet 4a.

7. *Symmetry:*

   Bits 7-6 according to Table 4-6/Q.931, octet 4b.
   Bits 5-1 : 00000

8. *Information transfer rate (dest. → orig.):*

   Bits 7-6 : 00
   Bits 5-1 according to Table 4-6/Q.931, octet 4b.

9. *Layer identification:*

Bits 7	6		
0	1	(layer 1)	Bits 5-1 according to Table 4-6/Q.931, octet 5.
1	0	(layer 2)	Bits 5-1 according to Table 4-6/Q.931, octet 6.
1	1	(layer 3)	Bits 5-1 according to Table 4-6/Q.931, octet 7.

Available attributes (octet 5b)

The same coding as octet 5a.

4.5.13 *Channel identification*

The purpose of the Channel identification information element is to identify a channel within the interface(s) controlled by these signalling procedures.

The Channel identification information element is coded as shown in Figures 4-20/Q.931 and 4-21/Q.931 and Table 4-15/Q.931. The Channel identification information element may be repeated in a message; e.g., to list several acceptable channels during channel negotiation.

Examples of the coding of the Channel identification information element is shown in Annex H.

The default maximum length for this information element is network dependent.

<table>
<tr><td colspan="8">Bits</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td>Octets</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="7">Channel identification
0 0 1 1 0 0 0
Information element identifier</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Length of channel identification contents</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
ext</td><td>Int. id.
present</td><td>Int.
type</td><td>0
spare</td><td>Pref./
Excl.</td><td>D-channel
ind.</td><td colspan="2">Info. channel
selection</td><td>3</td></tr>
<tr><td>0/1
ext</td><td colspan="7">Interface identifier</td><td>3.1*
etc.
(Note 1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
ext</td><td colspan="2">Coding standard</td><td>Number/
Map</td><td colspan="4">Channel type/Map element type</td><td>3.2*
(Note 2)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Channel number/Slot map (Note 3)</td><td>3.3*
(Note 2)
(Note 4)</td></tr>
</table>

Note 1 – When the "interface identifier present" field in octet 3 indicates "interface implicitly identified" octet 3.1 is omitted. When octet 3.1 is present it may be extended by using the extension bit (bit 8).

Note 2 – When the "interface type" field in octet 3 indicates "basic interface", octets 3.2 and 3.3 are functionally replaced by the "information channel selection" field in octet 3, and thus omitted.

Note 3 – When channel number is used, bit 8 is reserved for use as an extension bit and is thus set to "1".

Note 4 – When channel number is used, this octet may be repeated to indicate multiple channels.

FIGURE 4-20/Q.931

Channel identification information element

TABLE 4-15/Q.931 (Sheet 1 of 2)

Channel identification information element

Interface identifier present (octet 3)

Bit
7

0 interface implicitly identified (Note)
1 interface explicitly identified in one or more octets, beginning with octet 3.1.

Note – The interface which includes the D-channel carrying this information element is indicated.

Interface type (octet 3)

Bit
6

0 basic interface
1 other interface; e.g., primary rate (Note)

Note – The type of interface should be understood because the interface is identified by the "interface identifier present" field (octet 3, bit 7) and the interface identifier field (octet 3.1), if any.

Preferred/Exclusive (octet 3)

Bit
4

0 indicated channel is preferred
1 exclusive; only the indicated channel is acceptable

Note – Preferred/exclusive has significance only for B-channel selection.

D-channel indicator (octet 3)

Bit
3

0 the channel identified is not the D-channel
1 the channel identified is the D-channel

Note – D-channel indication has significance in D-channel use. No other information affects D-channel use.

TABLE 4-15/Q.931 (Sheet 2 of 2)

Channel identification information element

Information channel selection (octet 3) (Note)

Bits 2 1	Basic interface	Other interfaces
0 0	no channel	no channel
0 1	B1 channel	as indicated in following octets
1 0	B2 channel	reserved
1 1	any channel	any channel

Note – The information channel selection does not apply to the D-channel

Interface identifier (octet 3.1)

Binary code assigned to the interface at subscription time. At subscription time, the binary code for the interface identifier will specify the number of octets to be used and the content of each octet.

Note – When the interface is implicitly identified, octet 3.1 is omitted.

Coding standard (octet 3.2)

Bits 7 6	
0 0	CCITT standardized coding as described below
0 1	reserved for other international standards (Note)
1 0	national standard (Note)
1 1	standard defined for the network (either public or private) present on the network side of the interface (Note).

Note – These other coding standards should be used only when the desired channel identification cannot be represented with the CCITT standardized coding.

Number/map (octet 3.2)

Bit 5	
0	channel is indicated by the number in the following octet
1	channel is indicated by the slot map (Map) in the following octet(s)

Channel type/map element type (octet 3.2)

Bits 4 3 2 1	
0 0 1 1	B-channel units
0 1 1 0	H0-channel units
1 0 0 0	H11-channel units
1 0 0 1	H12-channel units

All other values are reserved.

Channel number (octet 3.3)

Binary number assigned to the channel. For B-channels, the channel number equals the time slot number. See Recommendation I.431 [27].

Note – Either "Channel Number" or "Slot map" is used exclusively, depending on the "Number/Map" information.

Slot map (octet 3.3)

Bit position(s) in slot map corresponding to time slot(s) used by the channel is set to 1, see Figure 4-21/Q.931.

Note – Length of the slot-map is decided by combination of channel unit size on which the slot map is mapped (e.g., B-channel) and map element.

Bits

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	3.3.1
16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	3.3.2
8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	3.3.3

1544 kbit/s

Bits

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	3.3.1
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	3.3.2
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	3.3.3
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	3.3.4

2048 kbit/s

a) Primary rate interface, map element = B-channel.

Bits

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octet
				d(4)	c(3)	b(2)	a(1)	3.3

1544 kbit/s

Bits

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octet
			e(5)	d(4)	c(3)	b(2)	a(1)	3.3

2048 kbit/s

Note 1 – See Recommendation I.431 [27], Annex A, concerning meaning of a-e.

Note 2 – Number within ( ) indicates the associated H0-channel number used when corresponding H0-channel is represented by channel number in octet 3.3.

b) Primary rate interface, map element = H0-channel.

Bits								
8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octet
							H11(1)	3.3

1544 kbit/s

Bits								
8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octet
							H12(1)	3.3

2048 kbit/s

Note 1 – Number within ( ) indicates the associated H1-channel number used when corresponding H1-channel is represented by channel number in octet 3.3.

Note 2 – For 2048 kbit/s interface, H11 slot will be indicated by the same format.

c) Primary rate interface, map element = H1-channel.

FIGURE 4-21/Q.931

Slot map field

4.5.14 *Congestion level*

The purpose of the Congestion level information element is to describe the congestion status of the call. It is a single octet information element coded as shown in Figure 4-22/Q.931 and Table 4-16/Q.931.

Bits								
8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octet
1	Congestion level 0 1 1 Information element id.			Congestion level				1

FIGURE 4-22/Q.931

Congestion level information element

TABLE 4-16/Q.931

Congestion level information element

Congestion level (octet 1)

Bits 4 3 2 1	
0 0 0 0	receiver ready
1 1 1 1	receiver not ready

All other values are reserved.

4.5.15 *Display*

The purpose of the Display information element is to supply display information that may be displayed by the user. The information contained in this element is coded in IA5 characters.

The Display information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-23/Q.931.

The Display information element has a network dependent default maximum length of 34 or 82 octets. The evolution to a single maximum value of 82 octets is an objective. If a user receives a Display information element with a length exceeding the maximum length which the user can handle, the information element should be truncated by the user.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	Display 0	1	0	1	0	0	0 Information element identifier	1
Length of display contents								2
0	Display information (IA5 characters)							3 etc.

FIGURE 4-23/Q.931

Display information element

4.5.16 *High layer compatibility*

The purpose of the High layer compatibility information element is to provide a means which should be used by the remote user for compatibility checking. See Annex B.

The High layer compatibility information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-24/Q.931 and Table 4-17/Q.931.

The maximum length of this information element is five octets.

Note – The High layer compatibility information element is transported transparently by an ISDN between a call originating entity, e.g., a calling user and the addressed entity, e.g., a remote user or a higth layer function network node addressed by the call originating entity. However, if explicitly requested by the user (at subscription time), a network which provides some capabilities to realize teleservices may interpret this information to provide a particular service.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="8">Bits</th><th></th></tr>
<tr><th>8</th><th>7</th><th>6</th><th>5</th><th>4</th><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th>Octets</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="7">High layer compatibility
1 1 1 1 1 0 1
Information element identifier</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Length of high layer compatibility contents</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
ext</td><td colspan="2">Coding standard</td><td colspan="3">Interpretation</td><td colspan="2">Presentation method of protocol profile</td><td>3</td></tr>
<tr><td>0/1
ext</td><td colspan="7">High layer characteristics identification</td><td>4</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
ext</td><td colspan="7">Extended high layer characteristics identification</td><td>4a*
(Note)</td></tr>
</table>

Note – This octet may be present when octet 4 indicates Maintenance or Management.

FIGURE 4-24/Q.931

High layer compatibility information element

TABLE 4-17/Q.931 (Sheet 1 of 2)

High layer compatibility information element

Coding standard (octet 3)

Bits 7 6	
0 0	CCITT standardized coding, as described below.
0 1	Reserved for other international standards (see Note)
1 0	National standard (see Note)
1 1	Standard defined for the network (either public or private) present at the network side of the interface (see Note)

Note – These other coding standards should be used only when the desired high layer compatibility cannot be represented with the CCITT standardized coding.

Interpretation (octet 3)

Bits 5 4 3	
1 0 0	First (primary or only) high layer characteristics identification (in octet 4) to be used in the call.

All other values are reserved.

Note 1 – "Interpretation" indicates how the "High layer characteristics identification" (in octet 4) should be interpreted.

Note 2 – Currently, "Interpretation" has only a single value. However, "Interpretation", when enhanced, will be able to indicate how the "High layer characteristics identification" in the same information element shall be interpreted when multiple "High layer characteristics identifications" are used and exact relationship among them needs to be indicated (e.g., sequential usage, alternative list, simultaneous usage). Such enhancements in conjunction with the possible negotiation procedures are left for further study.

Presentation method of protocol profile (octet 3)

Bits 2 1	
0 1	High layer protocol profile (without specification of attributes)

All other values are reserved.

Note – Currently, "Presentation method of protocol profile" has only a single value, i.e., a "profile value" is used to indicate a service to be supported by high layer protocols as required. Necessity of other presentation methods, e.g., service indications in the forum of layer-by-layer indication of protocols to be used in high layers, is left for further study.

High layer compatibility information element

High layer characteristics identification (octet 4)

Bits 7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Telephony (Recommendation G.711 [10])
0	0	0	0	1	0	0	Facsimile Group 4 (Recommendation T.62 [28])
0	1	0	0	0	0	1	Document Application Profile for Group 4 Class 1 Facsimile (Recommendation T.503 [29])
0	1	0	0	1	0	0	Document Application Profile for formatted Mixed-Mode (Recommendation T.501 [30])
0	1	0	1	0	0	0	Document Application Profile for Processable-form (Recommendation T.502 [31])
0	1	1	0	0	0	1	Teletex (Recommendations T.62 [28], T.70 [32])
0	1	1	0	0	1	0	Document Application Profile for Videotex interworking between Gateways (Recommendation T.504 [33])
0	1	1	0	1	0	1	Telex
0	1	1	1	0	0	0	Message Handling Systems (MHS) (Recommendation X.400 series)
1	0	0	0	0	0	1	OSI application (Note 2) (Recommendation X.200 series)
1	0	1	1	1	1	0	Reserved for maintenance (Note 4)
1	0	1	1	1	1	1	Reserved for management (Note 4)
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	Reserved

All other values are reserved.

Note 1 – The coding above applies in case of "Coding standard" = "CCITT standard" and "Presentation method of protocol profile" = "High layer protocol profile".

Note 2 – Further compatibility checking will be executed by the OSI high layer protocol.

Note 3 – Code points are added only to those services for which CCITT Recommendations are available. See also Recommendation I.241 [34].

Note 4 – When this coding is included, octet 4 may be followed by octet 4a.

Extended high layer characteristics identification (octet 4a)

Bits 7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Telephony (Recommendation G.711)
0	0	0	0	1	0	0	Facsimile Group 4 (Recommendation T.62 [28])
0	1	0	0	0	0	1	Document Application Profile for Group 4 Class 1 Facsimile (Recommendation T.503 [29])
0	1	0	0	1	0	0	Document Application Profile for formatted Mixed-Mode (Recommendation T.501 [30])
0	1	0	1	0	0	0	Document Application Profile for Processable-form (Recommendation T.502 [31])
0	1	1	0	0	0	1	Teletex (Recommendations T.62 [28], T.70 [32])
0	1	1	0	0	1	0	Document Application Profile for Videotex interworking between Gateways (Recommendation T.504 [33])
0	1	1	0	1	0	1	Telex
0	1	1	1	0	0	0	Message Handling Systems (MHS) (Recommendation X.400 series)
1	0	0	0	0	0	1	OSI application (Recommendation X.200 series)
1	0	1	1	1	1	0	Not available for assignment
1	0	1	1	1	1	1	Not available for assignment
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	Reserved

All other values are reserved.

4.5.17 *Keypad facility*

The purpose of the Keypad facility information element is to convey IA5 characters, e.g., entered by means of a terminal keypad.

The Keypad facility information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-25/Q.931. The default maximum length of this information element is 34 octets.

Bits								
8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
	Keypad facility							
0	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	1
	Information element identifier							
Length of keypad facility contents								2
0	Keypad information (IA5 characters)							3 etc.

FIGURE 4-25/Q.931

Keypad facility information element

4.5.18 *Low layer compatibility*

The purpose of the Low layer compatibility information element is to provide a means which should be used for compatibility checking by an addressed entity (e.g., a remote user or an interworking unit or a high layer function network node addressed by the calling user). The Low layer compatibility information element is transferred transparently by an ISDN between the call originating entity (e.g., the calling user) and the addressed entity. See Annex B and Annex L.

If low layer compatibility negotiation is allowed by the network (see Annex M), the Low layer compatibility information element is also passed transparently from the addressed entity to the originating entity.

The Low layer compatibility information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-26/Q.931 and in Table 4-18/Q.931. The maximum length of this information element is 16 octets.

4.5.19 *More data*

The More data information element is sent by the user to the network in a USER INFORMATION message, and delivered by the network to the destination user(s) in the corresponding USER INFORMATION message. The presence of the More data information element indicates to the destination user that another USER INFORMATION message will follow containing information belonging to the same block.

The use of the More data information element is not supervised by the network.

The More data information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-27/Q.931.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="8">Bits</th><th></th></tr>
<tr><th>8</th><th>7</th><th>6</th><th>5</th><th>4</th><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th>Octets</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="7">Low layer compatibility
1 1 1 1 1 0 0
Information element identifier</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Length of the low layer compatibility contents</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>0/1
ext</td><td colspan="2">Coding standard</td><td colspan="5">Information transfer capability</td><td>3</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
ext</td><td>Negot.
indic.</td><td colspan="6">0 0 0 0 0 0
Spare</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>0/1
ext</td><td colspan="2">Transfer mode</td><td colspan="5">Information transfer rate</td><td>4</td></tr>
<tr><td>0/1
ext</td><td colspan="3">Structure</td><td colspan="2">Configuration</td><td colspan="2">Establishment</td><td>4a*
(Note 1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
ext</td><td colspan="2">Symmetry</td><td colspan="5">Information transfer rate
(destination → origination)</td><td>4b*
(Note 1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>0/1
ext</td><td colspan="2">0 1
layer 1 ident.</td><td colspan="5">User information layer 1 protocol</td><td>5*</td></tr>
<tr><td>0/1
ext</td><td>Synch./
asynch.</td><td>Negot.</td><td colspan="5">User rate</td><td>5a*
(Note 4)</td></tr>
<tr><td>0/1
ext</td><td colspan="2">Intermediate rate</td><td>NIC on
Tx</td><td>NIC on
Rx</td><td>Flow
control
on Tx</td><td>Flow
control
on Rx</td><td>0
Spare</td><td>5b*
(Note 2)</td></tr>
<tr><td>0/1
ext</td><td>Hdr/
no Hdr</td><td>Multi-
frame
support</td><td>Mode</td><td>LLI
negot.</td><td>Assignor/
assignee</td><td>In-band/
out-band
negot.</td><td>0
Spare</td><td>5b*
(Note 3)</td></tr>
<tr><td>0/1
ext</td><td colspan="2">Number of stop
bits</td><td colspan="2">Number of data
bits</td><td colspan="3">Parity</td><td>5c*
(Note 4)</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
ext</td><td>Duplex
mode</td><td colspan="6">Modem type</td><td>5d*
(Note 4)</td></tr>
<tr><td>0/1
ext</td><td colspan="2">1 0
Layer 2 ident.</td><td colspan="5">User information layer 2 protocol</td><td>6*</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
ext</td><td colspan="7">Optional layer 2 protocol information</td><td>6a*</td></tr>
<tr><td>0/1
ext</td><td colspan="2">1 1
Layer 3 ident.</td><td colspan="5">User information layer 3 protocol</td><td>7*</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
ext</td><td colspan="7">Optional layer 3 protocol information</td><td>7a*</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 4-26/Q.931

Low layer compatibility information element

Notes to Figure 4-26/Q.931

Note 1 – If default values are used for all fields of octets 4a and 4b, then these octets shall not be included. If default values are used for all fields of octet 4b, but not for one or more fields of octet 4a, then only octet 4a shall be included. Otherwise, both octets 4a and 4b shall be included.

Note 2 – This octet may be present only if octet 5 indicates CCITT standardized rate adaption Recs. V.110 [7]/X.30 [8].

Note 3 – This octet is present only if octet 5 indicates CCITT standardized rate adaption Rec. V.120 [9].

Note 4 – This octet may be present if octet 5 indicates either of the CCITT standardized rate adaptions Recs. V.110/X.30 or V.120.

TABLE 4-18/Q.931 (Sheet 1 of 8)

Low layer compatibility information element

Coding standard (octet 3):

Bits 7 6	
0 0	CCITT standardized coding as described below
0 1	reserved for other international standards (Note)
1 0	national standard (Note)
1 1	standard defined for the network (either public or private) present on the network side of the interface (Note)

Note – These other coding standards should be used only when the desired low layer compatibility cannot be represented with the CCITT-standardized coding.

Information transfer capability (octet 3)

Bits 5 4 3 2 1	
0 0 0 0 0	speech
0 1 0 0 0	unrestricted digital information
0 1 0 0 1	restricted digital information
1 0 0 0 0	3.1 kHz audio
1 0 0 0 1	7 kHz audio
1 1 0 0 0	video

All other values are reserved.

Negotiation indicator (octet 3a)

Bit 7	
0	out-band negotiation not possible
1	out-band negotiation possible

Note 1 – See Annex M for description of low layer compatibility negotiation.
Note 2 – When octet 3a is omitted, "out-band negotiation not possible" shall be assumed.

Transfer mode (octet 4)

Bits 7 6	
0 0	circuit mode
1 0	packet-mode

All other values are reserved.

TABLE 4-18/Q.931 (Sheet 2 of 8)

Low layer compatibility information element

Information transfer rate (octets 4 and 4b)

Bits 5 4 3 2 1	*Circuit mode*	*Packet-mode*
0 0 0 0 0	–	This code shall be used for packet mode calls
1 0 0 0 0	64 kbit/s	–
1 0 0 0 1	2 × 64 kbit/s	–
1 0 0 1 1	384 kbit/s	–
1 0 1 0 1	1536 kbit/s	–
1 0 1 1 1	1920 kbit/s	–

All other values are reserved.

Note 1 – When octet 4b is omitted, the low layer compatibility is bi-directional symmetric at the information transfer rate specified in octet 4. When octet 4b is included, the information transfer rate in octet 4 refers to the origination → destination direction.

Note 2 – When the information transfer rate 2 × 64 kbit/s is used, the coding of octets 3 and 4 refer to both 64 kbit/s channels.

Structure (octet 4a)

Bits 7 6 5	
0 0 0	default (see Note 1)
0 0 1	8 kHz integrity (Note 2)
1 0 0	service data unit integrity
1 1 1	unstructured

Note 1 – If octet 4a is omitted, or the structure field is coded "000", then the value of the structure attribute is according to the following:

Transfer mode	*Transfer capability*	*Structure*
circuit	speech	8 kHz integrity
circuit	unrestricted digital	8 kHz integrity
circuit	restricted digital	8 kHz integrity
circuit	audio	8 kHz integrity
circuit	video	8 kHz integrity
packet	unrestricted digital	service data unit integrity

Note 2 – When the information transfer rate 2 × 64 kbit/s is used, 8 kHz integrity with Restricted Differential Time Delay (RDTD) is offered.

TABLE 4-18/Q.931 (Sheet 3 of 8)

Low layer compatibility information element

Configuration (octet 4a)

Bits 4 3	
0 0	point-to-point

All other values are reserved.

Note – If octet 4a is omitted, the configuration is assumed to be point-to-point.

Establishment (octet 4a)

Bits 2 1	
0 0	demand

All other values are reserved.

Note – If octet 4a is omitted, the method of establishment is assumed to be "demand".

Symmetry (octet 4b)

Bits 7 6	
0 0	bidirectional symmetric

All other values are reserved.

Note – If octet 4b is omitted, bidirectional symmetric is assumed.

TABLE 4-18/Q.931 (Sheet 4 of 8)

Low layer compatibility information element

User information layer 1 protocol (octet 5)

Bits 5 4 3 2 1	
0 0 0 0 1	CCITT standardized rate adaption V.110 [7]/X.30 [8]. This implies the presence of octet 5a and optionally octets 5b, 5c and 5d as defined below.
0 0 0 1 0	Recommendation G.711 [10] μ-law
0 0 0 1 1	Recommendation G.711 A-law
0 0 1 0 0	Recommendation G.721 [11] 32 kbit/s ADPCM and Recommendation I.460 [15]
0 0 1 0 1	Recommendations G.722 [12] and G.725 [35] 7 kHz audio
0 0 1 1 0	Recommendation H.261 [13] for 384 kbit/s video
0 0 1 1 1	Non-CCITT standardized rate adaption. This implies the presence of octet 5a and, optionally, octets 5b, 5c and 5d. The use of this codepoint indicates that the user rate specified in octet 5a is defined by the user. Additionally, octet 5b, 5c and 5d, if present, are defined consistent with the user specified rate adaption.
0 1 0 0 0	CCITT standardized rate adaption V.120. This implies the presence of octets 5a and 5b as defined below, and optionally octets 5c and 5d.
0 1 0 0 1	CCITT standardized rate adaption X.31 [14] HDLC flag stuffing.

All other values are reserved.

Note – If the transfer mode is "circuit mode", and if the information transfer capability is "unrestricted digital information" or "restricted digital information", and if the user information layer 1 protocol is not to be identified to the network, octet 5 shall be omitted. If the transfer mode is packet mode, octet 5 may be omitted. Otherwise, octet 5 shall be present.

Synchronous/asynchronous (octet 5a)

Bit 7	
0	Synchronous
1	Asynchronous

Note – Octets 5b-5d may be omitted in case of synchronous user rates.

Negotiation (octet 5a)

Bit 6	
0	In-band negotiation not possible
1	In-band negotiation possible

Note – See Recommendations V.110 and X.30.

TABLE 4-18/Q.931 (Sheet 5 of 8)

Low layer compatibility information element

User rate (octet 5a)

Bits 5	4	3	2	1	
0	0	0	0	0	rate is indicated by E-bits specified in Recommendation I.460
0	0	0	0	1	0.6 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 [16] and X.1 [17]
0	0	0	1	0	1.2 kbit/s Recommendation V.6
0	0	0	1	1	2.4 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 and X.1
0	0	1	0	0	3.6 kbit/s Recommendation V.6
0	0	1	0	1	4.8 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 and X.1
0	0	1	1	0	7.2 kbit/s Recommendation V.6
0	0	1	1	1	8 kbit/s Recommendation I.460
0	1	0	0	0	9.6 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 and X.1
0	1	0	0	1	14.4 kbit/s Recommendation V.6
0	1	0	1	0	16 kbit/s Recommendation I.460
0	1	0	1	1	19.2 kbit/s Recommendation V.6
0	1	1	0	0	32 kbit/s Recommendation I.460
0	1	1	1	0	48 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 and X.1
0	1	1	1	1	56 kbit/s Recommendation V.6
1	0	1	0	1	0.1345 kbit/s Recommendation X.1
1	0	1	1	0	0.100 kbit/s Recommendation X.1
1	0	1	1	1	0.075/1.2 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 and X.1 (Note)
1	1	0	0	0	1.2/0.075 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 and X.1 (Note)
1	1	0	0	1	0.050 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 and X.1
1	1	0	1	0	0.075 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 and X.1
1	1	0	1	1	0.110 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 and X.1
1	1	1	0	0	0.150 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 and X.1
1	1	1	0	1	0.200 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 and X.1
1	1	1	1	0	0.300 kbit/s Recommendations V.6 and X.1
1	1	1	1	1	12 kbit/s Recommendation V.6

All other values are reserved.

Note – The first rate is the transmit rate in the forward direction of the call. The second rate is the transmit rate in the backward direction of the call.

Octet 5b for V.110 [7]/X.30 [8] rate adaption

Intermediate Rate (octet 5b)

Bits 7	6	
0	0	Not used
0	1	8 kbit/s
1	0	16 kbit/s
1	1	32 kbit/s

Network independent clock (NIC) on transmission (Tx) (octet 5b) (Note 1)

Bit 5	
0	Not required to send data with network independent clock
1	Required to send data with network independent clock

Note 1 – Refers to transmission in the forward direction of the call.
Note 2 – See Recommendations V.110 and X.30.

TABLE 4-18/Q.931 (Sheet 6 of 8)

Low layer compatibility information element

Network independent clock (NIC) on reception (Rx) (octet 5b) (Note 1)

Bit 4	
0	Cannot accept data with Network Independent Clock (i.e., sender does not support this optional procedure)
1	Can accept data with Network Independent Clock (i.e., sender does support this optional procedure)

Note 1 – Refers to transmission in the backward direction of the call
Note 2 – See recommendations V.110 [7] and X.30 [8].

Flow control on transmission (Tx) (octet 5b) (Note 1)

Bit 3	
0	Not required to send data with flow control mechanism
1	Required to send data with flow control mechanism

Note 1 – Refers to transmission in the forward direction of the call
Note 2 – See Recommendations V.110 and X.30.

Flow control on reception (Rx) (octet 5b) (Note 1)

Bit 2	
0	Cannot accept data with flow control mechanism (i.e., sender does not support this optional procedure)
1	Can accept data with flow control mechanism (i.e., sender does support this optional procedure)

Note 1 – Refers to transmission in the backward direction of the call
Note 2 – See Recommendations V.110 and X.30.

Octet 5b for V.120 [9] Rate adaption

Rate adaption header/no header (octet 5b)

Bit 7	
0	Rate adaption header not included
1	Rate adaption header included

Multiple frame establishment support in data link (octet 5b)

Bit 6	
0	Multiple frame establishment not supported. Only UI frames allowed.
1	Multiple frame establishment supported.

Low layer compatibility information element

Mode of operation (octet 5b)

Bit 5	
0	Bit transparent mode of operation
1	Protocol sensitive mode of operation

Logical link identifier negotiation (octet 5b)

Bit 4	
0	Default, LLI = 256 only
1	Full protocol negotiation (Note)

Note – A connection over which protocol negotiation will be executed is indicated in bit 2 of octet 5b.

Assignor/assignee (octet 5b)

Bit 3	
0	Message originator is "default assignee"
1	Message originator is "assignor only"

In-band/out-band negotiation (octet 5b)

Bit 2	
0	Negotiation is done with USER INFORMATION messages on a temporary signalling connection
1	Negotiation is done in-band using logical link zero.

Number of stop bits (octet 5c)

Bits 7 6	
0 0	Not used
0 1	1 bit
1 0	1.5 bits
1 1	2 bits

Number of data bits excluding parity bit if present (octet 5c)

Bits 5 4	
0 0	Not used
0 1	5 bits
1 0	7 bits
1 1	8 bits

Parity information (octet 5c)

Bits 3 2 1	
0 0 0	Odd
0 1 0	Even
0 1 1	None
1 0 0	Forced to 0
1 0 1	Forced to 1

All other values are reserved.

TABLE 4-18/Q.931 (Sheet 8 of 8)

Low layer compatibility information element

Duplex mode (octet 5d)

Bit 7	
0	Half duplex
1	Full duplex

Modem type (octet 5d)

Bits 6-1 coded according to network specific rules.

User information layer 2 protocol (octet 6)

Bits 5	4	3	2	1	
0	0	0	0	1	Basic mode ISO 1745 [36]
0	0	0	1	0	CCITT Recommendation Q.921 (I.441) [3]
0	0	1	1	0	CCITT Recommendation X.25 [5], link layer
0	0	1	1	1	CCITT Recommendation X.25 Multilink
0	1	0	0	0	Extended LAPB; for half duplex operation (T.71 [37])
0	1	0	0	1	HDLC ARM (ISO 4335) [38]
0	1	0	1	0	HDLC NRM (ISO 4335)
0	1	0	1	1	HDLC ABM (ISO 4335)
0	1	1	0	0	LAN logical link control (ISO 8802/2) [39]
0	1	1	0	1	CCITT Recommentation X.75 [40]. Single Link Procedure (SLP)

All other values are reserved.

Optional layer 2 protocol information (octet 6a)

To be defined.

User information layer 3 protocol (octet 7)

Bits 5	4	3	2	1	
0	0	0	1	0	CCITT Recommendation Q.931 (I.451)
0	0	1	1	0	CCITT Recommendation X.25, packet layer
0	0	1	1	1	ISO 8208 [41] (X.25 packet level protocol for data terminal equipment)
0	1	0	0	0	ISO 8348 [42] (OSI connection oriented network service specific subset of ISO 8208 and CCITT X.25)
0	1	0	0	1	ISO 8473 [43] (OSI connectionless service)
0	1	0	1	0	CCITT Recommendation T.70 [32] minimum network layer

All other values are reserved.

Optional layer 3 protocol information (octet 7a)

To be defined.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octet
	More data							
1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1
	Information element identifier							

FIGURE 4-27/Q.931

More data information element

4.5.20 *Network-specific facilities*

The purpose of the Network-specific facilities information element is to indicate which network facilities are being invoked. The Network-specific facilities information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-28/Q.931 and Table 4-19/Q.931. No more than four Network-specific facilities information elements may be included in a single message.

The maximum length of this information element is network dependent.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
	Network-specific facilities							
0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1
	Information element identifier							
Length of network-specific facilities contents								2
Length of network identification								3
1 Ext	Type of network identification			Network identification plan				3.1*
0 Spare	Network identification (IA5 characters)							3.2*
Network-specific facility specification								4

Note 1 – Octets 3.1 and 3.2 are only present when the length in octet 3 is non-zero.

Note 2 – Octet 3.2 may be repeated as appropriate.

FIGURE 4-28/Q.931

Network-specific facilities information element

TABLE 4-19/Q.931

Network-specific facilities information element

Length of network identification (octet 3)

This field contains the length, in octets, of the network identification found in octet 3.1 and the repetition of octet 3.2. If the value is "0000 0000", then the default provider (see Annex E, § E.1) is assumed and octets 3.1 and 3.2 are omitted.

Type of network identification (octet 3.1)

Bits 7 6 5	
0 0 0	user specified
0 1 0	national network identification
0 1 1	international network identification

All other values are reserved.

Network identification plan (octet 3.1)

Bits 4 3 2 1	
0 0 0 0	unknown
0 0 0 1	Carrier Identification Code (Note)
0 0 1 1	Data network identification code (Recommendation X.121 [21])

All other values are reserved.

Note – Carrier Identification Codes may be an appropriate method of identifying the network serving the remote user.

Network identification (octets 3.2, etc.)

These IA5 characters are organized according to the network identification plan specified in octet 3.1.

Network-specific facilities (octets 4, etc.)

This field is encoded according to the rules specified by the identified network.

4.5.21 *Notification indicator*

The purpose of the Notification indicator information element is to indicate information pertaining to a call.

The Notification indicator information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-29/Q.931 and Table 4-20/Q.931. The maximum length of this information element is 3 octets.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
	Notification indicator							
0	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	1
	Information element identifier							
Length of notification indicator contents								2
1 ext	Notification description							3

FIGURE 4-29/Q.931

Notification indicator information element

TABLE 4-20/Q.931

Notification indicator information element

Notification description (octet 3)

Bits 7 6 5 4 3 2 1	
0 0 0 0 0 0 0	user suspended
0 0 0 0 0 0 1	user resumed
0 0 0 0 0 1 0	bearer service change

All other values are reserved.

4.5.22 *Progress indicator*

The purpose of the Progress indicator information element is to describe an event which has occurred during the life of a call. The information element may occur two times in a message.

The Progress indicator information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-30/Q.931 and Table 4-21/Q.931. The default maximum length of this information element is 4 octets.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	Progress indicator 0	0	1	1	1	1	0 Information element identifier	1
Length of progress indicator contents								2
1 ext	Coding standard		0 Spare	Location				3
1 ext	Progress description							4

FIGURE 4-30/Q.931

Progress indicator information element

TABLE 4-21/Q.931

Progress indicator information element

Coding standard (octet 3)

Bits 7 6	
0 0	CCITT standardized coding, as described below
0 1	reserved for other international standards (Note)
1 0	national standard (Note)
1 1	standard specific to identified location (Note)

Note – These other coding standards should be used only when the desired progress indication cannot be represented with the CCITT-standardized coding.

Location (octet 3)

Bits 4 3 2 1	
0 0 0 0	user
0 0 0 1	private network serving the local user
0 0 1 0	public network serving the local user
0 1 0 0	public network serving the remote user
0 1 0 1	private network serving the remote user
1 0 1 0	network beyond interworking point

All other values are reserved.

Note – Depending on the location of the users, the local public network and remote public network may be the same network.

Progress description (octet 4)

Bits 7 6 5 4 3 2 1	No.	
0 0 0 0 0 0 1	1	Call is not end-to-end ISDN, further call progress information may be available in-band
0 0 0 0 0 1 0	2	Destination address is non-ISDN
0 0 0 0 0 1 1	3	Origination address is non-ISDN
0 0 0 0 1 0 0	4	Call has returned to the ISDN
0 0 0 1 0 0 0	8	In-band information or appropriate pattern now available

All other values are reserved.

Note – The use of the different progress descriptions is further explained in Annex I.

4.5.23 *Repeat indicator*

The purpose of the Repeat indicator information element is to indicate how repeated information elements shall be interpreted, when included in a message. The Repeat indicator information element is included before the first occurence of the information element which will be repeated in a message. The Repeat indication information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-31/Q.931 and Table 4-22/Q.931.

Note – Use of the Repeat indication information element in conjunction with an information element that occurs only once in a message shall not of itself constitute an error.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octet
1	Repeat indicator 1	0	1 Information element identifier	Repeat indication				1

FIGURE 4-31/Q.931

Repeat indicator information element

TABLE 4-22/Q.931

Repeat indicator information element

Repeat indication (octet 1)

Bits
4 3 2 1

0 0 1 0 Prioritized list for selecting one possibility (Note)

All other values are reserved.

Note – Used for Bearer service change procedures (see Annex O).

4.5.24 *Restart indicator*

The purpose of the Restart indicator information element is to identify the class of the facility (i.e., channel or interface) to be restarted.

The Restart indicator information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-32/Q.931 and Table 4-23/Q.931. The maximum length of this information element is 3 octets.

Bits								
8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
	Restart indicator							
0	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	1
	Information element identifier							
Length of restart indicator contents								2
1 ext	0	0	0	0	Class			3

FIGURE 4-32/Q.931

Restart indicator information element

TABLE 4-23/Q.931

Restart indicator information element

Class (octet 3)

Bits 3 2 1	
0 0 0	Indicated channels (Note 1)
1 1 0	Single interface (Note 2)
1 1 1	All interfaces

All other values are reserved.

Note 1 – The channel identification information element must be included and indicates which channels are to be restarted.

Note 2 – If non-associated signalling is used, the channel identification information element must be included to indicate the interface to be restarted if it is other than the one on which the D-channel is present.

4.5.25 *Segmented message*

The purpose of the Segmented message information element is to indicate that the transmission in which it appears is part of a segmented message, in addition to the use of message type SEGMENT. When included in a message segment, it appears directly after the message type information element (see Annex K).

The Segmented message information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-33/Q.931 and Table 4-24/Q.931.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	Segmented message 0	0	0	0	0	0	0 Information element identifier	1
Length of segmented message contents								2
First segment indicator	Number of segments remaining							3
0	Segmented message type							4

FIGURE 4-33/Q.931

Segmented message information element

TABLE 4-24/Q.931

Segmented message information element

First segment indicator (octet 3)

Bit
8

0 Subsequent segment to first segment
1 First segment of segmented message

Number of segments remaining (octet 3)

Binary number indicating the number of remaining segments within the message to be sent.

Segmented message type (octet 4)

Type of message being segmented coded as per § 4.4.

Note – Bit 8 is reserved for possible future use as an extension bit.

4.5.26 *Sending complete*

The purpose of the Sending complete information element is to optionally indicate completion of called party number, see §§ 5.1.3, 5.2.1 and 5.2.4.

It is a single octet information element coded as shown in Figure 4-34/Q.931.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octet
1	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	1
	Sending complete / Information element identifier							

FIGURE 4-34/Q.931

Sending complete information element

4.5.27 *Signal*

The purpose of the Signal information element is to allow the network to optionally convey information to a user regarding tones and alerting signals. (See §§ 7 and 8.)

The Signal information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-35/Q.931 and Table 4-25/Q.931. The length of this information element is 3 octets.

The Signal information element may be repeated in a message.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	1
	Signal / Information element identifier							
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	2
Length of signal contents								
Signal value								3

FIGURE 4-35/Q.931

Signal information element

TABLE 4-25/Q.931

Signal information element

Signal value (octet 3)

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	dial tone on
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	ring back tone on
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	intercept tone on
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	network congestion tone on
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	busy tone on
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	confirm tone on
0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	answer tone on
0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	call waiting tone on
0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	off-hook warning tone on
0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	tones off
0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	alerting on – pattern 0 (Note)
0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	alerting on – pattern 1 (Note)
0	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	alerting on – pattern 2 (Note)
0	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	alerting on – pattern 3 (Note)
0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	alerting on – pattern 4 (Note)
0	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	alerting on – pattern 5 (Note)
0	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	alerting on – pattern 6 (Note)
0	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	alerting on – pattern 7 (Note)
0	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	alerting off

All other values are reserved.

Note – The use of these patterns is network-dependent.

4.5.28 *Transit network selection*

The purpose of the Transit network selection information element is to identify one requested transit network. The Transit network selection information element may be repeated in a message to select a sequence of transit networks through which a call must pass. See Annex C.

The Transit network selection information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-36/Q.931 and Table 4-26/Q.931. The default maximum length of this information element is network dependent.

<table>
<tr><td colspan="8" align="center">Bits</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td>Octets</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="7" align="center">Transit network selection
1 1 1 1 0 0 0
Information element identifier</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8" align="center">Length of transit network selection contents</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
ext</td><td colspan="3" align="center">Type of network identification</td><td colspan="4" align="center">Network identification plan</td><td>3</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="7" align="center">Network identification (IA5 characters)</td><td>4
etc.</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 4-36/Q.931

Transit network selection information element

TABLE 4-26/Q.931

Transit network selection information element

Type of network identification (octet 3)

Bits 7 6 5	
0 0 0	user specified
0 1 0	national network identification
0 1 1	international network identification

All other values are reserved.

Network identification plan (octet 3)

Bits 4 3 2 1	
0 0 0 0	unknown
0 0 0 1	Carrier Identification Code (Note)
0 0 1 1	Data network identification code (Recommendation X.121) [21]

All other values are reserved.

Note – Carrier Identification Codes may be an appropriate method of identifying the network serving the remote user.

Network identification (octet 4)

These IA5 characters are organized according to the network identification plan specified in octet 3.

4.5.29 *User-user*

The purpose of the User-user information element is to convey information between ISDN users. This information is not interpreted by the network, but rather is carried transparently and delivered to the remote user(s).

The User-user information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-37/Q.931 and Table 4-27/Q.931. There are no restrictions on the content of the user information field.

In SETUP, ALERTING, CONNECT, DISCONNECT, RELEASE and RELEASE COMPLETE messages, the User-user information element has a network dependent maximum size of 35 or 131 octets. The evolution to a single maximum value is the long term objective; the exact maximum value is the subject of further study.

In USER INFORMATION messages sent in association with a circuit-mode connection, the User-user information element has a network dependent maximum size of 35 or 131 octets. For USER INFORMATION messages sent in a temporary or permanent user-user signalling connection, the user information field contained inside this information element has a maximum size equal to the maximum size of messages defined in § 3, that is 260 octets.

Note – The User-user information element is transported transparently by an ISDN between a call originating entity, e.g., a calling user and the addressed entity, e.g., a remote user or a high layer function network node addressed by the call originating entity.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	1
	User-user Information element identifier							
Length of user-user contents								2
Protocol discriminator								3
User information								4 etc.

FIGURE 4-37/Q.931

User-user information element

TABLE 4-27/Q.931

User-user information element

Protocol discriminator (octet 3)

Bits

	8 7 6 5	4 3 2 1	
	0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0	User-specific protocol (Note 1)
	0 0 0 0	0 0 0 1	OSI high layer protocols
	0 0 0 0	0 0 1 0	X.244 [44] (Note 2)
	0 0 0 0	0 0 1 1	Reserved for system management convergence function
	0 0 0 0	0 1 0 0	IA5 characters (Note 4)
	0 0 0 0	0 1 1 1	Rec. V.120 [9] rate adaption
	0 0 0 0	1 0 0 0	Q.931 (I.451) user-network call control messages
	0 0 0 1	0 0 0 0	reserved for other network layer or layer 3 protocols, including Recommendation X.25 [5]. (Note 3)
through	0 0 1 1	1 1 1 1	
	0 1 0 0	0 0 0 0	national use.
through	0 1 0 0	1 1 1 1	
	0 1 0 1	0 0 0 0	reserved for other network layer or layer 3 protocols, including Recommendation X.25. (Note 3)
through	1 1 1 1	1 1 1 0	

All other values are reserved.

Note 1 – The user information is structured according to user needs.

Note 2 – The user information is structured according to Rec. X.244 which specifies the structure of X.25 call user data.

Note 3 – These values are reserved to discriminate these protocol discriminators from the first octet of a Rec. X.25 packet including general format identifier.

Note 4 – The user information consists of IA5 characters.

4.6 *Supplementary services information elements*

4.6.1 *Date/time*

The purpose of the Date/time information element is to provide the date and time to the user. It indicates the point in time when the message has been generated by the network.

Note – It is a network dependent matter whether the time indicated is local time or Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) and which calender is used for referencing the date.

The Date/time information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-38/Q.931. Octets 3-8 are binary coded (bit 1 being the least significant bit).

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	1
	Date/time Information element identifier							
Length of date/time contents								2
year								3
month								4
day								5
hour								6
minute								7
second								8*

FIGURE 4-38/Q.931

Date/time information element

4.6.2 *Facility*

The purpose of the Facility information element is to indicate the invocation and operation of supplementary services, identified by the corresponding operation value within the Facility information element. The Facility information element is defined in Figures 4-39/Q.931 to 4-43/Q.931 and Tables 4-28/Q.931 to 4-33/Q.931.

Note – The generic structure and codepoints for the Facility information element are defined in Recommendation Q.932. This section contains only the coding required for procedures described in § 7 of this Recommendation.

The Facility information element may be repeated in a given message.

The maximum length of the Facility information element is application dependent consistent with the maximum length of the message.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="8">Bits</th><th></th></tr>
<tr><th>8</th><th>7</th><th>6</th><th>5</th><th>4</th><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th>Octets</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="7">0 0 1 1 1 0 0
Facility information element identifier</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Length of facility contents</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
ext</td><td colspan="2">0 0
Spare</td><td colspan="5">Service discriminator</td><td>3</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">1 0
Class</td><td>1
Form</td><td colspan="5">Component tag</td><td>4</td></tr>
<tr><td>0
Length
format</td><td colspan="7">Length of component</td><td>5</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Component</td><td>6</td></tr>
</table>

Note – The component, comprised of octets 4-6, may be repeated an indefinite number of times within the Facility information element.

FIGURE 4-39/Q.931

Facility information element

TABLE 4-28/Q.931

Facility information element

Service discriminator (octet 3)

Bits					
5	4	3	2	1	
1	0	0	0	1	supplementary service applications

All other values reserved.

Class (octet 4)

Bits		
8	7	
1	0	context-specific

All other values reserved.

Form (octet 4)

Bits	
6	
1	constructor

All other values reserved.

Component tag (octet 4)

Bits					
5	4	3	2	1	
0	0	0	0	1	invoke
0	0	0	1	0	return result
0	0	0	1	1	return error
0	0	1	0	0	reject

Length format (octet 5)

Bits	
8	
0	length of the component length field is one octet

All other values reserved.

Length of component (octet 5 bits 7-1)

This field indicates the total length of the contents of the component field (i.e., octet 6 and its subparts). It is the binary coding of the number of octets of the component, with bit 1 as the least significant bit (2^0).

Component (octet 6)

The structure of the component field varies, according to the specific component indicated in the component tag field. See the remainder of § 4.6.2.

TABLE 4-29/Q.931

Abstract Syntax Notation 1 (ASN.1) representation of user-user information service components

```
OPERATION                      User-User-Service
Argument              ::=  SEQUENCE (Service, Preferred)
Result                ::=  empty
Errors                ::=  Not Supported

::=1

Service               ::=  [1]  IMPLICIT INTEGER  {Service1 (1),
                                                   Service2 (2),
                                                   Service3 (3)}

Preferred             ::=  [2]  IMPLICIT BOOLEAN   {Yes (TRUE),
                                                    No (FALSE) }

ERROR Not Supported

Parameter             ::=  empty

::= 1
```

Note: See Recommendations X.208 and X.209 for a complete definition of ASN.1.

4.6.2.1 *Invoke component*

The invoke component is used to request the indicated supplementary service.

The invoke component is coded as shown in Figure 4-40/Q.931.

The length of the invoke component is 14 octets.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
1	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	4 (of facility information element)
Class		Form	Invoke component tag					
0 Length format	Length of invoke component							5
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	6
Class		Form	Invoke identifier tag					
0 Length format	Length of invoke identifier							6.1
Invoke identifier								6.2 etc.
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	6.3
Class		Form	Operation value tag					
0 Length format	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	6.4
	Length of operation value							
Operation value								6.5
Operation-specific fields								6.6 etc.

FIGURE 4-40/Q.931

Invoke component within facility information element

TABLE 4-30/Q.931 (Sheet 1 of 2)

Invoke component within facility information element

Class (octet 6 and 6.3)

Bits 8 7	
0 0	universal

All other values reserved.

Form (octet 6 and 6.3)

Bit 6	
0	primitive

All other values reserved.

Length format (octet 6.1 and 6.4)

Bits 8	
0	length is one octet

All other values reserved.

Length of invoke identifier (octet 6.1 bits 7-1)

This field indicates the total length of the contents of invoke identifier field (i.e., octet 6.2). It is the binary coding of the number of the octets of the invoke identifier, with bit 1 as the least significant bit (2^0).

Invoke identifier (octet 6.2)

This field contains a unique identification used to identify the requests of a supplementary service and is used to correlate this request with the corresponding replies.

Length of operation value (octet 6.4 bits 7-1)

This field indicates the total length of the contents of the operation value field (i.e., octet 6.5). It is the binary coding of the number of octets of the operation value, with bit 1 as the least significant bit (2^0). At the present time only single octet operation values have been defined.

TABLE 4-30/Q.931 (Sheet 2 of 2)

Invoke component within facility information element

Operation value (octet 6.5)

Bits 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1	
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1	user-user information

All other values reserved.

Operation-specific fields (octet 6.6, etc.)

Each operation value may have a number of associated fields. These fields vary from operation to operation value. See the remainder of § 4.6.2.1.

4.6.2.1.1 *Operation-specific fields for user-user information supplementary service*

The user-user information supplementary service operation-specific fields within the invoke component of the Facility information element are used to indicate details of the requested user-user information supplementary service.

These fields are coded as shown in Figure 4-41/Q.931 and Table 4-31/Q.931.

The length of these fields is 6 octets.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="8">Bits</th><th></th></tr>
<tr><th>8</th><th>7</th><th>6</th><th>5</th><th>4</th><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th>Octets</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td rowspan="2">6.6 (of facility information element)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Class</td><td>Form</td><td colspan="5">Sequence tag</td></tr>
<tr><td>0
Length
format</td><td colspan="7">Length of sequence tag</td><td>6.7</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td rowspan="2">6.8</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Class</td><td>Form</td><td colspan="5">Service tag</td></tr>
<tr><td>0
Length
format</td><td colspan="7">Length of service</td><td>6.8.1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Service</td><td>6.8.2</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td rowspan="2">6.8.3</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Class</td><td>Form</td><td colspan="5">Preferred tag</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td rowspan="2">6.8.4</td></tr>
<tr><td>Length
format</td><td colspan="7">Length of preferred</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Preferred</td><td>6.8.5</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 4-41/Q.931

Facility information element: invoke component: operation-specific fields for user-user information supplementary service

TABLE 4-31/Q.931 (Sheet 1 of 2)

Class (octets 6.6, 6.8 and 6.8.3)

Bits 8 7	
0 0	universal
1 0	context-specific

All other values reserved.

Form (octet 6 and 6.3)

Bit 6	
0	primitive
1	constructor

All other values reserved.

Length format (octet 6.1 and 6.4)

Bit 8	
0	length is one octet

All other values reserved.

Length of sequence (octet 6.7, bits 7-1)

This field indicates the total length of the following sequence of field (i.e., octet 6.8 and its subparts). It is the binary coding of the number of octets of the service, with bit 1 as the least significant bit (2^0).

Length of service (octet 6.8.1, bits 7-1)

This field indicates the total length of the contents of the service field (i.e., octet 6.8.2). It is the binary coding of the number of octet of the service, with bit 1 as the least significant bit (2^0). At the present time, only single octet service values have been defined.

TABLE 4-31/Q.931 (Sheet 2 of 2)

Service (octet 6.8.2) (Note)

Bits 8 7 6 5	4 3 2 1	
0 0 0 0	0 0 0 1	Service 1
0 0 0 0	0 0 1 0	Service 2
0 0 0 0	0 0 1 1	Service 3

All other values reserved.

Note – The meaning of user-user information supplementary services 1, 2, and 3 are defined in Recommendation I.257A.

Length of preferred (octet 6.8.4)

This field indicates the total length of the preferred field (i.e., octet 6.8.5). It is the binary coding of the number of octets of the preferred field with bit 1 as the least significant field (2^0). At the present time, only single octet preferred values have been defined.

Preferred (octet 6.8.5)

Bits 8 7 6 5	4 3 2 1	
0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0	False (service is required)
0 0 0 0	0 0 0 1	True (service is preferred)

4.6.2.2 *Return result component*

The return result component enables the performing entity to provide a positive reply to a successfully performed operation to the invoking entity.

The return result component is coded as shown in Figure 4-42/Q.931.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
1	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	4 (of facility information element)
Class		Form	Return result component tag					
0 Length format	Length of return result component							5
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	6
Class		Form	Invoke identifier tag					
0 Length format	Length of invoke identifier							6.1
Invoke identifier								6.2 etc.

FIGURE 4-42/Q.931

Return result component within facility information element

TABLE 4-32/Q.931

Return result component within facility information element

Class (octet 6)

Bits
8 7

0 0 universal

All other values reserved.

Form (octet 6)

Bits
6

0 primitive

All other values reserved.

Length format (octet 6.1)

Bits
8

0 length is one octet

All other values reserved.

Length of invoke identifier (octet 6.1 bit 7-1)

This field indicates the total length of the contents of invoke identifier field (i.e., octet 6.2). It is the binary coding of the number of the octets of the invoke identifier, with bit 1 as the least significant bit (2^0).

Invoke identifier (octet 6.2)

This field is used to correlate the positive response to the supplementary service requested by the invoking entity.

4.6.2.3 *Return error component*

The return error component enables the performing entity to return the negative reply to the invoking entity.

The return error component is coded as shown in Figure 4-43/Q.931.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
1	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	4 (of facility information element)
Class		Form	Return error component tag					
0 Length format	Length of return error component							5
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	6
Class		Form	Invoke identifier tag					
0 Length format	Length of invoke identifier							6.1
Invoke identifier								6.2 etc.
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	6.3
Class		Form	Error value tag					
0 Length format	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	6.4
	Length of error value							
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	6.5
Not supported error value								

FIGURE 4-43/Q.931

Return error component within facility information element

TABLE 4-33/Q.931

Return error component within facility information element

Class (octets 6 and 6.3)

Bits
8 7

0 0 universal

All other values reserved.

Form (octet 6 and 6.3)

Bits
6

0 primitive

All other values reserved.

Length format (octet 6.1 and 6.4)

Bits
8

0 length is one octet

All other values reserved.

Length of invoke identifier (octet 6.1 bit 7-1)

This field indicates the total length of the contents of invoke identifier field (i.e., octet 6.2). It is the binary coding of the number of the octets of the invoke identifier, with bit 1 as the least significant bit (2^0).

Invoke identifier (octet 6.2)

This field is used to correlate the negative response to the supplementary service requested by the invoking entity.

Length of error value (octet 6.4, bits 7-1)

This field indicates the total length of the contents of the error value field (i.e., octet 6.5). It is the binary coding of the number of octets of the service, with bit 1 as the least significant bit (2^0). At the present time only a single octet error value has been defined.

Error value (octets 6.5)

Bits 8 7 6 5	4 3 2 1	
0 0 0 0	0 0 0 1	not supported

4.6.3 *Feature activation*

This information element is defined in Recommendation Q.932 [4].

4.6.4 *Feature indication*

This information element is defined in Recommendation Q.932 [4].

4.6.5 *Switchhook*

The purpose of the Switchhook information element is to indicate the status of the terminal switchhook to the network for use in supplementary services.

The Switchhook information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-44/Q.931 and Table 4-34/Q.931. The length of this information element is 3 octets.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
Switchhook 0	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	1
Information element identifier								
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	2
Length of switchhook contents								
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Switch-hook value	3
Spare								

FIGURE 4-44/Q.931

Switchhook information element

TABLE 4-34/Q.931

Switchhook information element

Switchhook value (octet 3)

bit 1	
0	on-hook
1	off-hook

4.7 *Information elements for packet communications*

The information elements defined below are intented to be used in the support of packet communications as described in § 6 and Recommendation X.31 [14].

The use of these information elements for out-of-band call control for packet calls is for further study.

4.7.1 *Information rate*

The purpose of the Information rate information element is to notify the terminating user of the throughput indicated by the incoming Recommendation X.25 [5] call request packet.

The Information rate information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-45/Q.931 and Tables 4-35/Q.931 and 4-36/Q.931.

The maximum length of this information element is 6 octets.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
	Information rate Information element identifier							
Length of information rate contents								2
1 Ext	0	0	Incoming information rate					3
	Spare							
1 Ext	0	0	Outgoing information rate					4
	Spare							
1 Ext	0	0	Minimum incoming information rate					5
	Spare							
1 Ext	0	0	Minimum outgoing information rate					6
	Spare							

Note – This information element applies only in the notification phase at the terminating exchange. If the throughput class facility/minimum throughput class facility is present in the X.25 incoming call packet the contents may be copied into the Information rate information element. The Information rate for the direction of data transmission from the calling user is copied into octet 3/5. The information rate for the direction of data transmission from the called user is copied into octet 4/6. The bit order should be preserved as described in Table 4-36/Q.931.

FIGURE 4-45/Q.931

Information rate information element

TABLE 4-35/Q.931

Information rate information element

Incoming/outgoing information rate (octets 3 and 4)

The incoming outgoing information rate fields are used to indicate the information rate in the direction network to user, and user to network respectively.

The information rate for the direction of data transmission from the calling DTE is indicated in bits 5, 4, 3, 2 and 1 of octet 3. The information rate for the direction of data transmission from the called DTE is indicated in bits 5, 4, 3, 2 and 1 of octet 4. The bits are coded as specified in Table 4-36/Q.931.

Minimum incoming/outgoing information rate (octets 5 and 6)

The minimum information rate for the direction of data transmission from the calling DTE is indicated in bits 5, 4, 3, 2 and 1 of octet 5. The minimum information rate for the direction of data transmission from the called DTE is indicated in bits 5, 4, 3, 2 and 1 of octet 6. The bits are encoded as specified in Table 4-36/Q.931.

TABLE 4-36/Q.931

Throughput class coding

Bits					Throughput class (bit/s)
5	4	3	2	1	
0	0	0	0	0	Reserved
0	0	0	0	1	Reserved
0	0	0	1	0	Reserved
0	0	0	1	1	75
0	0	1	0	0	150
0	0	1	0	1	300
0	0	1	1	0	600
0	0	1	1	1	1200
0	1	0	0	0	2400
0	1	0	0	1	4800
0	1	0	1	0	9600
0	1	0	1	1	19200
0	1	1	0	0	48000
0	1	1	0	1	Reserved
0	1	1	1	0	Reserved
0	1	1	1	1	Reserved

4.7.2 *End-to-end transit delay*

The purpose of the End-to-end transit delay information element is to request and indicate the nominal maximum permissible transit delay applicable on a per call basis to that virtual call.

The End-to-end transit delay is coded as shown in Figure 4-46/Q.931 and Table 4-37/Q.931.

The maximum length of this information element is 11 octets.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	End-to-end transit delay 1	0	0	0	0	1	0 Information element identifier	1
Length of end-to-end transit delay contents								2
0 ext	0	0	0 Spare	0	0	Cumulative transit delay value		3
0 ext	Cumulative transit delay value (cont.)							3a
1 ext	Cumulative transit delay value (cont.)							3b
0 ext	0	0	0 Spare	0	0	Requested end-to-end transit delay value		4* (Note 1)
0 ext	Requested end-to-end transit delay value (cont.)							4a*
1 ext	Requeted end-to-end transit delay value (cont.)							4b*
0 ext	0	0	0 Spare	0	0	Maximum end-to-end transit delay value		5* (Note 2)
0 ext	Maximum end-to-end transit delay value (cont.)							5a*
1 ext	Maximum end-to-end transit delay value (cont.)							5b*

Note 1 – Octets 4, 4a and 4b are optional. If present, these octets are always interpreted as Requested end-to-end transit delay.

Note 2 – Octets 5, 5a and 5b are optional. If present, octets 4, 4a and 4b must also be present.

FIGURE 4-46/Q.931

End-to-end transit delay information element

TABLE 4-37/Q.931

End-to-end transit delay information element

Cumulative transit delay value [octet 3 (bits 1-2) octets 3a and 3b]

Cumulative transit delay value binary encoded in milleseconds. Bit 2 of octet 3 is the highest order bit and bit 1 of octet 3b is the lowest order bit. The cumulative transit delay value occupies 16 bits total.

Requested end-to-end transit delay value [octet 4 (bits 1-2) octets 4a and 4b]

Requested en-to-end transit delay value binary encoded in milleseconds. Bit 2 of octet 4 is the highest order bit and bit 1 of octet 4b is the lowest order bit. The requested end-to-end transit delay value occupies 16 bits total.

Maximum end-to-end transit delay value [octet 5 (bits 1-2) octets 5a and 5b]

Maximum end-to-end transit delay value binary encoded in milleseconds. Bit 2 of octet 5 is the highest order bit and bit 1 of octet 5b is the lowest order bit. The maximum end-to-end transit delay value occupies 16 bits total.

Note – For a Recommendation X.31 type of access to an ISDN the procedures only apply in the notification phase at the terminating exchange. At the terminating exchange, if the End-to-End Transit Delay facility is present in the X.25[5] incoming call request packet, the contents should be copied into End-to-end transit delay information element as follows:

i) The cumulative transit delay field (octets 3 and 4) of the X.25 end-to-end transit delay facility should be copied into octets 3, 3a and 3b. The bit order should be preserved as described above in the description.

ii) If octets 5 and 6 are present in the X.25 end-to-end transit delay facility, they should be interpreted as the requested end-to-end transit delay value. The value present should be copied into octets 4, 4a and 4b. The bit order should be preserved as described above in the description.

iii) If octets 7 and 8 are present in the X.25 end-to-end transit delay facility, the value present is the minimum end-to-end transit delay allowed. Octets 7 and 8 should be copied into octets 5, 5a and 5b. The bit order should be preserved as described above in the description.

4.7.3 *Packet layer binary parameters*

The purpose of the Packet layer binary parameters information element is to indicate requested layer 3 parameter values to be used for the call.

The Packet layer binary parameters information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-47/Q.931 and Table 4-38/Q.931.

The maximum length of this information element is 3 octets.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="8">Bits</th><th></th></tr>
<tr><th>8</th><th>7</th><th>6</th><th>5</th><th>4</th><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th>Octets</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="7">Packet layer binary parameters
1 0 0 0 1 0 0
Information element identifier</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Length of packet layer binary parameters contents</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
ext</td><td colspan="2">0 0
Spare</td><td colspan="2">Fast select</td><td>Exp data</td><td>Delivery conf.</td><td>Modulus</td><td>3</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 4-47/Q.931

Packet layer binary parameters information element

TABLE 4-38/Q.931

Packet layer binary parameters information element

Fast select (octet 3)

Bit 5	Bit 4	
0	0	Fast select not requested
0	1	Fast select not requested
1	0	Fast select requested with no restriction of response
1	1	Fast select requested with restrictions of response

Expedited data (octet 3)

Bit 3	
0	No request/request denied
1	Request indicated/request accepted

Delivery confirmation (octet 3)

Bit 2	
0	Link-by-link confirmation
1	End-to-end confirmation

Modulus (octet 3)

Bit 1	
0	modulus 8 sequencing
1	modulus 128 sequencing

4.7.4 *Packet layer window size*

The purpose of the Packet layer window size information element is to indicate requested layer 3 window size value to be used for the call. The values are binary-encoded.

The Packet layer window size is coded as shown in Figure 4-48/Q.931.

The maximum length of this information element is 4 octets.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	Packet layer window size 1	0	0	0	1	0	1 Information element identifier	1
Length of packet layer window size contents								2
1 ext	Forward value							3
1 ext	Backward value							4* (Note)

Note – This octet may be omitted. When omitted it indicates a request for the default value.

FIGURE 4-48/Q.931

Packet layer window size information element

4.7.5 *Packet size*

The purpose of the Packet size information element is to indicate the requested packet size values to be used for the call. The values are encoded $\log_2$.

The Packet size information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-49/Q.931.

The maximum length of this information element is 4 octets.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	Packet size 1	0	0	0	1	1	0 Information element identifier	1
Length of packet size contents								2
1 ext	Forward value (Note 2)							3
1 ext	Backward value (Note 2)							4* (Note 1)

Note 1 – This octet may be omitted. When omitted it indicates a request for the default value.

Note 2 – 0000 0000 is reserved.

FIGURE 4-49/Q.931

Packet size information element

4.7.6 *Redirecting number*

The purpose of the Redirecting number information element is to identify the number from which a call diversion or transfer was invoked.

The Redirecting number information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-50/Q.931 and Table 4-39/Q.931.

The maximum length of this information element is network dependent.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	Redirecting number 1	1	1	0	1	0	0 Information element identifier	1
Length of redirecting number contents								2
0/1 ext	Type of number			Numbering plan identification				3
0/1 ext	Presentation indicator		0	0 Spare	0	Screening indicator		3a*
1 ext	0	0 Spare	0	Reason for redirection				3b*
0 spare	Number digits (IA5 characters)							4 etc.

FIGURE 4-50/Q.931

Redirecting number information element

TABLE 4-39/Q.931 (Sheet 1 of 2)

Redirecting number information element

Type of number (octet 3) (Note 1)

Bits 7	6	5	
0	0	0	unknown (Note 2)
0	0	1	international number (Note 3)
0	1	0	national number (Note 3)
0	1	1	network specific number (Note 4)
1	0	0	subscriber number (Note 3)
1	1	0	abbreviated number
1	1	1	reserved for extension

All other values are reserved.

Note 1 – For the definition of international, national and subscriber number, see Recommendation I.330 [18].

Note 2 – The type of number "unknown" is used when the user or the network has no knowledge of the type of number, e.g., international number, national number, etc. In this case the number digits field is organized according to the network dialling plan; e.g., prefix or escape digits might be present.

Note 3 – Prefix or escape digits shall not be included.

Note 4 – The type of number "network specific number" is used to indicate administration/service number specific to the serving network, e.g., used to acces an operator.

Numbering plan identification (octet 3)

Numbering plan (applies for type of number = 000, 001, 010 and 100)

Bits 4	3	2	1	
0	0	0	0	unknown (Note)
0	0	0	1	ISDN/telephony numbering plan (Recommendation E.164 [19]/E.163 [20])
0	0	1	1	data numbering plan (Recommendation X.121) [21]
0	1	0	0	telex numbering plan (Recommendation F.69) [22]
1	0	0	0	national standard numbering plan
1	0	0	1	private numbering plan
1	1	1	1	reserved for extansion

All other values are reserved.

Note – The numbering plan "unknown" is used when the user or the network has no knowledge of the numbering plan. In this case the number digits field is organized according to the network dialling plan; e.g., prefix or escape digits might be present.

Presentation indicator (octet 3a)

Bits 7	6	
0	0	Presentation allowed
0	1	Presentation restricted

All other values are reserved.

Note – At the redirecting user-network interface, the presentation indicator is used for indicating the intention of the redirecting user for the presentation of the redirecting number to the called used. This may also be requested on a subscription basis. If octet 3a is omitted, and the network does not support subscription information for the redirecting number information restrictions, the value "00 – presentation allowed" is assumed.

TABLE 4-39/Q.931 (Sheet 2 of 2)

Redirecting number information element

Screening indicator (octet 3a)

Bits 2 1	
0 0	User-provided, not screened
0 1	User-provided, verified and passed
1 0	User-provided, verified and failed
1 1	Network provided

Note – If octet 3a is omitted, "00 – user-provided, not screened" is assumed.

Reason for redirection (octet 3b)

Bits 4 3 2 1	
0 0 0 1	Call forwarding busy or called DTE busy
0 0 1 0	Call forwarding no reply
1 0 0 1	Called DTE out of order
1 1 1 1	Call forwarding unconditional or systematic call redirection
1 0 1 0	Call forwarding by the called DTE

All other values are reserved.

Number digits (octets 4, etc.)

This field is coded with IA5 characters, according to the formats specified in the appropriate numbering/dialling plan.

4.7.7 *Transit delay selection and indication*

The purpose of the Transit delay selection and indication information element is to request and indicate the nominal maximum permissible transit delay applicable on a per call basis to that virtual call.

The Transit delay selection and indication information element is coded as shown in Figure 4-51/Q.931 and Table 4-40/Q.931.

The maximum length of this information element is 5 octets.

<table>
<tr><td colspan="8">Bits</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td>Octets</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="7">Transit delay selection and indication
1 0 0 0 0 1 1
Information element identifier</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Length of transit delay selection and indication contents</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>0
ext</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0
Spare</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td colspan="2">Transit delay selection and indication value</td><td>3</td></tr>
<tr><td>0
ext</td><td colspan="7">Transit delay selection and indication value (cont.)</td><td>3a</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
ext</td><td colspan="7">Transit delay selection and indication value (cont.)</td><td>3b</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 4-51/Q.931

Transit delay selection and indication information element

TABLE 4-40/Q.931

Transit delay selection and indication information element

Transit delay selection and indication value [octet 3 (bits 1-2), octets 3a and 3b] Transit delay value binary encoded in milleseconds. Bit 2 of octet 3 is the highest order bit and bit 1 of octet 3b is the lowest order bit. The transit delay value occupies 16 bits total. *Note* – For a Recommendation X.31[14] type of access to an ISDN the procedures only apply in the notification phase at the terminating exchange. At the terminating exchange, if the Transit Delay Selection and Indication facility is present in the X.25 [5] incoming call request packet, the two octet value should be copied into octets 3, 3a and 3b with the highest order bit contained in bit 2 of octet 3 and the lowest order bit contained in bit 1 of octet 3b.

5 Circuit-switched call control procedures

The call states referred to in this section cover the states perceived by the network, states perceived by the user and states which are common to both user and network. Unless specifically qualified, all states described in the following text should be understood as common (see §§ 2.1.1 and 2.1.2 for user and network call states respectively). An overview diagram of call states is given in Figures A-2/Q.931 and A-3/Q.931 (Annex A).

Detailed specification and description language (SDL) diagrams for the procedures specified in this section are contained in Figures A-4/Q.931 through A-6/Q.931. When there is an ambiguity in the narrative text, the SDL diagrams in Figures A-4/Q.931 through A-6/Q.931 should be used to resolve conflict. Where the text and the SDL are in disagreement, the text should be used as the prime source.

Note – This section describes the sequence of messages associated with the control of circuit-switched connections. Optional extensions to this basic protocol and exceptions that apply in the case of packet-mode connections or supplementary services are described elsewhere in this Recommendation or in Recommendation Q.932 [4]. Annex D also contains optional extensions to the basic call establishment procedures defined in § 5 for symmetric signalling. Future enhancements to the procedures defined in § 5 are being considered to obtain symmetric basic call control procedures that can be used, for example, in PABX-to-PABX applications.

All messages in this Recommendation may contain two types of information elements, functional and/or stimulus. Functional information elements are characterized as requiring a degree of intelligent processing by the terminal in either their generation or analysis. Stimulus information elements, on the other hand, are either generated as a result of single event at the user/terminal interface or contain a basic instruction from the network to be executed by the terminal.

As a general principle, all the messages sent by the network to the user may contain a display information element whose contents may be displayed by the terminal; the content of this information element shall be network dependent.

Note – Keypad facility information elements shall only be conveyed in the direction user to network. Display information elements shall conveyed in the direction network to user.

In addition to the messages exchanged as described in the following sections, INFORMATION messages for call control may be sent by the user or by the network only after the first response to a SETUP has been sent or received, and before clearing of the call reference is initiated. An INFORMATION message received in the release request state may be ignored.

In order to accommodate the transfer of Layer 3 messages which exceeds the data link layer maximum frame length (i.e. defined in Recommendation Q.921) [3], a method of message segmentation and reassembly may optionally be implemented as described in Annex K. Message segmentation shall only be used where all the information comprising the unsegmented message is available at the time of sending the first message segment.

Note – Message segmentation is not used to replace existing procedures where information is yet to be provided by call control, e.g. digit by digit sending in overlap mode, although this may be used in addition. Message segmentation shall only be used when the message length exceeds the value of the N201 parameter defined in Recommendation Q.921 [3].

5.1 *Call establishment at the originating interface*

Before these procedures are invoked, a reliable data link connection must be established between the user (TE/NT2) and the network. All layer 3 messages shall be sent to the data link layer using a DL-DATA-REQUEST primitive. The data link services described in Recommendations Q.920 (I.440) [45] and Q.921 [3] are assumed.

5.1.1 *Call request*

A user initiates call establishment by transferring a SETUP message across the user-network interface. Following the transmission of the SETUP message, the call shall be considered by the user to be in the call initiated state. The message shall always contain a call reference, selected according to the procedures given in § 4.3. In selecting a call reference, the dummy call reference value shall not be used. The bearer capability information element is mandatory in the SETUP message, even in the case of overlap sending.

If the user knows all appropriate channels controlled by the D-channel are in use, it shall not transfer a SETUP message across the user-network interface. If the user does not monitor the status of channels in use, it may send a SETUP during an all channels busy condition. In this case the network returns a RELEASE COMPLETE message with cause No. 34, *no circuit/channel available.*

Furthermore the SETUP message may also contain all or part of the call information (i.e. address and facility requests) necessary for call establishment depending on whether en-bloc or overlap procedures are being used respectively (see § 5.1.3).

If en-bloc sending is used, the SETUP message shall contain all the information required by the network to process the call, and, in particular, the called party address information if present, is contained as follows:

a) in the called party number information element possibly completed by the called party subaddress information element; or,

b) the keypad facility information element which may also be used to convey other call information.

Note – The support of a) is mandatory in all networks. Whether the support of b) is mandatory or optional requires further study.

For overlap sending, see § 5.1.3.

5.1.2 *B-channel selection – originating*

In the SETUP message, the user will indicate one of the following:

a) channel is indicated, no acceptable alternative; or

b) channel is indicated, any alternative is acceptable, or,

c) any channel is acceptable.

If no indication is included, alternative c) is assumed. In cases a) and b), if the indicated channel is available, the network selects it for the call.

In case b), if the network cannot grant the preferred channel, it selects any other available B-channel associated with the D-channel. In case c), the network selects any available B-channel associated with the D-channel.

The selected B-channel is indicated in the first message returned by the network in response to the SETUP message (i.e. a SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE or CALL PROCEEDING message). After transmitting this message, the network shall activate the B-channel connection.

The user need not attach until receiving a CALL PROCEEDING/SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE/PROGRESS/ALERTING message with the progress indicator No. 8 *in-band information or appropriate pattern is now available* or progress indication No. 1 *call is not end-to-end ISDN; further call progress information may be available in-band.* Prior to this time, the network cannot assume that the user has attached to the B-channel. After this time, the user shall be connected to the B-channel, provided the equipment does not generate local tone. Upon receipt of the CONNECT message the user shall attach to the B-channel (if it has not already done so).

In case a) if the specified channel is not available, and in cases b) and c) if no channel is available, a RELEASE COMPLETE message with cause No. 44 *requested circuit/channel not available* or No. 34 *no circuit/channel available*, respectively, is sent by the network as described in § 5.3.

5.1.3 *Overlap sending*

If overlap sending is used, the SETUP message contains either:

a) no called number information; or,

b) incomplete called number information; or

c) called number information which the network cannot determine to be complete.

On receipt of such a SETUP message, the network starts timer T302 (the value of timer T302 is specified in § 9.1), sends a SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE message to the user, and enters the overlap sending state. In case a), the network will return dial tone, if required by the tone option. In this case it may include progress indicator No. 8 *in-band information or appropriate pattern is now available* in the SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE message.

Note – Some networks which systematically provide the conventional telephone dial tone will not generate the progress indicator when providing the dial tone.

When the SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE message is received, the user enters the overlap sending state and optionally starts timer T304 (the value of timer T304 is specified in § 9.2).

After receiving the SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE message, the user sends the remainder of the call information (if any) in one or more INFORMATION messages.

The called party number information may be provided by the user as follows:

a) in the called party number information element; or,

b) in the keypad facility information element, exclusively.

The called party number must be sent in a unique way.

Note 1 – The support of a) is mandatory in all networks. Whether the support of b) is mandatory or optional requires further study.

Note 2 – Besides the possible called party number [conveyed by method a) or b) as described above], the INFORMATION messages may contain additional call information (i.e. for supplementary services). The interpretation of the contents of keypad facility information elements is network-specific, and in accordance with the dialling plan provided to that user. It should be noted that the user shall transfer all the additional call information (contained within the keypad facility information element) before the network determines that the called party number (contained within the called party number information element or the keypad facility information element) is complete, and terminates the overlap sending procedure using the CALL PROCEEDING message as recommended in § 5.1.5.2.

If, for symmetry purposes, the user employs timer T304, the user restarts timer T304 when each INFORMATION message is sent.

The call information in the message which completes the information sending may contain a *sending complete* indication, (e.g. the # character or, as a network option, the sending complete information element) appropriate to the dialling plan being used. The network shall restart timer T302 on the receipt of every INFORMATION message not containing a sending complete indication.

5.1.4 *Invalid call information*

If, following the receipt of SETUP message or during overlap sending, the network determines that the call information received from the user is invalid (e.g. invalid number), then the network shall initiate call clearing as defined in § 5.3 with a cause such as one of the following:

No. 1 *unassigned (unallocated) number*;

No. 3 *no route to destination*;

No. 22 *number changed*;

No. 28 *invalid number format (incomplete number).*

5.1.5 *Call proceeding*

5.1.5.1 *Call proceeding, en-bloc sending*

If en-bloc sending is used (i.e. the network can determine that the SETUP message contains all the information required from the user to establish the call) and if the network can determine that access to the requested service is authorized and available, the network shall: send a CALL PROCEEDING message to the user to acknowledge the SETUP message and to indicate that the call is being processed; and enter the outgoing call proceeding state. When the user receives the CALL PROCEEDING message, the user shall enter the outgoing call proceeding state.

Similarly, if the network determines that a requested service is not authorized or is not available, the network shall initiate call clearing in accordance with § 5.3 with one of the following causes:

a) No. 57 *bearer capability not authorized*;

b) No. 58 *bearer capability not presently available*;

c) No. 63 *service or option not available, unspecified*; or

d) No. 65 *bearer service not implemented.*

Note – If a supplementary service is not authorized and is not available, the procedure to be used is defined in the supplementary service control procedures.

5.1.5.2 *Call proceeding, overlap sending*

If overlap sending is used following the occurrence of one of these conditions:

a) the receipt by the network of a sending complete indication which the network understands; or,

b) analysis by the network that all call information necessary to effect call establishment has been received.

and if the network can determine that access to the requested services and supplementary service is authorized and available, the network shall: send a CALL PROCEEDING message to the user; stop timer T302; and enter the outgoing call proceeding state. Similarly if the network determines that a requested service or supplementary service is not authorized or is not available, the network shall initiate call clearing in accordance with § 5.3 with one of the following causes:

1) No. 57 *bearer capability not authorized*;

2) No. 58 *bearer capability not presently available*;

3) No. 63 *service or option not available, unspecified*; or

4) No. 65 *bearer service not implemented.*

Note 1 – The CALL PROCEEDING message is sent to indicate that the requested call establishment has been initiated, and no more call establishment information will be accepted.

Note 2 – If a supplementary service is not authorized or is not available, the procedure to be used is defined in the supplementary service control procedures.

When the user receives the CALL PROCEEDING message, the user shall enter the outgoing call proceeding state. If, for symmetry purposes, the calling user employs timer T304, the user shall stop timer T304 when the CALL PROCEEDING message is received. If, for symmetry purposes, the calling user employs timer T304 then, on expiry of T304, the user shall initiate call clearing in accordance with § 5.3 with cause No. 102 *recovery on time expiry.*

An alerting or connect indication received from the called party will stop timer T302 and cause an ALERTING or CONNECT message respectively to be sent to the calling user. No CALL PROCEEDING message shall be sent by the network. If, for symmetry purposes, the calling user employs timer T304, the user shall stop timer T304 on receiving the ALERTING or CONNECT message.

At the expiration of timer T302, the network shall:

i) initiate call clearing in accordance with § 5.3 with cause No.28 *invalid number format* (incomplete number) sent to the calling user and with cause No.102 *recovery on timer expiry* is sent towards the called user, if the network determines that the call information is definitely incomplete; otherwise,

ii) send a CALL PROCEEDING message and enter the outgoing call proceeding state.

5.1.6 *Notification of interworking at the originating interface*

During call establishment, the call may leave an ISDN environment; e.g. because of interworking with another network, with a non-ISDN user, or with non-ISDN equipment within the calling or called user's premises. When such situations occur, a progress indicator information element shall be returned to the calling user either:

a) in an appropriate call control message when a state change is required (SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE, CALL PROCEEDING, ALERTING or CONNECT); or

b) in the PROGRESS message when no state change is appropriate.

One of the following progress description values shall be included in the PROGRESS indicator information element in the message sent to the user (for further information, see Annex I):

1) No. 1 *call is not end-to-end ISDN; further call progress information may be available in-band*;

2) No. 2 *destination address is non-ISDN*;

3) No. 4 *call has returned to the ISDN.* Call is now end-to-end ISDN.

If the PROGRESS indicator information element is included in a call control message, the procedures as described in the rest of § 5.1 apply. If the PROGRESS indicator information element is included in the PROGRESS message, no state change will occur but any supervisory timers shall be stopped. In both cases, if indicated by the PROGRESS indicator information element, the user shall connect to (if not connected already) and then monitor the B-channel for further in-band information.

If the interface at which the progress indication originates is the point at which a call enters the ISDN environment from a non-ISDN environment, one or more of the following progress indicator information elements shall be included in the SETUP message sent to the network:

i) No. 1 *call is not end-to-end ISDN; further call progress information may be available in-band*;

ii) No. 3 *origination address is non-ISDN.*

5.1.7 *Call confirmation indication*

Upon receiving an indication that user alerting has been initiated at the called address, the network shall: send an ALERTING message across the user-nerwork interface of the calling address; and enter the call delivered state. When the user receives the ALERTING message, the user: may begin an internally-generated alerting indication and shall enter the call delivered state.

5.1.8 *Call connected*

Upon receiving an indication that the call has been accepted, the network shall: send a CONNECT message across the user-network interface to the calling user; and enter the active state.

This message indicates to the calling user that a connection has been established through the network and stops a possible local indication of alerting.

On receipt of the CONNECT message, the calling user: shall stop any user-generated alerting indications; may optionally send a CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message, and shall enter the active state. The network shall not take any action on receipt of a CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message when it perceives the call to be in the active state.

5.1.9 *Call rejection*

Upon receiving an indication that the network or the called user is unable to accept the call, the network shall initiate call clearing at the originating user-network interface as described in § 5.3, using the cause provided by the terminating network or the called user.

5.1.10 *Transit network selection*

When the transit network selection information element is present, the call shall be processed according to Annex C.

5.2 *Call establishment at the destination interface*

This procedure assumes that a data link connection providing services described in Recommendation Q.920 (I.440) [3] may not exist before the first layer 3 message (SETUP) is transferred across the interface. However, reliable data link connections must be established by each of the users (terminals and/or NT2s) at the interface before they respond to the SETUP message.

Permanent data link connections are not precluded, and may be recommended as a national option.

The SETUP message offered on a point-to-point data link shall be delivered to layer 2 using a DL-DATA-REQUEST primitive. No use shall be made of the DL-UNIT-DATA-REQUEST primitive other than for operation using the broadcast capability of the data link layer.

The call reference contained in all messages exchanged across the user-network interface shall contain the call reference value specified in the SETUP message delivered by the network. In selecting a call reference, the dummy call reference value shall not be used.

5.2.1 *Incoming call*

The network will indicate the arrival of a call at the user-network interface by transferring a SETUP message across the interface. This message is sent if the network can select an idle B-channel. In some circumstances (e.g. provision of other bearer services § 6), the SETUP message may also be sent when no B-channel is idle. The number of calls presented in these circumstances may be limited.

In addition to the mandatory information elements, the SETUP message may include, as required, the information elements described in § 3.1.16 (e.g. display, low layer compatibility).

If a multipoint terminal configuration exists at the user-network interface, this message shall be sent using a broadcast capability at the data link layer. In this case, the SETUP message should contain the appropriate part of the called party number as required (e.g. for DDI) and/or sub-address if provided. However, if the network has knowledge that a single-point configuration exists at the interface, a point-to-point data link shall be used to carry the SETUP message. After sending the SETUP message, the network starts timer T303. If the SETUP message was sent via a broadcast data link, timer T312 shall also be started. (The values of timers T303 and T312 are specified in § 9.1.) The network then enters the call present state.

Note – Timer T312 is used to supervise the retention of the call reference when the SETUP message was transmitted by a broadcast data link. The value of timer T312 is such that if a network disconnect indication is received during the call establishment phase, it maximizes the probability that all responding users will be released prior to release of the call reference. Refer to § 5.3.2 (e) for procedures to be followed on expiry of timer T312.

If en-bloc receiving is used, the SETUP message shall contain all the information required by the called user to process the call. In this case, the SETUP message may contain the sending complete information element.

Upon receipt of a SETUP message, the user will enter the call present state.

Depending on the contents of the received message, either en-bloc receiving procedure (see § 5.2.5.1) or overlap receiving procedure (see § 5.2.4) follows. However, if the SETUP message includes the sending complete information element, en-bloc receiving procedure shall follow. Therefore, those users who support overlap receiving procedure shall recognize the sending complete information element.

Note – Users supporting only the en-bloc receiving procedure need not recognize the sending complete information element and may directly analyze the received SETUP message on the assumption that all the call information is contained in the message.

If no response to the SETUP message is received by the network before the first expiry of timer T303, the SETUP message will be retransmitted and timers T303 and T312 restarted.

Note – In the case of overlap sending within the network, the appropriate part of the called party number as required (e.g. for DDI) may also be conveyed by means of INFORMATION messages to the called user on a point-to-point data link (see § 5.2.4).

5.2.2 *Compatibility checking*

A user receiving a SETUP message shall perform compatibility checking before responding to that SETUP message. Any reference to "user" in §§ 5.2.3 through 5.2.7 implicitly refers to a compatible user equipment. Annex B defines compatibility checking to be performed by users upon receiving a SETUP message.

When the SETUP message was delivered via a broadcast data link, an incompatible user shall either:

a) ignore the incoming call; or,

b) respond by sending a RELEASE COMPLETE message with cause No. 88 *incompatible destination*, and enter the Null state. The network processes this RELEASE COMPLETE message in accordance with § 5.2.5.3.

When the SETUP message was delivered via a point-to-point data link, an incompatible user shall respond with RELEASE COMPLETE message with cause No. 88 *incompatible destination*, and enter the Null state. The network shall process this RELEASE COMPLETE message in accordance with § 5.2.5.3.

5.2.3 *B-channel selection – destination*

5.2.3.1 *SETUP message delivered by point-to-point data link*

When the SETUP message is delivered by a point-to-point data link, negotiation for the selection of a B-channel will be permitted between the network and the user. Only B-channels controlled by the same D-channel will be the subject of the selection procedure. The selection procedure is as follows:

a) In the SETUP message, the network will indicate one of the following:

   1) channel is indicated, no acceptable alternative, or,

   2) channel is indicated, any alternative is acceptable; or,

   3) any channel is acceptable; or,

   4) no B-channel available.

   Note – Not all networks will support the *no B-channel available* condition.

b) In cases 1) and 2), if the indicated channel is acceptable and available, the user selects it for the call.

   In case 2), if the user cannot grant the indicated channel, it selects any other available B-channel associated with the D-channel, and identifies that channel in the first message sent in response to the SETUP message.

   In case 3), the user selects any available B-channel associated with the D-channel, and identifies that channel in the first message sent in response to the SETUP message.

   If in case 1) the B-channel indicated in the first response message is not the channel offered by the network, or in cases 2) and 3) the B-channel indicated in the first response message is unacceptable to the network, it will clear the call by sending a RELEASE message with cause No.6 *channel unacceptable* [see § 5.3.2 d)].

   in case 4), the user rejects the call by sending RELEASE COMPLETE message with cause No. 34 *no circuit/channel available* unless it is able to proceed with the call. The user wishing to re-use a B-channel it has already allocated to another call (e.g. by releasing, or holding it, or by multiplexing packet calls) shall send the appropriate message containing the channel identification information element, coded as *channel is indicated, no alternative acceptable.*

c) If no channel identification information element is present in the first response message, the B-channel indicated in the SETUP message will be assumed.

d) When a B-channel has been selected by the user, that channel may be connected by the user.

e) In case 1) if the indicated B-channel is not available, or in cases 2), 3), and 4) if no B-channel is available and the user cannot proceed with the offered call, the user returns a RELEASE COMPLETE message with cause No. 44 *requested circuit/channel not available* or No. 34 *no circuit/channel available*, respectively, and returns to the Null state.

5.2.3.2 *SETUP message delivered by broadcast data link*

When the SETUP message is delivered by a broadcast data link the channel selection procedure, provided in § 5.2.3.1, is not applicable. The network sends a SETUP message with the channel identification information element indicating one of the following:

a) channel indicated, no alternative is acceptable; or,

b) no channel available.

The network starts timers T303 and T312.

In case a), if the user can accept the call on the indicated channel, the user shall send the appropriate message (see §§ 5.2.4 and 5.2.5). If the user cannot accept the call on the indicated channel, the user shall send a RELEASE COMPLETE message with cause No. 44 *requested circuit/channel not available.*

The user, in any case, must not connect to the channel until a CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message has been received.

In case b), the user not controlling any channel shall send a RELEASE COMPLETE message with cause No. 34 *no circuit/channel available.* The user wishing to re-use a B-channel it has already allocated to another call (e.g. by releasing, or holding it, or by multiplexing packet calls) shall send the appropriate message containing the channel identification information element, coded as *channel is indicated, no alternative acceptable.*

5.2.4 *Overlap receiving*

When a user determines that a received SETUP message contains either:

a) no called number information; or,

b) incomplete called number information; or,

c) called number information which the user cannot determine to be complete;

and when the user:

d) is compatible with other call characteristics (see Annex B); and,

e) implements overlap receiving;

the user shall: start timer T302; send a SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE message to the network; and enter the overlap receiving state.

When the SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE message is received, the network shall: stop timer T303; start timer T304; enter the overlap receiving state; and send the remainder of the call information (if any) in one or more INFORMATION messages, starting timer T304 when each INFORMATION message is sent.

The called party number information is provided in the called party number information element.

The call address information may contain a *sending complete* indication (e.g. No. or, as a network option, the sending complete information element) appropriate to the dialling plan being used.

Note – If the network can determine that sufficient call setup information will be received by the called user by sending the next INFORMATION message, it is recommended that the INFORMATION message contains the sending complete information element.

The user shall START TIMER T302 on receipt of every INFORMATION message not containing a sending complete indication.

Following the receipt of a sending complete indication which the user understands, or the determination that sufficient call information has been received, the user shall stop timer T302 (if implemented) and send a CALL PROCEEDING message to the network. Alternatively, depending on internal events, the user may send an ALERTING or a CONNECT message to the network.

Note – The CALL PROCEEDING message in this case will cause that the originating exchange to send a CALL PROCEEDING message to the originating user, if not already sent (see for example Recommendation Q.699).

At the expiration of timer T302 the user shall:

a) initiate clearing in accordance with § 5.3 with cause No. 28 *invalid number format (incomplete number)* if it determines that the call information is definitely incomplete; or,

b) if sufficient information has been received, send a CALL PROCEEDING, ALERTING or CONNECT message as appropriate.

At the expiration of timer T304 the network initiates call clearing in accordance with § 5.3, with cause No. 28 *invalid number format (incomplete number)* sent to the calling user, and cause No. 102 *recovery on timer expiry* sent to the called user.

If, following the receipt of a SETUP message or during overlap receiving, the user determines that the received call information is invalid (e.g. invalid called party number), it shall initiate call clearing in accordance with § 5.3 with a cause such as one of the following:

No. 1 *unassigned (unallocated) number*;

No. 3 *no route to destination*;

No. 22 *number changed*;

No. 28 *invalid number format (incomplete number)*.

Upon receipt of the complete call information the user may further perform some compatibility checking functions, as outlined in Annex B.

When the call is offered on a point-to-point data link, only one SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE message can be received in response to the call offering.

When the call is offered to the user on a broadcast data link, multiple SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE messages may be received by the network which shall then complete as many overlap receiving procedures as such SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE messages were received. It is the network responsibility to limit the number of overlap receiving procedures to be completed for a given call. The default maximum is fixed to eight. Some networks will limit the call offering completion in overlap receiving to single data link and will therefore clear the subsequent responding users after the first SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE message has been received, in accordance with the non-selected user clearing procedures described in § 5.2.9.

5.2.5 *Call confirmation*

5.2.5.1 *Response to en-bloc SETUP or completion of overlap receiving*

When the user determines that sufficient call setup information has been received and compatibility requirements (see Annex B) have been satisfied, the user responds with either a CALL PROCEEDING, ALERTING, or CONNECT message (see Note 2), and enters the incoming call proceeding , call received, or connect request state, respectively.

Note 1 – The possibility of alternative responses (e.g. in connection with supplementary services) is for further study.

Note 2 – A progress indicator information element may be included in CALL PROCEEDING, ALERTING, and CONNECT message (e.g. when an analogue terminal is connected to an ISDN PABX). The CALL PROCEEDING message may be sent by the user which cannot respond to a SETUP message with an ALERTING, CONNECT, or RELEASE COMPLETE message before expiration of timer T303.

When the SETUP message was delivered via a broadcast data link, an incompatible user shall either:

a) ignore the incoming call; or,

b) respond by sending a RELEASE COMPLETE message with cause No. 88 *incompatible destination*, and enter the Null state. The network processes this RELEASE COMPLETE message in accordance with § 5.2.5.3.

When the SETUP message was delivered via a point-to-point data link, an incompatible user shall respond with a RELEASE COMPLETE message with cause No. 88 *incompatible destination.* The network processes this RELEASE COMPLETE message in accordance with § 5.2.5.3.

A busy user which satisfies the compatibility requirements indicated in the SETUP message shall normally respond with a RELEASE COMPLETE message with cause No. 17 *user busy.* The network processes this RELEASE COMPLETE message in accordance with § 5.2.5.3.

If the user wishes to refuse the call, a RELEASE COMPLETE message shall be sent with the cause No. 21 *call rejected*, and the user returns to the Null state. The network processes this RELEASE COMPLETE message in accordance with § 5.2.5.3.

5.2.5.2 *Receipt of CALL PROCeeding and ALERTing*

When the SETUP message is delivered on a broadcast data link, the network shall maintain a state machine that tracks the overall progression of the incoming call. The network shall also maintain an associated call state for each responding user as determined by the data link on which a message is received.

Upon receipt of the first CALL PROCEEDING message from a user (assuming no other user had previously responded with an ALERTING or CONNECT message when the SETUP message has been delivered on a broadcast data link), the network shall: stop timer T303 (or, in the case of overlap receiving, timer T304 for that user); start timer T310; and enter the incoming call proceeding state.

When the SETUP message has been delivered on a broadcast data link, the network shall (at a minimum) associate the incoming call proceeding state with each called user that sends a CALL PROCEEDING message as a first response to the broadcast SETUP message prior to expiration of timer T312. Actions to be taken when a user sends a first response to an incoming call after the expiration of timer T312 are described in § 5.2.5.4. Timer T310 shall not be restarted.

Upon receipt of the first ALERTING message from a user (assuming no other user has previously responded with a CONNECT message when the SETUP message has been delivered on a broadcast data link), the network shall: stop timer T304 for that user (in the case of overlap receiving); stop timer T303 or T310 (if running); start timer T301 (unless another internal alerting supervision timer function exists; e.g. incorporated in call control); enter the call received state; and send a corresponding ALERTING message to the calling user.

When the SETUP message has been delivered on a broadcast data link, the network shall (at a minimum) associate the call received state with each called user that sends an ALERTING message either as a first response to the broadcast SETUP message or following a CALL PROCEEDING message. Timer T304 shall not be restarted.

5.2.5.3 *Called user clearing during incoming call establishment*

If the SETUP message has been delivered on a point-to-point data link and a RELEASE COMPLETE or DISCONNECT message is received before a CONNECT message has been received, the network shall: stop timer T303, T304, T310 or T301 (if running); continue to clear the user as described in § 5.3.3, and clear the call to the calling user with the cause received in the RELEASE COMPLETE or DISCONNECT message.

If the SETUP message has been delivered on a broadcast data link and a RELEASE COMPLETE message is received whilst timer T303 is running, the message cause shall be retained by the network. If timer T303 expires (i.e. if no valid message such as CALL PROCEEDING, ALERTING or CONNECT has been received) the cause previously retained when a RELEASE COMPLETE message was received is sent back to the calling user in a DISCONNECT message and the network shall enter the call abort state. When multiple RELEASE COMPLETE messages are received with different causes, the network shall:

1) ignore any cause No. 88 *incompatible destination*; and,
2) give preference to the following causes (if received) in the order listed below:

   (highest) No. 17 *user busy*;

   No. 21 *call rejected*;
3) any other received cause may also be included in the clearing message sent to the originating user (see § 5.3).

If the SETUP message has been delivered on a broadcast data link and a user which has previously sent a SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE, CALL PROCEEDING or ALERTING message sends a DISCONNECT message to the network, the actions taken by the network depend on whether timer T312 is running and whether other called users have responded to the SETUP message.

Case 1 : DISCONNECT received prior to expiry of timer T312

If timer T312 is running and the network receives a DISCONNECT message after having received a SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE, CALL PROCEEDING or ALERTING message from a called user (but before receiving a CONNECT message), timer T312, as well as timer T310 or T301 (if running), should continue to run. The network shall retain the cause in the DISCONNECT message and shall continue to clear the user as described in § 5.3.3. The network shall stop timer T304 (if running) for this user.

Upon expiration of timer T312, if either:

a) no other users have responded to the incoming call; or
b) all users that have responded to the incoming call have been cleared or are in the process of being cleared:

the network shall stop timer T310 or T301 (if running) and shall clear the call to the calling user. If an ALERTING message has been received, the cause sent to the calling user shall be a cause received from the called user, giving preference to (in order of priority): No. 21 *call rejected*; any other cause sent by a called user. If only SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE, or CALL PROCEEDING messages have been received, the cause sent to the calling user shall be a cause received from the called user, giving preference to (in order of priority): No. 17 *user busy*; No. 21 *call rejected*; any other appropriate cause sent by a called user.

Case 2: DISCONNECT received after expiry of timer T312

If timer T312 has expired and the network receives a DISCONNECT message from the called user after having received a SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE, CALL PROCEEDING or ALERTING message (but before receiving a CONNECT message), the network shall continue to clear the user as described in § 5.3.3. The network shall stop timer T304 (if running) for this user.

If other called users have responded to the SETUP message with a SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE, CALL PROCEEDING or ALERTING message, and still have the opportunity to accept the call by sending a CONNECT message, the network shall retain the cause in the DISCONNECT message. The network shall continue to process the incoming call for the remaining responding users (T310 or T301, if running, shall continue to run).

If either:

a) no other users have responded to the incoming call; or

b) all users that have responded to the incoming call have been cleared or are in the process of being cleared:

the network shall stop timer T310 or T301 (if running) and shall clear the call to the calling user. If an ALERTING message has been received, the cause sent to the calling user shall be a cause received from the called user, giving preference to (in order of priority): No. 21 *call rejected*; or any other cause sent by a called user. If only SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE, or CALL PROCEEDING message have been received, the cause sent to the calling user shall be a cause received from the called user, giving preference to (in order of priority): No. 17 *user busy*; No. 21 *call rejected*; any other appropriate cause sent by a called user.

5.2.5.4 *Call failure*

If the network does not receive any response to the retransmitted SETUP message prior to the expiration of timer T303, then the network shall initiate clearing procedures towards the calling user with cause No. 18 *no user responding.*

a) If the SETUP message was delivered by a broadcast data link, the network shall enter the call abort state.

b) if the SETUP message was delivered on a point-to-point data link, the network shall also initiate clearing procedures towards the called user in accordance with § 5.3.4, using cause No. 102 *recovery on timer expiry.*

If the network receives a user's first response to SETUP when in the call abort state but before timer T312 has expired, the network shall initiate clearing to the called user as described in § 5.3.2 b), except that the cause No. 102 *recovery on timer expiry* shall be sent. If the network receives a message that is a user's first response to an incoming call after timer T312 has expired, the network will interpret this message as a message received with an invalid call reference value, as described in § 5.8.3.2.

If the network has received a CALL PROCEEDING message, but does not receive an ALERTING, CONNECT, or DISCONNECT message prior to the expiration of timer T310, then the network shall: initiate clearing procedures towards the calling user with cause No. 18 *no user responding*; and initiate clearing procedures towards the called user.

1) If the SETUP message was delivered by a broadcast data link, the called user shall be cleared in accordance with § 5.3.2 e), except that cause No. 102 *recovery on timer expiry* shall be sent.

2) If the SETUP message was delivered on a point-to-point data link, the called user shall be cleared in accordance with § 5.3.4 using cause No. 102 *recovery on timer expiry.*

If the network has received an ALERTING message, but does not receive a CONNECT or DISCONNECT message prior to the expiry of timer T301 (or a corresponding internal alerting supervision timing function), then the network shall: initiate clearing procedures towards the calling user with cause No. 19 *user alerting, no answer*; and initiate clearing procedures towards the called user.

i) If the SETUP message was delivered by a broadcast data link, the called user shall be cleared in accordance with § 5.3.2 e), except that cause No. 102 *recovery on timer expiry* shall be sent.

ii) If the SETUP message was delivered on a point-to-point data link, the called user shall be cleared in accordance with § 5.3.4 using cause No. 102 *recovery on timer expiry.*

5.2.6 *Notification of interworking at the terminating interface*

During call establishment, the call may enter an ISDN environment, e.g. because of interworking with another network, with a non-ISDN user, or with non-ISDN equipment within the calling or called user's premises. When this occurs, the point at which call enters an ISDN environment shall cause a progress indicator information element to be included in the SETUP message to be sent to the called user.

a) No. 1 *call is not end-to-end ISDN; further call progress information may be available in-band*;

   Note – On receipt of progress indicator No. 1, the called user shall connect to the B-channel in accordance with the procedures of § 5.2.8.

b) No. 3 *origination address is non-ISDN.*

In addition, the user shall notify the calling party if the call has left the ISDN environment within the called user's premises, or upon the availability of in-band information/patterns. When such situations occur, a progress indication shall be sent by the user to the network either:

1) in an appropriate call control message when a state change is required (SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE, CALL PROCEEDING, ALERTING or CONNECT); or
2) in the PROGRESS message when no state change is appropriate.

One of the following progress description values shall be included in the progress indicator information element in the message sent to the network (for further information, see Annex I):

i) No. 1 *call is not end-to-end ISDN; further call progress information may be available in-band*;

ii) No. 2 *destination address is non-ISDN*;

iii) No. 4 *call has returned to the ISDN.*

If the progress indicator information element is included in a call control message, the procedures as described in the rest of § 5.2 apply. If the progress indicator information element is included in the PROGRESS message, no state change will occur but any supervisory timers shall be stopped.

5.2.7 *Call accept*

A user indicates acceptance of an incoming call by sending a CONNECT message to the network. Upon sending the CONNECT message the user shall start timer T313 (the value of timer T313 is specified in § 9.2). If an ALERTING message had previously been sent to the network, the CONNECT message may contain only the call reference.

If a call can be accepted using the B-channel indicated in the SETUP message, and no user alerting is required, a CONNECT message may be sent without a previous ALERTING message.

Note – Further study is required on the need for means to avoid service degradation (e.g. speech clipping) on connections involving an NT2.

5.2.8 *Active indication*

On receipt of the first CONNect message, the network shall: stop (if running) timers T301, T303, T304 and T310; complete the circuit-switched path to the selected B-channel; send a CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message to the user which first accepted the call; initiate procedures to send a CONNECT message towards the calling user; and enter the active state.

The CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message indicates completion of the circuit-switched connection. There is no guarantee of an end-to-end connection until a CONNECT message is received at the calling user. Upon receipt of the CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message the user shall: stop timer T313 and enter the active state.

When timer T313 expires prior to receipt of a CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message, the user shall initiate clearing in accordance with § 5.3.3

A user which has received the SETUP via the broadcast data link, and has been awarded the call, shall connect to the B-channel only after it has received the CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message. Only the user that is awarded the call will receive the CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message.

A user which has received the SETUP via a point-to-point data link may connect to the B-channel as soon as channel selection has been completed.

5.2.9 *Non-selected user clearing*

In addition to sending the CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message to the user selected for the call, the network shall send RELEASE message [as described in § 5.3.2 b)] to all other users at the interface that have sent SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE, CALL PROCEEDING, ALERTING or CONNECT messages in response to the SETUP message. These RELEASE messages are used to notify the users that the call is no longer offered to them. The procedures described in § 5.3.4 are then followed. Any user which having previously sent a CONNECT message and started timer T313, and which subsequently receives a RELEASE message, shall stop timer T313 and follow the procedures of § 5.3.4.

5.3 *Call clearing*

5.3.1 *Terminology*

The following terms are used in this Recommendation in the description of clearing procedures:

- A channel is *connected* when the channel is part of a circuit-switched ISDN connection established according to this Recommendation.
- A channel is *disconnected* when the channel is no longer part of a circuit-switched ISDN connection, but is not yet available for use in a new connection.
- A channel is *released* when the channel is not part of a circuit-switched ISDN connection and is available for use in a new connection. Similarly, a call reference that is *released* is available for reuse.

5.3.2 *Exception conditions*

Under normal conditions, call clearing is usually initiated when the user or the network sends a DISCONNECT message and follows the procedures defined in §§ 5.3.3 and 5.3.4 respectively. The only exceptions to the above rule are as follows:

a) In response to a SETUP message, the user or network can reject a call (e.g. because of the unavailability of a suitable B-channel) by: responding with a RELEASE COMPLETE message provided no other response has previously been sent (e.g. the SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE message in the case of overlap sending); releasing the call reference; and enter the Null state.

b) In the case of a multipoint terminal configuration, non-selected user call clearing will be initiated with RELEASE message(s) from the network (see § 5.2.9). The RELEASE message shall contain cause No. 26 *non-selected user clearing.*

c) Clearing of temporary signalling connections will be initiated by sending a RELEASE message as described in §§ 5.3.3 and 5.3.4.

d) Unsuccessful termination of the B-channel selection procedure (see §§ 5.2.3.1 and 5.1.2) by the side offering the call is accomplished by sending a RELEASE message as described in §§ 5.3.3 and 5.3.4. The RELEASE message shall contain cause No. 6 *channel unacceptable.*

e) 1) In the case of a SETUP message sent via the broadcast data link, if a network disconnect indication is received during call establishment, and prior to the expiry of timer T312, timer T303 is stopped (if running) and the network enters the call abort state. Any user which has responded, or subsequently responds before timer T312 expires, will be cleared by a RELEASE message (with the cause code(s) contained in the network disconnect indication) and the procedures of § 5.3.4 are then followed for that user. Upon expiry of timer T312, the network shall treat any subsequent responses according to the procedures defined in § 5.8.3.2. The network shall enter the Null state upon completion of clearing procedures for all responding users.

   2) In the case of a SETUP message sent via the broadcast data link, if a network disconnect indication is received during call establishment after expiry of timer T312, any user which has responded shall be cleared by a RELEASE message (with the cause code(s) contained in the network disconnect indication) and the procedures of § 5.3.4 are then followed for that user. The network enters the Null state upon completion of clearing procedures for all responding users.

   Note – A separate state machine exists for each responding user.

f) When timer T318 expires, the user initiates internal call clearing by sending a RELEASE message with cause No. 102 *recovery on timer expiry*; starting timer T308; and continuing as described in § 5.3.3.

5.3.3 *Clearing initiated by the user*

Apart from the exceptions identified in §§ 5.3.2 and 5.8, the user shall initiate clearing by: sending a DISCONNECT message; starting timer T305 (the value of timer T305 is specified in § 9.2); disconnecting the B-channel; and entering the disconnect request state.

Note – When a user initiates call clearing by sending a RELEASE message, the procedures described in § 5.3.4 are then followed.

The network shall enter the disconnect request state upon receipt of a DISCONNECT message. This message then prompts the network to disconnect the B-channel, and to initiate procedures for clearing the network connection to the remote user. Once the B-channel used for the call has been disconnected, the network shall: send a RELEASE message to the user; start timer T308 (the value of a timer T.308 is specified in § 9.1); and enter the release request state.

Note – The RELEASE message has only local significance and does not imply an acknowledgement of clearing from the remote user.

On receipt of the RELEASE message the user shall: cancel timer T305; release the B-channel; send a RELEASE COMPLETE message; release the call reference; and return to the Null state. Following the receipt of a RELEASE COMPLETE message from the user, the network shall: stop timer T308; release both the B-channel and the call reference; and return to the Null state.

If timer T305 expires, the user shall: send a RELEASE message to the network with the cause number originally contained in the DISCONNECT message; start timer T308 and enter the release request state. In addition, the user may indicate a second cause information element with cause No. 102 *recovery on timer expiry.*

If timer T308 expires for the first time, the network shall: retransmit the RELEASE message and timer T308 shall be restarted. In addition, the network may indicate a second cause information element with cause No. 102 *recovery on timer expiry.* If no RELEASE COMPLETE message is received from the user before timer T308 expires a second time, the network shall: place the B-channel in a maintenance condition; release the call reference; and return to the Null state.

Note 1 – The restart procedures contained in § 5.5 may be used on B-channels in the maintenance condition.

Note 2 – Other actions which could be taken by the network upon receipt of a DISCONNECT message are for further study.

5.3.4 *Clearing initiated by the network*

Apart from the exception conditions identified in §§ 5.3.2 and 5.8, the network shall initiate clearing by: sending a DISCONNECT message; and entering the disconnect indication state. The DISCONNECT message is a local invitation to clear and does not imply that the B-channel has been disconnected at the user-network interface.

Note – When the network initiates clearing by sending a RELEASE message, the procedures described in § 5.3.3 are followed.

5.3.4.1 *Clearing when tones/announcements provided*

When in-band tones/announcements are provided (see § 5.4), the DISCONNECT message contains progress indicator No. 8 *in-band information or appropriate pattern now available.* The network shall: start timer T306; and enter the disconnect indication state.

On receipt of the DISCONNECT message with progress indicator No. 8, the user may: connect (if not already connected) to the B-channel to receive the in-band tone/announcement; and enter the disconnect indication state. Alternatively, to continue clearing without connecting to the in-band tone/announcement, the user shall: disconnect the B-channel; send a RELEASE message; start timer T308; and enter the release request state.

If the user connects to the provided in-band tone/announcement, the user may subsequently continue clearing (before the receipt of a RELEASE from the network) by: disconnecting from the B-channel; sending a RELEASE message; starting timer T308; and entering the release request state.

On receipt of the RELEASE message, the network shall: stop timer T306; disconnect and release the B-channel; send a RELEASE COMPLETE message; release the call reference; and return to the Null state.

If timer T306 expires, the network shall continue clearing by: disconnecting the B-channel; sending a RELEASE message with the cause number originally contained in the DISCONNECT message; starting timer T308; and entering the release request state.

In addition to the original clearing cause, the RELEASE message may contain a second cause information element with cause No. 102 *recovery on timer expiry*; this cause may optionally contain a diagnostic field identifying the timer that expired.

On receipt of the RELEASE message, the user shall act according to § 5.3.3.

5.3.4.2 *Clearing when tones/announcements not provided*

When in-band tones/announcements are *not* provided, the DISCONNECT message does *not* contain progress indicator No. 8 *in-band information or appropriate pattern now available.* The network shall initiate clearing by: sending the DISCONNECT message; start timer T305; disconnects the B-channel; and enters the disconnect indication state.

On the receipt of the DISCONNECT message without progress indicator No. 8, the user shall: disconnect the B-channel; send a RELEASE message; start timer T308; and enter the release request state.

On receipt of the RELEASE message, the network shall: stop timer T305; release the B-channel; send a RELEASE COMPLETE message; release the call reference; and return to the Null state.

If timer T305 expires, the network shall: send a RELEASE message to the user with the cause number originally contained in the DISCONNECT message; start timer T308; and enter the release request state. In addition to the original clearing cause, the RELEASE message may contain a second cause information element with cause No. 102 *recovery on timer expiry.*

5.3.4.3 *Completion of clearing*

Following the receipt of a RELEASE COMPLETE message from the network, the user shall: stop timer T308; release both the B-channel and the call reference; and return to the Null state.

If a RELEASE COMPLETE is not received by the user before the first expiry of timer T308, the RELEASE message shall be retransmitted and timer T308 shall be restarted. If no RELEASE COMPLETE message is received from the network before timer T308 expires a second time, the user may: place the B-channel in a maintenance condition; shall release the call reference; and return to the Null state.

Note – The restart procedures contained in § 5.5 may be used on B-channels in the maintenance condition.

5:3.5 *Clear collision*

Clear collision occurs when both the user and the network simultaneously DISSCONNECT messages specifying the same call reference value. When the network receives a DISSCONNECT message whilst in the disconnect indication state, the network shall: stop timer T305 or T306 (whichever is running); disconnect the B-channel (if not disconnected); send a RELEASE message; start timer T308; and enter the release request state. Similarly, when the user receives a DISCONNECT message whilst in the disconnect request state, the user shall: stop timer T305; send a RELEASE message; start timer T308; and enter the release request state.

Clear collision can also occur when both sides simultaneously transfer RELEASE messages related to the same call reference value. The entity receiving such a RELEASE message whilst within the release request state shall: stop timer T308; release the call reference and B-channel; and enter, if appropriate, the Null state (without sending or receiving a RELEASE COMPLETE message).

5.4 *In-band tones and announcements*

When in-band tones/announcements not associated with a call state change are to be provided by the network before reaching the active state, a PROGRESS message is returned simultaneously with the application of the in-band tone/announcement. The PROGRESS message contains the progress indicator No. 8 *in-band information or appropriate pattern is now available.*

When tones/announcements have to be provided together with a call state change, then the appropriate message (e.g. for ALERTING, DISCONNECT etc.; see appropriate section) with progress indicator No. 8 *in-band information or appropriate pattern is now available* is sent simultaneously with the application of the in-band tone/announcement.

Note 1 – When the network provides CCITT standardized telecommunications services, the service requirement for provision of in-band tones/announcements is as indicated in the I.200 Series of Recommendations.

Note 2 – When the PROGRESS message is used, the user may initiate call clearing as a result of the applied in-band tone/announcement, according to the procedures specified in § 5.3.3.

Note 3 – The protocol currently described in § 5.4 applies at the calling user-network interface. The protocol to be applied at the internetwork interface and at the called user-network interface requires further study.

5.5 *Restart procedure*

The restart procedure is used to return channels and interfaces to an idle condition. The procedure is usually invoked when the other side of the interface does not respond to other call control messages or a failure has occurred (e.g. following a data link failure, when a backup D-channel can be used; or following the expiry of timer T308 due to the absence of response to a clearing message).

Note – Layer 3 procedures and resources associated with those data links with SAPI = "0000 000" should be initialized by the restart procedures.

When:

a) both the user and the network are aware of the configuration of the interface; and

b) the interface is a basic access (Recommendation I.430 [46]) where a point-to-point configuration exists; or,

c) the interface is a primary rate access (Recommendation I.431 [27]);

then the user and the network shall implement the procedures of § 5.5. In all other cases, the procedures of § 5.5 are optional.

5.5.1 *Sending RESTART*

A RESTART message is sent by the network or user in order to return channels or interfaces to the Null state. The channel identification information element must be present in the RESTART message when a specified channel, or interface other than the one containing the D-channel, is to be returned to the idle condition. Absence of the channel identification information element indicates that the interface containing the D-channel is to be restarted.

Upon transmitting the RESTART message the sender enters the restart request state, starts timer T316, and waits for a RESTART ACKNOWLEDGE message. Receipt of a RESTART ACKNOWLEDGE message stops timer T316, frees the channels and call reference values for reuse, and enters the Null state.

If a RESTART ACKNOWLEDGE message is not received prior to expiry of timer T316 one or more subsequent RESTART messages may be sent until a RESTART ACKNOWLEDGE message is returned. Meanwhile, no calls shall be placed or accepted over the channel or interface by the originator of the RESTART message. A network shall limit the number of consecutive unsuccessful restart attempts to a default limit of two. When this limit is reached, the network shall make no further restart attempts. An indication will be provided to the appropriate maintenance entity. The channel or interface is considered to be in an out-of-service condition until maintenance action has been taken.

The RESTART and RESTART ACKNOWLEDGE message shall contain the global call reference value (all zero) to which the restart request state is associated. These messages are transferred via the appropriate point-to-point data link in the multiple frame mode using the DL-DATA-REQUEST primitive.

5.5.2 *Receipt of RESTART*

Upon receiving a RESTART message the recipient shall enter the restart state associated to the global call reference and start timer T317; it shall then initiate the appropriate internal actions to return the specified channels to the idle condition and call references to the Null state. Upon completion of internal clearing, timer T317 shall be stopped and a RESTART ACKNOWLEDGE message transmitted to the originator, and the Null state entered.

If timer T317 expires prior to completion of internal clearing an indication shall be sent to the maintenance entity (i.e. a primitive should be transmitted to the system management entity).

Note 1 – Even if all call references are in the Null state, and all channels are in the idle condition, the receiving entity shall transmit a RESTART ACKNOWLEDGE message to the originator upon receiving a RESTART message.

Note 2 – If the RESTART message is sent by a user, the network shall return to the Null state only those Q.931 calls which are:

a) associated with the data link connection endpoint identifier (DLCI; see Recommendation Q.920); and

b) which correspond to the specified channel(s) or interface.

5.6 *Call rearrangements*

The elements of procedure in this section provide for physical layer and/or data link layer rearrangements after a call has entered the active state as defined in § 2.2.1.5. The procedure is restricted to use on the same interface structure, and resumption on the same B-channel.

The activation of this procedure at a user-network interface may correspond to a number of possible events such as the following:

a) physical disconnection of user equipment and reconnection;

b) physical replacement of one user equipment by another;

c) the human user moves from one equipment to another;

d) suspension of call and its subsequent reactivation at the same user equipment.

These procedures have only local significance; i.e. the invocation of call rearrangement affects only states at the originating end, and it does not affect any terminating states.

The procedures in this section are described in terms of functional messages and information elements.

If the procedures for call suspension in this section are not followed prior to the physical disconnection of the terminal from the interface, then the integrity of the call cannot be guaranteed by the network.

5.6.1 *Call suspension*

The procedure is initiated by the user, who shall: send a SUSPEND message containing the current call reference; start timer T319; and enter the suspend request state. The user may optionally include in this message a bit sequence (e.g. IA5 characters) to be known by the application or human user, and by the network, as the call identity for subsequent reconnection. Where no call identity information is included by the user, (e.g. the call identity information element is absent or empty) the network shall store this fact so that resumption is possible only by a procedure conveying no call identity information.

Note – If the call identity information element is present with a null length, the message shall be handled as if it was absent.

The default maximum length of the call identity value within the call identity information element is eight octets. If the network receives a call identity value longer than the maximum length supported, the network shall truncate the call identity value to the maximum length; take the action specified in § 5.8.7 and continue processing.

5.6.2 *Call suspended*

Following the receipt of a SUSPEND message the network enters the suspend request state. After a positive validation of the received call identity the network shall: send a SUSPEND ACKNOWLEDGE message; and start timer T307. (The value of T307 is specified in § 9.1.)

At this time, the network shall consider the call reference to be released and enter the Null state for that call reference. The call identity associated with the suspended call has to be stored by the network and cannot be accepted for another suspension until it is released.

The B-channel involved in the connection will be reserved by the network until reconnection of the call (or until a clearing cause occurs, e.g. expiry of timer T307). A NOTIFY message with notification indicator No. 0 (user suspended) is sent to the other user.

When the user receives the SUSPEND ACKNOWLEDGE message, the user shall: stop timer T319; release the B-channel and call reference; and enter the Null state.

Following the receipt of the SUSPEND ACKNOWLEDGE, the user may disconnect the underlying data link connection. In any case, if the user physically disconnects from the interface without having disconnected the data link connection, standard data link layer procedures are started by the network side of the data link layer supervision, resulting in the release of the data link layer connection.

5.6.3 *Call suspend error*

On receipt of a SUSPEND message, the network will respond by sending a SUSPEND REJECT message with cause No. 84 *call identity in use* if the information contained in the SUSPEND message is not sufficient to avoid ambiguities on subsequent call re-establishment. This will apply, in particular, when at a given user-network interface, a SUSPEND message is received with a call identity sequence already in use, or when the SUSPEND message does not contain any call identity sequence and the null-value call identity is already allocated for that interface. On receipt of the SUSPEND REJECT message, the user shall: stop timer T319; and return to the active state. If timer T319 expires, the user shall: notify the user application; and return to the active state.

In these cases the state of the call is not altered within the network (i.e. it remains in the active state).

5.6.4 *Call re-establishment*

At the connection end where suspension was initiated, the user may request re-establishment of a call after physical reconnection of a terminal by sending a RESUME message containing the call identity exactly as that used at the time of call suspension; starting timer T318; and entering the resume request state. If the SUSPEND message did not include a call identity information element, then the corresponding RESUME message shall also not include a call identity information element. The call reference included in the RESUME message is chosen by the user according to the normal allocation of outgoing call reference (see § 4.3).

On receipt of a RESUME message, the network enters the resume request state. After a positive validation of the call identity that relates to the suspended call containing a valid identity that relates to a currently suspended call, the network shall: send a RESUME ACKNOWLEDGE message to the user; release the call identity; stop timer T307 and enter the active state. The RESUME ACKNOWLEDGE message shall specify the B-channel reserved to the call by the network by means of the channel identification element, coded *B-channel is indicated, no alternative is acceptable.*

The network shall also send a NOTIFY message with the notification indicated *user resumed* to the other user.

No memory of the previously received call identity sequence is kept by the network after sending the RESUME ACKNOWLEDGE message. This call identity is now available for another suspension.

On receipt of the RESUME ACKNOWLEDGE message, the user shall: stop timer T318 and enter the active state.

5.6.5 *Call resume errors*

If a received RESUME message cannot be actioned by the network (e.g. as a result of an unknown call identity, a RESUME REJECT message shall be returned to the requesting user indicating one of the following causes:

a) No. 83 *a suspended call exists, but this call identity does not*;

b) No. 85 *no call suspended*; or,

c) No. 86 *call having the requested call identity has been cleared.*

The call identity remains unknown. The call reference contained in the RESUME message is released by both the user and network side. Upon receipt of the RESUME REJECT message the user shall: stop timer T318; and enter the Null state.

If timer T307 expires the network shall initiate clearing of the network connection with cause No. 102 *recovery on timer expiry*; discard the call identity; and release the reserved B-channel.

On release, the call identity can then be used for subsequent call suspension. If before the expiry of timer T307 the call is cleared by the remote user, the B-channel reservation is released but the call identity may be preserved by some networks along with a clearing cause (e.g. cause No. 16 *normal clearing*).

If timer T318 expires, the user shall initiate internal call clearing with cause No. 102 *recovery on timer expiry*, in accordance with § 5.3.2 f).

5.6.6 *Double suspension*

Simultaneous suspension of the call at both ends is possible. The procedures do not prevent this from occurring. If double suspensions are not desired the users must protect against this by other means; e.g. higher layer negotiation protocols.

5.6.7 *Call re-arrangement notification controlled by an NT2*

When the call rearrangement is controlled by the NT2, the procedures shall be applied by the NT2 at reference point S. The NT2 shall inform the remote user by sending a NOTIFY message described in §§ 5.6.2 and 5.6.4 across reference point T.

5.7 *Call collisions*

Call collisions as such cannot occur at the network. Any simultaneous incoming or outgoing calls are dealt with separately and assigned different call references.

Channel selection conflicts may occur if an incoming call and outgoing call select the same channel. This is resolved by the network through channel selection mechanisms described in §§ 5.1.2 and 5.2.2.

In the case of such conflicts, the network shall give priority to the incoming call over the call request received from the user. It shall clear the outgoing call whenever the B-channel cannot be allocated by the network or accepted by the user originating the call.

Note – Some terminal adaptors supporting existing non-voice terminals (e.g. X.21) may need to resolve double channel selection by clearing the incoming call and reattempting the outgoing call setup in order to satisfy the requirements of the interface at reference point R.

5.8 *Handling of error conditions*

All procedures transferring signalling information by using the protocol discriminator of Q.931 user-network call control messages are applicable only to those messages which pass the checks described in §§ 5.8.1 through 5.8.7.

Detailed error handling procedures are implementation dependent and may vary from network to network. However, capabilities facilitating the orderly treatment of error conditions are provided for in this section and shall be provided in each implementation.

Paragraphs 5.8.1 through 5.8.7 are listed in order of precedence.

5.8.1 *Protocol discrimination error*

When a message is received with a protocol discriminator coded other than *Q.931 user-network call control message*, that message shall be ignored. "Ignore" means to do nothing, as if the message had never been received.

5.8.2 *Message too short*

When a message is received that is too short to contain a complete message type information element, that message shall be ignored.

5.8.3 *Call reference error*

5.8.3.1 *Invalid call reference format*

If the call reference information element octet 1, bits 5 through 8 do not equal 0000, then the message shall be ignored.

If the call reference information element octet 1, bits 1 through 4 indicate a length greater than the maximum length supported by the receiving equipment (see § 4.3), then the message shall be ignored.

5.8.3.2 *Call reference procedural errors*

a) Whenever any message except SETUP, RELEASE, RELEASE COMPLETE, STATUS or RESUME is received specifying a call reference which is not recognized as relating to an active call or to a call in progress, clearing is initiated by sending a RELEASE message with cause No. 81 *invalid call reference value* and following the procedures in § 5.3, specifying the call reference in the received message.

   Alternatively, the receiving entity may send a RELEASE COMPLETE message with cause No. 81 *invalid call reference value* and remain in the Null state.

b) When a RELEASE message is received that specified a call reference which is not recognized as relating to an active call or to a call in progress, a RELEASE message with cause No. 81 *invalid call reference value* is returned specifying the call reference in the received message.

c) When a RELEASE COMPLETE message is received specifying a call reference which is not recognized as relating to an active call or to a call in progress, no action should be taken.

d) When a SETUP or RESUME message is received spcifying a call reference which is not recognized as relating to an active call or to a call in progress, and with a call reference flag incorrectly set to "1", this message shall be ignored.

e) When a SETUP message is received specifying a call reference which is recognized as relating to an active call or to a call in progress, this SETUP message shall be ignored.

f) When any message except RESTART, RESTART ACKNOWLEDGE, or STATUS is received using the global call reference, no action should be taken on this message and a STATUS message using the global call reference with a call state indicating the current state associated with the global call reference and cause No. 81 *invalid call reference* shall be returned.

g) When a STATUS message is received specifying a call reference which is not recognized as relating to an active call or to a call in progress, the procedures of § 5.8.11 shall apply.

5.8.4 *Message type or message sequence errors*

Whenever an unexpected message, except RELEASE or RELEASE COMPLETE, or unrecognized message is received in any state other than the Null state, a STATUS message shall be returned with cause No. 98 *message not compatible with call state or message type non-existent or not implemented* and the corresponding diagnostic. If a network or user can distinguish between unimplemented (or non-existent) message types and implemented message types which are incompatible with the call state, then a STATUS message may be sent with one of the following causes:

a) cause No. 97 *message type non-existent or not implemented*; or,

b) cause No. 101 *message not compatible with call state.*

Alternatively, a STATUS ENQUIRY message may be sent requesting the call state of the entity (see § 5.8.10). No change in state shall be made in either case at this time.

However, two exceptions to this procedure exist. The first exception is when the network or the user receives an unexpected RELEASE message (e.g. if the DISCONNECT message was corrupted by undetected transmission errors). In this case no STATUS or STATUS ENQUIRY message is sent. Whenever the network receives an unexpected RELEASE message, the network shall: disconnect and release the B-channel; clear the network connection and the call to the remote user with the cause in the RELEASE message sent by the user or, if not included, cause No. 31 *normal, unspecified*; return a RELEASE COMPLETE message to the user; release the call reference; stop all timers; and enter the Null state. Whenever the user receives an unexpected RELEASE message, the user shall: disconnect and release the B-channel; return a RELEASE COMPLETE message to the network; release the call reference; stop all timers; and enter the Null state.

The second exception is when the network or the user receives an unexpected RELEASE COMPLETE message. Whenever the network receives an unexpected RELEASE COMPLETE message, the network shall: disconnect and release the B-channel; clear the network connection and the call to the remote user with the cause indicated by the user or, if not included, cause No. 111 *protocol error, unspecified*; release the call reference; stop all timers; and enter the Null state. Whenever the user receives an unexpected RELEASE COMPLETE message, the user shall: disconnect and release the B-channel; release the call reference; stop all timers; and enter the Null state.

5.8.5 *General information element errors*

The general information element error procedures may also apply to information elements in codesets other than 0. In that case, the diagnostics in the cause information element may indicate information elements other than those in codeset 0 by applying the locking or non-locking shift procedures as described in § 4.5.

5.8.5.1 *Information element out of sequence*

A variable length information element which has a code value lower than the code value of the variable length information element preceding it shall be considered as an out of sequence information element.

If the network or user receives a message containing an out of sequence information element, it may ignore this information element and continue to process the message. If this information is mandatory, and the network or user chooses to ignore this out of sequence information element, then the error handling procedure for missing mandatory information elements as described in § 5.8.6.1 shall be followed. If the ignored information element is non-mandatory, the receiver continues to process the message.

Note – Some implementations may choose to process all the information elements received in a message regardless of the order in which they are placed.

5.8.5.2 *Duplicated information elements*

If an information element is repeated in a message in which repetition of the information element is not permitted, only the contents of information element appearing first shall be handled and all subsequent repetitions of the information element shall be ignored. When repetition of information elements is permitted, only the contents of permitted information elements shall be handled. If the limit on repetition of information elements is exceeded, the contents of information elements appearing first up to the limit of repetitions shall be handled and all subsequent repetitions of the information element shall be ignored.

5.8.6 *Mandatory information element errors*

5.8.6.1 *Mandatory information element missing*

When a message other than SETUP, DISCONNECT, RELEASE or RELEASE COMPLETE is received which has one or more mandatory information elements missing, no action should be taken on the message and no state change should occur. A STATUS message is then returned with cause No. 96 *mandatory information element is missing.*

When a SETUP or RELEASE message is received which has one or more mandatory information elements missing, a RELEASE COMPLETE message with cause No. 96 *mandatory information element is missing* shall be returned.

When a DISCONNECT message is received with the cause information element missing, the actions taken shall be the same as if a DISCONNECT message with cause No. 31 *normal, unspecified* was received (see § 5.3), with the exception that the RELEASE message sent on the local interface contains cause No. 96 *mandatory information element is missing.*

When a RELEASE COMPLETE message is received with a cause information element missing, it will be assumed that a RELEASE COMPLETE message was received with cause No. 31 *normal, unspecified.*

5.8.6.2 *Mandatory information element content error*

When a message other than SETUP, DISCONNECT, RELEASE, or RELEASE COMPLETE is received which has one or more mandatory information elements with invalid content, no action should be taken on the message and no state change should occur. A STATUS message is then returned with cause No. 100 *invalid information element contents.*

When a SETUP or RELEASE message is received which has one or more mandatory information elements with invalid content, a RELEASE COMPLETE message with cause No. 100 *invalid information element contents* shall be returned.

When a DISCONNECT message is received with invalid content of the cause information element, the actions taken shall be the same as if a DISCONNECT message with cause No. 31 *normal, unspecified* was received (see § 5.3), with the exception that the RELEASE message sent on the local interface contains cause No. 100 *invalid information element contents.*

When a RELEASE COMPLETE message is received with invalid content of the cause information element, it will be assumed that a RELEASE COMPLETE message was received with cause No. 31 *normal, unspecified.*

Information elements with a length exceeding the maximum length (given in § 3) will be treated as information element with content error.

5.8.7 *Non-mandatory information element errors*

The following sections identify actions on information elements not recognized as mandatory.

5.8.7.1 *Unrecognized information element*

When a message is received which has one or more unrecognized information elements, the receiving entity shall check whether any are encoded to indicate *comprehension required* (refer to Table 4-3/Q.931 for information element identifiers reserved with this meaning). If any unrecognized information element is encoded to indicate "comprehension required", then the procedures in § 5.8.6.1 are followed; i.e. as if a "missing mandatory information element" error condition had occurred. If all unrecognized information elements are *not* encoded to indicate "comprehension required", then the receiving entity shall proceed as follows:

Action shall be taken on the message and those information elements which are recognized and have valid content. When the received message is other than DISCONNECT, RELEASE or RELEASE COMPLETE, a STATUS message may be returned containing one cause information element. The STATUS message indicates the call state in which the receiver detected the error. The cause information element shall contain cause No. 99 *information element non-existent or not implemented*, and the diagnostic field, if present, shall contain the information element identifier for each information element which was unrecognized.

Subsequent actions are determined by the sender of the unrecognized information elements. If a clearing message contains one or more unrecognized information elements, the error is reported to the local user in the following manner:

a) When a DISCONNECT message is received which has one or more unrecognized information elements, a RELEASE message with cause No. 99, *information element non-existent or not implemented*, shall be returned. The cause information element diagnostic field, if present, shall contain the information element identifier for each information element which was unrecognized.

b) When a RELEASE message is received which has one or more unrecognized information elements, a RELEASE COMPLETE message with cause No. 99, *information element non-existent or not implemented*, shall be returned. The cause information element diagnostic field, if present, shall contain the information element identifier for each information element which was unrecognized.

c) When a RELEASE COMPLETE message is received which has one or more unrecognized information elements, no action shall be taken on the unrecognized information.

Note – The diagnostic(s) of cause No. 99 facilitates the decision in selecting an appropriate recovery procedure at the reception of a STATUS message. Therefore, it is recommended to provide cause No. 99 with diagnostic(s) if a layer 3 entity expects the peer to take an appropriate action at the receipt of a STATUS message, although inclusion of diagnostic(s) is optional.

5.8.7.2 *Non-mandatory information element content error*

When a message is received which has one or more non-mandatory information elements with invalid content, action shall be taken on the message and those information elements which are recognized and have valid content. A STATUS message may be returned containing one cause information element. The STATUS message indicates the call state in which the receiver detected the error. The cause information element shall contain cause No. 100 *invalid information element contents*, and the diagnostic field, if present, shall contain the information element identifier for each information element which has invalid contents.

Information elements with a length exceeding the maximum length (given in § 3) will be treated as an information element with content error. But for access information elements (see Annex G; e.g. user-user information element, called party subaddress information element), cause No. 43 *access information discarded* is used instead of cause No. 100 *invalid information element contents*. However, in some networks, access information elements may be truncated and processed.

5.8.8 *Data link reset*

Whenever a Q.931 entity is informed of a spontaneous data link layer reset by means of the DL-ESTABLISH-INDICATION primitive, the following procedures apply:

a) For calls in the overlap sending and overlap receiving states, the entity shall initiate clearing by sending a DISCONNECT message with cause No. 41 *temporary failure*, and following the procedures of § 5.3.

b) For calls in the disestablishment phase (states N11, N12, N19, N22, U11, U12 and U19), no action shall be taken.

c) Calls in the establishment phase (states N1, N3, N4, N6, N7, N8, N9, U1, U3, U4, U6, U7, U8 and U9) and in the active, suspend request, and resume request states shall be maintained according to the procedures contained in other parts of § 5.

5.8.9 *Data link failure*

Whenever a Q.931 entity is notified by its data link entity via the DL-RELEASE-INDICATION primitive that there is a data link layer malfunction, the following procedure shall apply:

a) The calls in the overlap sending or overlap receiving states shall be cleared internally. For any call without a timer running (see § 9), a timer T309 shall be started.

   Note – If timer T309 is already running, it shall not be restarted.

b) The Q.931 entity may request layer 2 reestablishment by sending a DL-ESTABLISH-REQUEST primitive if a call is not in the Null state. Otherwise, the Q.931 entity may clear internally.

   Note – If the transfer mode of the call is circuit-mode, the Q.931 entity may clear the calls. If the transfer mode of the call is packet-mode and layer 1 is recognized as normal in spite of the data link failure, the Q.931 entity shall not clear the call and shall request data link reestablishment.

   When informed of layer 2 reestablishment by means of the DL-ESTABLISH-CONFIRM primitive, the following procedure shall apply:

   1) Stop timer T309.

   2) Optionally, a STATUS message may also be sent to report the current call state to the peer entity. Alternatively, a STATUS ENQUIRY message can be sent to verify the call state of the peer entity.

   If timer T309 expires prior to data link reestablishment, the network shall: clear the network connection and call to the remote user with cause No. 27 *destination out of order*; disconnect and release the B-channel; release the call reference; and enter the Null state.

When a backup D-channel is available, the procedures in Annex F may be used.

Note – The implementation of timer T309 in the user side is optional. If timer T309 expires prior to data link reestablishment, the user shall: clear an attached connection (if any) with cause No. 27 *destination out of order*; disconnect and release the B-channel; release the call reference; and enter the Null state.

5.8.10 *Status enquiry procedure*

Whenever an entity wishes to check the correctness of a call state at a peer entity, a STATUS ENQUIRY message may be sent requesting the call state. This may, in particular, apply to procedural error conditions described in §§ 5.8.8 and 5.8.9.

Upon sending the STATUS ENQUIRY message, timer T322 shall be started in anticipation of receiving a STATUS message. While timer T322 is running, only one outstanding request for call state information shall exist. Therefore, if timer T322 is already running, it shall not be restarted. If a clearing message is received before timer T322 expires, timer T322 shall be stopped, and call clearing shall continue.

Upon receipt of a STATUS ENQUIRY message, the receiver shall respond with a STATUS message, reporting the current call state and cause No. 30 *response to STATUS ENQUIRY* or No. 97 *message type non-existent or not implemented* (see § 5.8.4). Receipt of the STATUS ENQUIRY message does not result in a state change.

The sending or receipt of the STATUS message in such a situation will not directly affect the call state of either the sender or receiver. The side having received the STATUS message shall inspect the cause information element. If the STATUS message contains cause No. 97 *message type non-existent or not implemented*, timer T322 shall continue to time for an explicit response to the STATUS ENQUIRY message. If a STATUS message is received that contains cause No. 30 *response to status enquiry*, timer T322 shall be stopped and the appropriate actiont taken, based on the information in that STATUS message, relative to the current state of the receiver. If timer T322 expires and a STATUS message with cause No. 97 *message type non-existent or not implemented* was received, the appropriate action shall be taken, based on the information in that STATUS message, relative to the current call state of the receiver.

These further *appropriate actions* are implementation dependent. However, the actions prescribed in the following section shall apply.

If timer T322 expires, and no STATUS message was received, the STATUS ENQUIRY message may be retransmitted one or more times until a response is received. The number of times the STATUS ENQUIRY message is retransmitted as an implementation dependent value. The call shall be cleared to the local interface with cause No. 41, *temporary failure*, if the STATUS ENQUIRY is retransmitted the maximum number of times. If appropriate, the network shall also clear the network connection, using cause No. 41, *temporary failure.*

5.8.11 *Receiving a STATUS message*

On receipt of a STATUS message reporting an incompatible state, the receiving entity shall:

a) clear the call by sending the appropriate clearing message with cause No. 101 *message not compatible with call state*; or,

b) take other actions which attempt to cover from a mismatch and which are an implementation option.

Except for the following rules, the determination of which states are incompatible is left as an implementation decision:

a) If a STATUS message indicating any call state except the Null state is received in the Null state, then the receiving entity shall either:

   1) send a RELEASE message with cause No. 101 *message not compatible with call state*; and then follow the procedures of § 5.3; or,

   2) send a RELEASE COMPLETE message with cause No. 101 *message not compatible with call state*; and remain in the Null state.

b) If a STATUS message indicating any call state except the Null state is received in the release request state, no action shall be taken.

c) If a STATUS message, indicating the Null state, is received in any state except the Null state, the receiver shall release all resources and move into the Null state.

When in the Null state, the receiver of a STATUS message indicating the Null state shall take no action other than to discard the message and shall remain in the Null state.

A STATUS message may be received indicating a compatible call state but containing one of the following causes:

i) No. 96 *mandatory information element is missing*;

ii) No. 97 *message type non-existing or not implemented;*

iii) No. 99 *information element non-existent or not implemented*; or

iv) No. 100 *invalid information element contents.*

In this case the actions to be taken are an implementation option. If other procedures are not defined, the receiver shall clear the call with the appropriate procedure defined in § 5.3, using the cause specified in the received STATUS message.

On receipt of a STATUS message specifying the global call reference and reporting an incompatible state in the restart request or restart state, the receiving Q.931 entity shall inform layer management and take no further action on this message.

When in the null state, then on receipt of a STATUS message with the global call reference no action shall be taken.

Note – Further actions as a result of higher layer activity (e.g. system or layer management) and implementation dependent (including the retransmission of RESTART).

Except for the above case, the error handling procedures when receiving a STATUS message specifying the global call reference are an implementation option.

5.9 *User notification procedure*

This procedure allows the network to notify a user of any appropriate call-related event during the active state of a call. It also allows a user to notify the remote user of any appropriate call-related event during the active state of a call by sending a NOTIFY message containing a notify indicator to the network; upon receipt of this message, the network must send a NOTIFY message containing the same notify indicator to the other user involved in the call. No state change occurs at any of the interface sides following the sending or the receipt of this message.

6 Packet communications procedures

This section is intended to explain the role of the D-channel signalling procedures in the support of packet communications in an ISDN. A complete description of terminal adaptor functions can be found in Recommendation X.31.

According to Recommendation X.31, the user may access packet facilities by means of one of the following alternatives:

a) circuit-switched access to PSPDN services (Case A)

   by establishing a transparent circuit-switched access connection through the ISDN to the access port of a public network (e.g., PSPDN) referred to as "access unit (AU)" in the following sections. This connection may be initiated by the user or the AU. From the ISDN point of view, the circuit-switched call control procedures of § 5 apply. Only the B-channel is used in this case.

b) packet-switched access to an ISDN virtual circuit service (Case B)

   by establishing a packet-mode access connection to the packet handler (PH) of an ISDN. This connection may be initiated by the user or the ISDN. Both B- and D-channels may be used in this case.

The protocol and the text of §§ 6.1 to 6.5 and Appendix II of Recommendation Q.931, and §§ 6.1 to 6.5 and Appendix III of Recommendation X.31[14], are identical.

The term "user" refers to the user equipment which may consist of an ISDN packet-mode terminal (TE1) or a combination of an existing data terminating equipment (DTE/TE2) attached to a terminal adaptor (TA). A DTE may not receive all of the information provided in Q.931 signalling messages at the user-network interface.

The ISDN TA/TE1 presents an S/T-interface towards the network and therefore the TA/TE1 implementation should embody the procedures described in Recommendation Q.921 [3] and this Recommendation for B- and D-channel connection establishment and control.

For demand access connections, §§ 6.1 through 6.4 apply. Example message flows for demand access connections are shown in Appendix II.

Two types of semi-permanent connection on B- and D-channels are covered in this section:

1) physical layer semi-permanently established between the terminal and the PH/AU, i.e., the I.430/I.431 physical layer remains activated and the physical path through the ISDN is connected semi-permanently; and
2) data link and physical layers semi-permanently established between the terminal and the PH/AU (in this type, the network shall keep the data link layer in the established state).

When a PVC is used, there must exist a type 2) semi-permanent connection.

In semi-permanent connection type 1), the procedures of § 6.3 are followed for call establishment and release.

In semi-permanent connection type 2), only the procedures of § 6.3.2 are followed for call establishment and release.

When semi-permanent connection type 2) is used for PVCs, none of the following procedures apply.

Semi-permanent connections are established via a provisioning process without Q.931 procedures.

6.1 *Outgoing access*

If the user selects an already established channel for the outgoing virtual call, then the procedures described in § 6.3 apply. If the selected channel is not established to the AU/PH, then the procedures for activating a channel described in the following subsections are to be used before establishing the virtual call using the procedures of § 6.3.

For outgoing data calls, the user first must decide whether the circuit-switched (Case A) or packet switched services (Case B) are desired from the network. For outgoing circuit calls, the user follows the procedures of § 6.1.1. For outgoing packet calls, a user decides whether B-channel or D-channel is to be used for the packet call. If the user decides to use the B-channel, then the procedures described in § 6.1.2.1 are used. If the user decides to use the D-channel, then the procedures described in § 6.1.2.2 are used.

Note – Some networks may not support every type of access. In the case of B-channel access, the network will clear a request for unsupported services by sending a RELEASE COMPLETE message with cause No. 65, *bearer capability not implemented.* In the case of a request for D-channel access (an SABME with SAPI = 16), on a network port which does not support the service, no response is required of the network.

6.1.1 *Circuit-switched access to PSPDN services (Case A)*

The B-channel connection between the user and the AU shall be controlled using the D-channel signalling procedures for call establishment described in § 5.1. The specific B-channel to be used as a switched connection is selected using the channel selection procedures described in § 5.1.2 and summarized in Table 6-1/Q.931.

TABLE 6-1/Q.931

User requested channel and network response. Outgoing access to either an AU or PH

Channel indicated in the SETUP message user to network direction			Allowable network response (network-user)
Channel indication	Preferred or exclusive	D-channel indication	
Bi	Exclusive	No	Bi
	Preferred	No	Bi, Bi′
Any	(Ignore)	No	Bi′
(Absent)			Bi′

Bi the indicated (idle) B-channel

Bi′ any (other) idle B-channel

Note 1 – All other encodings are invalid.

Note 2 – All columns under the heading "Channel indicated in the SETUP message" indicate possible user codings of the Channel identification information element contained in the SETUP message sent by the user to the network requesting a connection to an AU or PH (see § 4.5.13). The column under "Allowable network response" refers to the allowable responses by the network to the user.

On the basis of the call set-up information (e.g. Called party number identifying an AU, Transit network selection, etc.) and/or a subscription time agreement, the network provides a connection to the appropriate AU. The Bearer capability information element included in the SETUP message shall be coded with:

- information transfer capability set to either:
  - a) *unrestricted digital information*; or
  - b) *restricted digital information*;
- transfer mode set to *circuit mode*;
- information rate set to *64 kbit/s.*

Note – Bearer capability information element octets 4a and 4b shall not be included.

The user may also specify the layer 1 (e.g., rate adaption), layer 2 (i.e., LAPB), and layer 3 (i.e., X.25) information transfer protocols in the low layer compatibility information element in the SETUP message (see Annex L).

6.1.2 *Access to the ISDN virtual circuit service (Case B)*

6.1.2.1 *B-channel*

Demand access B-channel connections are controlled using the D-channel signalling procedures for call establishment described in § 5.1 using the messages defined in § 3.2 with the following exceptions:

a) the procedures for overlap sending specified in § 5.1.3 do not apply;

b) the procedures for call proceeding and overlap sending specified in § 5.1.5.2 do not apply;

c) the procedures for notification of interworking at the origination interface specified in § 5.1.6 do not apply;

d) the procedures for call confirmation indication specified in § 5.1.7 do not apply;

e) the procedures for call connection specified in § 5.1.8 apply as follows:

   – upon accepting the access connection, the network shall send a CONNECT message across the user-network interface to the calling user and enter the Active state;

   – this message indicates to the calling user that an access connection to the packet handler has been established;

   – on receipt of the CONNECT message, the calling user may optionally send a CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message, and shall enter the Active state;

f) the procedures for call rejection specified in § 5.1.9 apply as follows:

   – when unable to accept the access connection, the network shall initiate call clearing at the originating user-network interface as described in § 5.3;

g) the procedures for transit network selection specified in § 5.1.10 do not apply.

The specific B-channel to be used as a demand connection is selected using the channel selection procedures described in § 5.1.2 and summarized in Table 6-1/Q.931.

For a demand connection to an ISDN PH, the Bearer capability information element included in the SETUP message shall be coded with:

– information transfer capability set to *unrestricted digital information*;

– transfer mode set to *packet mode*;

– information transfer rate set to 00000;

– user information layer 2 protocol set to *Recommendation X.25, link layer*;

– user information layer 3 protocol set to *Recommendation X.25, packet layer.*

Note – Octets 4a, 4b, 5a, 5b, 5c and 5d shall not be included.

The demand access connection can then be used to suport packet communications according to X.25 link layer and X.25 packet layer procedures as specified in § 6.3.

6.1.2.2 *D-channel*

The D-channel provides a connection which enables the ISDN user terminal to access a PH function within the ISDN by establishing a link layer connection (SAPI = 16) to that function which can then be used to support packet communications according to X.25 layer 3 procedures as defined in § 6.3. The X.25 packet layer uses the acknowledged information transfer service (i.e., I-frames) provided by LAPD (see Recommendation Q.920 [45]). Consequently, Q.931 procedures are not required to provide D-channel access.

A number of packet mode user equipment can operate simultaneously over the D-channel, each using a separate layer 2 data link identified by an appropriate address (see Recommendation Q.921) in frames transferred between the user and PH.

6.2 *Incoming access*

6.2.1 *Access from PSPDN services (Case A)*

The ISDN signals the establishment of the circuit-mode connection using the procedures described in § 5.2. The virtual calls are signalled between the user and the AU using the procedures described in § 6.3.

6.2.1.1 *General*

The general procedures performed by the AU are those defined in Recommendation X.32.

6.2.1.2 *Channel selection*

If the physical circuit desired by the AU does not exist between the terminal and the AU, the procedures for physical channel establishment described in the following sections apply.

The format of the SETUP message sent by the network to the user is in accordance with § 3.1.

The bearer capability information element included in the SETUP message shall be coded with:

- information transfer capability set to either:
  - a) *unrestricted digital information*; or
  - b) *restricted digital information*;
- transfer mode set to *circuit mode*;
- information rate set to *64 kbit/s.*

Note – Bearer capability information element octets 4a and 4b shall not be included.

The Channel identification information element shall be coded according to Table 6-2/Q.931.

TABLE 6-2/Q.931

Network requested channel and user response. Incoming access from an AU

Channel indicated in the SETUP message network to user direction			Allowable user response (user-network)	
Channel indication	Preferred or exclusive	D-channel indication		
Bi	Exclusive	No	Bi	
Bi	Preferred	No	Bi, Bi′	Note 1

Bi indicated (idle) B-channel

Bi′ any other idle B-channel (not permitted for broadcast call offering)

Note 1 – This encoding is not used for broadcast call offering.

Note 2 – All other encodings are invalid.

The B-channel connection to the called user shall be established by the network using the signalling procedures described in § 5.2. The call is offered by sending the SETUP message on a point-to-point data link or on the broadcast data link.

The user responds to the SETUP as specified in § 5.

6.2.2 *Access from the ISDN virtual circuit service (Case B)*

To offer an incoming call, the network must perform the following steps in sequence:

1) Channel selection – the physical channel/logical link to be used for the incoming call must be identified. The network may use customer profile information, network resources, etc., to choose the channel, or the procedures in Step 2 below.

2) Physical channel/logical link establishment – if the physical B-channel or the logical link of the D-channel have not been determined by Step 1, the network may use the procedures in § 6.2.2.3. The network may then proceed with Step 3.

3) Virtual call establishment – the network establishes the virtual call using the procedures described in § 6.3.

In the configuration for the ISDN virtual circuit service, the choice of channel type to be used for the delivery of a new *incoming call* packet shall be made by the network as described below.

a) A new *incoming call* packet may be indicated to the ISDN customer by a call offering procedure between the network and all user packet mode terminals (see §§ 3.2.3.2 and 3.2.3.3 of Recommendation X.31 [14]).

b) An incoming virtual call directed to a terminal with an established connection to the PH may be offered directly to the terminal over the established access connection without the use of Q.931 call offering procedures (see §§ 3.2.3.1 and 3.2.3.2 of Recommendation X.31 [14]).

6.2.2.1 *B-channel*

When calls are to be offered on the B-channels without channel negotiation, the procedures described in § 5.2 of Recommendation Q.931 using the messages of § 3.2 of Recommendation Q.931 apply with the following exceptions:

a) The procedures for overlap receiving specified in § 5.2.4 of Recommendation Q.931 do not apply.

b) The procedures for receipt of CALL PROCEEDING and ALERTING specified in § 5.2.5.2 apply with the following exception:
   - The receipt of an ALERTING message shall not cause the network to send a corresponding ALERTING message to the calling user.

c) The procedures for call failure specified in § 5.2.5.3 apply with the following note:
   - The network clears the incoming X.25 virtual call towards the calling X.25 DTE using the appropriate cause from Table 6-5/Q.931.

d) The procedures for notification of interworking at the terminating interface specified in § 5.2.6 apply with the following exceptions:
   - The case of the call entering an ISDN environment during call establishment is not applicable.
   - In the case of a call leaving the ISDN environment within the called user's premises, no notification is sent to the calling party.
   - The case of in-band information/patterns is not applicable.

e) The procedures for active indication specified in § 5.2.8 apply with the following exception:
   - The network shall not initiate procedures to send a CONNECT message towards the calling user.

f) The procedures for user notification specified in § 5.2.10 do not apply.

Where an established B-channel connection is to be used, the *incoming call* packet will be delivered in accordance with § 6.3.

Where a new B-channel connection is to be established, the identity of the selected user will be associated with the Connection Endpoint Suffix (CES) from which the first CONNECT message has been received.

6.2.2.2 *D-channel*

The D-channel provides a connection which enables the ISDN PH to access an ISDN user terminal or vice versa. This access is accomplished by establishing a link layer connection (SAPI = 16) to the terminal or network which can then be used to support packet communications according to X.25[5] layer 3 procedures as defined in § 6.3.

The layer 2 procedures shall be in accordance with Recommendation Q.921[3]. The D-channel provides a semi-permanent connection for packet access since all layer 2 frames containing a packet mode SAPI (16) are routed automatically between the user and the PH function.

When an incoming call is offered to packet mode user equipment at the user interface, the channel selection procedures described in § 6.2.2.3 shall be used.

A number of packet mode terminals can operate simultaneously over the D-channel, each using a separate layer 2 link identified by an appropriate TE1 (see Recommendation Q.921) in frames transferred between the terminal and the network.

6.2.2.3 *Call offering*

6.2.2.3.1 *Channel selection through call offering*

The call offering procedure is performed using the layer 3 messages and procedures of § 5. The call offering procedure is integrated into the circuit-switched call control procedures, signalled on the D-channel, with the channel selection being accomplished by means of the channel selection procedure if offered as a network option.

As described in § 5, the network selects the first user which responds to the call offering with a CONNECT message. When the selected user has requested that the X.25 call be set up over a new B-channel, the network will indicate that the channel is acceptable by returning a CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message to the user. If multiple terminals have responded positively to the SETUP message, the network shall clear each of the non-selected terminals with a RELEASE message containing cause No. 26, *non-selected user clearing.*

When the selected user has requested that the X.25 call be set up over an established B-channel or the D-channel, the network shall respond to the CONNECT message with a RELEASE message containing cause No. 7, *call awarded and being delivered in an established channel.* The network shall also return a RELEASE message containing cause No. 26, *non-selected user clearing* to any other positively responding terminals. The network will then deliver the X.25 call over the selected channel.

Note 1 – There is no time significance between the delivery of the RELEASE message and the *incoming call* packet, i.e., either may occur first.

Note 2 – The network shall send the RELEASE message(s) and the user(s) shall respond with RELEASE COMPLETE.

If the channel indicated by the first positively responding user is not available, the network will use Q.931 call clearing procedures to clear the call with cause No. 6, *channel unacceptable.* If the channel indicated in the SETUP message is not acceptable to the user, the user will clear the call with a RELEASE message containing cause No. 34, *no circuit/channel available*, or cause No. 44, *requested circuit/channel not available.*

On the basis of a network option or subscription agreement, the network may choose the access channel or access channel type (e.g. B or D) for a particular incoming packet call.

When the Channel indication information element indicates *Channel indication – No channel, Exclusive*, and *D-channel indication – Yes*, then the Bearer capability information element should be encoded as follows:

- information transfer capability set to either:
  - a) *unrestricted digital information*; or
  - b) *restricted digital information*;
- transfer mode set to: *packet mode*;
- information rate set to: *packet mode (00000)*;
- layer 2 protocol set to: *Recommendation Q.921*;
- Layer 3 protocol set to: *Recommendation X.25, packet layer.*

In all other cases, the Bearer capability information element should be encoded as follows:

- information transfer capability set to either:
  - a) *unrestricted digital information*; or
  - b) *restricted digital information*;
- transfer mode set to: *packet mode*;
- information rate set to: *packet mode (00000)*;
- layer 2 protocol set to: *Recommendation X.25 [5], link layer*;
- Layer 3 protocol set to: *Recommendation X.25, packet layer.*

There exists an understanding that if the terminal responds with D-channel indication set (see Table 6-3/Q.931), the Layer 2 protocol to be used is Recommendation Q.921 (LAPD)[3].

The channel selection procedure for incoming calls is independent of the type of channel selected at the calling end. In this respect, any combination of channel type used at each end is possible, provided the user rates and available bandwidth are compatible.

The channel selection principle to be used in the procedure is shown in Table 6-3/Q.931.

Note 3 – When the incoming SETUP message is sent on a broadcast data link with a Channel identification information element which indicates an idle B-channel and *preferred*, the called user is not permitted to respond with a different idle B-channel in the response. The option to respond with a different idle channel is restricted to point-to-point call offerings.

Note 4 – Networks providing packet mode call offering shall provide Q.931 signalling procedures for packet mode calls on SAPI = 0. For an interim period, some networks, by subscription agreement, may offer SAPI = 16 broadcast call offering procedures for providing Q.931 signalling. This option shall use all Q.31 procedures for packet mode calls with the following restriction: all calls will be offered as *D-channel exclusive* and will not provide channel selection procedures. Terminals implementing SAPI = 16 procedures shall also implement SAPI = 0 procedures for portability.

TABLE 6-3/Q.931

Network requested channel and user response. Incoming access for packet mode

Channel indicated in the SETUP message network to user direction			Allowable user response (user-network)
Channel indication	Preferred or exclusive	D-channel indication	
Bi	Exclusive	No	Bi
		Yes	Bi, D
Bi	Preferred	No	Bi, Bi′, Bj
		Yes	Bi, Bi′, Bj, D
No channel	Preferred	No	Bj
		Yes	Bj, D
	Exclusive	Yes	D

Bi indicated (idle) B-channel

Bi′ any other idle B-channel (not permitted in response to broadcast call offering)

Bj an established B-channel under the user's control

D the D-channel

Note – All other encodings are invalid.

6.2.2.3.2 *Information element mapping*

Some networks may choose to provide a service of mapping some or all of the information from the *incoming call* packet into the SETUP message (see § 3.2.3 of Recommendation X.31). Table 6-4/Q.931 shows the mapping of the X.25 incoming call elements to Q.931 information elements. The incoming call packet will still contain these fields when it is delivered. See § 3.2.3 of Recommendation X.31 for mapping requirements.

TABLE 6-4/Q.931

Mapping of X.25 information elements to corresponding Q.931 SETUP message information elements in packet-mode incoming call (Note 1)

	Information elements in X.25 incoming call packet	Corresponding information element in Q.931 SETUP message
	Calling address	Calling party number
	Called address	Called party number
	User data (UD)	User-user information (Note 2)
	A-bit (Note 3)	For further study
	D-bit	Packet layer binary parameters
	Modulus	Packet layer binary parameters
X.25 user facility	Flow control parameter negotiation	Packet size Packet layer window size
	Throughput class negotiation	Information rate
	Fast select	Packet layer binary parameters
	Reverse charging	For further study
	Closed user group selection	For further study
	Closed user group with outgoing access selection	For further study
	Bilateral closed user group	For further study
	Transit delay selection and indication	Transit delay selection and indication
	Call redirection and deflection notification	Redirecting number
DTE facility	Calling address extension	Calling party sub-address
	Called address extension	Called party sub-address
	End-to-end transit delay	End-to-end transit delay
	Minimum throughput class	Information rate
	Expedited data negotiation	Packet layer binary parameters

Note 1 – Mapping is optional or required as indicated in § 3.2.3 of Recommendation X.31.

Note 2 – The maximum length of the user data within the user-user information element is network dependent and is either 32 or 128 octets.

Note 3 – The need and procedures for A-bit mapping is for further study.

6.2.2.3.3 *Channel selection without call offering*

Where the network and user have agreed beforehand, the network may route an incoming call to the called user over an established B-channel connection or D-channel link without the need for any signalling for channel selection.

6.3 *Virtual call establishment and release*

In all cases, once the physical channel has been selected and, if necessary, connected to the PH or AU, the virtual call is established according to the procedures below. Some networks may require some of the terminal identification procedures of Recommendation X.32 as well.

6.3.1 *Link layer establishment and release*

Link layer (LAPB on the B-channel or LAPD on the D-channel) establishment shall be initiated by:

- the calling terminal in the case of outgoing calls;
- the AU in the case of incoming calls in Case A; or
- the PH in the case of incoming calls in Case B.

Link layer release may be initiated by:

- the terminal;
- the AU in Case A; or
- the PH in Case B.

6.3.2 *Packet layer virtual call set-up and release*

The packet layer procedures of X.25 [5] will be used for layer 3 call set-up and release. The packet layer procedure will additionally be able to control and monitor the established or released state of the link layer.

In Case B, the PH may maintain a timer T320 (defined in Recommendation Q.931). T320, if implemented, is started:

a) upon clearance of the last virtual call; or

b) upon transmission of a CONNECT message by the network in case of an outgoing B-channel access access connection; or

c) upon transmission of a CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message by the network in case of an incoming B-channel access connection; or

d) upon establishment of the link layer for D-channel access connections.

T320 is canceled upon:

1) establishment of the first (next) virtual call; or
2) receipt of Q.931 clearing message from the user; or
3) disconnection of the SAPI = 16 link on the D-channel.

Upon expiry of T320, the PH will release the link layer and, in the case of B-channel access, initiate clearing of the B-channel.

X.25 logical channels are associated with their underlying logical link. Specifically, in case of the use of the B-channel for packet communication, there is an association between the logical channels and the LAPB logical link below them. Thus the same logical channel number may be used simultaneously on each different B-channel.

6.4 *Call clearing*

6.4.1 *B-channel*

The clearing of the switched connection shall be effected by using the D-channel signalling procedures for call clearing as specified in § 5.3. For access to PSPDN services, no exceptions apply. For the ISDN virtual circuit service, the messages of § 3.2 are used, and the following exceptions apply:

- The terms defined in § 5.3.1 (Terminology) apply by replacing "circuit-switched ISDN connection" with "demand packet mode access connection".
- The exception condition f) specified in § 5.3.2 does not apply.
- The procedures for clearing with tones and announcements provided in § 5.3.4.1 do not apply.

The B-channel may be cleared at any time by the user though, in general, it will be cleared following the clearing of the last virtual call over that B-channel. In the ISDN virtual circuit service, if the user clears the B-channel access connection using a Q.931 clearing message while X.25 [5] virtual calls still exist on the B-channel, the network shall clear the X.25 virtual call(s) with cause No. 17, *remote procedure error*, and diagnostic No. 64, *call set-up, call clearing, or registration problem.*

In Case B, if a Q.931 RESTART message is received by the PH during the X.25 data transfer phase, the X.25 virtual calls shall be treated as follows:

- For switched virtual circuits, an X.25 *clear indication* packet shall be sent with cause No. 9, *out of order*, and diagnostic No. 0, *no additional information.*
- For permanent virtual circuits, an X.25 *reset* packet shall be sent containing cause No. 9, *out of order* and diagnostic No. 0, *no additional information.*

At the expiration of timer T320, the network may disconnect the X.25 link layer and the access connection. B-channel clearing is as described in § 5.3 with the exceptions above, with cause No. 102, *recovery on timer expiry.*

6.4.2 *D-channel*

D-channel access connections are cleared using the disconnect procedures as defined in § 6.3.

6.4.3 *Additional error handling information*

When failure occurs, or the X.25 virtual call is cleared prematurely, the rules of § 5.8 shall apply. In addition, the following rules for determining the appropriate cause to be used shall apply in order of decreasing priority:

1) If a Q.931 clearing message or RESTART message is received by the PH during the X.25 data transfer phase, § 6.4.1 applies.

2) If a call is required by the destination user using Q.931 messages, the X.25 virtual call shall be cleared using a *clear indication* packet and the appropriate cause from Table 6-5/Q.931.

3) If a condition exists that prevents the Q.931 SETUP message from being delivered at the user-network interface, the X.25 virtual call shall be cleared using a *clear indication* packet and a cause shall be selected appropriate to the condition. Table 6-5/Q.931 shall serve as a guide to selecting an appropriate cause, i.e., the X.25 mapping of the Q.931 cause describing the interface condition shall be used.

4) If the Q.931 SETUP message is sent across the user-network interface, but no response is received to the second expiry of timer T303, rule No. 3 applies.

5) If the Q.931 SETUP message is sent across the user-network interface, and a response is received from a user which results in the clearing of the call at the user-network interface, the X.25 virtual call shall be cleared using a clear indication packet containing the appropriate cause from Table 6-5/Q.931 relative to the cause received/sent in the Q.931 clearing message.

6) If an X.25 clear request packet is received from the originating user prior to the delivery of the X.25 incoming call packet to the called user (premature clearing), the PH shall send a clear confirmation packet to the calling user and the access connection shall be treated as follows:

   - If the Q.931 SETUP message was associated with the Unconditional notification class of service (see § 3.2.3 of Recommendation X.31[14]), the access connection, when and if established, shall be cleared. The Q.931 clearing message shall contain the appropriate cause as described in Table 6-6/Q.931.
   - If the Q.931 SETUP message was associated with the Conditional notification class of service (see § 3.2.3 of Recommendation X.31) and there exists at least one terminal which responds positively to the Q.931 SETUP message, then two options are allowed:

     a) the access connection is cleared as described for the Unconditional class of service; or

     b) the access connection is established and timer T320 is started. Upon expiry of the timer T320, the access connection is cleared with cause No. 102, *recovery on timer expiry*, and diagnostic indicating timer T320.

TABLE 6-5/Q.931

Mapping of Q.931 cause fields to X.25 cause field

Item	Q.931 cause	Code	Q.931 diagnostic	X.25 cause	Code	X.25 diagnostic	Code
1	Unallocated (unassigned) number	1	Condition: unknown, transient, permanent	Not obtainable	13	Invalid called address	67
2	No route to destination	3	Condition: unknown, transient, permanent	Not obtainable	13	Invalid called address	67
3	Channel unacceptable	6	(None)	Remote procedure error	17	Call setup, call clearing or registration problem	64
4	Normal call clearing	16	Condition: unknown, transient, permanent	DTE originated	0	No additional information	0
5	User busy	17	(None)	Number busy	1	No logical channel available	71
6	No user responding	18	(None)	Remote procedure error	17	Call setup, call clearing or registration problem	64
7	User alerting, no answer	19	(None)	Remote procedure error	17	Call setup, call clearing or registration problem	64
8	Call rejected	21	Condition: unknown, transient, permanent + user applied diagnostics	DTE originated	0	No additional information	0
9	Number changed	22	New destination address	Not obtainable	13	Invalid called address	67
10	Destination out of order	27	(None)	Out of order	9	No additional information	0
11	Invalid number format (incomplete number)	28	(None)	Local procedure error	19	Invalid called address	67
12	Normal, unspecified	31	(None)	DTE originated	0	No additional information	0
13	No circuit/channel available	34	(None)	Number busy	1	No logical channel available	71
14	Network out of order	38	(None)	Out of order	9	No additional information	0
15	Temporary failure	41	Network identity	Out of order	9	No additional information	0

TABLE 6-5/Q.931 *(cont.)*

Item	Q.931 cause	Code	Q.931 diagnostic	X.25 cause	Code	X.25 diagnostic	Code
16	Switching equipment congestion	42	Network identity	Network congestion	5	No additional information	0
17	Requested circuit/channel not available	44	(None)	Number busy	1	No logical channel available	71
18	Resources unavailable unspecified	47	(None)	Network congestion	5	No additional information	0
19	Quality of service unavailable	49	Condition: unknown, transient, permanent	Network congestion		No additional information	
20	Bearer capability not authorized	57	Bearer capability information element identifier	Incompatible destination	33	No aditional Information	0
21	Bearer capability not presently available	58	Bearer capability information element identifier	Remote procedure error	17	Call setup, call clearing or registration problem	64
22	Service or option not available, unspecified	63	(None)	Remote procedure error	17	Call setup, call clearing or registration problem	64
23	Bearer service not implemented	65	Attribute numbers	Incompatible destination	33	No additional information	0
24	Channel type not implemented	66	Channel type	Remote procedure error	17	Call setup, call clearing or registration problem	64
25	Service or option not implemented, unspecified	79	(None)	Remote procedure error	17	Call setup, call clearing or registration problem	64
26	Invalid call reference value	81	(None)	Remote procedure error	17	Call setup, call clearing or registration problem	64
27	Identified channel does not exist	82	Channel identity	Remote procedure error	17	Call setup, call clearing or registration problem	64

TABLE 6-5/Q.931 *(cont.)*

Item	Q.931 cause	Code	Q.931 diagnostic	X.25 cause	Code	X.25 diagnostic	Code
28	Incompatible destination	88	Incompatible parameter	Incompatible destination	33	No additional information	0
29	Invalid message, unspecified	95	(None)	Remote procedure error	17	Call setup, call clearing or registration problem	64
30	Mandatory information element is missing	96	Information element identifier(s)	Remote procedure error	17	Call setup, call clearing or registration problem	64
31	Message type non-existent or not implemented	97	Message type	Remote procedure error	17	Call setup, call clearing or registration problem	64
32	Message not compatible with call state or message type non-existent or not implemented	98	Message type	Remote procedure error	17	Call setup, call clearing or registration problem	64
33	Information element non-existent or not implemented	99	Information element identifier(s)	Remote procedure error	17	Call setup, call clearing or registration problem	64
34	Invalid information element contents	100	Information element identifier(s)	Remote procedure error	17	Call setup, call clearing or registration problem	64
35	Message not compatible with call state	101	Message type	Remote procedure error	17	Call setup, call clearing or registration problem	64
36	Recovery on timer expiry	102	Timer number	Remote procedure error	17	Call setup, call clearing or registration problem	64

TABLE 6-5/Q.931 *(end)*

Item	Q.931 cause	Code	Q.931 diagnostic	X.25 cause	Code	X.25 diagnostic	Code
37	Protocol error, unspecified	111	(None)	Remote procedure error	17	Call setup, call clearing or registration problem	64
38	Interworking unspecified	127	(None)	Remote procedure error	17	Call setup, call clearing or registration problem	64

Note 1 – When clearing occurs during the X.25 data transfer phase, the procedure described in § 6.4.1 should be used.

Note 2 – When a Q.931 RESTART message is received during the X.25 data transfer phase, switched virtual circuits shall be cleared with a *clear indication* packet containing cause No. 9, *Out of order,* with diagnostic No. 0, *no additional information.* Permanent virtual circuits shall have an X.25 *reset* packet sent with the same cause and diagnostic.

TABLE 6-6/Q.931

Mapping of X.25 cause to Q.931
for premature clearing of the incoming call

	X.25 cause in clear indication packet				Q.931 error condition		
Item	X.25/X.96 cause	Code	Diagnostic	Code	Q.931 cause	Code	Diagnostic
1	DTE originated	0	No additional information	0	Normal call clearing	16	(None)
		1XX	DTE specified	XX			
2	Network congestion	5	No additional information	0	Switching equipment congestion	42	(None)
3	Out of order	9	No additional information	0	Destination out of order	27	(None)
4	Remote procedure error	17	(Any allowed)		Procotol error, unspecified	111	(None)

Note – Instead of providing the above mapping of X.25 to Q.931 the PH, as a network option, may code the Q.931 cause information element to indicate *CCITT Coding Standard* in octet 3, *X.25* in octet 3a, and code octets 4 and 5 according to Recommendation X.25, copying the cause from the X.25 *clear indication* packet rather than mapping it to a Q.931 cause.

6.4.4 *Cause mappings*

6.4.4.1 *Access to/from PSPDN services (Case A)*

The AU may choose to follow the procedures in § 6.4.4.2 when mapping between causes delivered by the ISDN or the PSPDN.

6.4.4.2 *Access to/from the ISDN virtual circuit service (Case B)*

There are several cases where it is necessary to map causes between Q.931 and X.25 [5]. Networks shall use Table 6-5/Q.931 and Table 6-6/Q.931 to map the causes between Q.931 and X.25 messages. The figures in Appendix II describe some example situations.

6.5 *Access collision*

When the network offers a packet mode call at the interface simultaneously with the user requesting a packet mode call, the network shall give priority to the completion of the incoming call. If the user determines that accepting the incoming call would meet the needs of its own outgoing call request, the user may clear the call request and accept the incoming call.

7 **User-to-user signalling procedures**

7.1 *Procedures for user-to-user signalling associated with circuit-switched calls*

7.1.1 *General*

The user-to-user signalling supplementary service(s) provides a means of communication between two users by using as a basis the layer 3 protocol defined in § 5. User-to-user signalling is used to exchange information between two users to provide the services described in the I.257A Recommendations. The exchange of user-to-user signalling is limited by flow control procedures provided by the network or the user. The exchange of user-to-user information is not a network acknowledgement service. Any acknowledgement procedure shall be controlled at a higher layer between users.

Three user-to-user signalling services associated with circuit-switched calls that may be provided by the network to users are:

i) Service 1:

   user-to-user signalling exchanged during the set-up and clearing phases of a call, within Q.931 call control messages.

ii) Service 2:

   user-to-user signalling exchanged during call establishment, between the ALERTING and CONNECT messages, within USER INFORMATION messages.

iii) Service 3:

   user-to-user signalling exchanged while a call is in the Active state, within USER INFORMATION messages.

All three services may be used separately or in any combination in association with a single call. As an option, at call set-up, users may be able to specify that the requested user-to-user signalling service(s) is (are) required for the call, i.e., the call should not be completed if user-to-user information cannot be passed.

7.1.2 *Explicit invocation procedures for services 1, 2 and 3*

Services 1, 2 and 3 listed above may be provided on a per call basis following an explicit request from a user. The standard explicit invocation procedure makes use of the Facility information element defined in § 4.

In addition, or alternatively, some networks may support explicit invocation procedures making use of:

– keypad facility information element; or

– feature activation information element.

The exact operation of stimulus invocation procedures are network dependent but must follow the rules defined in § 8 of this Recommendation. More detailed protocol aspects can also be found in § 4 (for the keypad protocol invocation) and in § 5 (for the feature management protocol invocation) of Recommendation Q.932.

When a network supports more than one invocation procedure, the following principles shall be followed:

- for invocations using the Keypad facility information element, the network will convey the remote user's response using a Signal, a Display, or a Feature indication information element;
- for invocations using the Feature activation information element, the network will convey the remote user's response using a Feature information element;
- for invocations using the Facility information element, the network will convey the remote user's response using a Facility information element.

In the network-to-user direction, explicit service 1 and service 2 requests may be indicated using the Facility information element.

In the network-to-user direction, service 3 request may be indicated using:

i) signal information element (see Note);

ii) display information element (see Note);

iii) feature indication information element (see Note); or

iv) facility information element.

For indications using the Facility information element, the user will respond with a Facility information element. No response is needed when any of the first three information elements are used.

Note – These may be used only when the network has knowledge that the user receiving the notification has subscribed to the service. In this case, the network will generate the service confirmation to the originating user (i.e., the user requesting the service) on behalf of the user who did not originate the service request. For service 3, invoked during the active state of a call, the message use is symmetric across the user-network interface; i.e., the FACILITY message is returned in response to a FACILITY message.

7.1.3 *User-to-user signalling service 1*

7.1.3.1 *General characteristics*

Service 1 allows the users to communicate by means of user-to-user signalling by transferring user-to-user information within Recommendation Q.931 call control messages during call establishment and clearing phases.

7.1.3.2 *User-to-user signalling – implicit service request (preferred, i.e. – not required)*

Service 1 may be implicitly requested by including a User-user information element of variable length as specified in § 4.5.29 in the SETUP message transferred across the user-network interface at the calling side as described in § 5.1.1. This information element is transported by the network and delivered unchanged in the User-user information element included in the SETUP message transferred across the user-network interface at the called side as described in § 5.2.1. For invocation purposes, this information element must be at least three octets long as defined in § 4.5.29.

In the case where contention by users for the incoming call is not allowed (e.g., when the SETUP message containing an implicit service invocation is delivered using a point-to-point link at the data link layer or when the network, despite using broadcast capability at layer 2, knows based on the first response received from the user that no contention takes place), a User-user information element may be included in the ALERTING and/or CONNECT messages transferred across the user-network interface at the called side as described in § 5.2.5. The content of this information element is transported by the network and delivered in the User-user information element included in the corresponding message(s) transferred across the user-network interface at the calling side as described in §§ 5.1.7 and 5.1.8.

In the case where users are allowed to contend for an incoming call (e.g., when the SETUP message containing an implicit service invocation is delivered using the broadcast capability at the data link layer and the network is unable to determine based upon the first response received from the user that there is no contention), the User-user information element may be included in the CONNECT message transferred at the called side. The content of the User-user information element delivered to the calling user shall be that received from the selected terminal as described in § 5.2.8.

Note 1 – The user may not be able to interpret incoming user-to-user information. In such situations, the user should discard this information without disrupting normal call handling. No specific signalling is provided by the network to accommodate this situation.

Note 2 – In accordance with Recommendation X.213, the called user may perform compatibility checking using the User-user information element contents (see Annex B).

7.1.3.3 *User-to-user signalling in the call establishment phase – explicit service request (preferred or required)*

Procedures for call establishment are as described in §§ 5.1 and 5.2 with the following modifications:

On call request, the SETUP message sent by the calling user shall contain a service 1 request. The SETUP message sent by the network at the called side shall also contain an explicit service 1 request.

In the case where contention by users for the incoming call is not allowed (e.g., when the SETUP is delivered using the point-to-point data link layer or when the SETUP is delivered using the broadcast capability at the data link layer and the network is able to determine that no contention is occurring), and the called user can support the transfer of User-user information elements during the call, a service 1 acceptance shall be included in the ALERTING message.

This explicit service 1 acceptance will be forwarded by the network to the calling user in the ALERTING message.

A User-user information element may be included in the ALERTING message and/or CONNECT message transferred across the user-network interface at the called side as described in § 5.2.5.

In accordance with Recommendation X.213, the called user may perform compatibility checking using the User-user information element contents (see Annex B).

Note – The use of the explicit service 1 request procedures in the case where contention by the users for the incoming call is allowed (e.g. the SETUP message is delivered using the broadcast capability at the data link layers and the network is unable to determine that there is no contention) is for further study.

7.1.3.4 *Interworking*

In the case of interworking with a non-ISDN network, the return of a PROGRESS or an ALERTING message with the Progress indicator information element indicating No. 1, *call is not end-to-end ISDN; further call progress information may be available in-band*, to the calling user shall serve as indication that, in particular, the delivery of User-user information elements in call control messages cannot be guaranteed.

7.1.3.5 *Rejection of implicit service requests*

Networks that cannot provide the service requested will not return a rejection indication.

7.1.3.6 *Rejection of explicit service requests*

If the called user or network does not understand the service 1 request, then the ALERTING message returned to the calling party shall not include either a service 1 acceptance or rejection. This type of response will be taken as an implicit rejection of service 1.

If the network or called user cannot support service 1, and it was requested as preferred, a service 1 rejection is included in the ALERTING message.

If the service 1 request indicated as required and the called user or network cannot support it, a RELEASE COMPLETE is sent with cause No. 50, *requested facility not subscribed*, or cause No. 69, *requested facility not implemented*, and a service 1 rejection.

If the called user does not include a service 1 acceptance or rejection in the ALERTING message, the network shall return an explicit rejection in the ALERTING message sent to the calling user.

7.1.3.7 *User-to-user signalling in the call clearing phase*

A User-user information element may be included in the first message used to initiate the normal call clearing phase (see §§ 5.3.3 and 5.3.4).

The information contained in such an information element is transferred to the remote user in the first clearing message (see §§ 5.3.3 and 5.3.4). Such a transfer is only performed if the information is received at the local exchange of the remote user before sending a clearing message to that user, otherwise, the information is discarded without sending any notification.

In addition, when a SETUP message has been delivered using the broadcast capability at the data link layer, and the network is unable to determine from the first response received from the user that there is no contention, only the following user-to-user information transfer is allowed:

i) in the network to called user direction:

in the case of premature clearing by the calling user, user-to-user information is sent in the first clearing message to each called user that has already responded to the incoming SETUP message;

ii) in the called user-network direction:

the user-to-user information will only be accepted from a terminal which is selected.

If multiple clearing messages are received, the network may, as a network option, retain the User-user information element along with the cause retained according to § 5.2.5.4. In the event that this cause is returned to to calling user, the associated User-user information element shall also be returned. If there are multiple clearing messages containing causes of equal priority and User-user information elements, the User-user information element contained in the first clearing message will be sent to the calling user. If any of the clearing messages with the highest priority causes do not contain User-user information elements and other clearing messages with causes of lower priority do contain User-user information elements, no User-user information element shall be sent back to the calling user.

In the case where contention by users for the incoming call is not allowed (e.g., when the SETUP message is delivered using the point-to-point data link layer or the network knows that a user responding to a SETUP sent using the broadcast capability at the data link layer is not contending for the call) a User-user information element may be included in the first clearing message sent by the called user prior to entering the Active state.

In the case where contention by users for the incoming call is not allowed, if the called user rejects the call with a RELEASE COMPLETE message containing user-user information, the network shall deliver the user-user information in the DISCONNECT message sent to the calling user. However, if the network is providing in-band information to the calling user, and chooses not to initiate clearing procedures at that time, the network may deliver the user-user information in a PROGRESS message sent to the calling user.

If the network is providing in-band information to the calling user, in conjunction with call clearing, the network shall include the User-user information element in the DISCONNECT message sent to the calling user.

Note – It is intended that this capability may be used to provide the clearing data transfer described in Recommendation X.213.

7.1.3.8 *Unexpected user-user information in call control messages*

The network shall discard the User-user information element if it is received from either user in an ALERTING, CONNECT, DISCONNECT, RELEASE or RELEASE COMPLETE message but a request for user-user signalling was not indicated (either explicitly or implicitly) in the SETUP message delivered to the user. If this occurs, the network shall take action on the remaining contents of the message received from the user and shall send a STATUS message to the user containing cause No. 43, *access information discarded.*

7.1.4 *User-to-user signalling service 2*

7.1.4.1 *General characteristics*

Service 2 allows the users to communicate by means of user-to-user signalling by transferring two USER INFORMATION messages in each direction during the call establishment phase. This service allows either an implicit or explicit rejection (see § 7.1.4.3).

Service 2 is only applicable when a SETUP message has been delivered using the point-to-point data link layer at the user-network interface at the called side.

7.1.4.2 *Call establishment*

Procedures for call establishment are as described in §§ 5.1 and 5.2 with the following modifications.

On call request, the SETUP message sent by the calling user will contain a service 2 request. The SETUP message sent by the network at the called side will also contain an explicit service 2 request.

If the called user can support USER INFORMATION messages during call establishment, a service 2 acceptance shall be included in the ALERTING message sent to the network. This explicit acceptance indication shall be forwarded in the ALERTING message sent by the network to the calling user.

7.1.4.3 *Service rejection*

If the called user or network does not understand the service 2 request, then the ALERTING message returned to the calling user will not include either a service 2 acceptance or rejection. This type of response shall be taken as an implicit rejection of service 2. Alternatively, if the network or called user cannot support USER INFORMATION messages during call establishment, and the request is indicated as preferred, a service 2 rejection is included in the ALERTING message.

If the service 2 request indicated is required, and the called user or network cannot support or provide the service, a RELEASE COMPLETE is sent with cause No. 50, *requested facility not subscribed,* or cause No. 69, *requested facility not implemented,* and a service 2 rejection.

If the called user does not include a service 2 acceptance or rejection in the ALERTING message, the network shall return an explicit rejection in the ALERTING message sent to the calling user.

In the case of interworking with a non-ISDN network, a PROGRESS or ALERTING message with the progress indicator information element indicating No. 1, *call is not end-to-end ISDN; further call progress information may be available in-band,* is sent to the calling user to indicate that the full service cannot be guaranteed.

7.1.4.4 *Transfer of USER INFORMATION messages*

Once an ALERTING message has been received, both the involved users can transfer information between themselves by transferring USER INFORMATION messages across the user-network interface. The network provides for the transfer of such messages from the calling to the called side and vice versa.

The USER INFORMATION message includes the Call reference, the Protocol discriminator, and the User-user information elements as defined in § 3.1.23. The More data information element may also be included by the source user to indicate to the remote user that another USER INFORMATION message will follow, containing information belonging to the same block. The use of More data information element is not supervised by the network.

If the user-to-user signalling facility is provided, no more than two USER INFORMATION messages may be transferred in each direction after the ALERTING message and before the CONNECT message.

Sending or receiving of USER INFORMATION messages does not change the state of the call.

7.1.5 *User-to-user signalling service 3*

7.1.5.1 *General*

Service 3 allows the users to communicate by means of transferring USER INFORMATION messages during the Active state of a call. This service allows either an implicit or explicit rejection (see § 7.1.5.3). This service may be requested during call establishment or during the Active state of the call.

7.1.5.2 *Service request during call establishment*

Procedures for call establishment are as described in §§ 5.1 and 5.2 with the following modifications:

a) On call request, the SETUP message sent by the calling user will contain a service 3 request. The SETUP sent by the network at the called side will also contain a service 3 request.
b) If the called user can support USER INFORMATION message transfer during the Active state, a service 3 acceptance shall be included in the CONNECT message.

7.1.5.3 *Rejection of service requested during call establishment*

If the called user or network does not understand the service 3 request, then the CONNECT message returned to the calling user shall not include either a service 3 acceptance or rejection. This type of response will be taken as an implicit rejection of service 3. Alternatively, if the network or called user cannot support USER INFORMATION messages during the Active state, and the request is indicated as preferred, a service 3 rejection is included in the CONNECT message. If the service 3 request indicated required, and the called user or network cannot support or provide the service, a RELEASE COMPLETE is sent with cause No. 50, *requested facility not subscribed*, or cause No. 69, *requested facility not implemented*, and a service 3 rejection.

If the called user does not include a service 3 acceptance or rejection in the CONNECT message, the network shall return a service 3 rejection in the CONNECT message sent to the calling user.

When interworking with a non-ISDN network occurs, a PROGRESS or an ALERTING message with the Progress indicator information element indicating No. 1, *call is not end-to-end ISDN; further call progress information may be available in-band*, is sent to the calling user to indicate that the service cannot be guaranteed.

7.1.5.4 *Service request after call establishment*

During the Active state of a call, a user may request service 3 preferred only. A FACILITY message indicating a service 3 request is sent from the requesting user to the network. The network shall indicate the service 3 request to the user that did not request service 3 in the FACILITY message.

If the user that did not request service 3 can support the transfer of USER INFORMATION messages during the Active state, a service 3 acceptance is returned in the FACILITY message. This explicit acceptance indication shall be conveyed back to the requesting user in a FACILITY message.

7.1.5.5 *Rejection of service request after call establishment*

If the user that did not request service 3 or network does not understand the service 3 request, then no message is returned. This response shall be taken as an implicit rejection of the service request. Alternatively, if the requested user or network cannot support or provide the service requested, a service 3 rejection shall be returned in the FACILITY message.

If the requested user does not respond to the service 3 request, the network shall return a service 3 rejection to the calling user.

7.1.5.6 *Transfer of USER INFORMATION messages*

Once the call is established, both users can transfer information between themselves by transporting USER INFORMATION messages across the user-network interface. The network provides for the transfer of such messages from the calling to the called side and vice versa.

The USER INFORMATION message includes the Call reference, the Protocol discriminator, and the User-user information elements. The More data information element may also be included by the source user to indicate to the remote user that another USER INFORMATION message will follow, containing information belonging to the same block. The use of the More data information element is not supervised by the network.

7.1.5.7 *Congestion control of USER INFORMATION messages*

The network or user will flow-control, when needed, the transfer of USER INFORMATION messages from a user or network by means of a CONGESTION CONTROL message containing a congestion level information element. Two indications of congestion level are specified: *receive not ready* and *receive ready*. On receipt of the former, the user or network should suspend sending USER INFORMATION messages; on receipt of the latter, sending may recommence. After having sent a receive not ready indication, the network or user shall discard USER INFORMATION messages which are subsequently received. The network or user will send a CONGESTION CONTROL message with a receive not ready indication whenever a USER INFORMATION message is locally discarded, if it is possible. The CONGESTION CONTROL message shall also include a cause No. 43, *access information discarded.*

The receipt of the receive ready indication shall be interpreted as an indication that no more than *n* USER INFORMATION messages may be sent before another receive ready indication is received. The value of *n* requires further study.

Congestion control procedure itself should be regarded as local.

7.1.6 *Unexpected USER INFORMATION messages*

7.1.6.1 *Receipt of USER INFORMATION messages in incompatible call states*

Whenever a USER INFORMATION message is received from the user and it is not allowed by an invoked service (e.g., in any other state than Active where only service 3 is invoked), the message will be discarded by the network. The network will respond with a STATUS message with a cause No. 43, *access information discarded.*

7.1.6.2 *Receipt of unexpected USER INFORMATION messages*

Whenever a USER INFORMATION message is received by the network from the calling or called user after the network has indicated that user-to-user cannot be supported, that message shall be discarded without further action.

7.1.7 *Requesting user-to-user signalling services 1, 2 and 3*

7.1.7.1 *General*

This section describes procedures for requesting services 1, 2 and 3 in the same SETUP message. These services are described in §§ 7.1.3, 7.1.4 and 7.1.5, respectively.

Note – User-to-user service 1 implicit request/acceptance follows § 7.1.3.2 procedures. Only explicit service 1 requests may follow the procedure in this section.

7.1.7.2 *Call establishment*

Procedures for call establishment are described in §§ 7.1.3.3, 7.1.4.2, and 7.1.5.2 with the following modifications. On call request, the SETUP message sent by the calling user will contain independent service 1, 2, 3 requests.

The SETUP sent by the network at the called sides will also contain the same independent service requests. If the called user can support the indicated services, then specific services acceptances may all be indicated in the ALERTING message. Alternatively, the user may accept services 1 and 2 in the ALERTING message, as defined in §§ 7.1.3.3 and 7.1.4.2, and service 3 in the CONNECT message, as defined in § 7.1.5.2.

7.1.7.3 *Service rejection*

If the called user or network does not understand any of the services requested, then the ALERTING and CONNECT messages returned to the calling user will not include either a service acceptance or rejection. This type of response will be taken as an implicit rejection of all services. If the called user or network does not understand a specific service request, that specific service is implicitly rejected following the procedures defined in §§ 7.1.3.6, 7.1.4.3 or 7.1.5.3. Alternatively, if the network or called user cannot support one or more services requested, and the service requests were indicated as preferred, the specific service rejection may be included in the ALERTING messages. The services may also be rejected following the procedures in §§ 7.1.3.6, 7.1.4.3 or 7.1.5.3.

If the called user does not include a service 1, 2 or 3 acceptance or rejection in the ALERTING and/or CONNECT message, the network shall return a service 1, 2 or 3 rejection in the ALERTING and/or CONNECT message sent to the calling user.

When interworking with a non-ISDN network occurs, a PROGRESS or an ALERTING message with the Progress indicator information element indicating No. 1, *call is not end-to-end ISDN; further call progress information may be available in-band*, is sent to the calling user to indicate that the service cannot be guaranteed.

If any or all of the services requested is indicated as required, then the network or called user that cannot support or provide the request will send a RELEASE COMPLETE with cause No. 50, *requested facility not subscribed*, or cause No. 69, *requested facility not implemented*, and the service rejection associated with that service.

7.1.7.4 *Transfer of USER INFORMATION messages*

The transfer of USER INFORMATION messages is defined in §§ 7.1.4.4 and 7.1.5.6.

7.1.8 *Summary of actions to be taken by the called side and subsequent network action*

Actions to be taken by the called side and the subsequent network actions are summarized in Table 7-1/Q.931.

TABLE 7-1/Q.931

Actions to be taken at the called side (Note 1)

Case	Called user's capability	Requested service (Note 2)	Called user action	Calling user network interface action
1	Can analyze the service and accepts the service	Services 1, 2, 3 preferred or required	Return appropriate ACK indication by the response message	Pass ACK to the calling user in normal call control messages
2	Can analyze the service but does not accept the service	Services 1, 2, 3 required	Clears the call with appropriate message and cause	Pass same cause to the calling user in the normal call control clearing message
		Service 1 (explicit invocation), 2, 3 preferred	Return appropriate NACK indication in the response message. The call is not cleared	Pass NACK to the calling user in normal call control messages. The call is not cleared
		Service 1 (implicit invocation) preferred	Ignore the request or return appropriate NACK indication by the response message, the call is not cleared	Pass NACK to the calling user
3	Cannot analyze the service request	Services 1, 2, 3 required	Treats as an unrecognized optional information element	Clears the call with appropriate message and cause
		Services 1, 2, 3 preferred	Treats as an unrecognized optional information element	Passes back the implicit user responses to the calling node (Note 3)

Note 1 – This Table covers the point-to-point case. In the point-to-multipoint case, it is applied only if no contention to a broadcast SETUP EXISTS.

Note 2 – When an implicit user-to-user signalling invocation is received for service 1 (which means that the user-to-user information element is included in the SETUP but the explicit invocation is not), the request is regarded as preferred.

Note 3 – When no indication of acceptance or rejection of requested service is received from the called user, then it is regarded an an implicit service rejection. Therefore, in service 1 the user-user information element carried by originating SETUP message is not guaranteed an acknowledgement. The action to be taken in this case is up to the calling user.

7.2 *Procedures for user-to-user signalling not associated with circuit-switched calls*

7.2.1 *General characteristics*

This feature allows the users to communicate by means of user-to-user signalling without setting up a circuit-switched connection. A temporary signalling connection is established and cleared in a manner similar to the control of a circuit-switched connection.

7.2.2 *Call establishment*

Procedures for call establishment are as described in §§ 5.1 and 5.2 with the following modifications.

On call request, the calling user sends a SETUP message identifying, within the Bearer capability and Channel identification information elements, a temporary signalling connection to be established on SAPI = 0. The SETUP message is encoded to indicate:

i) Bearer capability information element:
   - Unrestricted digital information in the information transfer capability field;
   - Packet mode in the transfer mode field;
   - User information layer 2 protocol is Recommendation Q.921 and user information layer 3 protocol is Recommendation Q.931 in the layer and protocol identification field.

ii) Channel identification information element:
   - Exclusive in the preferred/exclusive field;
   - D-channel in the D-channel indicator field;
   - No channel in the channel selection field.

If the network determines that the requested temporary signalling connection service is not authorized or is not available, the network shall initiate call clearing in accordance with § 5.3.2 a) or § 5.3.2 c) with one of the following causes:

a) No. 57 *bearer capability not authorized*;
b) No. 58 *bearer capability not presently available*;
c) No. 63 *service or option not available, unspecified*; or
d) No. 65 *bearer service not implemented.*

The called user accepts the temporary signalling connection request by sending a CONNECT message towards the calling user. After the called user has received a CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message, it may begin sending USER INFORMATION messages. Once the calling user receives a CONNECT message, it can begin sending USER INFORMATION messages.

7.2.3 *Transfer of USER INFORMATION messages*

Once a temporary signalling connection is established, both users can transfer information between themselves by transferring USER INFORMATION messages across the user-network interface. The network provides for the transfer of such messages from the called to the calling side and vice versa.

The USER INFORMATION message includes the Call reference, the Protocol discriminator, and the User-to-user information elements as defined in § 3.3.13. The More data information element may also be sent by the source user to indicate to the remote user that another USER INFORMATION message will follow, containing information belonging to the same block. The use of the More data information element is not supervised by the network.

7.2.4 *Congestion control of USER INFORMATION messages*

Congestion control procedures are the same as those described in § 7.1.5.7.

7.2.5 *Call clearing*

The clearing of an established temporary signalling connection can be initiated by the user or network by sending a RELEASE message towards the far end user. The clearing procedure followed and the timers involved are the same as those for clearing a circuit-switched connection as described in §§ 5.3.3 and 5.3.4.

8 Application of circuit-switched supplementary services to terminals using stimulus procedures

This section describes how stimulus procedures may be used by an ISDN terminal to invoke supplementary services.

Signalling messages sent by terminals using stimulus procedures to invoke network supplementary services are usually generated as a direct result of actions by the terminal user (e.g. feature key activation) and in general do little more than describe the event which has taken place at the man-machine interface (MMI). For the establishment of supplementary services, such stimulus operations at the MMI will normally be conveyed in the keypad or feature activation information element within, for example, the INFORMATION message. The meaning of the keypad or feature activation information may be customer specific. Similarly, signalling messages sent by the network to terminals using stimulus procedures may contain explicit instructions regarding the operations to be performed by the terminals (e.g. feature indication, start alerting, etc.)

Terminals using stimulus procedures are not expected to maintain a record of the states of that service since they have a master-slave relationship with the network. Such terminals may also support only a compatible subset of the call states defined in § 2.1.1 and may only report that compatible subset in the call state information element as described in the procedures of § 5. At a minimum, the user shall be able to report the call state when the call is active.

9 List of system parameters

The description of timers in the following tables should be considered a brief summary. The precise details are found in §§ 5 and 6, which should be considered the definitive descriptions.

9.1 *Timers in the network side*

The timers specified in Table 9-1/Q.931 are maintained in the network side of the interface.

9.2 *Timers in the user side*

The timers specified in Table 9-2/Q.931 are maintained in the user side of the interface. Timers T305, T308 and T313 are mandatory for all user side implementations.

TABLE 9-1/Q.931

Timers in the network side

Timer number	Default time-out value	State of call	Cause for start	Normal stop	At the first expiry	At the second expiry	Cross-reference
T301	Minimum 3 min	Call received	ALERT received	CONN received	Clear call	Timer is not restarted	Note 2
T302	10-15 s (Note 5)	Overlap sending	SETUP ACK sent. Receipt of INFO, restarts T302	With sending complete indication, or network alert, or connect request received	Clear if call information determined to be definitely incomplete; else send CALL PROC	Timer is not restarted	Mandatory
T303	4 s (Note 1)	Call present	SETUP sent	ALERT, CONN, CALL PROC or SETUP ACK received, REL COMP received if SETUP sent on point-point data link	Retransmit SETUP; restart T303. If REL COMP has been received, clear the call	Clear network connection. Enter call abort state	Mandatory
T304	20 s (provisional values)	Overlap receiving	SETUP ACK received. Sending of INFO restarts T304	Send INFO; receive CALL PROC, ALERT or CONN	Clear the call	Timer is not restarted	Mandatory only if § 5.2.4 implemented
T305	30 s	Disconnect indication	DISC without progress indicator No. 8 sent	REL or DISC received	Network sends REL	Timer is not restarted	Mandatory

TABLE 9-1/Q.931*(cont.)*

Timer number	Default time-out value	State of call	Cause for start	Normal stop	At the first expiry	At the second expiry	Cross-reference
T306	30 s (Note 6)	Disconnect indication	DISC with progress indicator No. 8 sent.	REL or DISC received	Stop the tone/announcement. Send REL	Timer is not restarted	Mandatory when in-band tones/ announcements are provided; see §§ 5.4, 5.3.4.1 and Rec. I.300 series
T307	3 min	Null	SUSP ACK sent	RES received	Clear the network connection. Release call identity	Timer is not restarted	Mandatory
T308	4 s (Note 1)	Release request	REL sent	REL COMP or REL received	Retransmit REL and restart T308	Place B-channel in maintenance condition. Release call reference (Note 9)	Mandatory
T309	90 s	Any stable state	Data link disconnection. Calls in stable states are not lost	Data link reconnected	Clear network connection. Release B-channel and call reference	Timer is not restarted	Mandatory
T310	10 s (Note 7)	Incoming call proceeding	CALL PROC received	ALERT, CONN or DISC received. If DISC, retain cause and continue timing	Clear call in accordance with § 5.2.5.3	Timer is not restarted	Mandatory
T312	T303 + 2 s	Call present, call abort, etc.	SETUP sent or resent on broadcast data link	Timeout	Note 4	Timer is not restarted	Mandatory

TABLE 9-1/Q.931 *(end)*

Timer number	Default time-out value	State of call	Cause for start	Normal stop	At the first expiry	At the second expiry	Cross-reference
T314	4 s	Receiving segmented message	Message segment received	Last message segment received	Discard message	Timer is not restarted	Mandatory see Annex K
T316	2 min	Restart request	REST sent	REST ACK received	REST may be retransmitted several times	REST may be retransmitted several times	Mandatory when § 5.5 is implemented
T317	(Note 3)	Restart	REST received	Internal clearing of call references	Maintenance notification	Timer is not restarted	Mandatory when § 5.5 is implemented
T320	30 s (Note 8)	a) For B-channel access: active b) For D-channel access: null	a) For B-channel access: CONN sent or received b) For D-channel access: DL-ESTABLISH-CONFIRM or DL-ESTABLISH-INDICATION received c) Last logical channel, cleared	Call request packet received; or incoming call packet delivered; or DISC received; or for D-channel access DL-RELEASE-IND received	a) For B-channel access: disconnect link layer and initiate clearing b) For D-channel access: send DL-RELEASE-REQ	Timer is not restarted	Optional. See § 6.3
T321	30 s	Any call state	D-channel failure	Response to layer 3 message received	Send DL-ESTABLISH-REQ on both D-channels	Timer is not restarted	Mandatory when ANNEX F is implemented
T322	4 s	Any call state	STAT ENQ sent	STAT DISC REL or REL COM received	STAT ENQ may be retransmitted several times	STAT ENQ may be retransmitted several times	Mandatory when § 5.8.10 is implemented

Note 1 – This default value assumes the use of default values at layer 2 (i.e., [N200+1] times T200). Whether these values should be modified when layer 2 default values are modified by an automatic negotiation procedure is for further study.

Note 2 – The network may already have applied an internal alerting supervision timing function; e.g., incorporated within call control. If such a function is known to be operating on the call, then timer T301 is not used.

Note 3 – The value of this timer is implementation dependent but should be less than the value of T316.

Note 4 – If in the call abort state, the call reference is released. Otherwise, no action is taken on expiry of timer T312.

Note 5 – The value of timer T302 may vary beyond these limits; e.g., as a result of called party number analysis.

Note 6 – The value of timer T306 may depend on the length of the announcement.

Note 7 – The value of timer T310 may be different in order to take into account the characteristics of a private network.

Note 8 – This value may vary by network-user agreement.

Note 9 – The restart procedures contained in § 5.5 may be used on B-channels in the maintenance condition.

TABLE 9-2/Q.931

Timers in the user side

Timer number	Default time-out value	State of call	Cause for start	Normal stop	At the first expiry	At the second expiry	Cross-reference
T301	Minimum 3 min	Call delivered	ALERT received	CONN received	Clear call	Timer is not restarted	Mandatory when Annex D is implemented. (Note 3)
T302	15 s (provisional value)	Overlap receiving	SETUP ACK sent. Restart when INFO received	INFO received with sending complete indication; or internal alerting; or internal connection; or a determination that sufficient call information has been received	Clear if call information determined to be incomplete; else, send CALL PROCeeding	Timer is not restarted	Mandatory only if § 5.2.4 is implemented
T303	4 s (Note 1)	Call initiated	SETUP sent	ALERT (Annex D) CONN (Annex D) SETUP ACK, CALL PROC, or REL COMP received	Retransmit SETUP; restart T303. If REL COMP was received, clear the call (Annex D)	Clear internal connection. Send REL COMP. Enter null state	Mandatory when Annex D is implemented; otherwise optional
T304	15 s	Overlap sending	INFO sent. Restarted when INFO sent again	CALL PROC ALERT, CONN, or DISC received	DISC sent	Timer is not restarted	Optional
T305	30 s	Disconnect request	DISC sent	REL or DISC received	REL sent	Timer is not restarted	Mandatory

TABLE 9-2/Q.931 *(cont.)*

Timer number	Default time-out value	State of call	Cause for start	Normal stop	At the first expiry	At the second expiry	Cross-reference
T308	4 s (Note 1)	Release request	REL sent	REL COMP or REL received	Retransmit REL; restart T308	B-channel placed in maintenance condition. Call reference released (Note 5)	Mandatory
T309	90 s	Any stable state	Data link disconnection. Calls in stable states are not lost	Data link reconnected	Clear internal connection. Release B-channel and call reference	Timer is not restarted	Optional
T310 (Note 4)	10 s	Outgoing call proceeding	CALL PROC received	ALERT, CONN, DISC, or PROG received	Send DISC	Timer is not restarted	Mandatory when Annex D is implemented
T313	4 s (Note 1)	Connect request	CONN sent	CONNect ACKnowledge received	Send DISCconnect	Timer is not restarted	Mandatory
T314	4 s	Receiving segmented message	Message segment received	Last message segment received	Discard message	Timer is not restarted	Mandatory; see Annex L
T316	2 m	Restart request	REST sent	REST ACK received	REST may be retransmitted several times	REST may be restransmitted several times	Mandatory when § 5.5 is implemented
T317	(Note 2)	Restart	REST received	Internal clearing of call references	Maintenance notification	Timer is not restarted	Mandatory when § 5.5 is implemented

TABLE 9-2/Q.931 *(end)*

Timer number	Default time-out value	State of call	Cause for start	Normal stop	At the first expiry	At the second expiry	Cross-reference
T318	4 s	Resume request	RES sent	RES ACK or RES REJ received	Clear internal connection. Release call reference. Enter null state	Timer is not restarted	Mandatory when § 5.6 is implemented
T319	4 s	Suspend request	SUSP sent	SUSP ACK or SUSP REJ received	Enter active state. Notify user application	Timer is not restarted	Mandatory when § 5.6 is implemented
T321	30 s	Any call state	D-channel failure	Response to layer 3 message received	Send DL-ESTABLISH-REQ on both D-channels	Timer is not restarted	Mandatory when Annex F is implemented
T322	4 s	Any call state	STAT ENQ sent	STAT, DISC, REL or REL COMP received	STAT ENQ may be retransmitted several times	STAT ENQ may be retransmitted several times	Mandatory when § 5.8.10 is implemented

Note 1 – This default value assumes the use of default values at layer 2; i.e., (N200 + 1) times T200. Whether these values should be modified when layer 2 default values are modified by an automatic negotiation procedure is for further study.

Note 2 – The value of this timer is implementation dependent, but should be less than the value of T316.

Note 3 – The user may already have applied an internal alerting supervision timing function; e.g., incorporated within call control. If such a function is known to be operating on the call, then timer T301 is not used.

Note 4 – T310 is not started if progress indictor 1 or 2 has been delivered in the CALL PROCEEDING message or in a prevous PROGRESS message.

Note 5 – The restart procedures contained in § 5.5 may be used on B-channels in the maintenance condition.

ANNEX A

(to Recommendation Q.931)

User side and network side SDL diagrams

This Annex includes overview and detailed SDL diagrams which show Q.931 protocol control for circuit-switched basic calls. In the event of conflict between these diagrams and the text of § 5, the text should be the prime source. Similarly, in the event of conflict between overview SDL and detailed SDL diagrams, the detailed SDL diagrams should be the prime source.

Figure A-1/Q.931 shows key to Q.931 protocol control SDL diagrams for both user side and network side.

Note – The same name as is specified in Recommendation Q.699 is used for each primitive to be exchanged between Q.931 protocol control and call control, whenever it is possible. Alignment of primitive names with those specified as OSI terminology may be required.

Figure A-2/Q.931 and A-3/Q.931 show overview and detailed protocol control SDL diagrams for the user side.

Figure A-5/Q.931 and A-6/Q.931 show overview and detailed protocol control SDL diagrams for the network side. Only procedures for the point-to-point configuration are described in the network side SDL diagrams.

Note – Network side SDL diagrams for the point-to-multipoint configuration are left for further study.

Figure A-4/Q.931 shows detailed SDL diagrams for the global call reference to be applied to both user and network sides. Although Figure A-4/Q.931 shows SDL diagrams in the user-side only, the same diagrams can be applied to the network side by just changing the direction of input and output symbols.

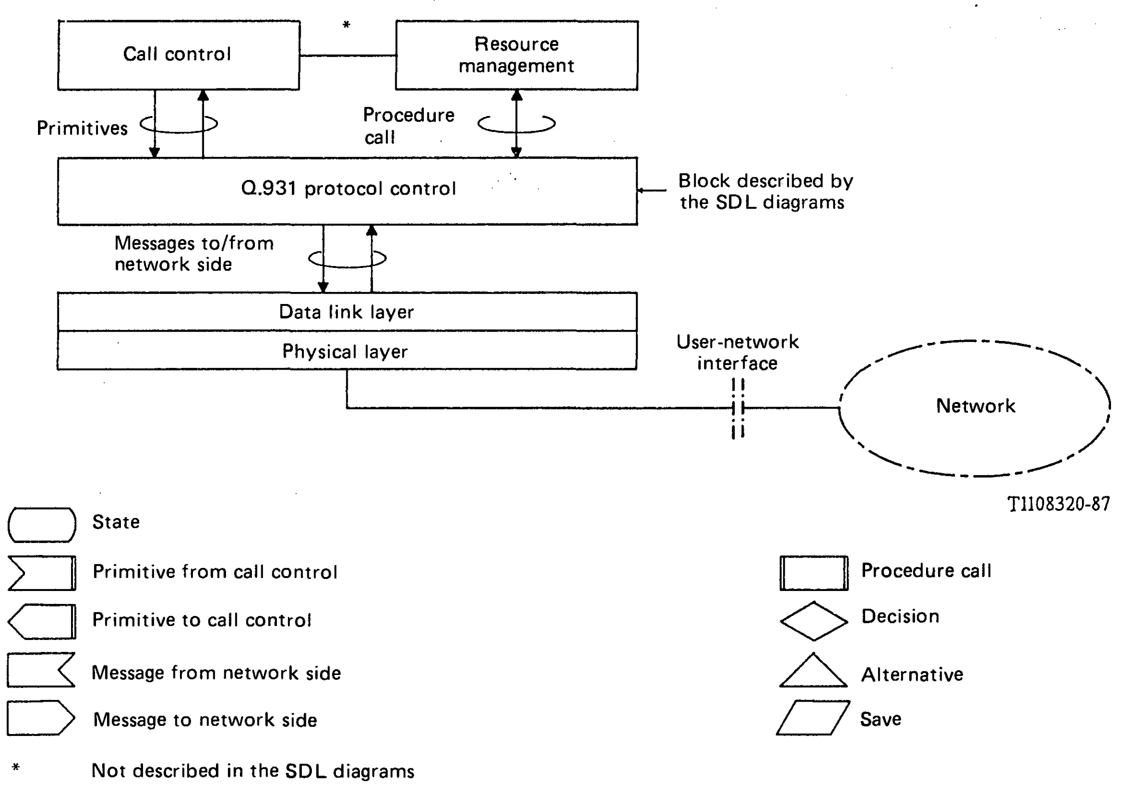


FIGURE A-1/Q.931 (Sheet 1 of 2)

Key to Q.931 protocol control SDL diagrams (user side)

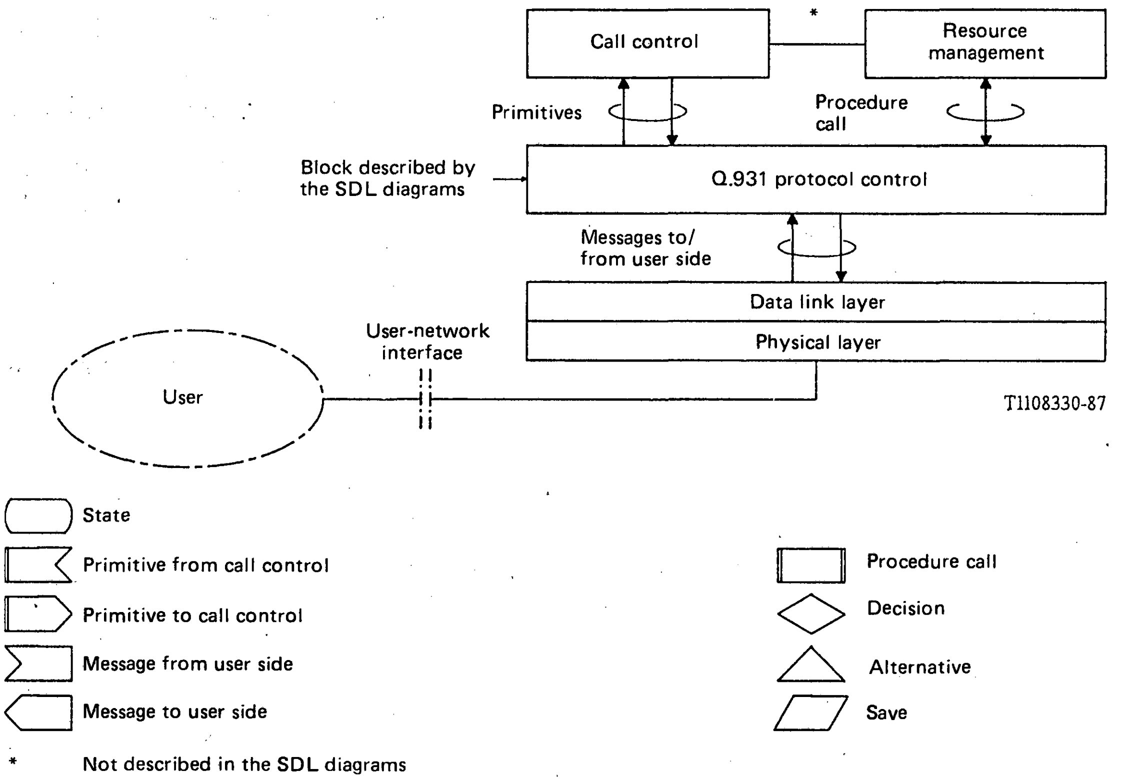
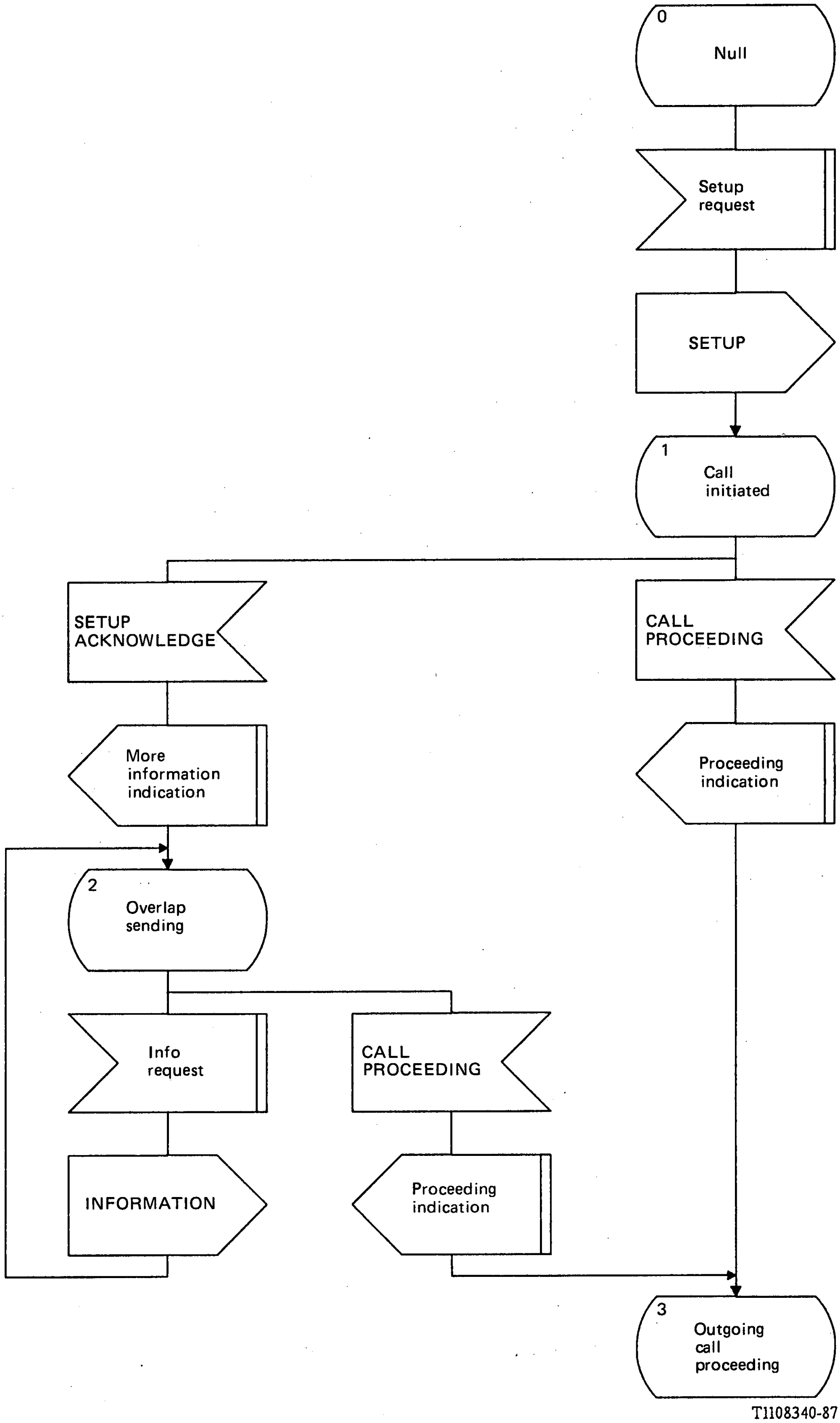


FIGURE A-1/Q.931 (Sheet 2 of 2)

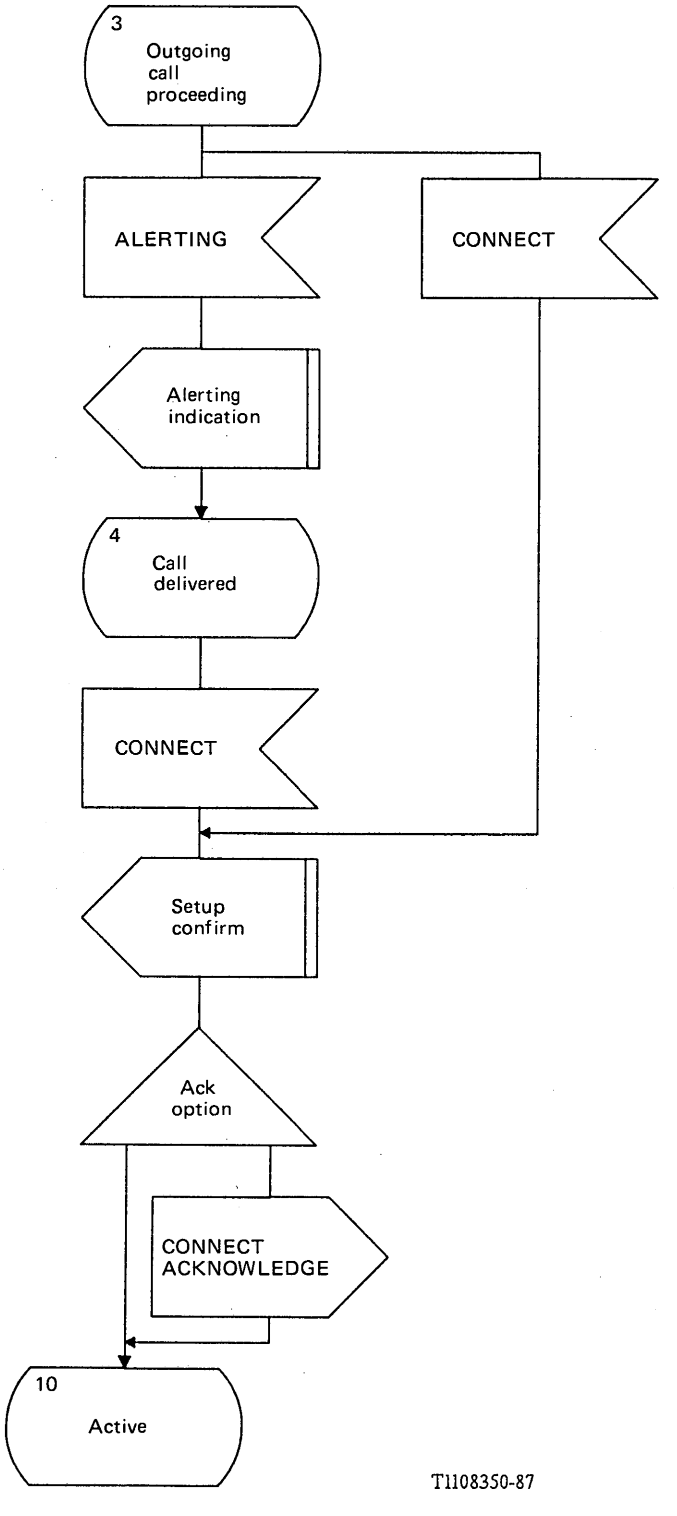
Key to protocol control SDL diagrams (network side)



a) Outgoing setup procedure (1 of 2)

FIGURE A-2/Q.931 (Sheet 1 of 7)

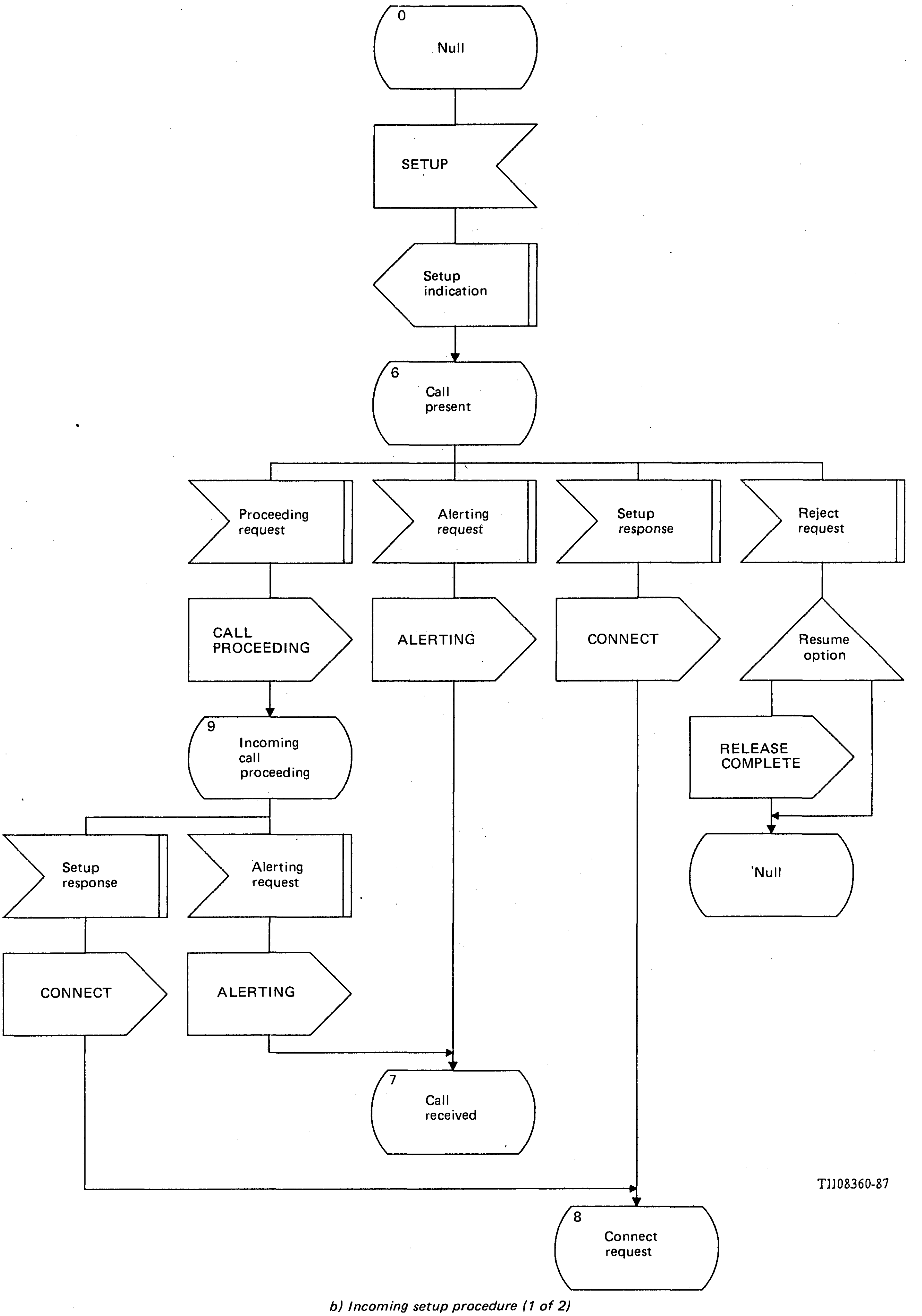
Overview protocol control (user side)



a) Outgoing setup procedure (2 of 2)

FIGURE A-2/Q.931 (Sheet 2 of 7)

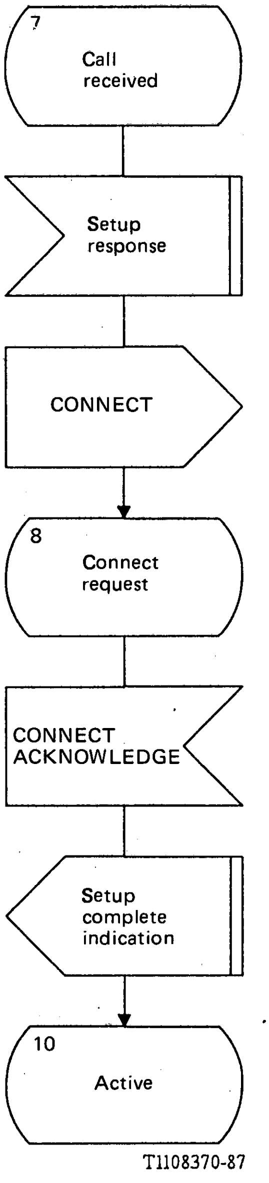
Overview protocol control (user side)



b) Incoming setup procedure (1 of 2)

FIGURE A-2/Q.931 (Sheet 3 of 7)

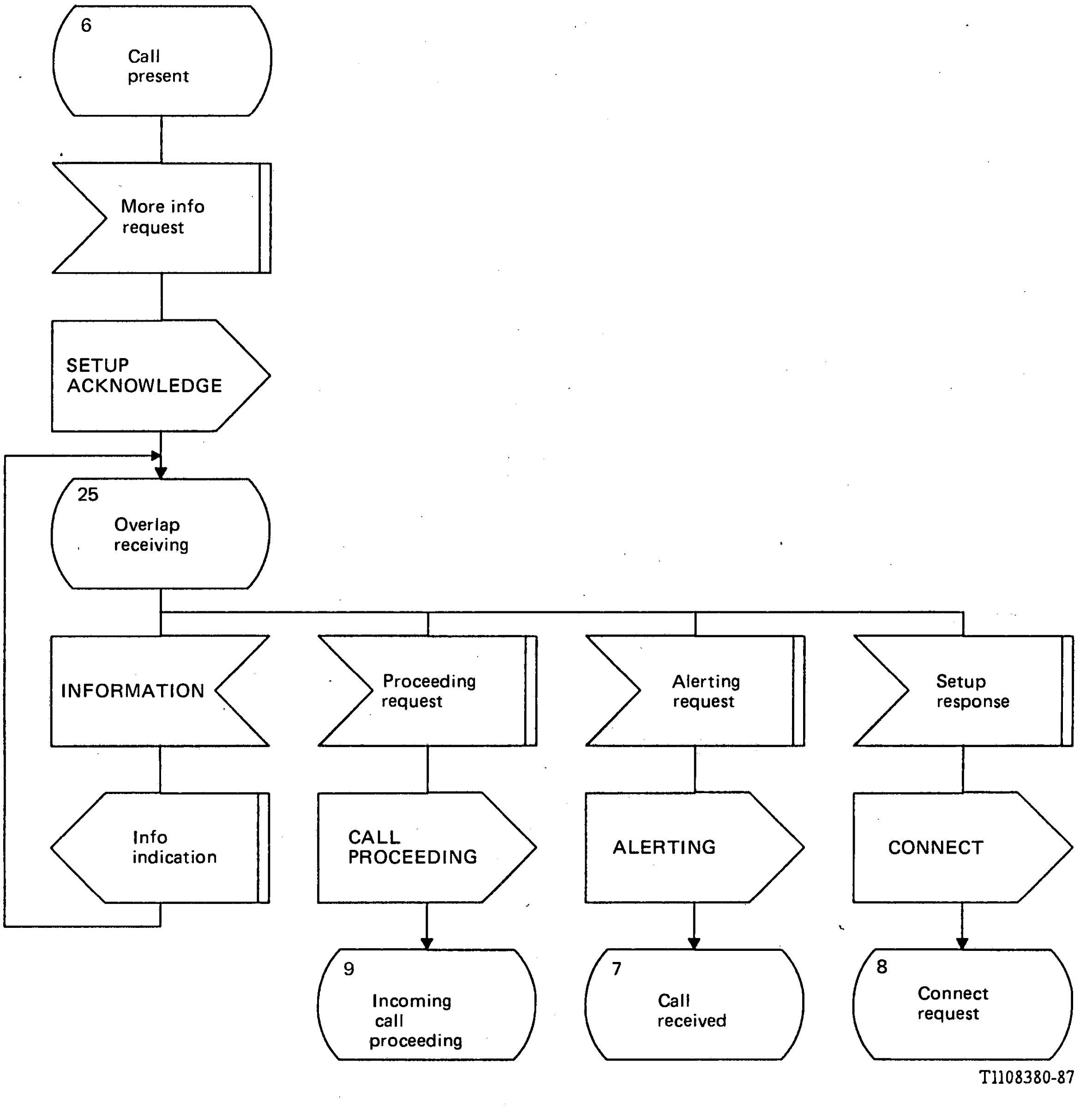
Overview protocol control (user side)



b) Incoming setup procedure (2 of 2)

FIGURE A-2/Q.931 (Sheet 4 of 7)

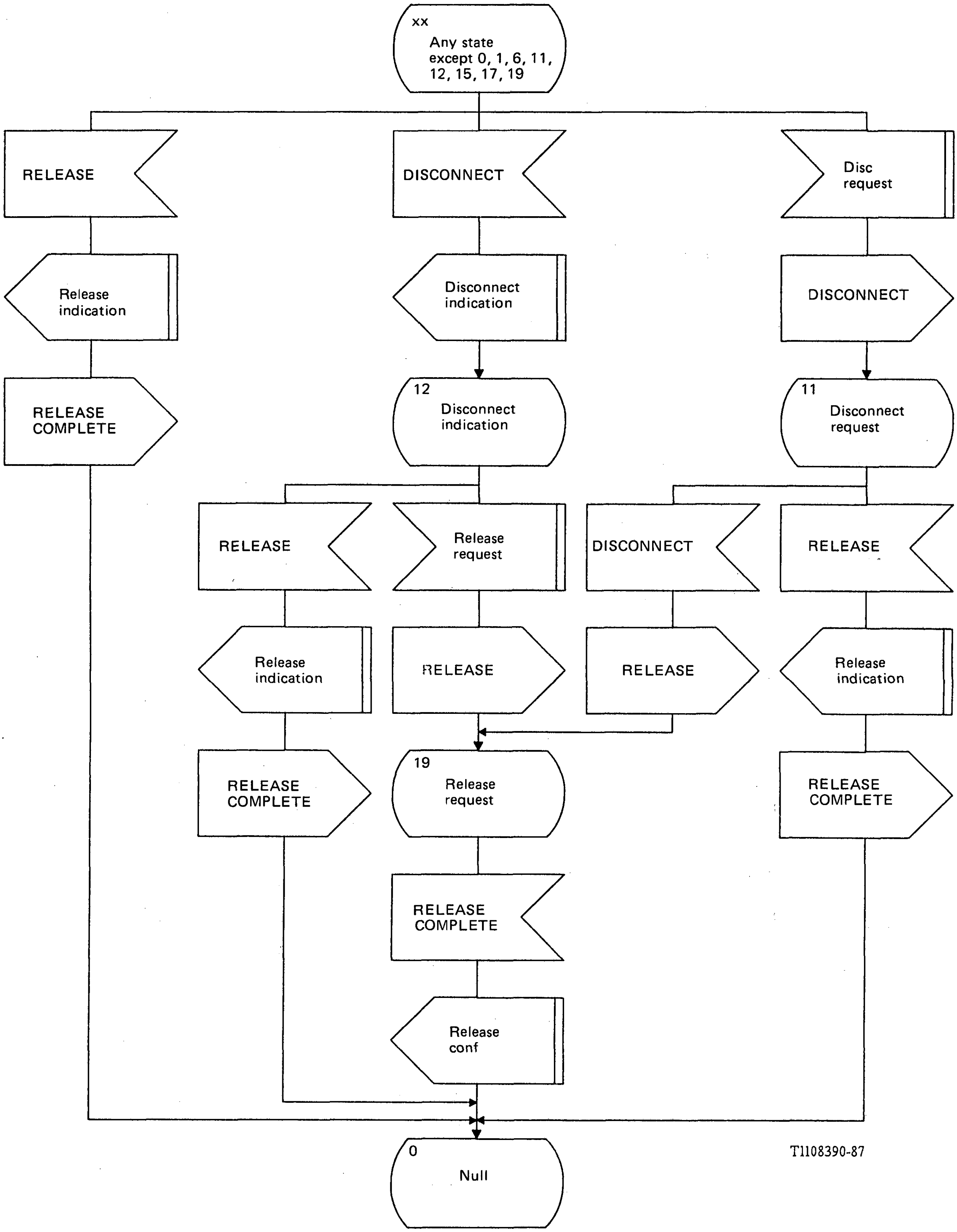
Overview protocol control (user side)



c) Overlap receiving procedure

FIGURE A-2/Q.931 (Sheet 5 of 7)

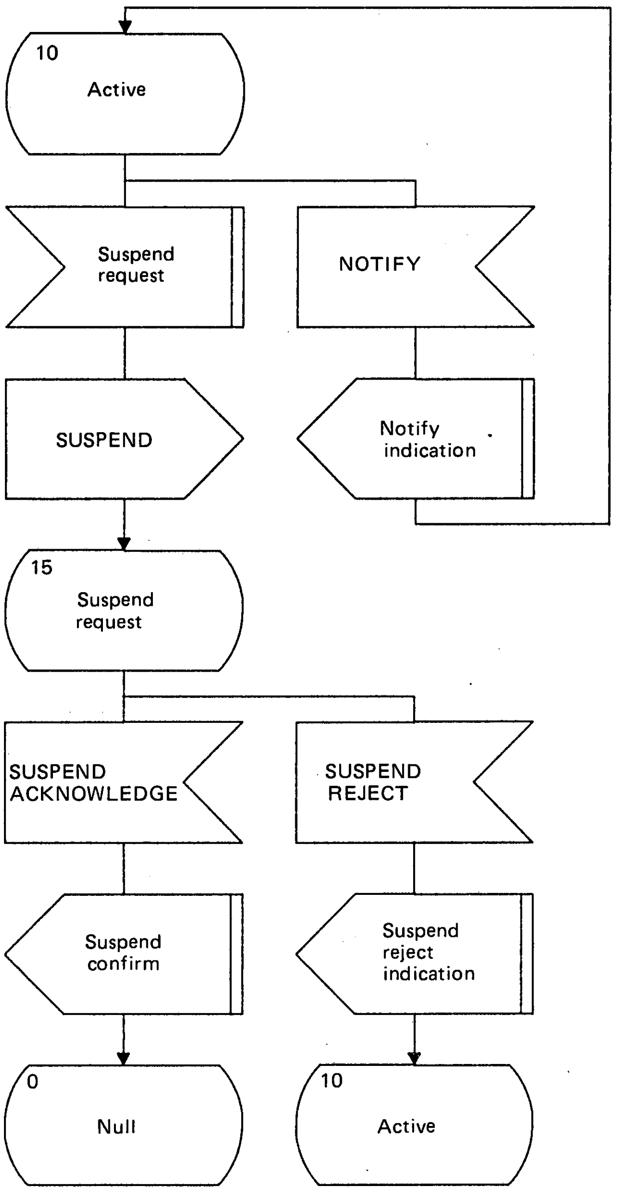
Overview protocol control (user side)



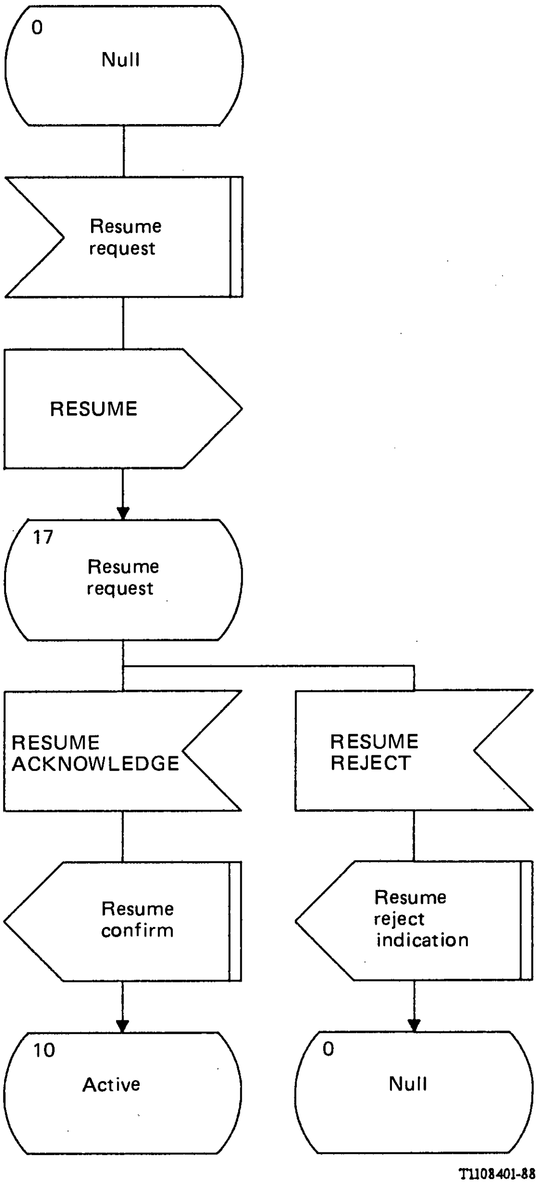
d) Clearing procedure

FIGURE A-2/Q.931 (Sheet 6 of 7)

Overview protocol control (user side)



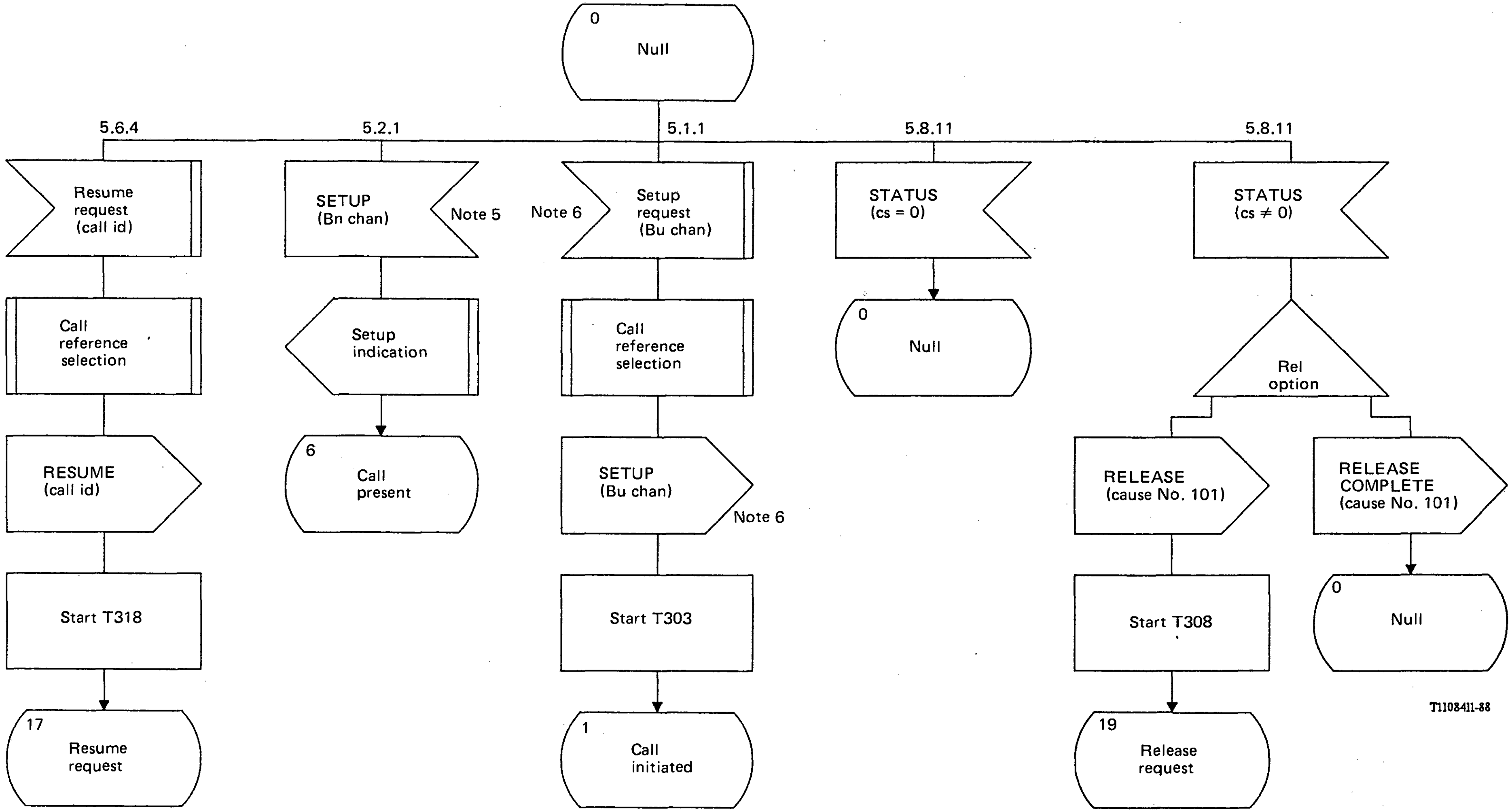
e) Suspend procedure



f) Resume procedure

FIGURE A-2/Q.931 (Sheet 7 of 7)

Overview protocol control (user side)



Note 1 – FS indicates further study.

Note 2 – In the event of conflict between these diagrams and the text of § 5, the text should be the prime source.

Note 3 – These diagrams show Q.931 protocol control for circuit-switched calls.

Note 4 – T303 and T318 are optional (see § 9.2).

Note 5 – "Bn chan" is a B-channel selected by the network.

Note 6 – "Bu chan" is a B-channel selected by the user.

FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 1 of 25)

Detailed protocol control (user side)

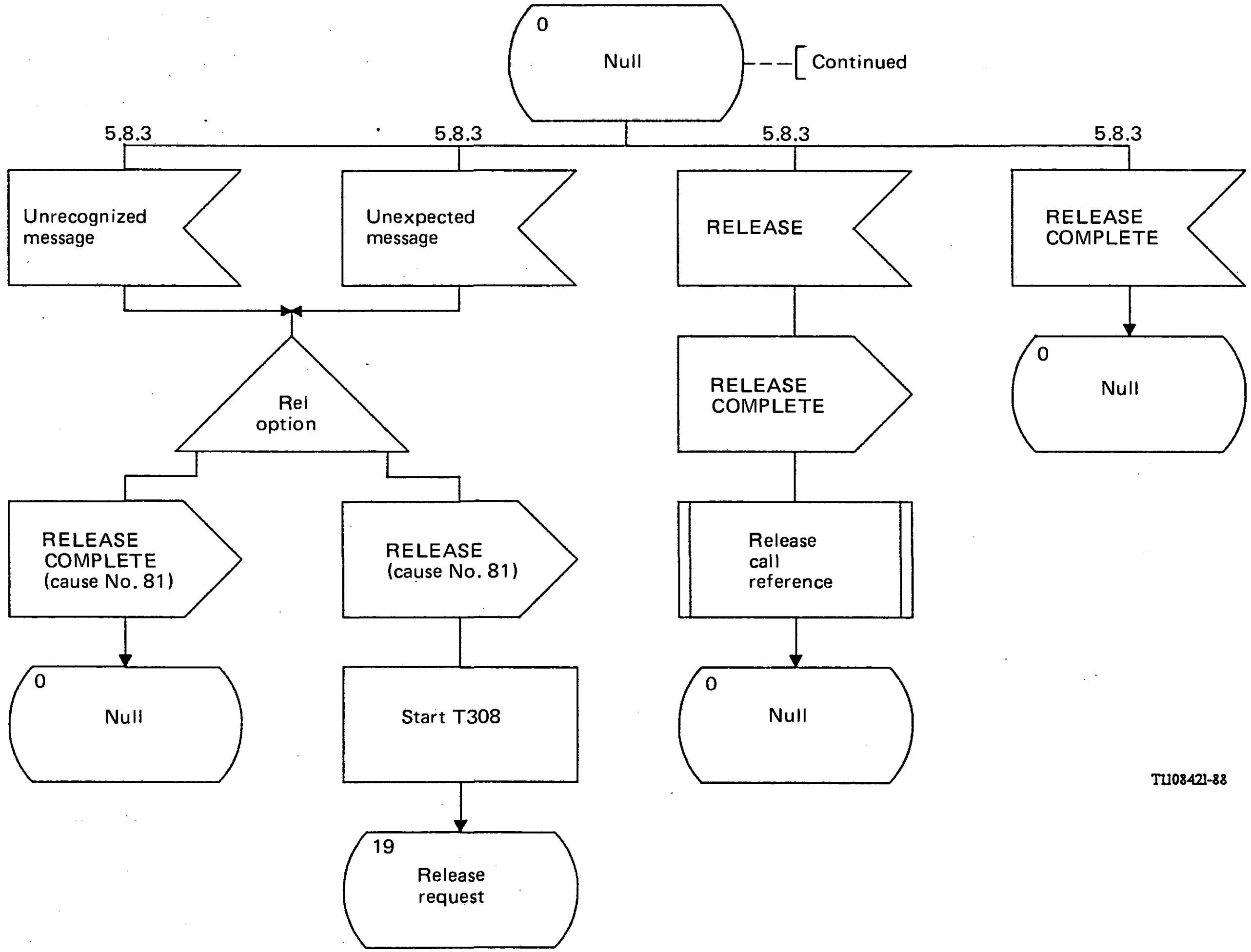
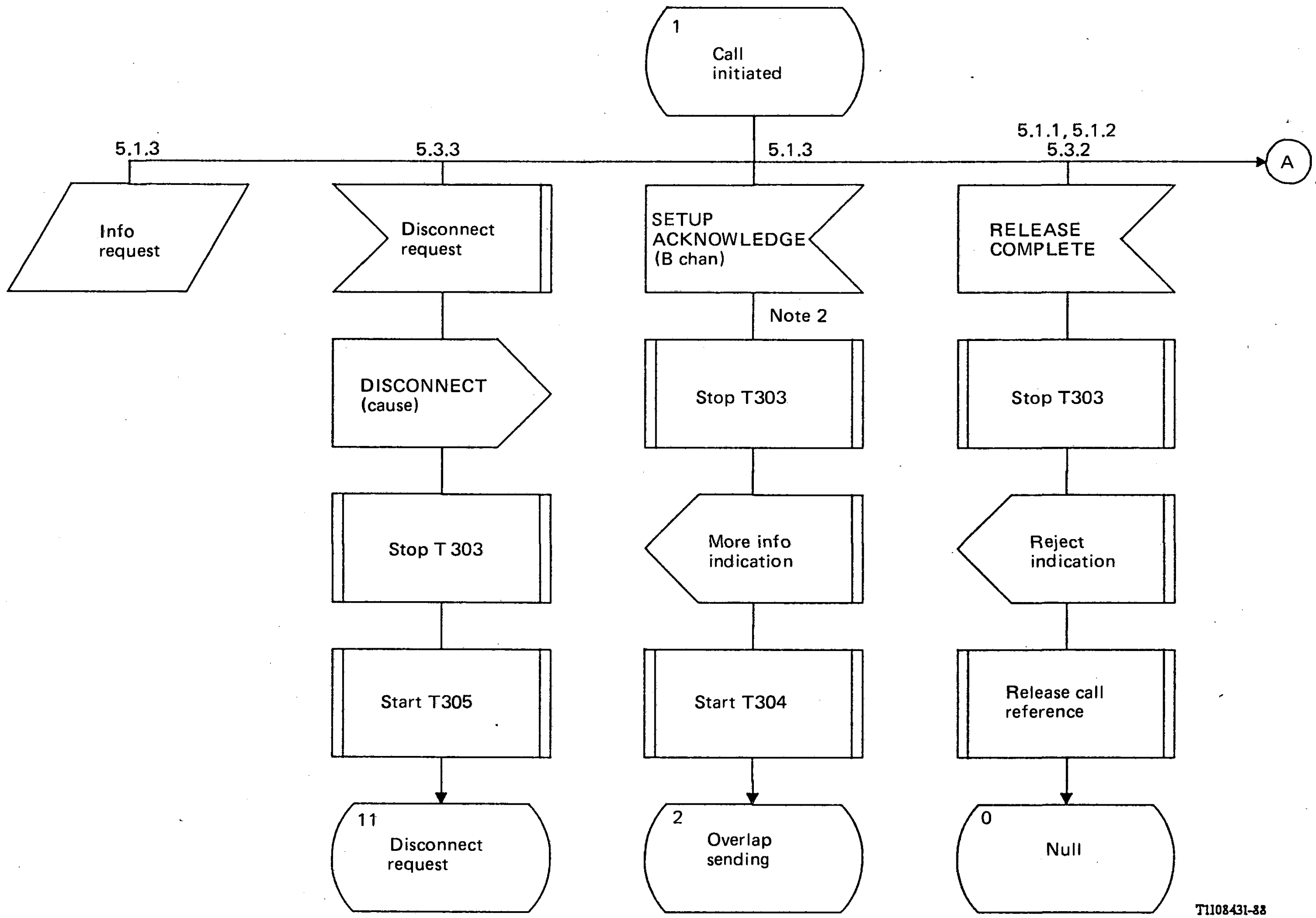


FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 2 of 25)

Detailed protocol control (user side)

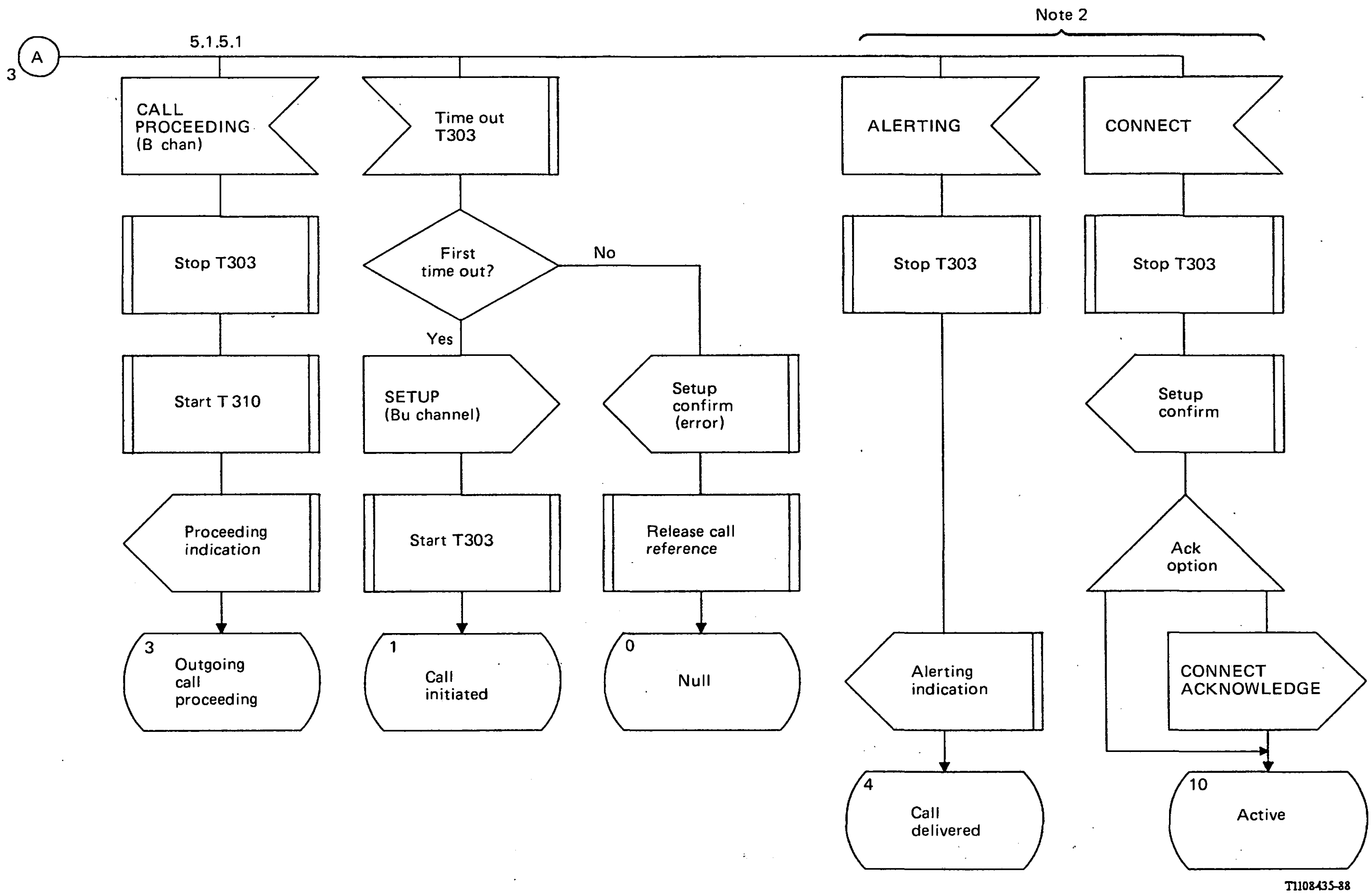


Note 1 – T303, T304 and T310 are optional (see § 9.2).

Note 2 – "B chan" is a B-channel negotiated by the network and the user.

FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 3 of 25)

Detailed protocol control (user side)



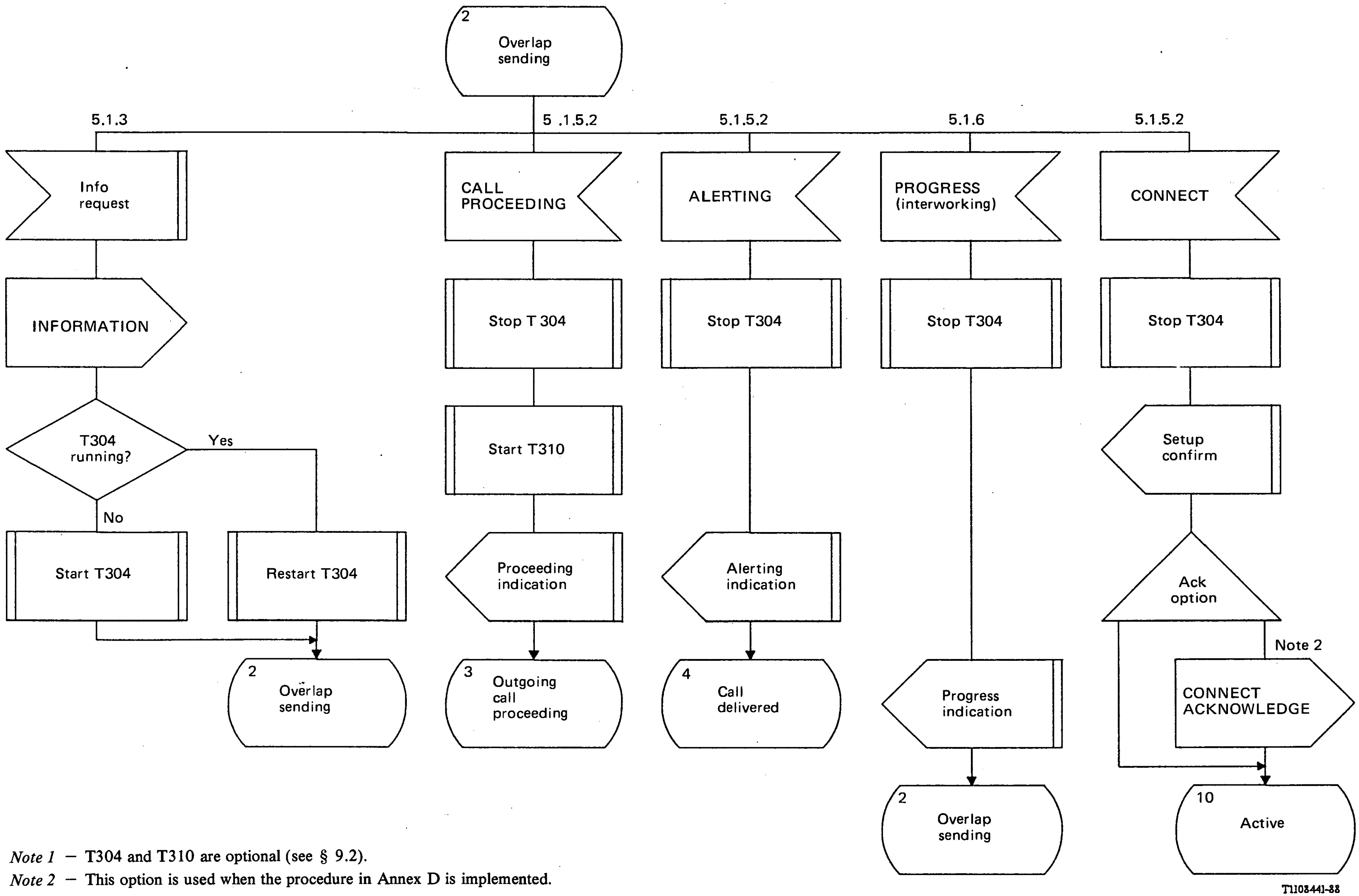
Note 1 – T303, T304 and T310 are optional (see § 9.2).

Note 2 – Only applicable for the procedure defined in Annex D.

Note 3 – "B chan" is a B-channel negotiated by the network and the user.

FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 4 of 25)

Detailed protocol control (user side)

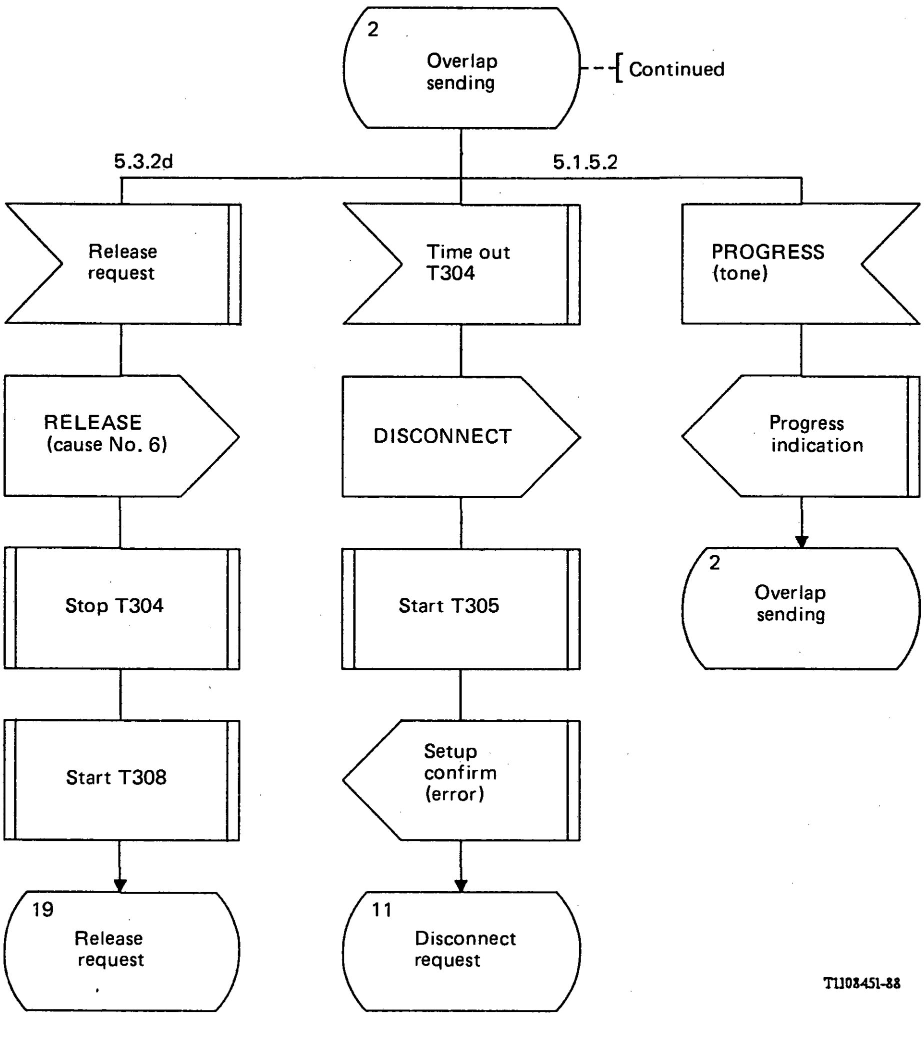


Note 1 – T304 and T310 are optional (see § 9.2).

Note 2 – This option is used when the procedure in Annex D is implemented.

FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 5 of 25)

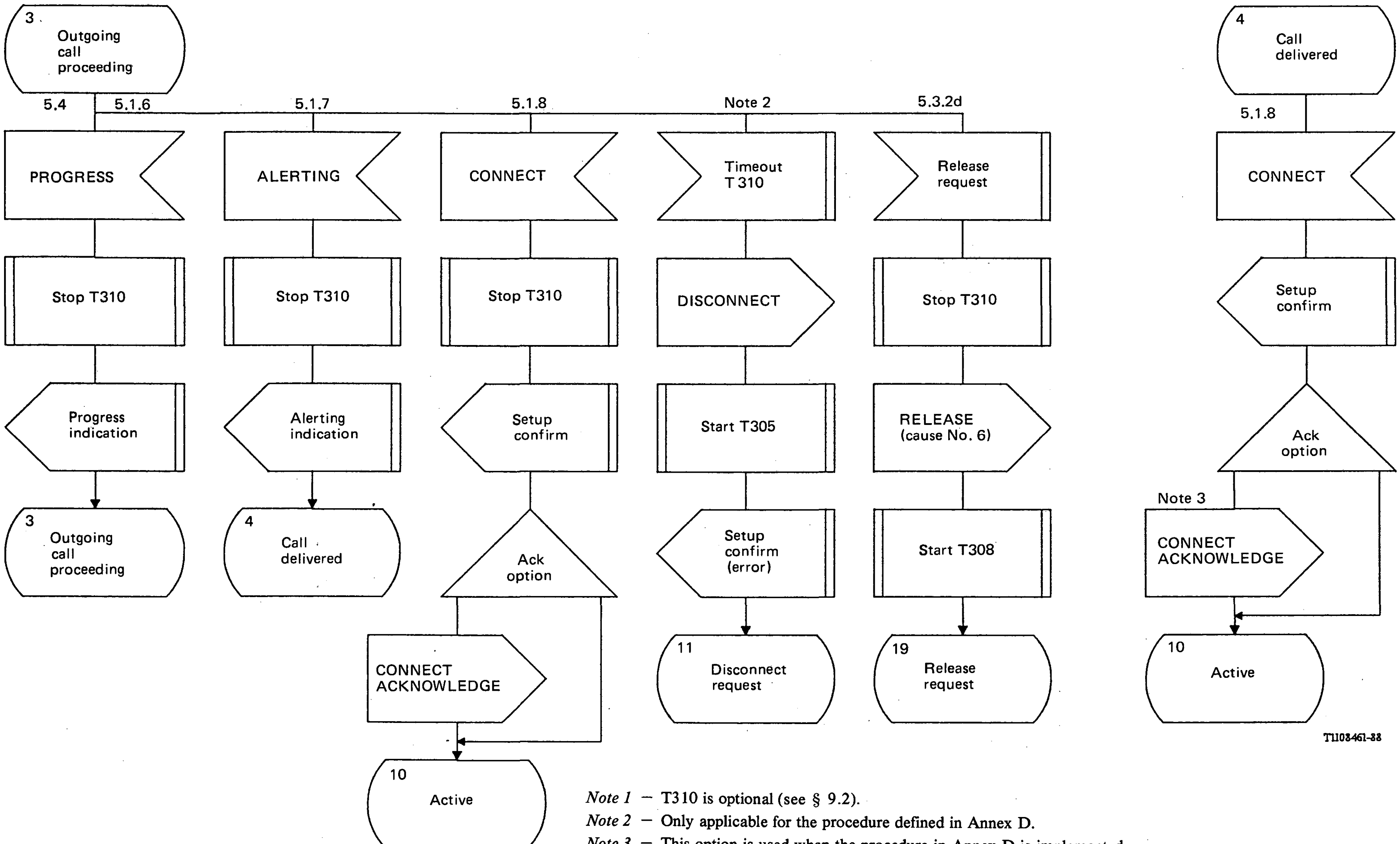
Detailed protocol control (user side)



Note — T304 is optional (see § 9.2).

FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 6 of 25)

Detailed protocol control (user side)



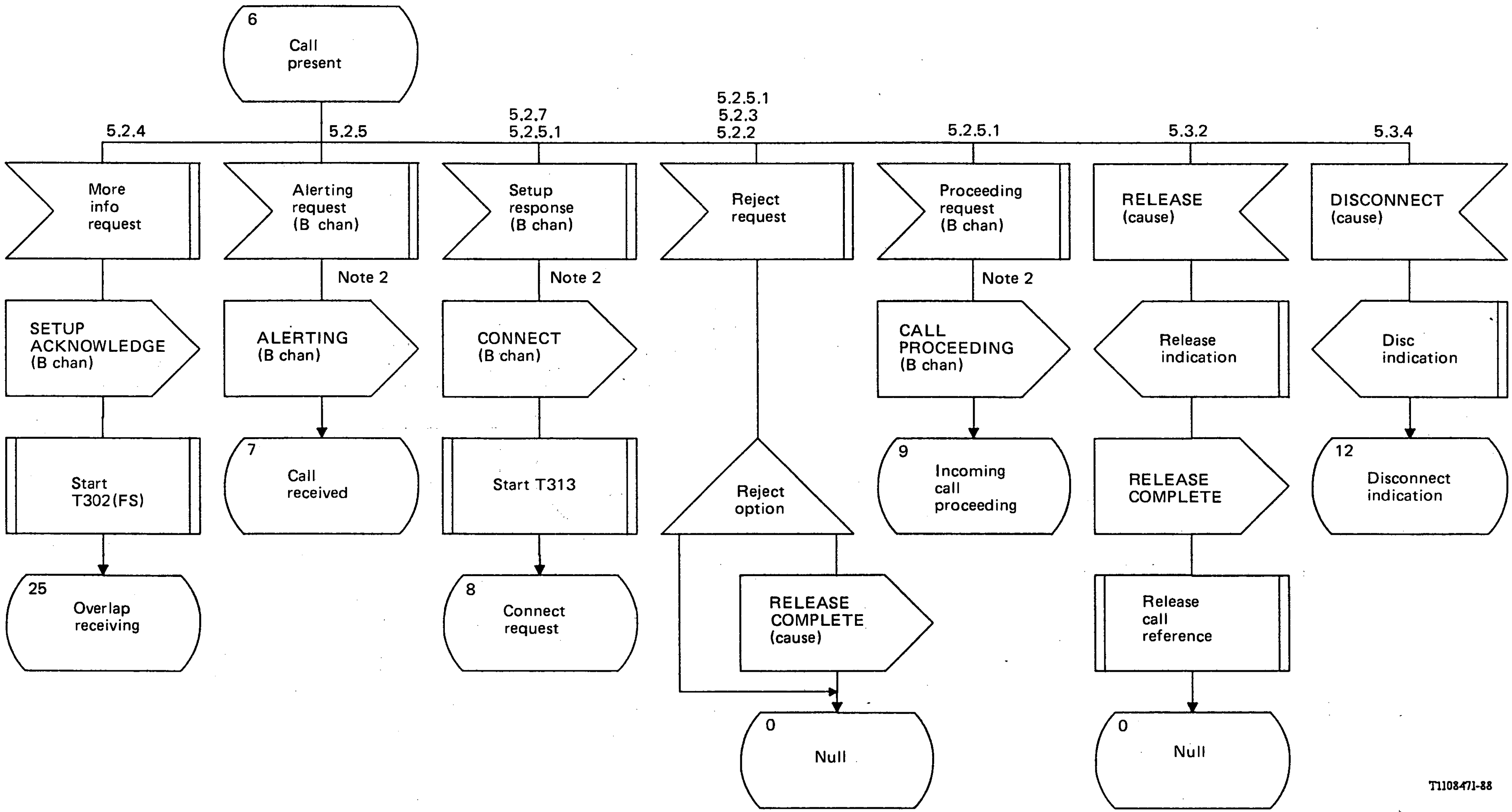
Note 1 – T310 is optional (see § 9.2).

Note 2 – Only applicable for the procedure defined in Annex D.

Note 3 – This option is used when the procedure in Annex D is implemented.

FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 7 of 25)

Detailed protocol control (user side)



Note 1 – T302 is optional (see § 9.2).

Note 2 – "B chan" is a B channel negotiated by the network and the user.

FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 8 of 25)

Detailed protocol control (user side)

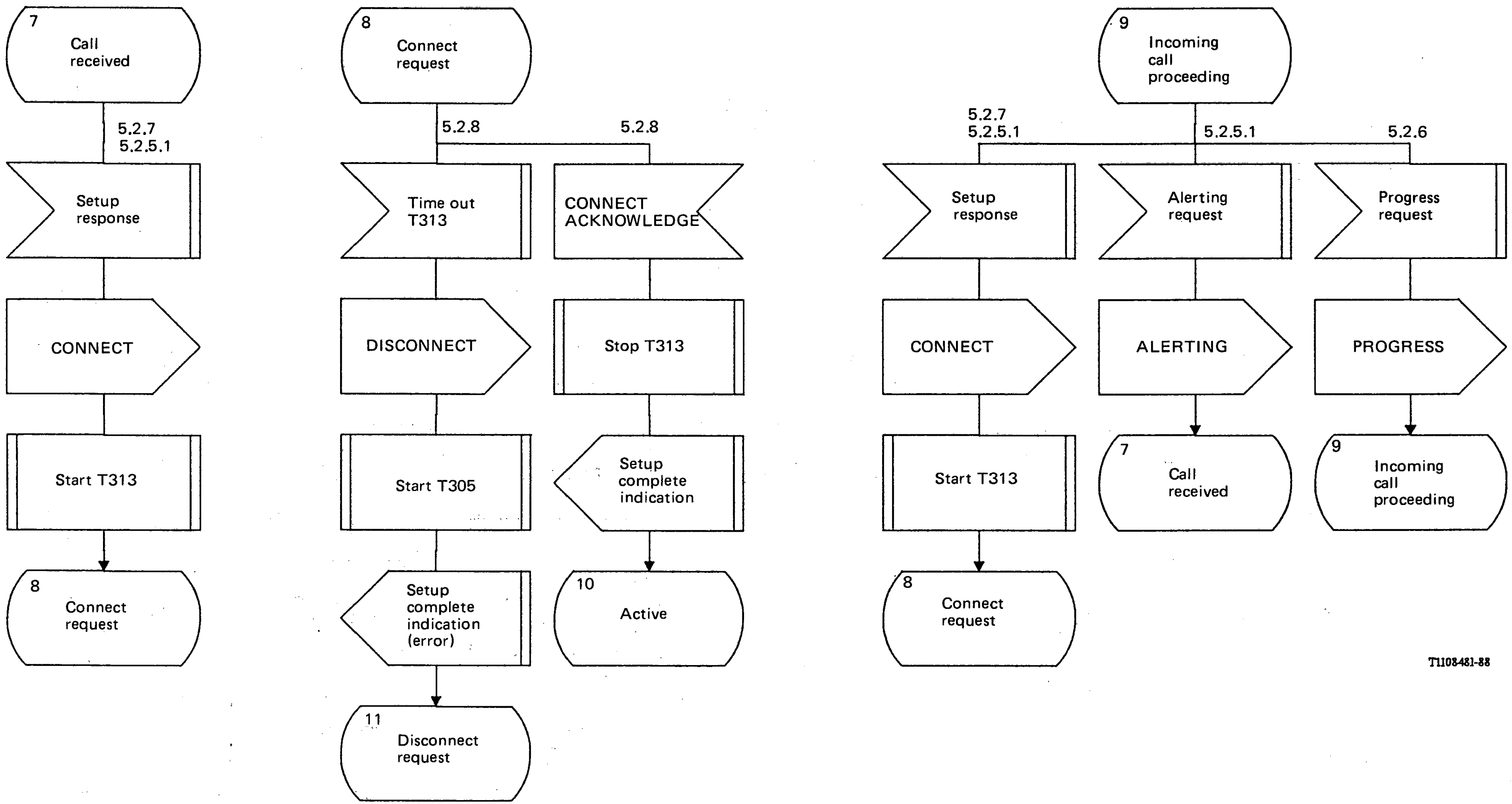
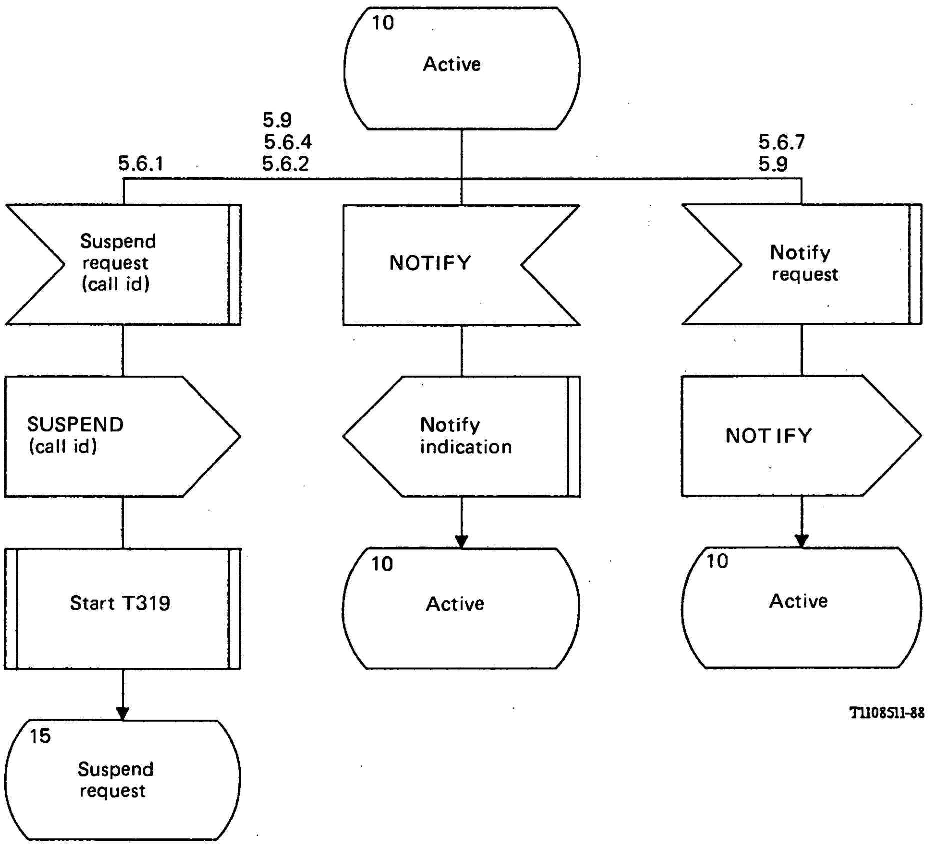


FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 9 of 25)

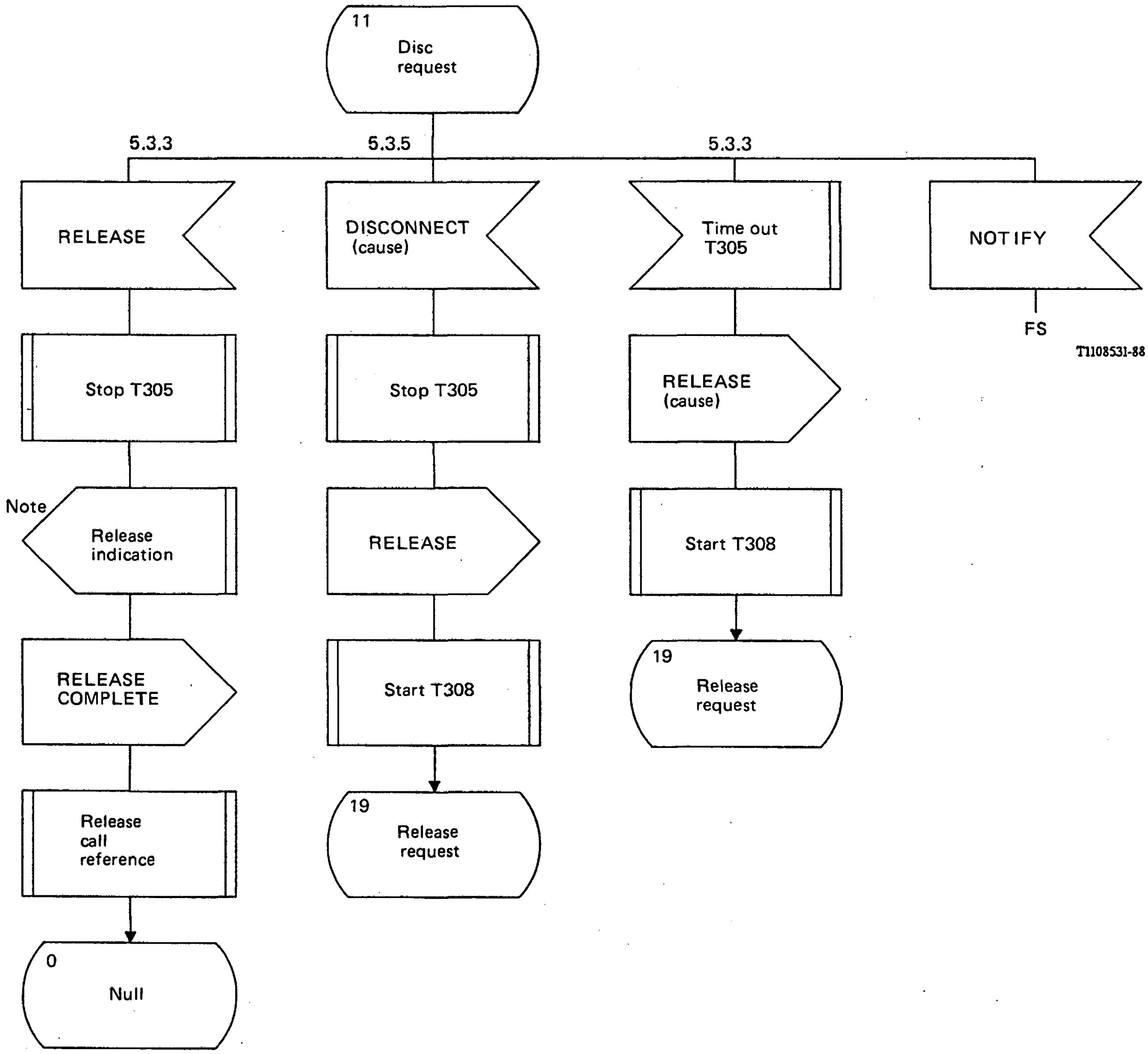
Detailed protocol control (user side)



Note — T319 is optional (see § 9.2).

FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 10 of 25)

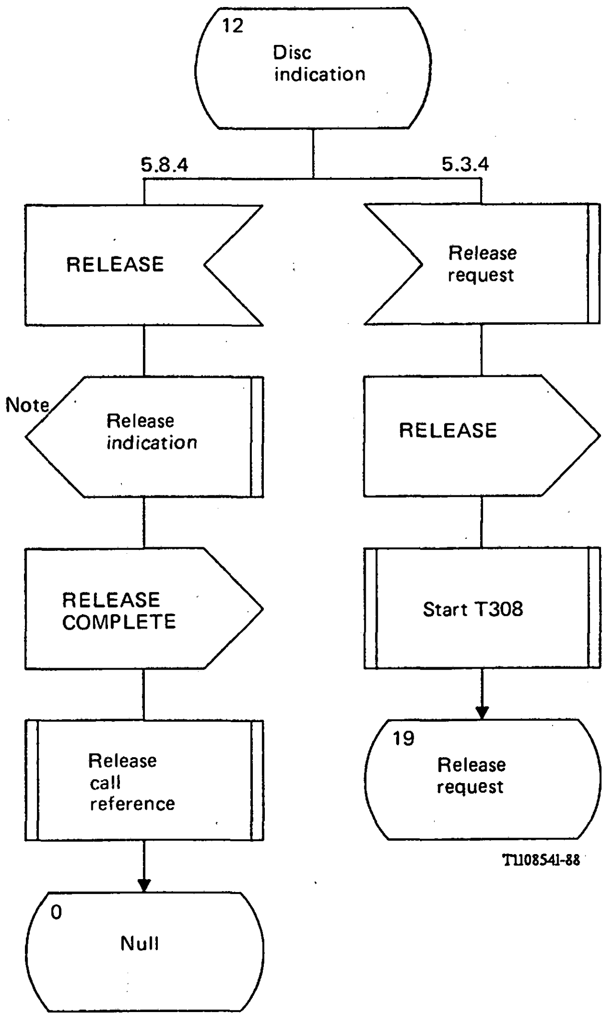
Detailed protocol control (user side)



Note – After receiving this primitive, call control process should release B channel.

FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 11 of 25)

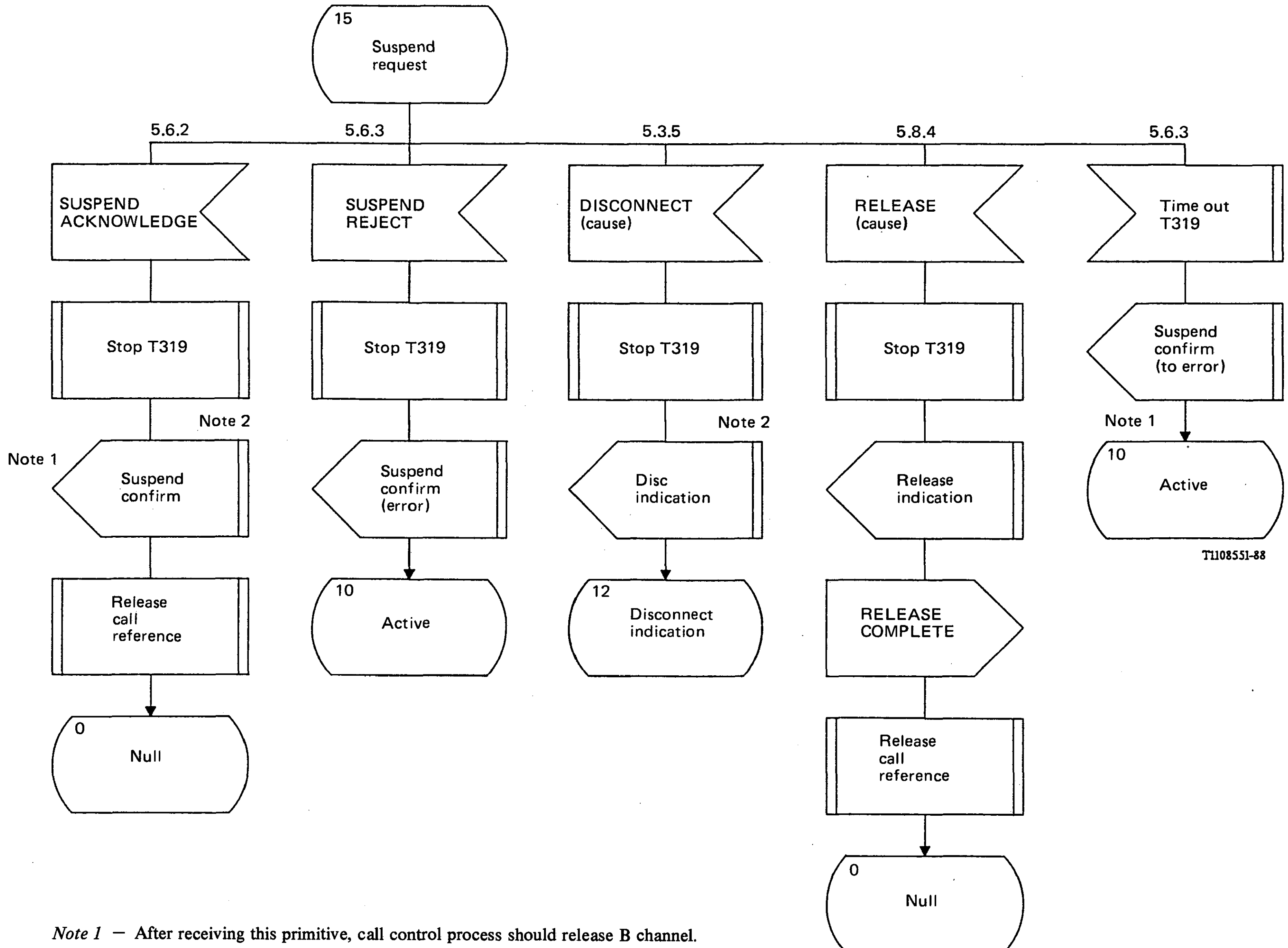
Detailed protocol control (user side)



Note — After receiving this primitive, call control process should release B channel.

FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 12 of 25)

Detailed protocol control (user side)

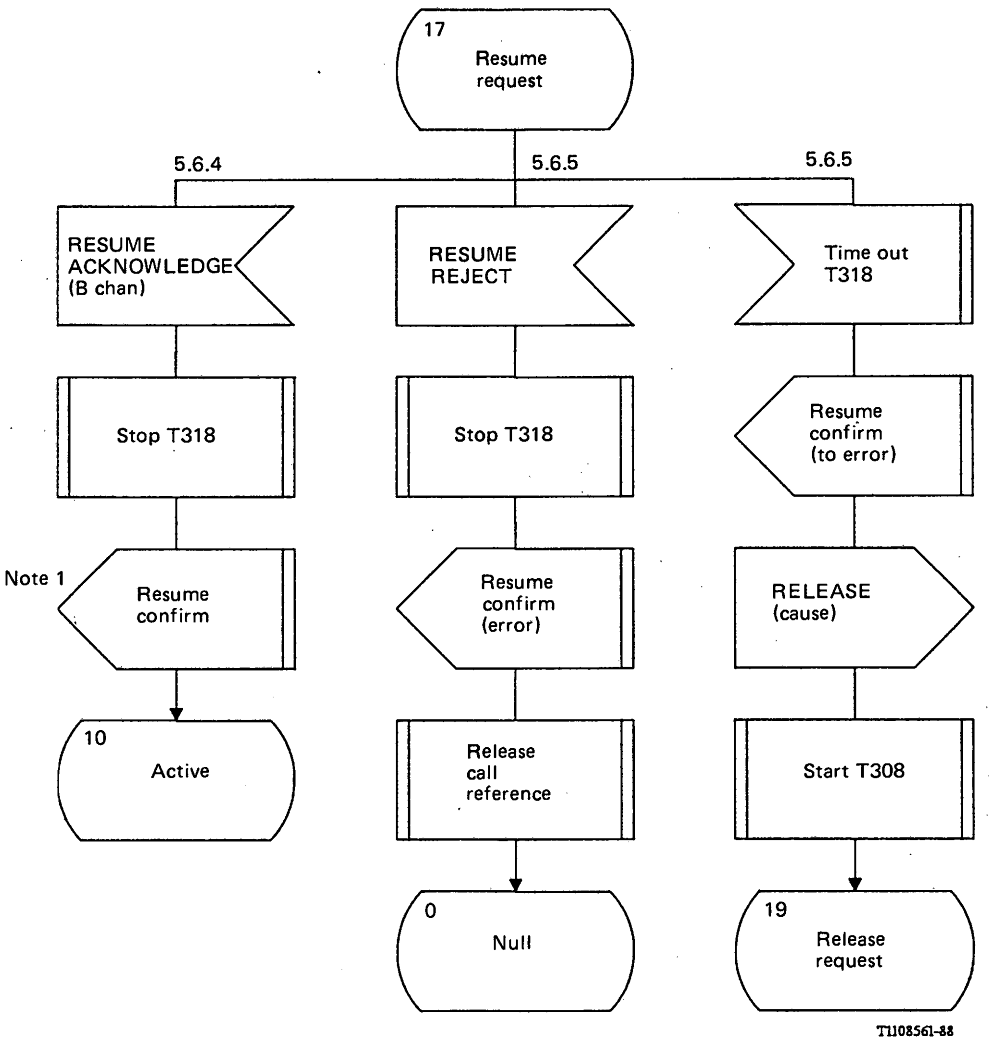


Note 1 – After receiving this primitive, call control process should release B channel.

Note 2 – T319 is optional (see § 9.2).

FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 13 of 25)

Detailed protocol control (user side)



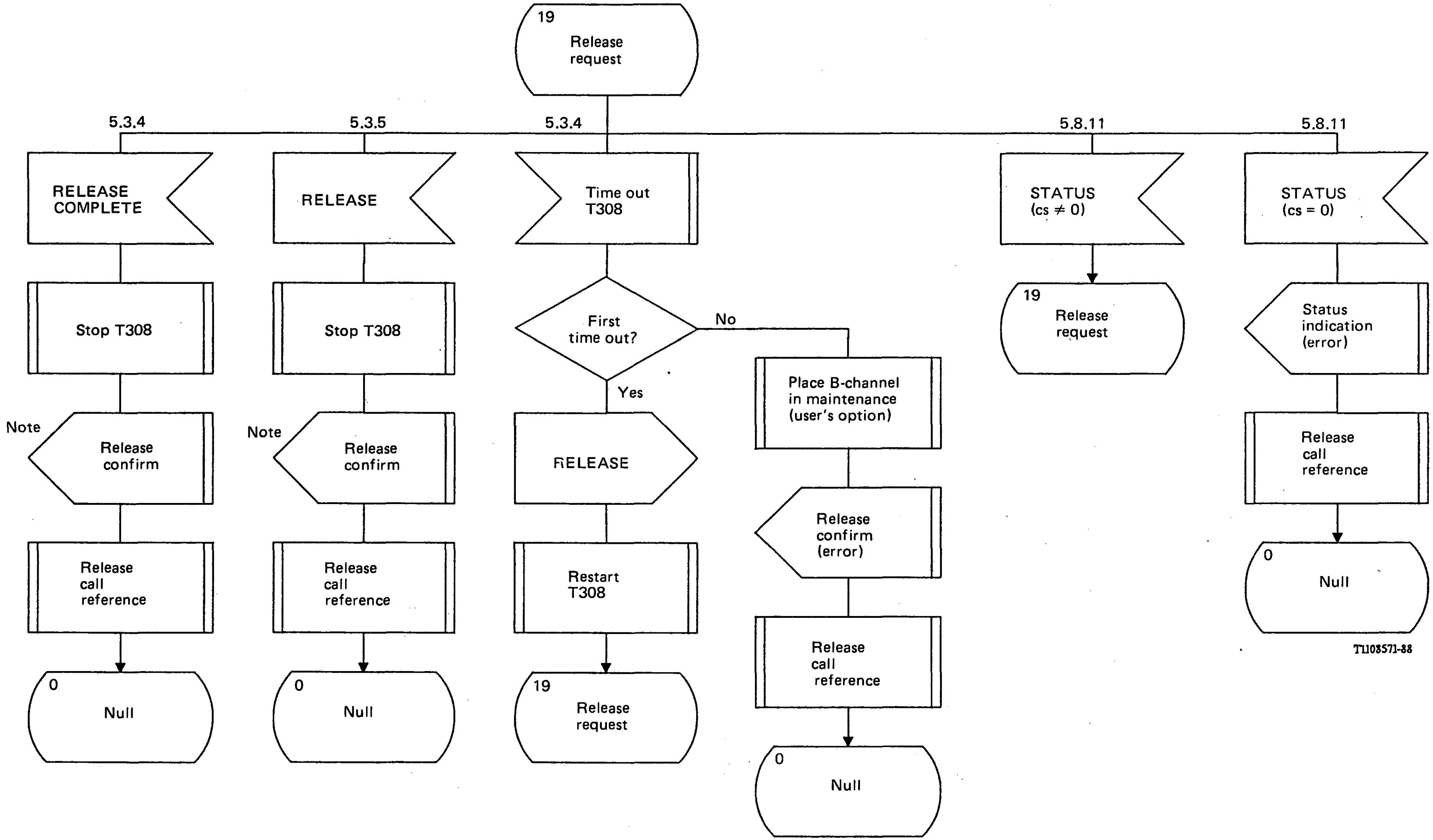
Note 1 – After receiving this primitive call control process should connect B channel.

Note 2 – T318 is optional (see § 9.2).

Note 3 – Open issue: Handling of disconnect request primitive.

FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 14 of 25)

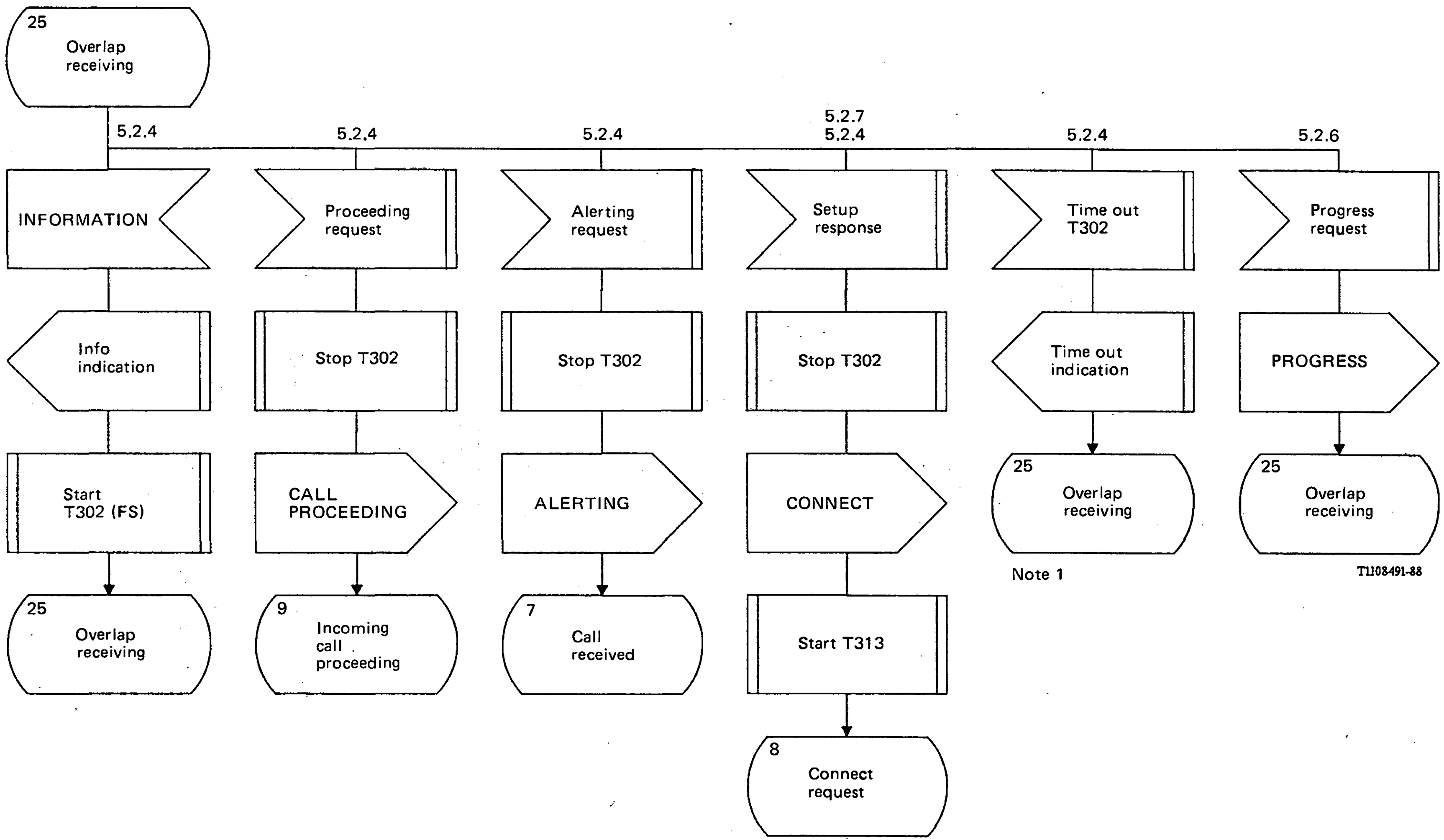
Detailed protocol control (user side)



Note – After receiving this primitive, call control process should release B channel.

FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 15 of 25)

Detailed protocol control (user side)

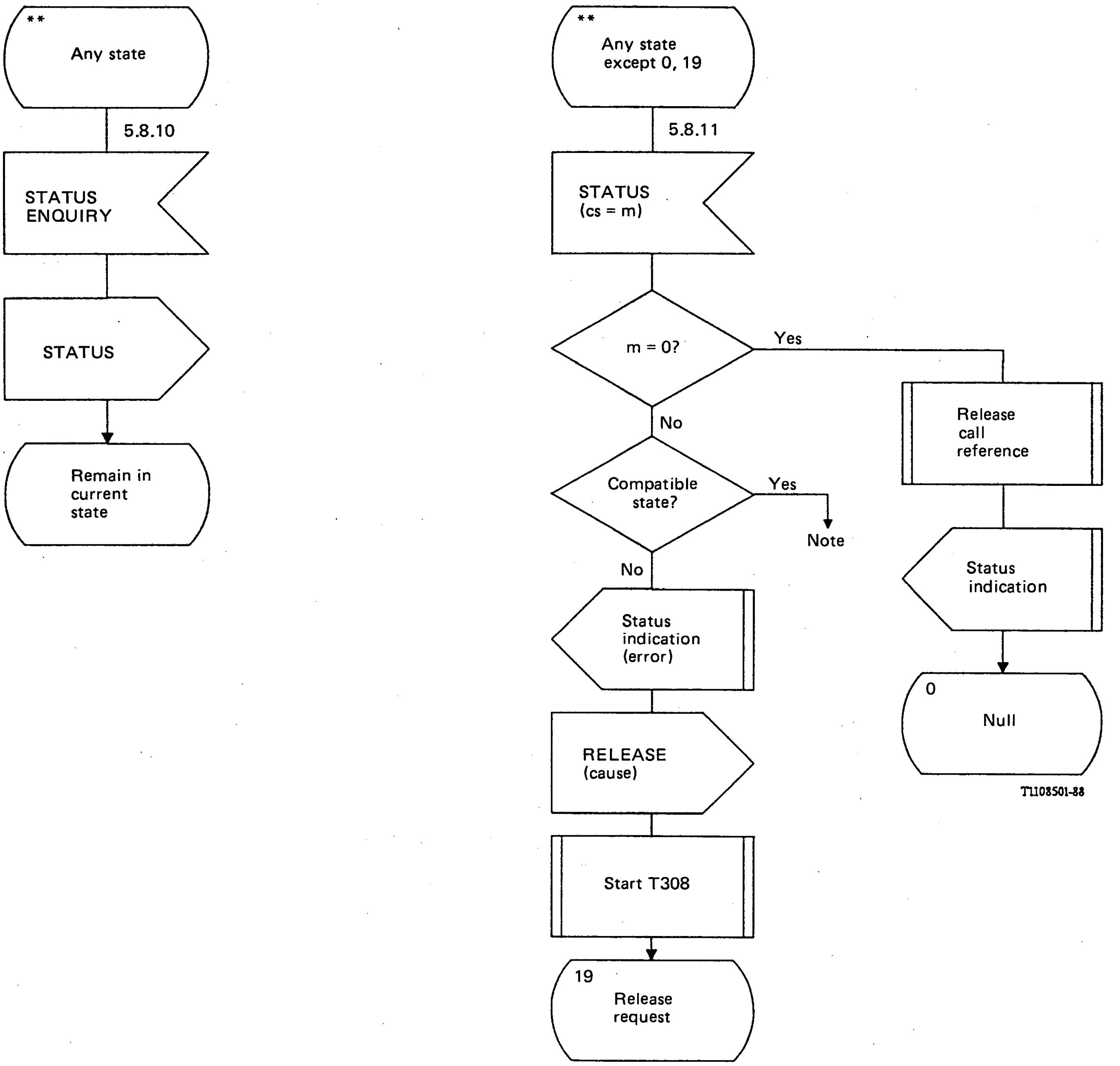


Note 1 – It is assumed that the decision whether complete information has been received or not, at the expiry of T302, will be made by the call control.

Note 2 – T302 is optional (see § 9.2).

FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 16 of 25)

Detailed protocol control (user side)



Note – Action on receipt of STATUS indicating a compatible call state is implementation dependent (see § 5.8.11).

FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 17 of 25)

Detailed protocol control (user side)

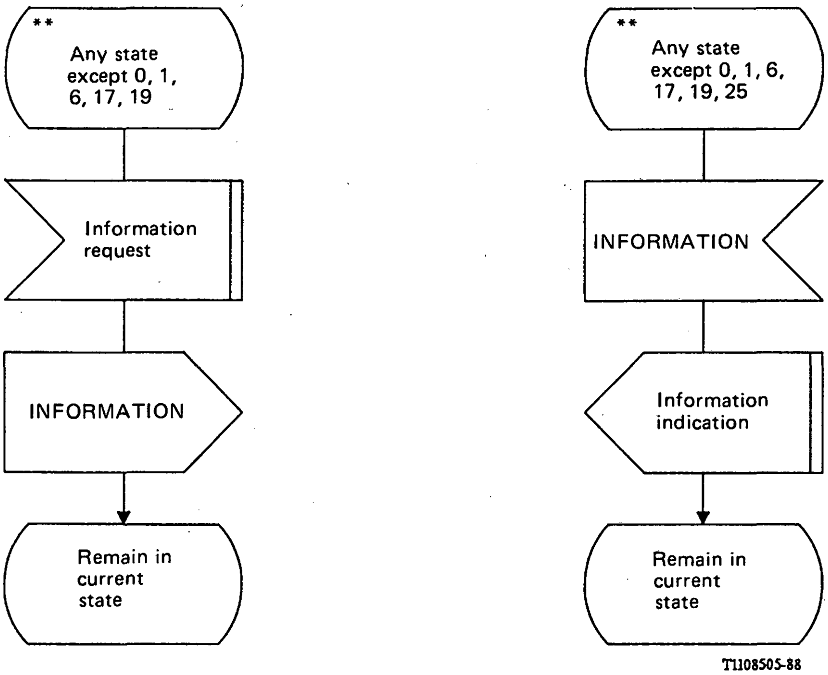
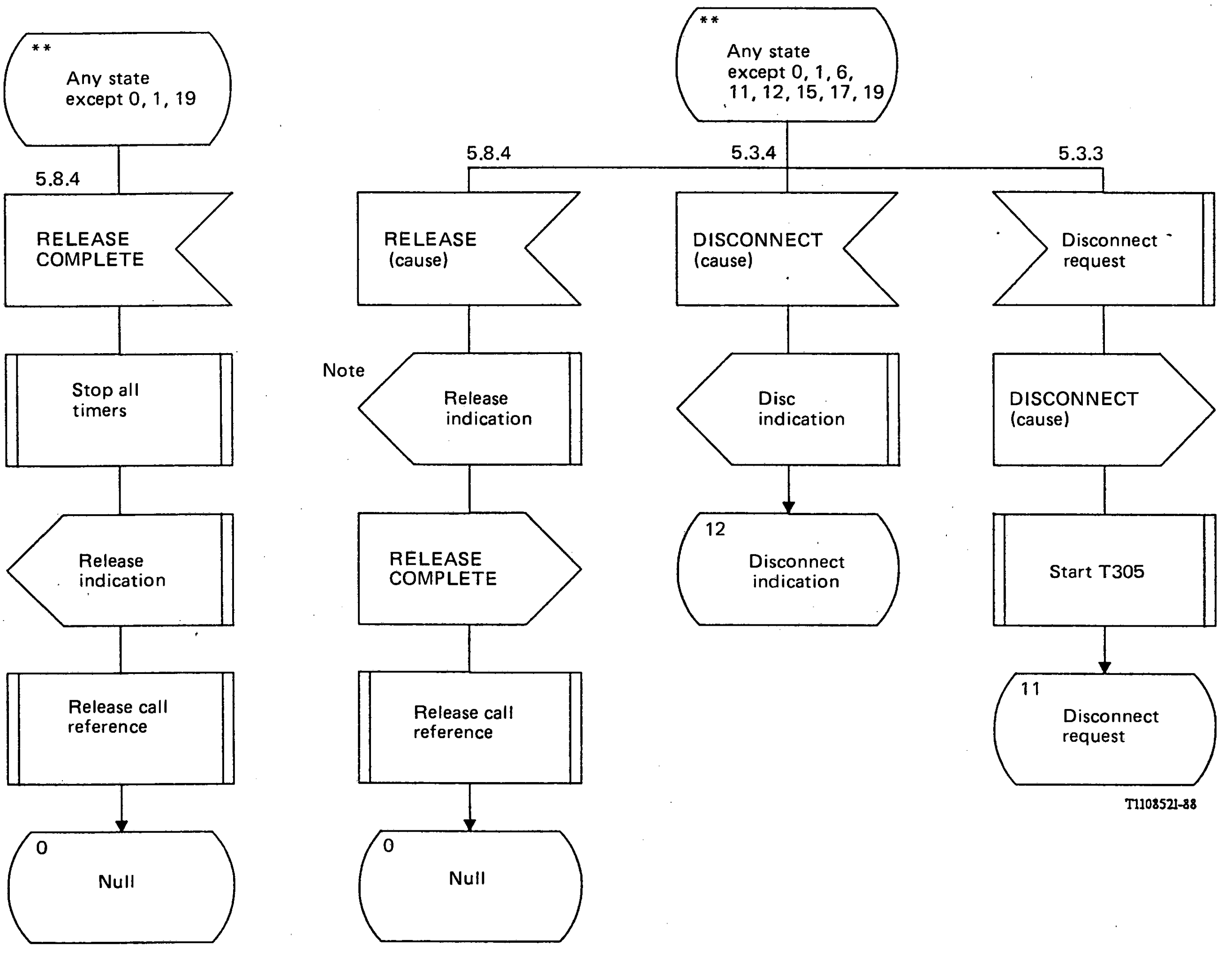


FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 18 of 25)

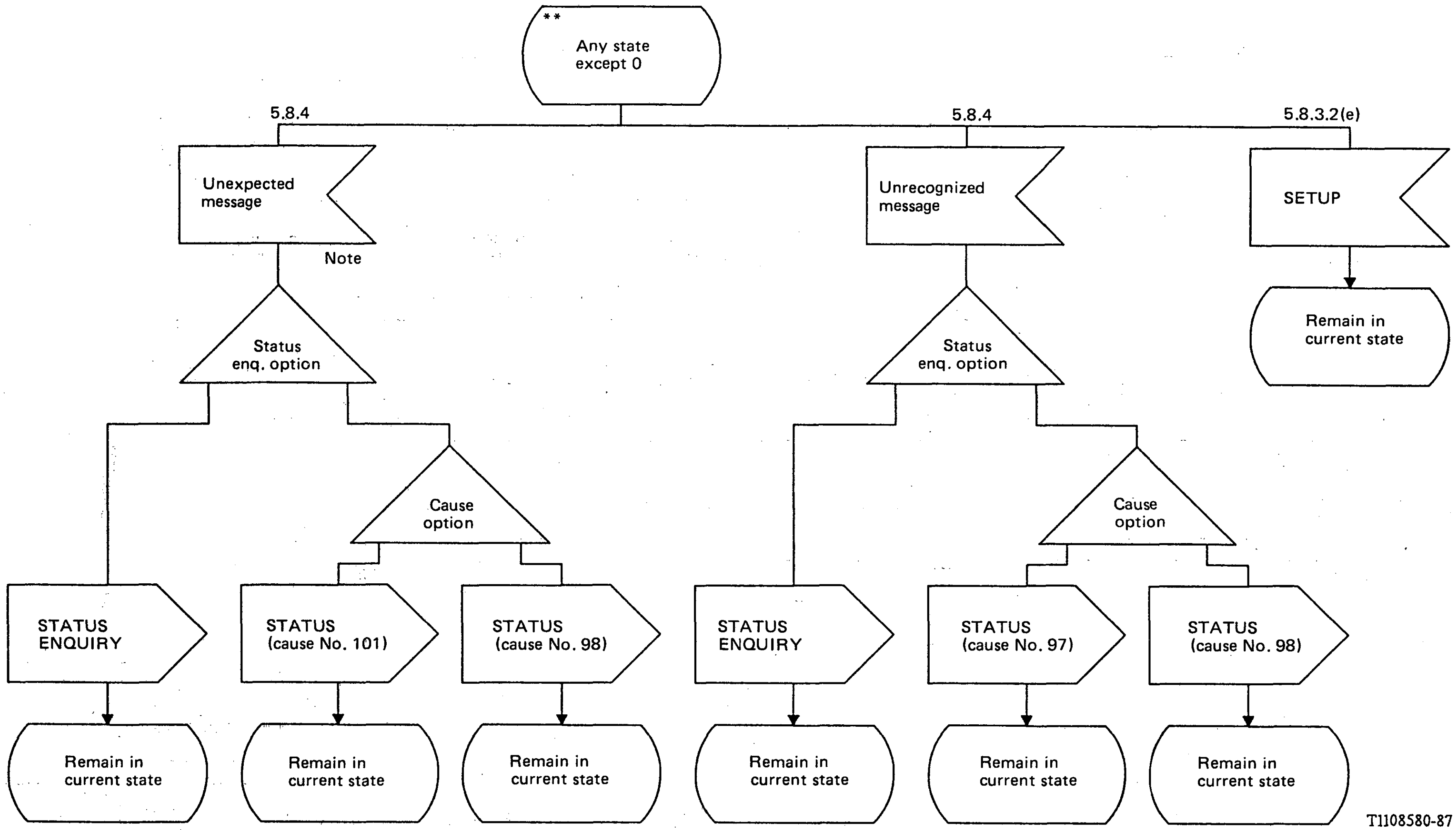
Detailed protocol control (user side)



Note – After receiving this primitive, call control process should release B channel.

FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 19 of 25)

Detailed protocol control (user side)

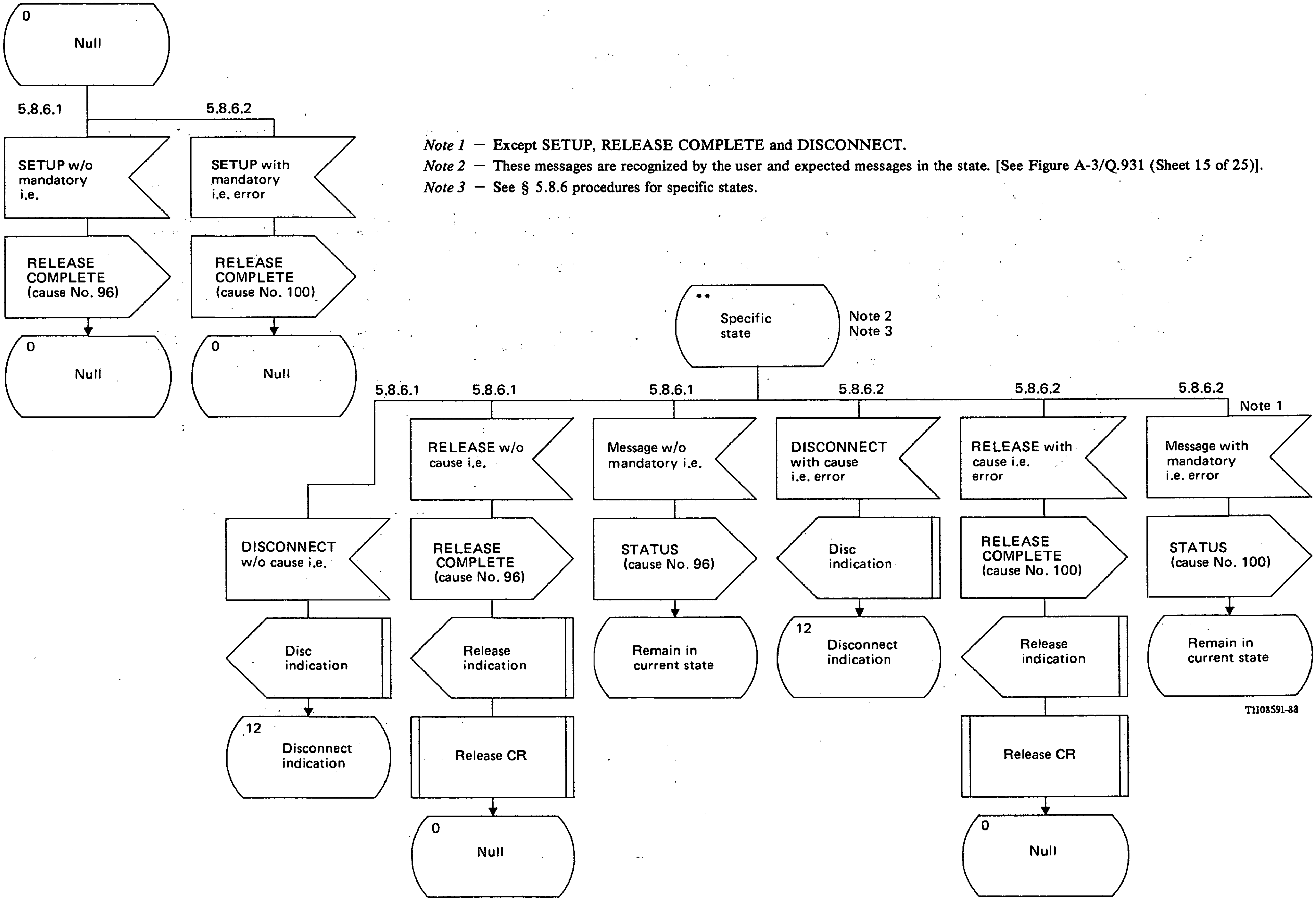


T1108580-87

Note – Except RELEASE or RELEASE COMPLETE.

FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 20 of 25)

Detailed protocol control (user side)



Note 1 – Except SETUP, RELEASE COMPLETE and DISCONNECT.

Note 2 – These messages are recognized by the user and expected messages in the state. [See Figure A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 15 of 25)].

Note 3 – See § 5.8.6 procedures for specific states.

FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 21 of 25)

Detailed protocol control (user side)

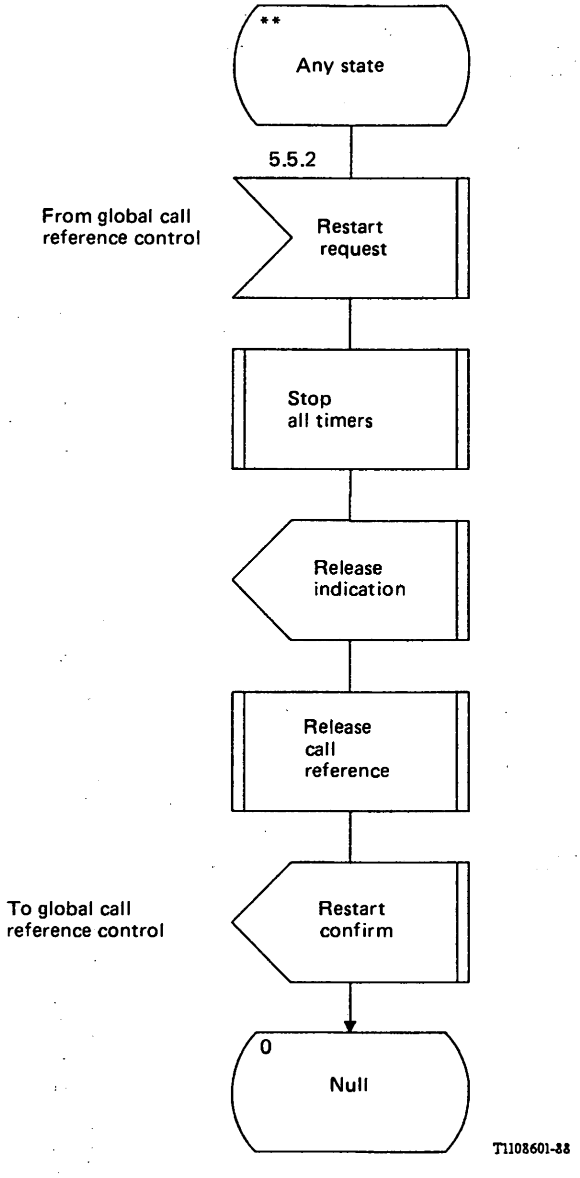
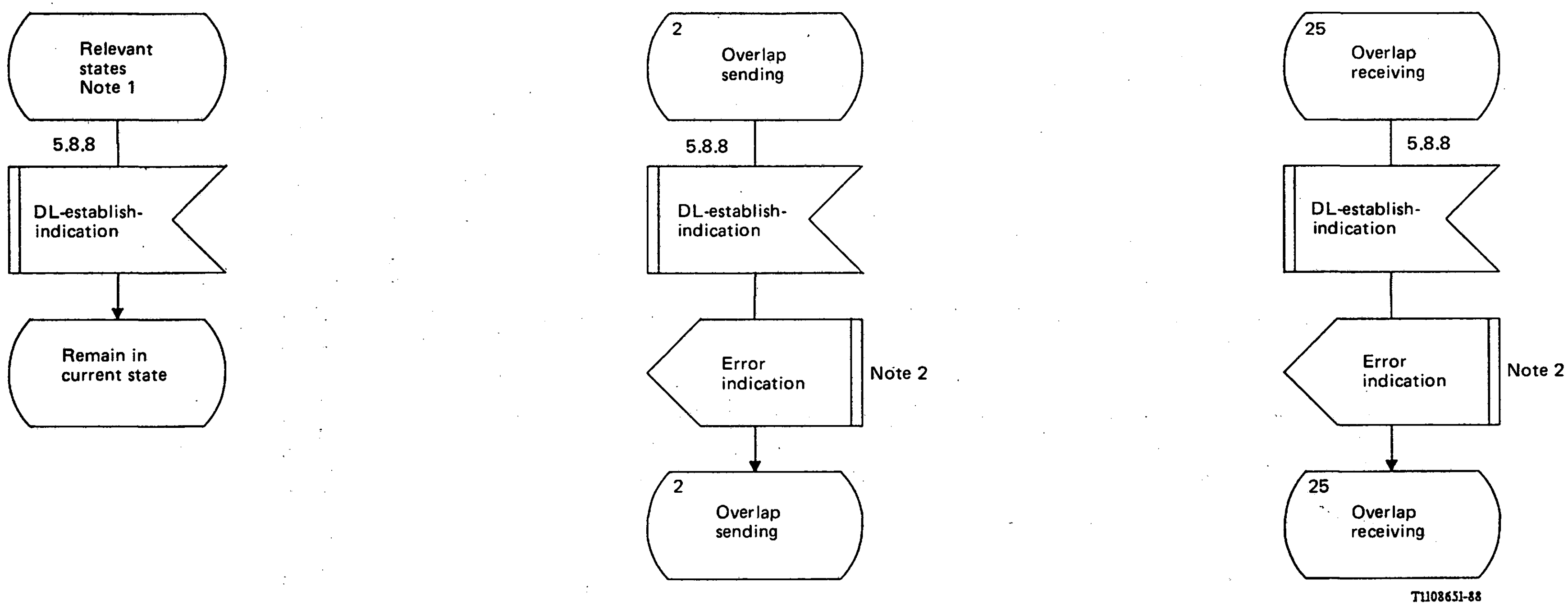


FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 22 of 25)

Detailed protocol control (user side)

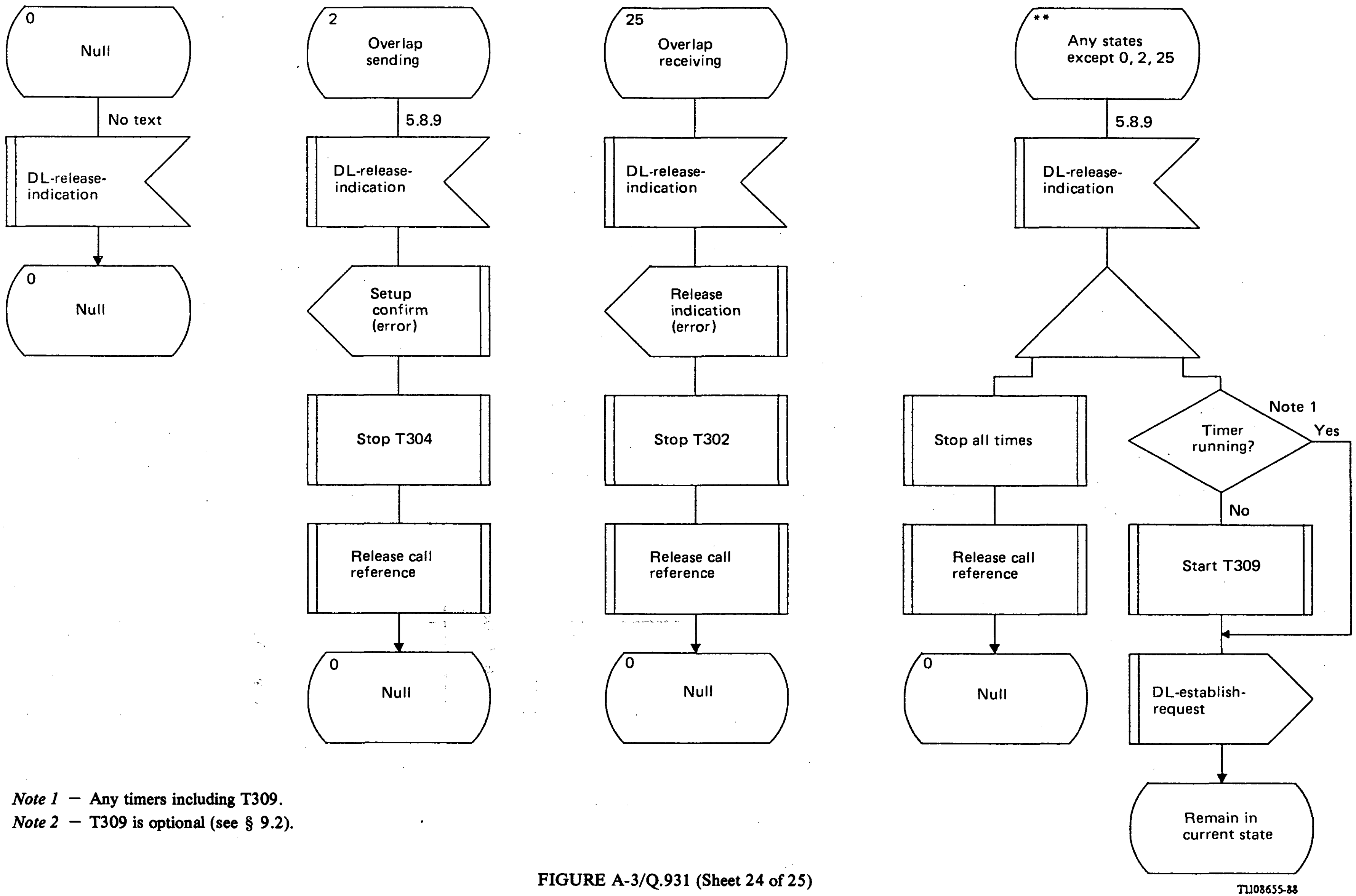


Note 1 – The relevant states are as follows: U1, U3, U4, U6 to U12, U15, U17, U19.

Note 2 – At the reception of this primitive, the call control should clear the call by sending disconnect request primitives.

FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 23 of 25)

Detailed protocol control (user side)

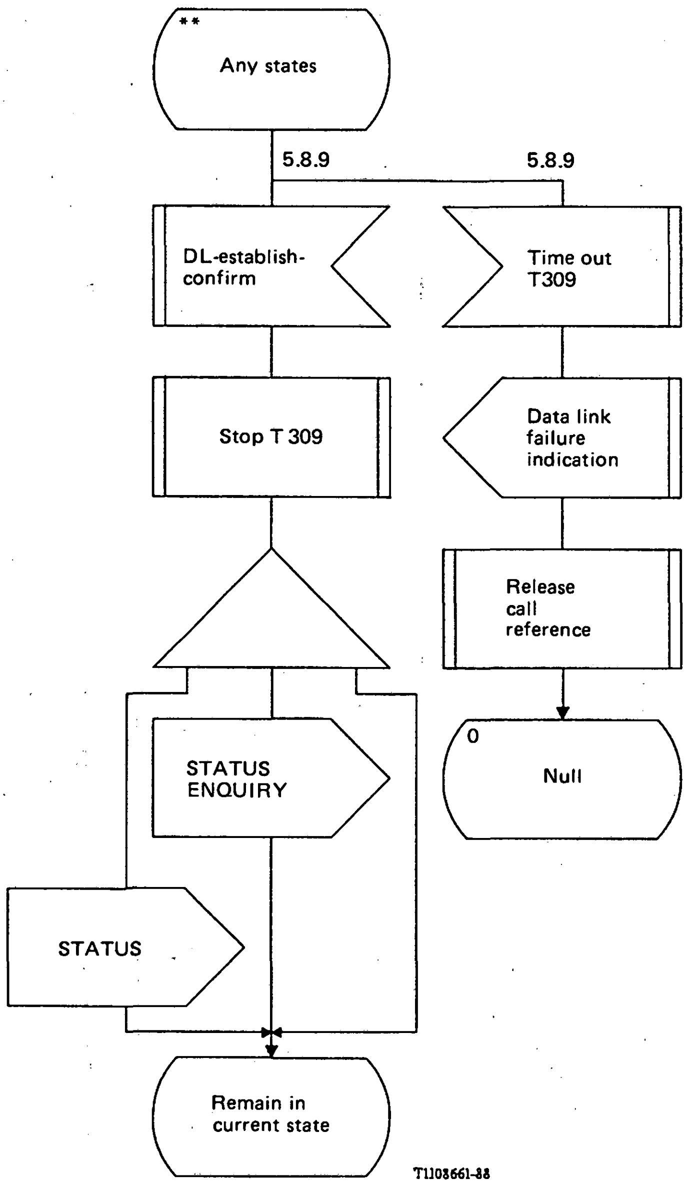


Note 1 — Any timers including T309.

Note 2 — T309 is optional (see § 9.2).

FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 24 of 25)

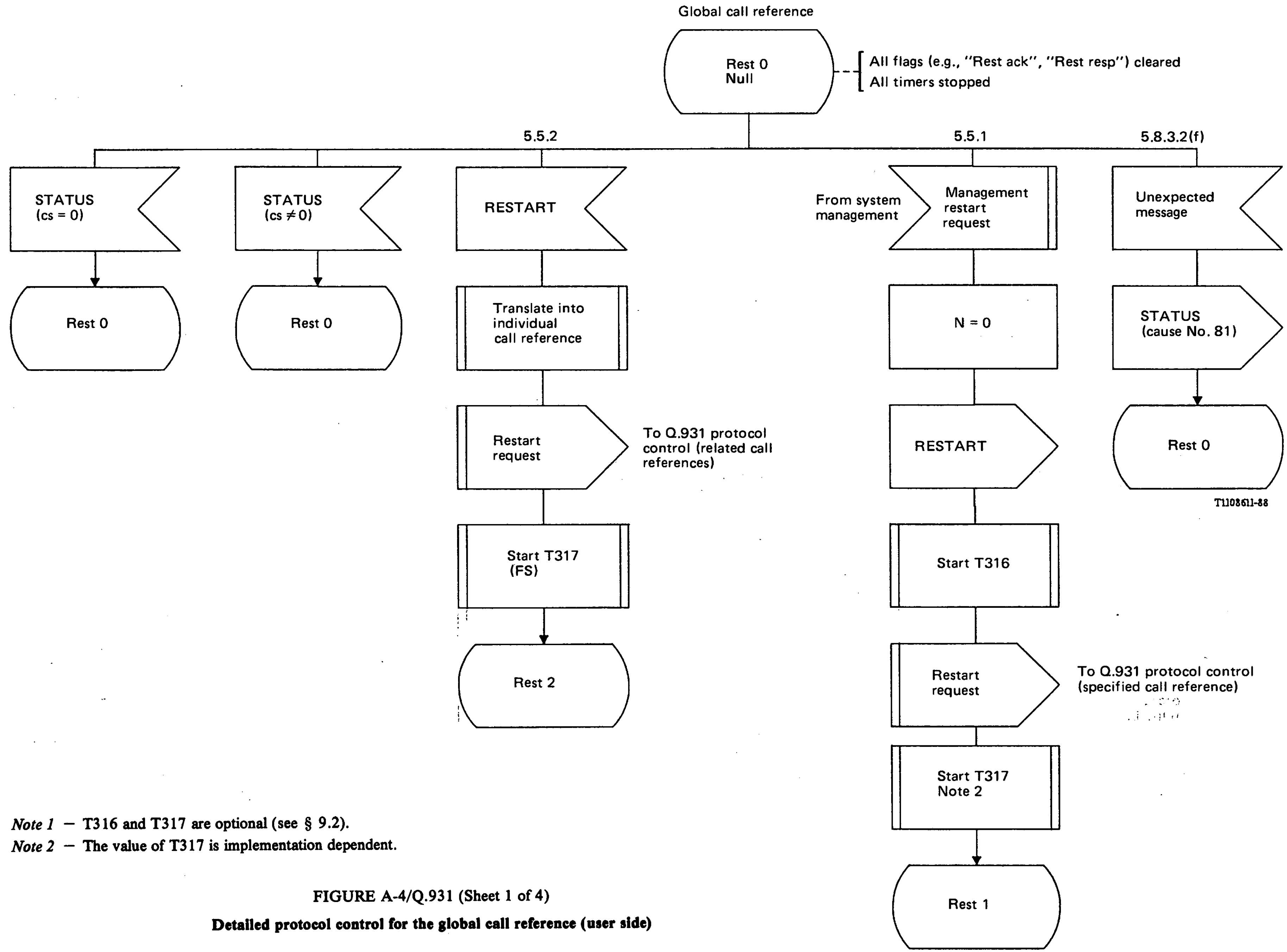
Detailed protocol control (user side)



Note – T309 is optional (see § 9.2).

FIGURE A-3/Q.931 (Sheet 25 of 25)

Detailed protocol control (user side)

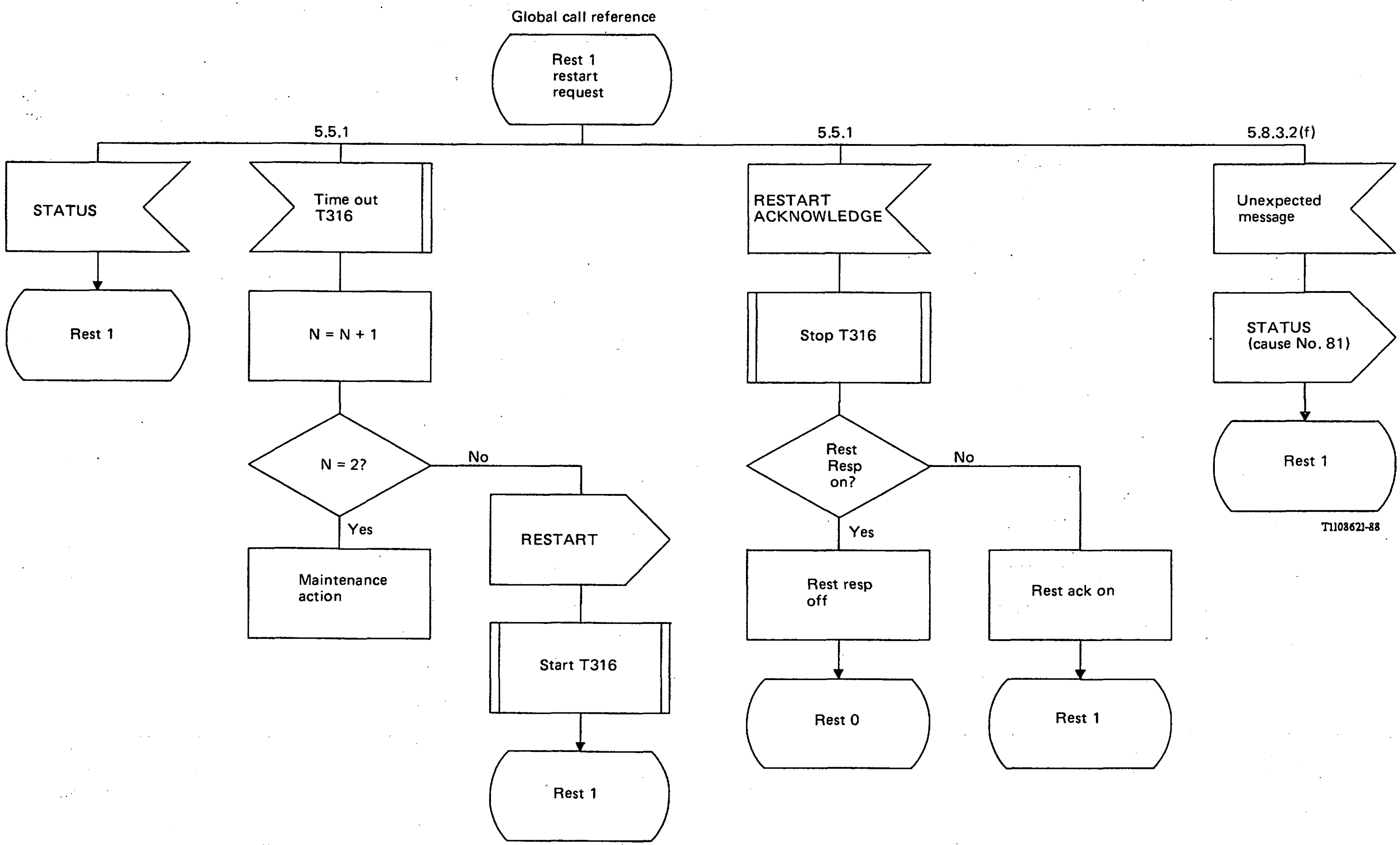


Note 1 – T316 and T317 are optional (see § 9.2).

Note 2 – The value of T317 is implementation dependent.

FIGURE A-4/Q.931 (Sheet 1 of 4)

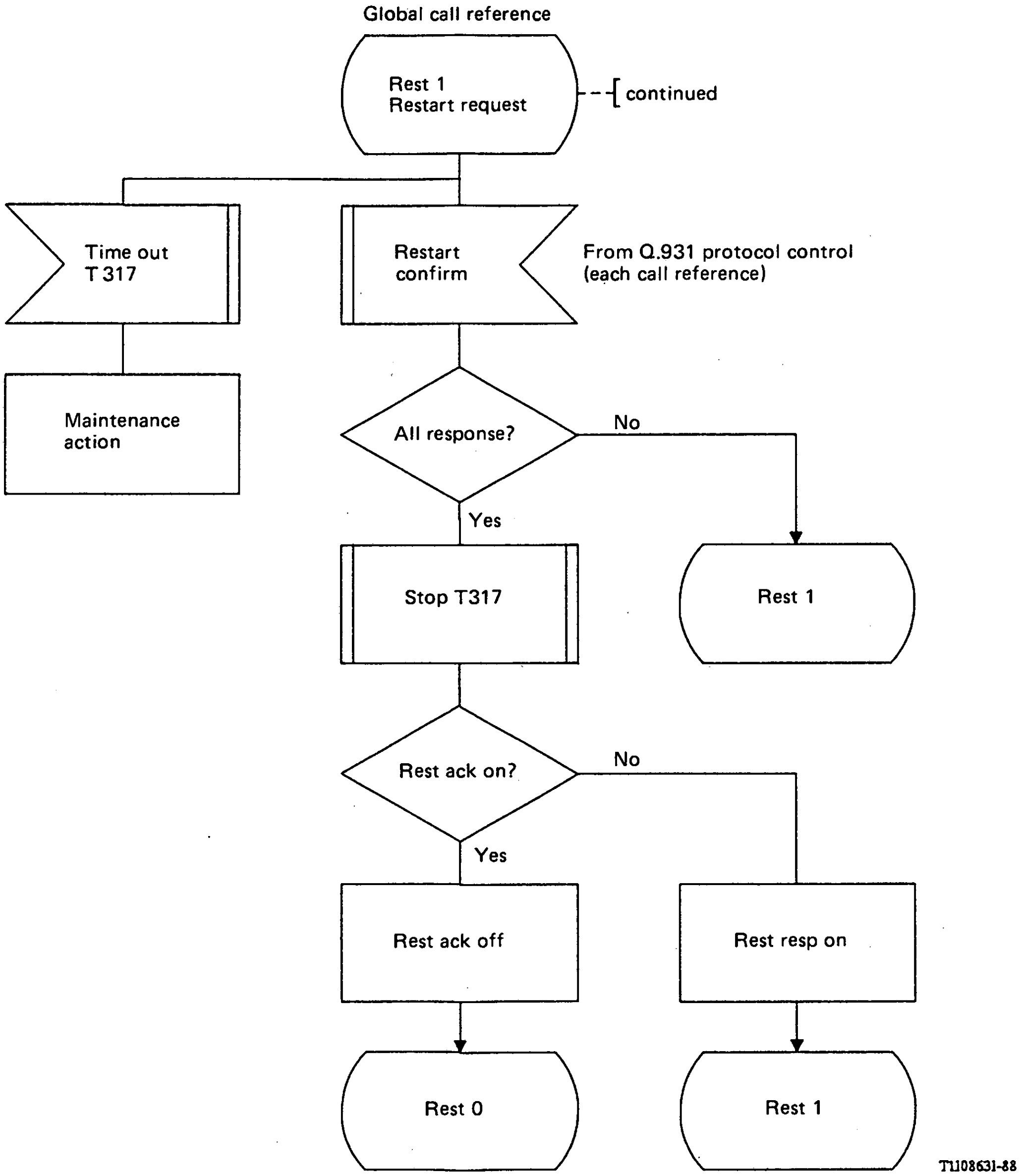
Detailed protocol control for the global call reference (user side)



Note – T316 is optional (see § 9.2).

FIGURE A-4/Q.931 (Sheet 2 of 4)

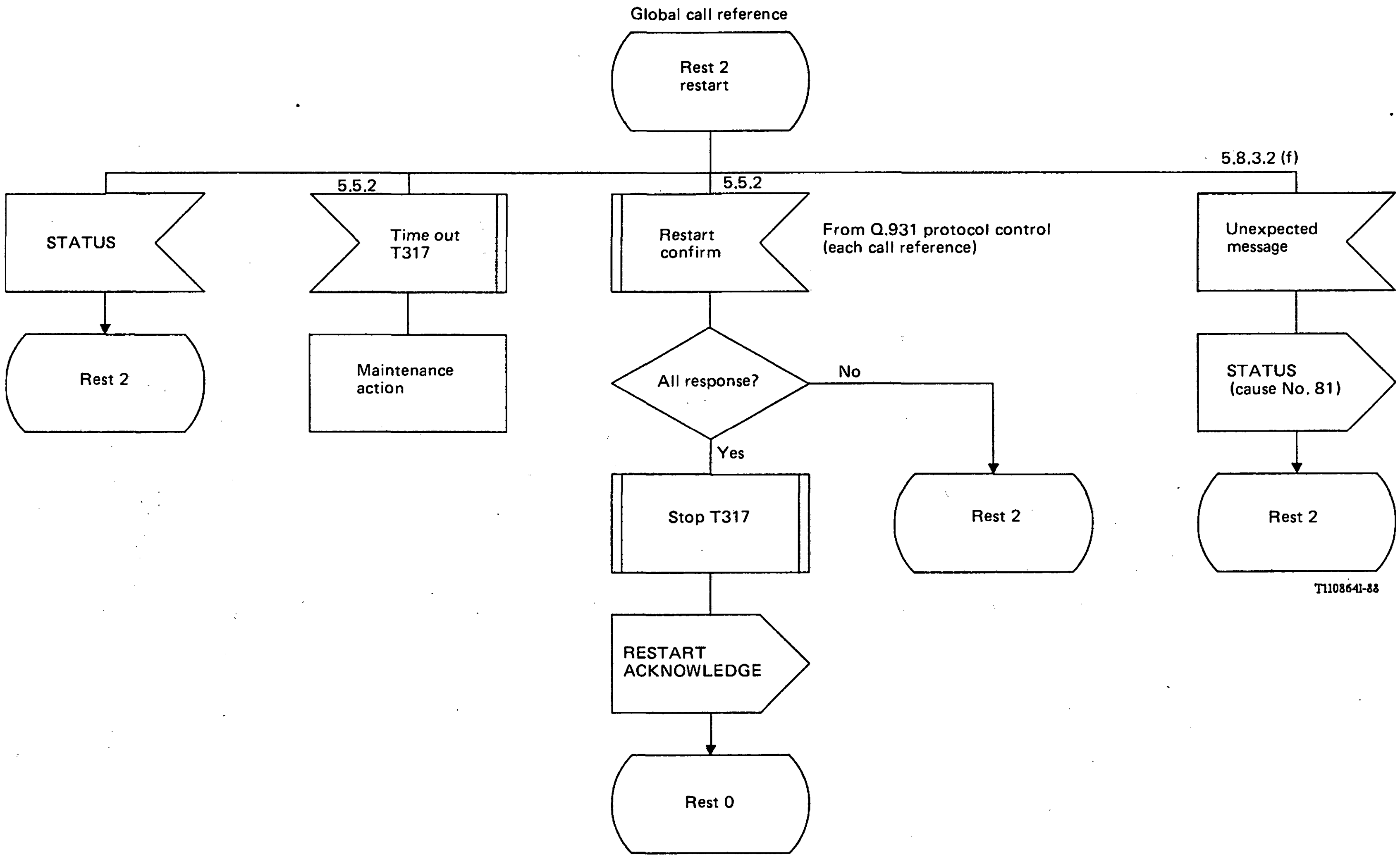
Detailed protocol control for the global call reference (user side)



Note – T317 is optional (see § 9.2).

FIGURE A-4/Q.931 (Sheet 3 of 4)

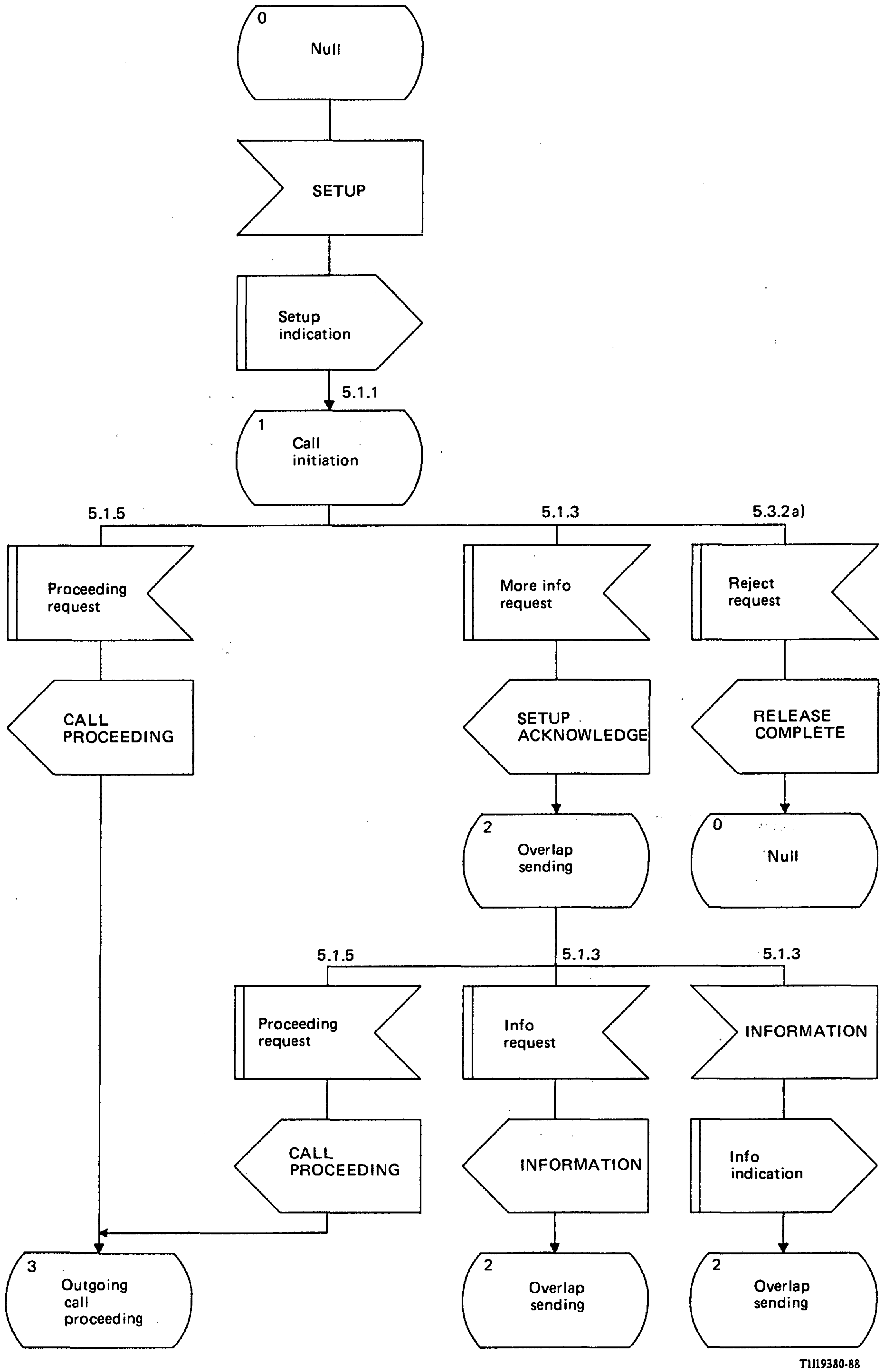
Detailed protocol control for the global call reference (user side)



Note – T317 is optional (see § 9.2).

FIGURE A-4/Q.931 (Sheet 4 of 4)

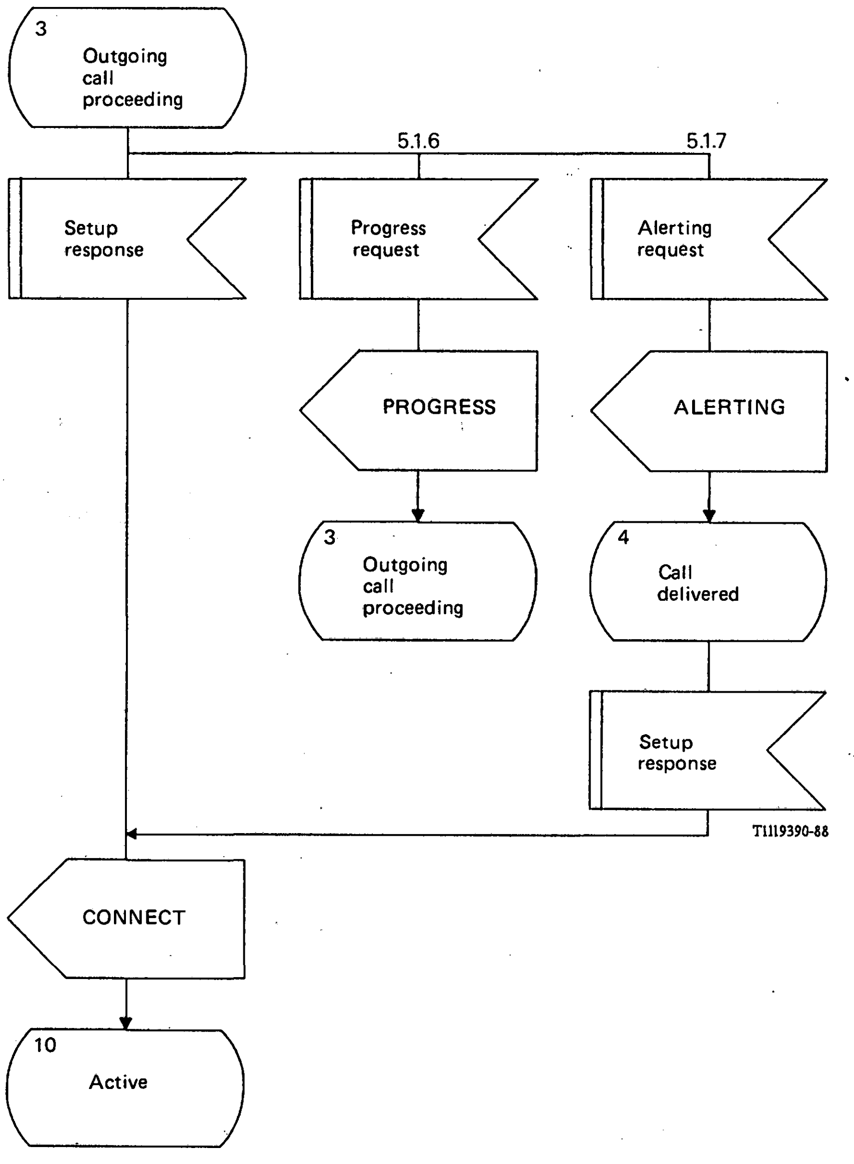
Detailed protocol control for the global call reference (user side)



a) Outgoing setup procedure (1 of 2)

FIGURE A-5/Q.931 (Sheet 1 of 8)

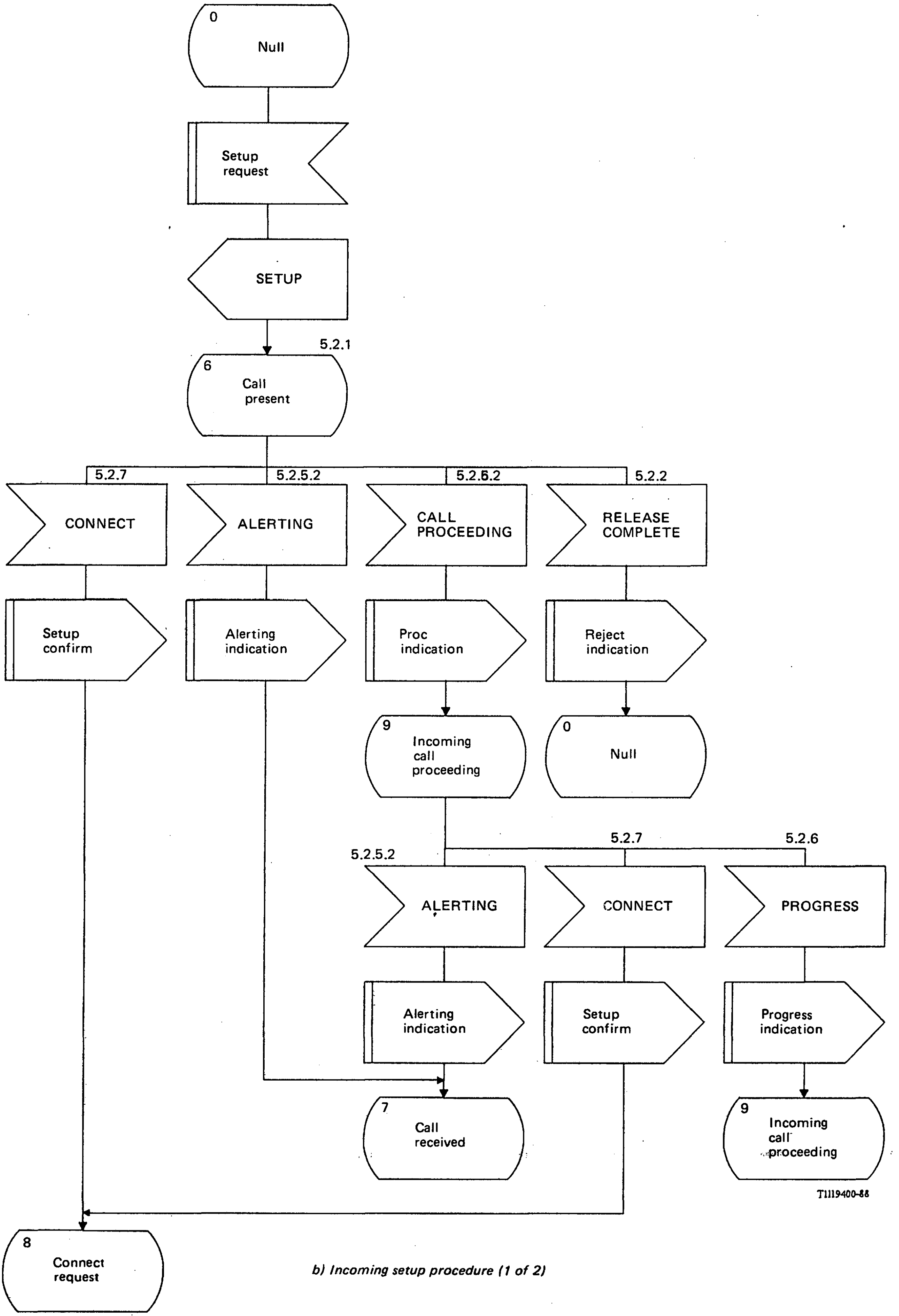
Overview protocol control (network side) point-point



a) Outgoing setup procedure (2 of 2)

FIGURE A-5/Q.931 (Sheet 2 of 8)

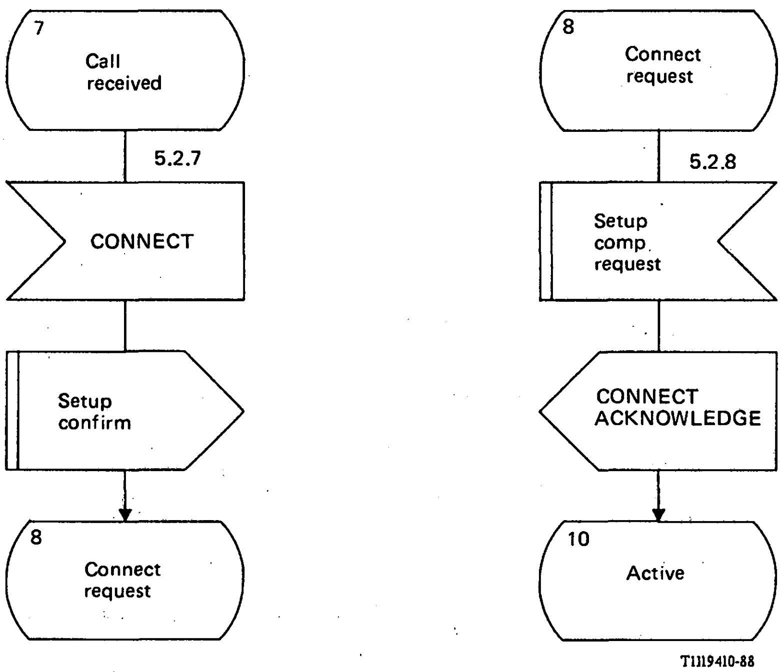
Overview protocol control (network side) point-point



b) Incoming setup procedure (1 of 2)

FIGURE A-5/Q.931 (Sheet 3 of 8)

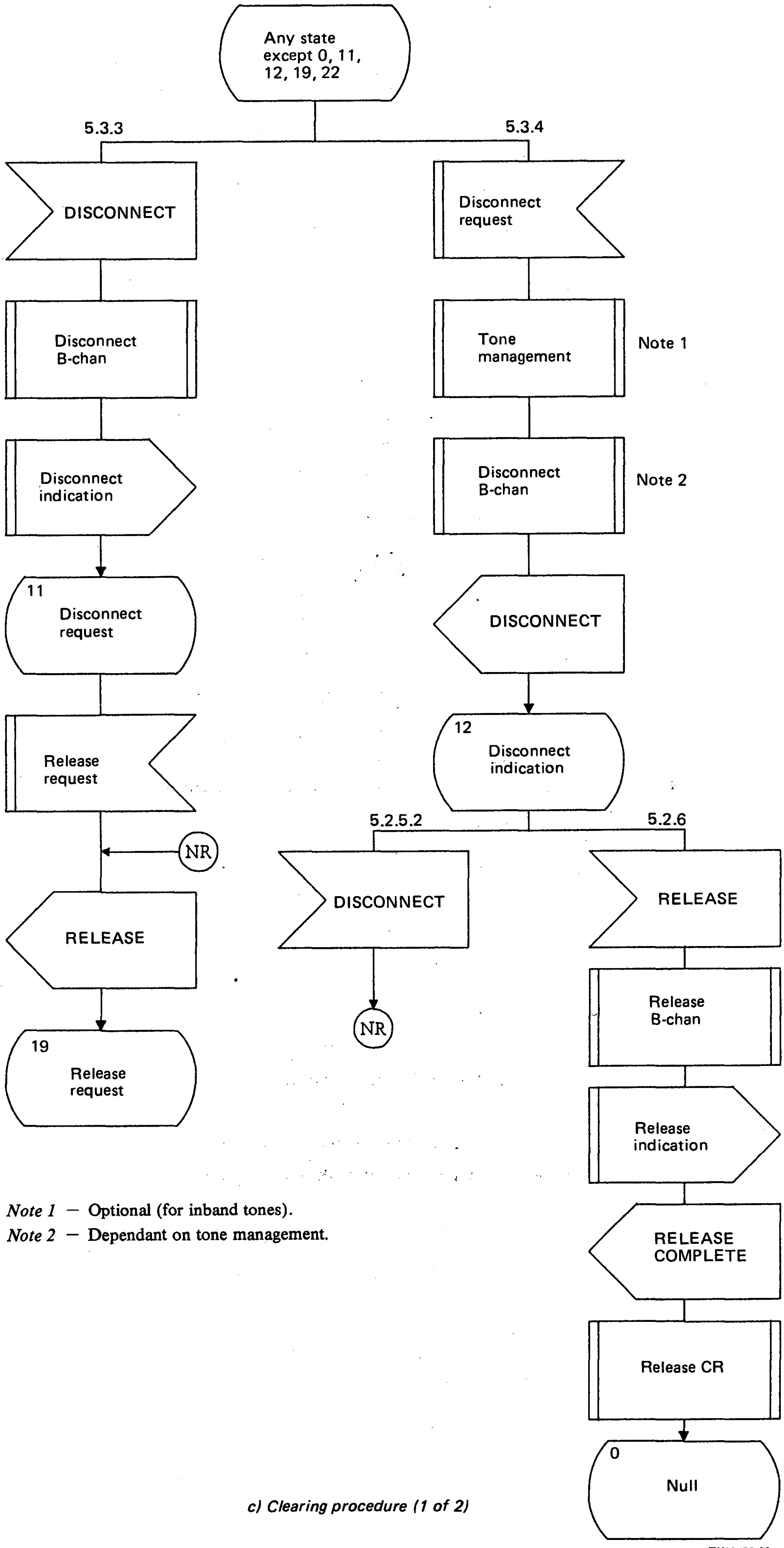
Overview protocol control (network side) point-point



b) Incoming setup procedure (2 of 2)

FIGURE A-5/Q.931 (Sheet 4 of 8)

Overview protocol control (network side) point-point



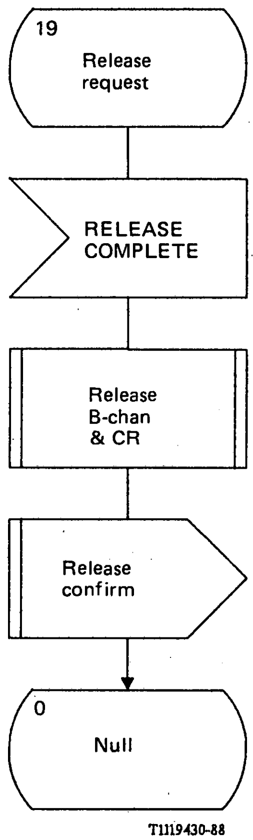
Note 1 — Optional (for inband tones).

Note 2 — Dependant on tone management.

c) Clearing procedure (1 of 2)

FIGURE A-5/Q.931 (Sheet 5 of 8)

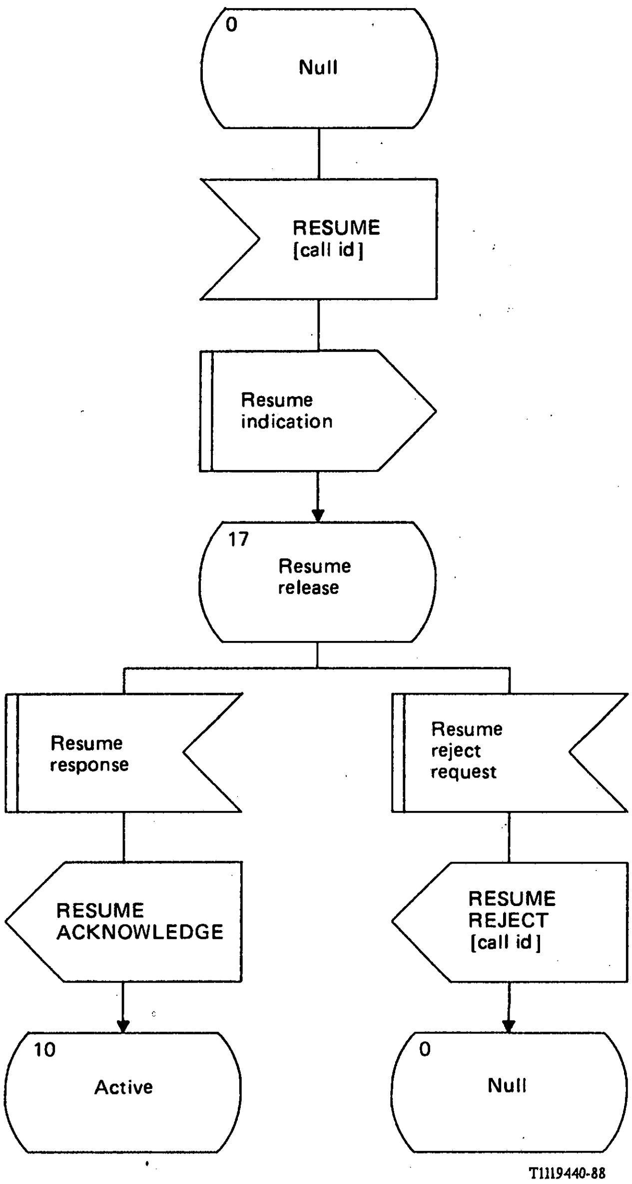
Overview protocol control (network side) point-point



c) Clearing procedure (2 of 2)

FIGURE A-5/Q.931 (Sheet 6 of 8)

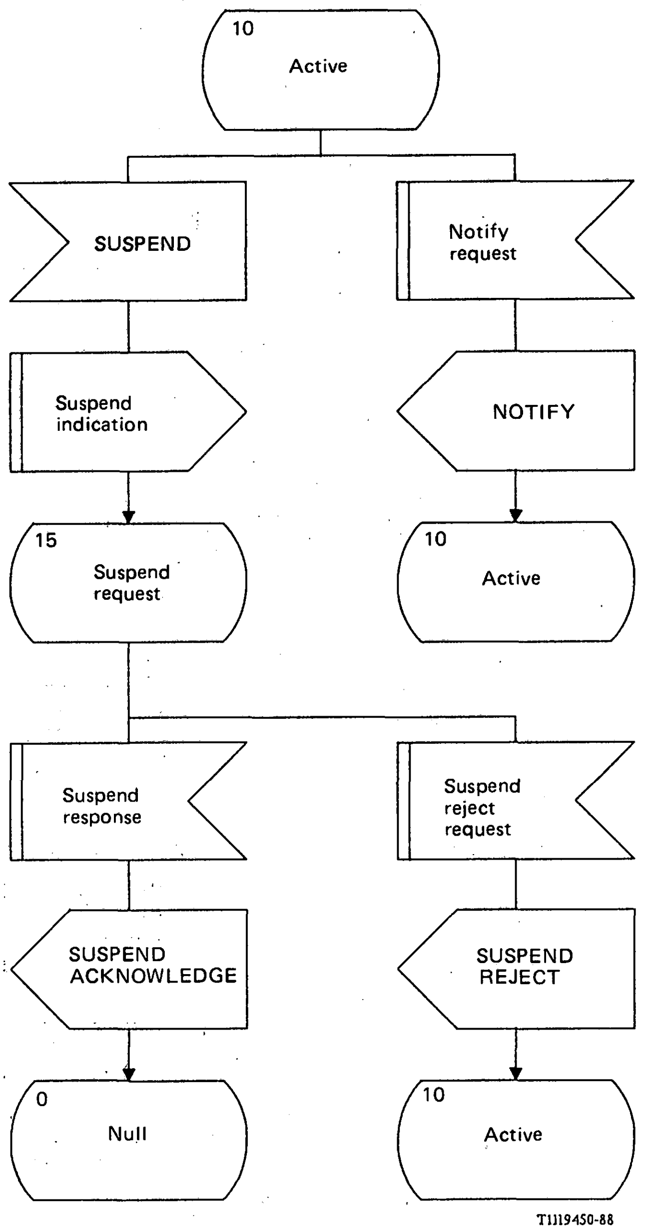
Overview protocol control (network side) point-point



d) Resume procedure

FIGURE A-5/Q.931 (Sheet 7 of 8)

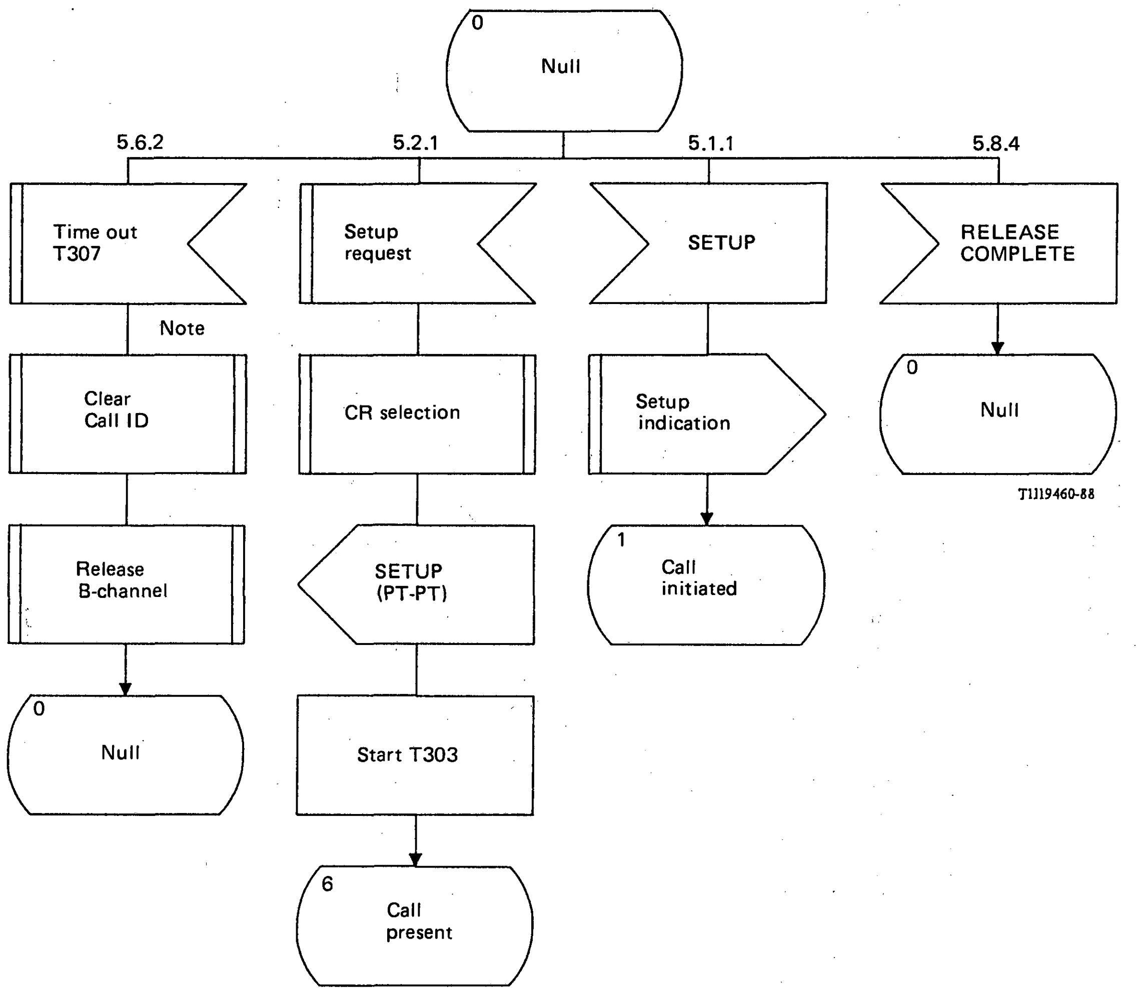
Overview protocol control (network side) point-point



e) Suspend procedure

FIGURE A-5/Q.931 (Sheet 8 of 8)

Overview protocol control (network side) point-point



Note — No call reference is associated with T307.

FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 1 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point

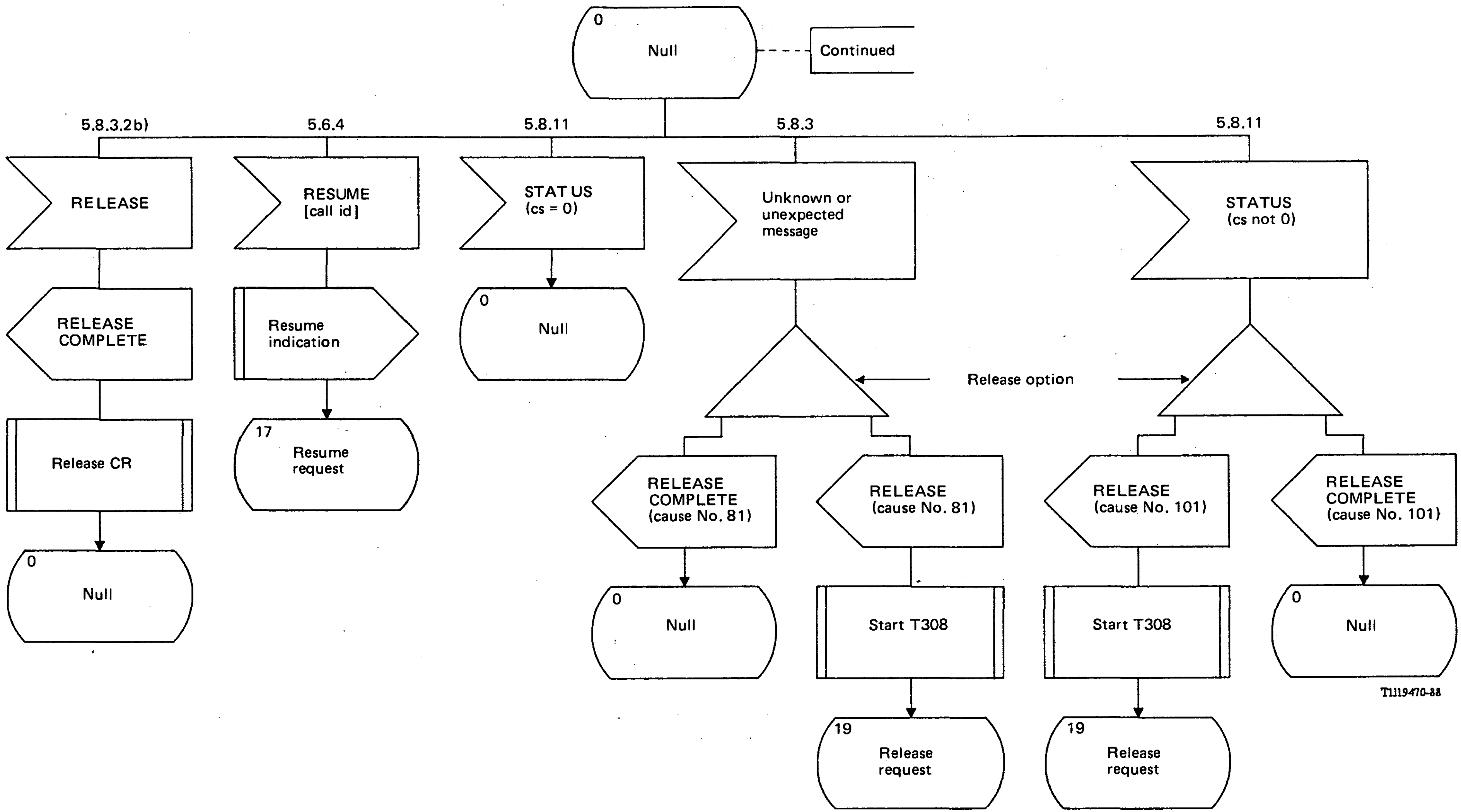


FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 2 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point

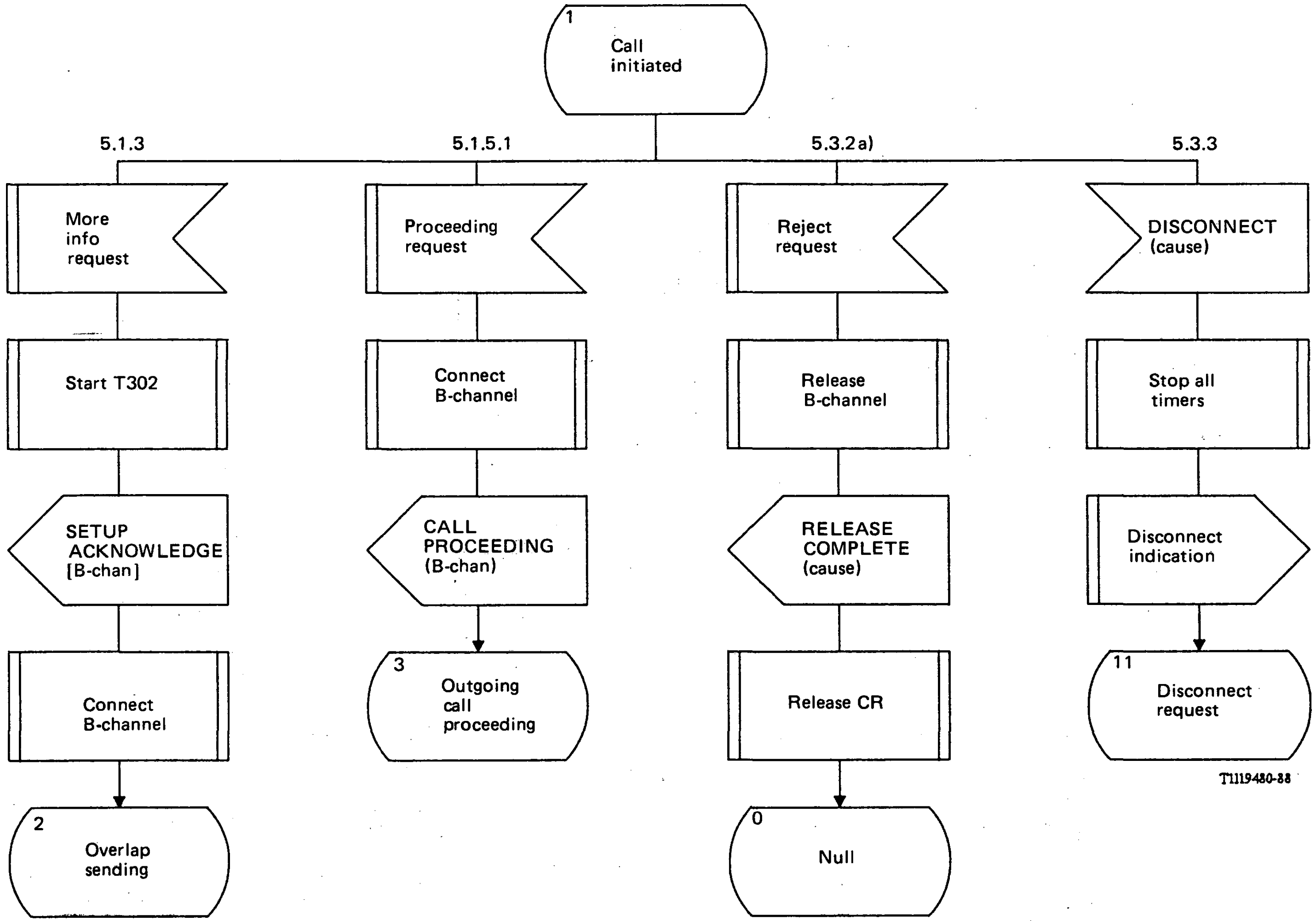
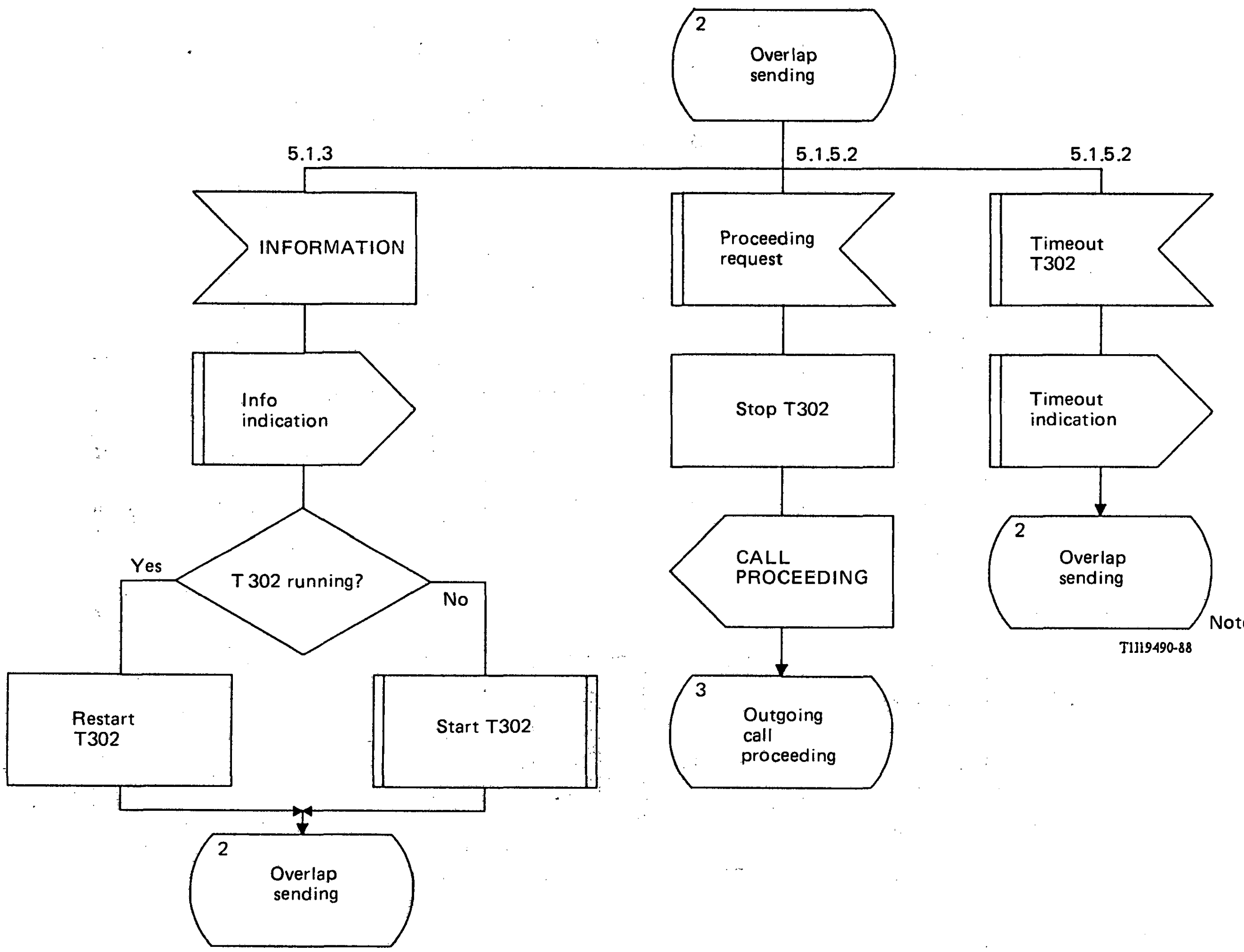


FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 3 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point



Note – It is assumed that the CC functional block will carry out the functions of § § 5.1.5.2 and 5.1.7.

FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 4 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point

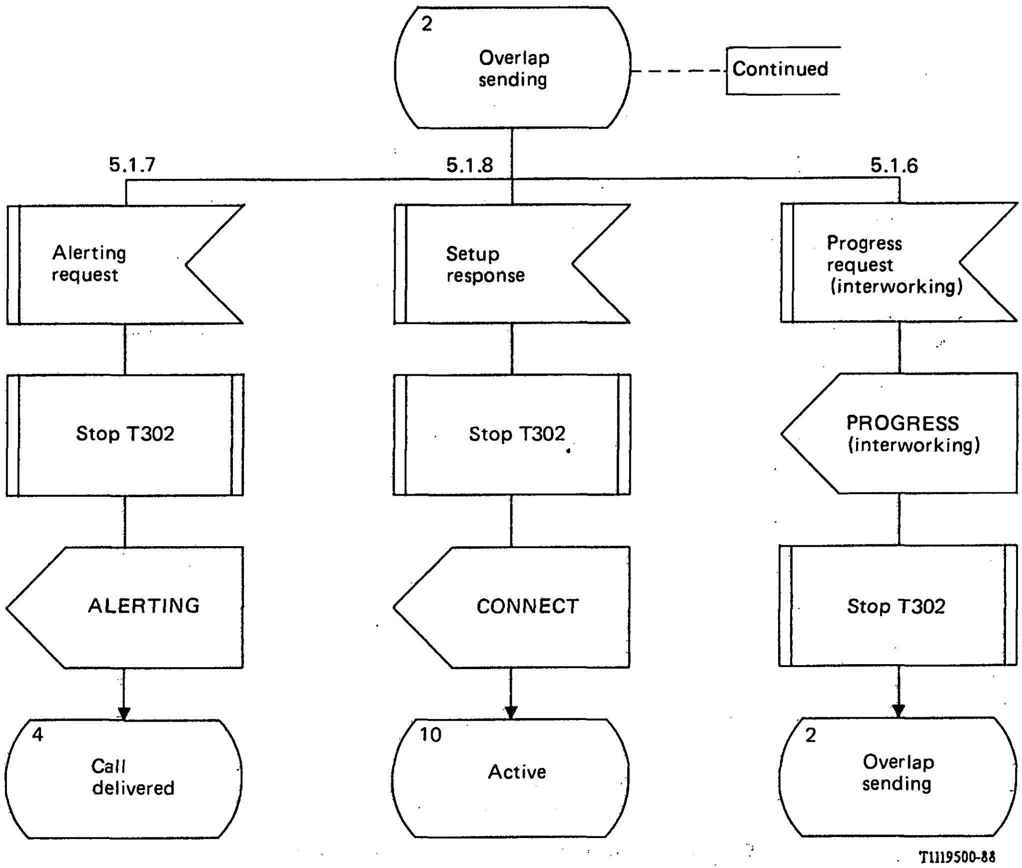


FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 5 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point

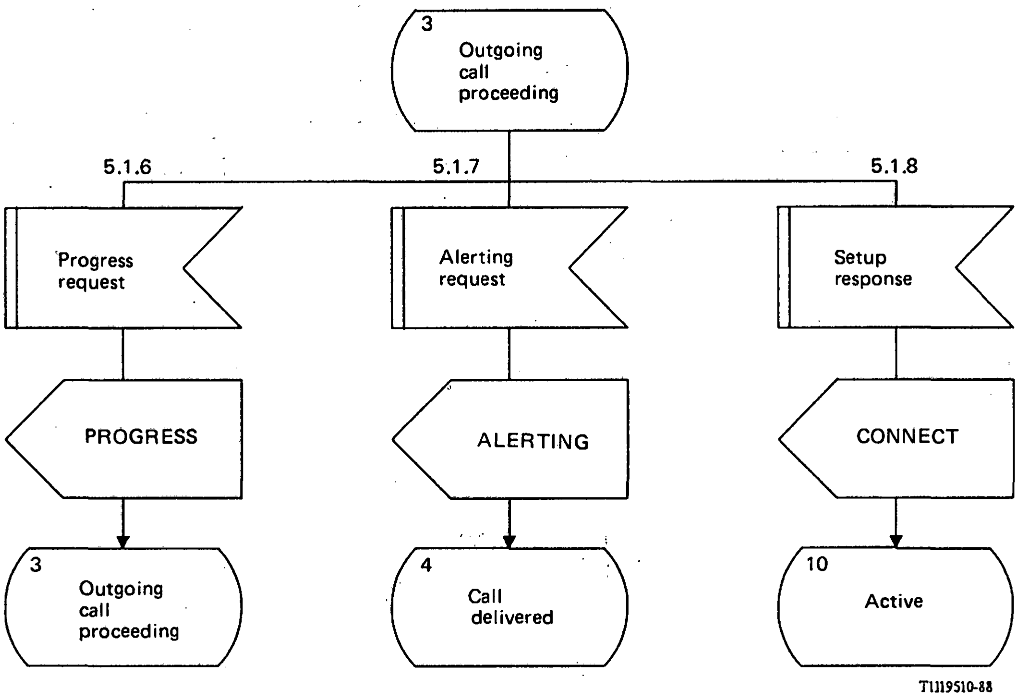


FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 6 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point

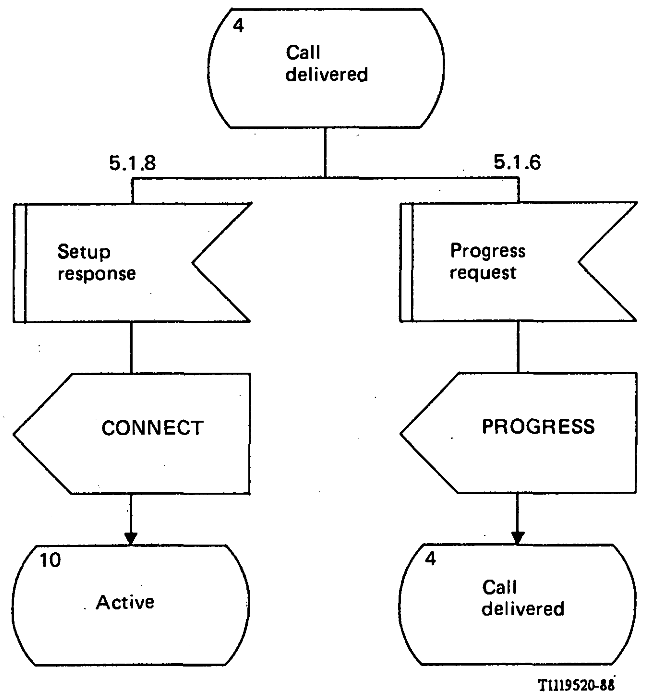
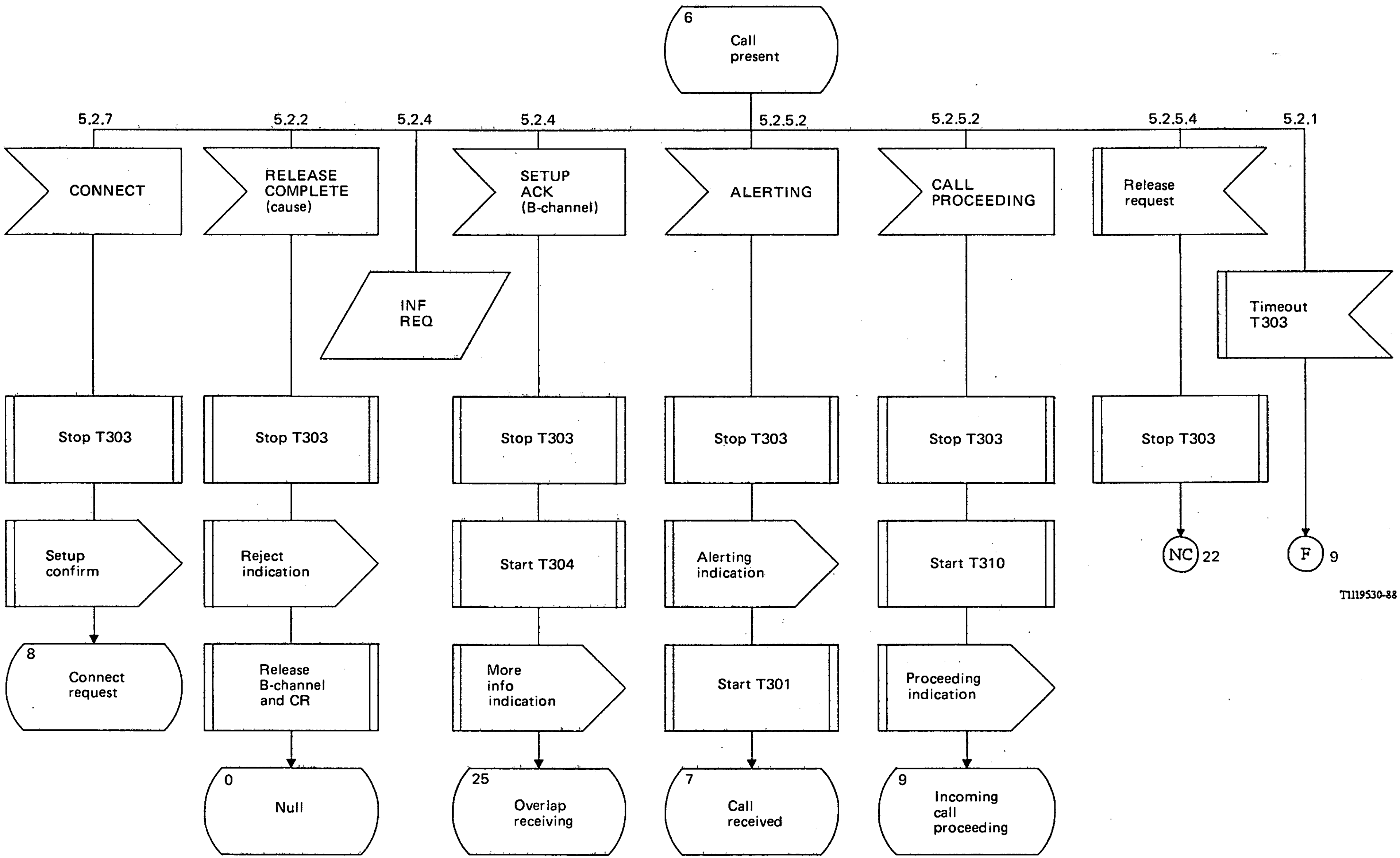


FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 7 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point



Note – T301 and T304 are optional (see § 9.1).

FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 8 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point

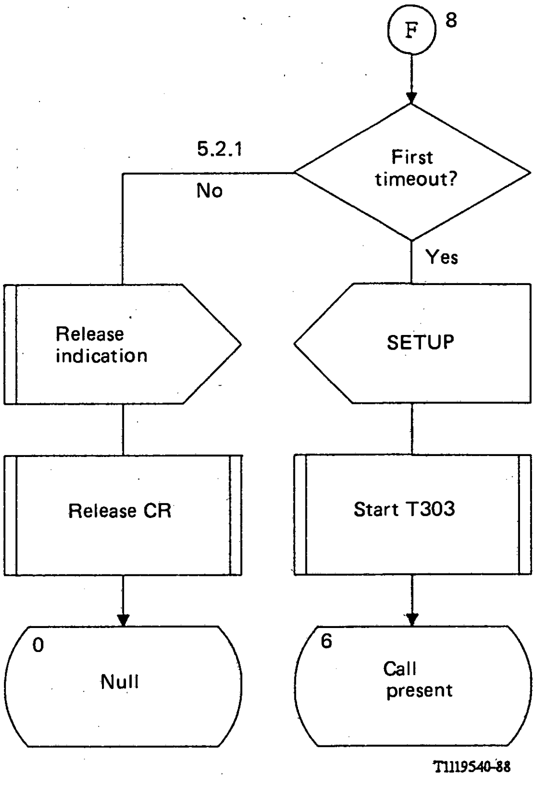
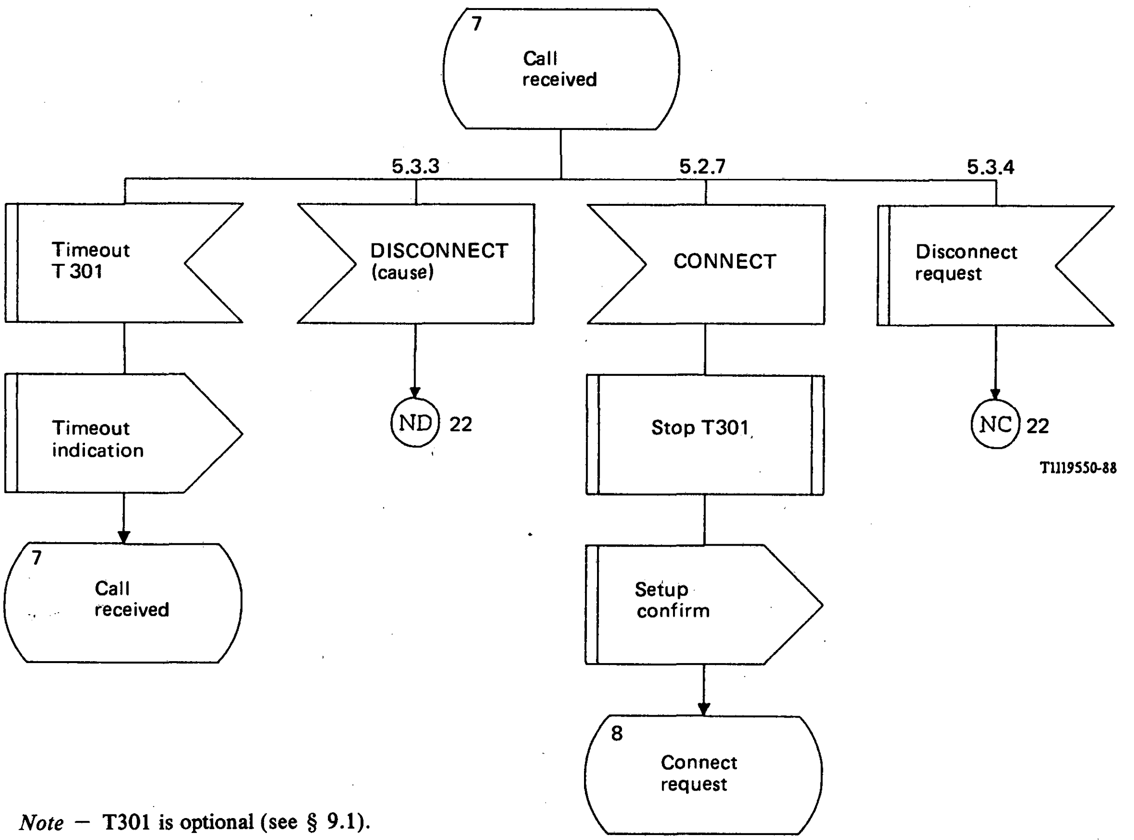


FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 9 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point



Note — T301 is optional (see § 9.1).

FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 10 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point

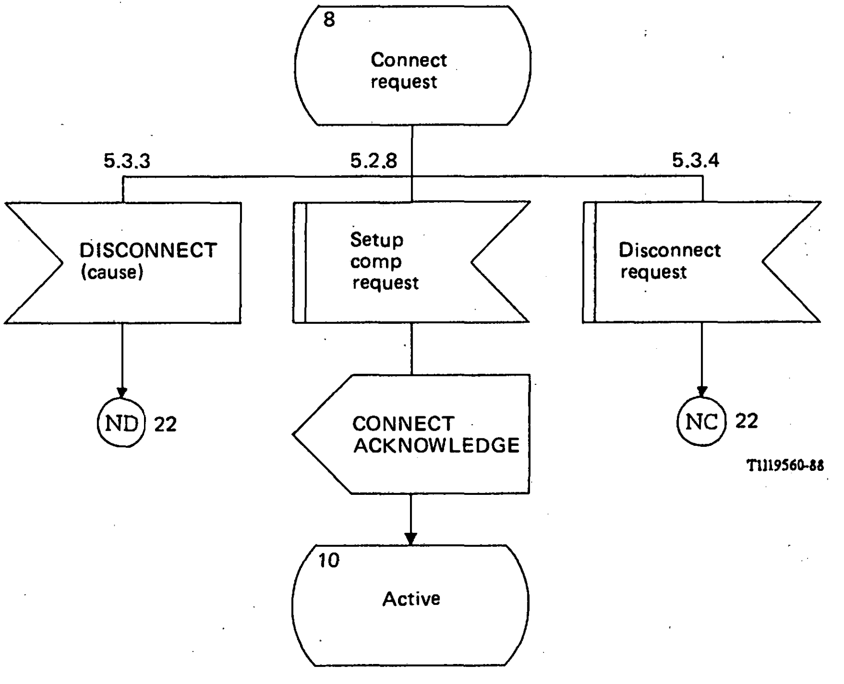
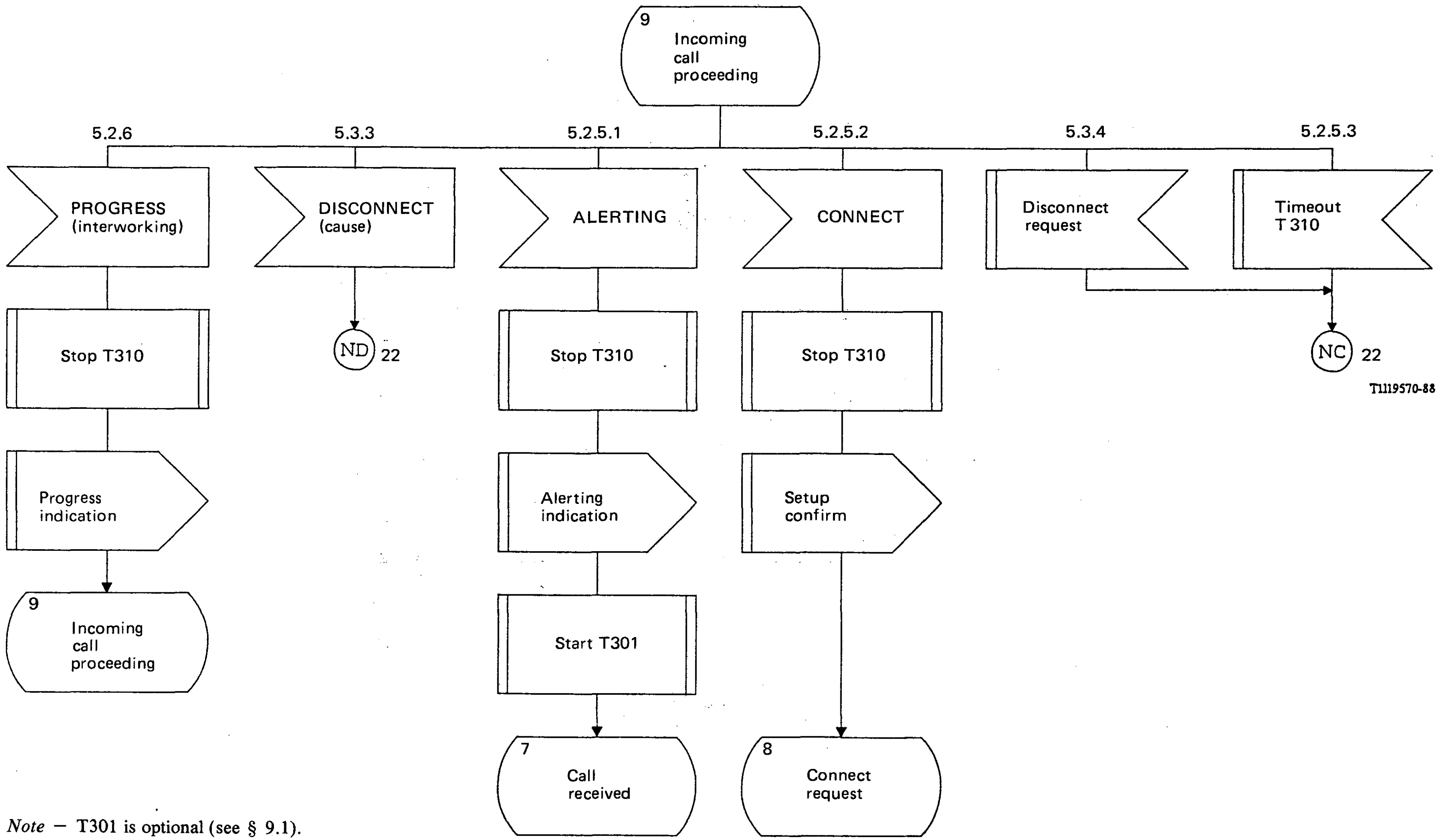


FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 11 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point



Note – T301 is optional (see § 9.1).

FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 12 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point

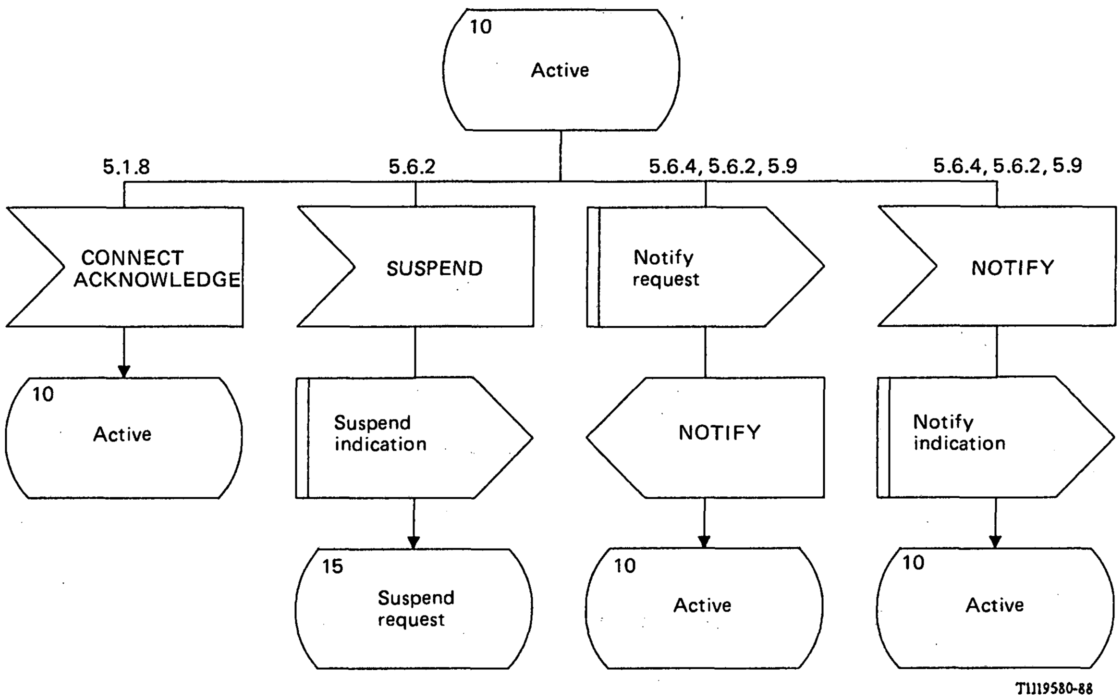


FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 13 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point

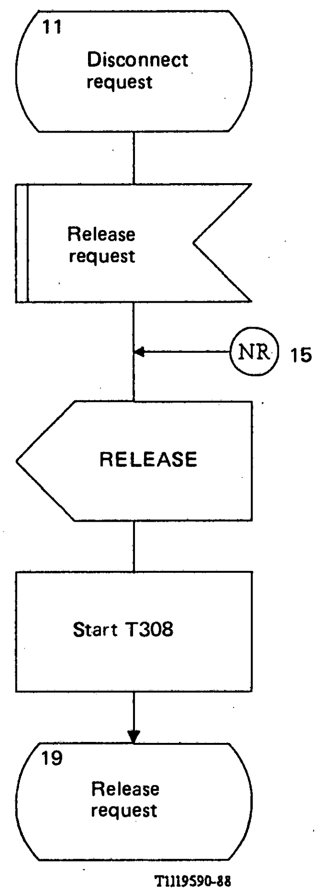


FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 14 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point

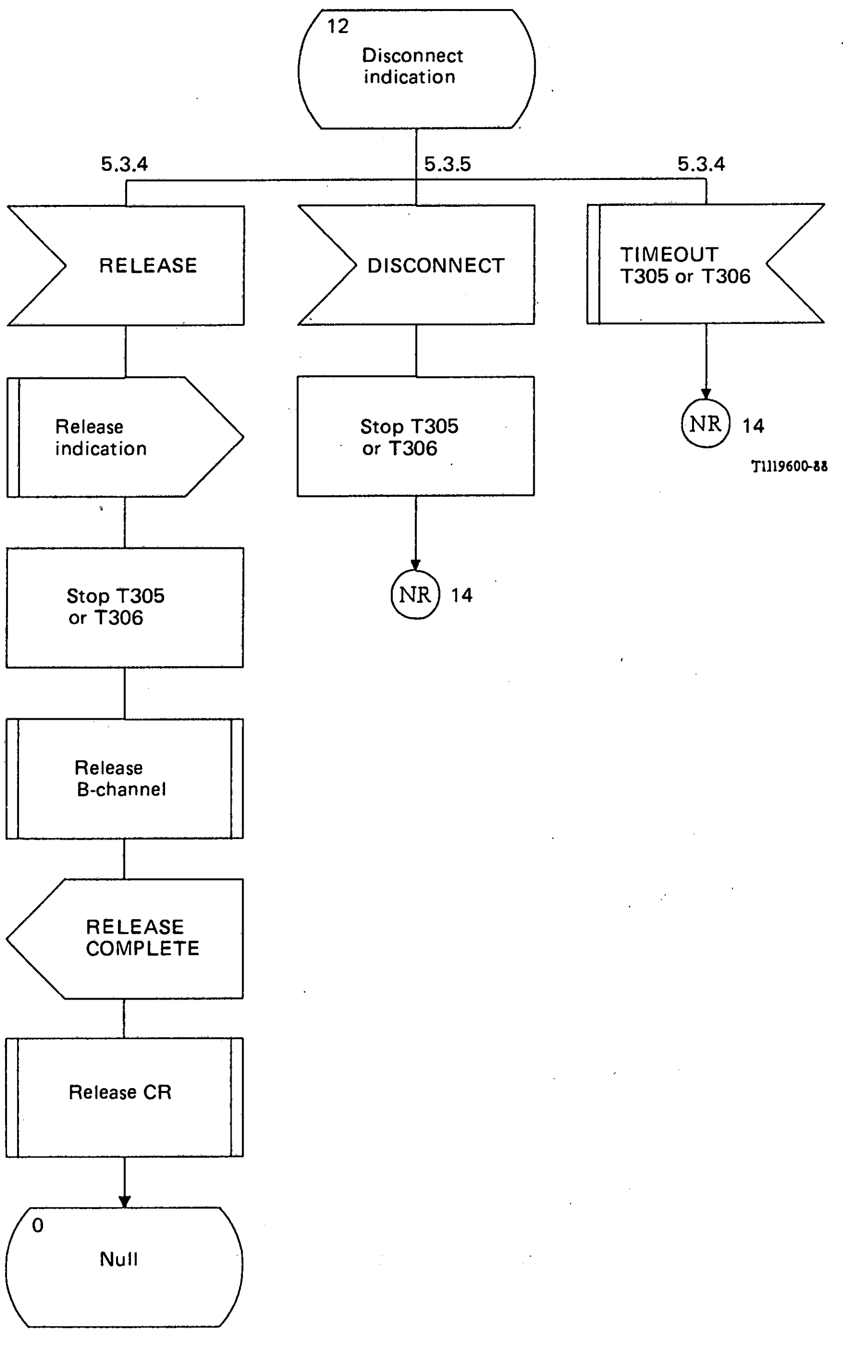


FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 15 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point

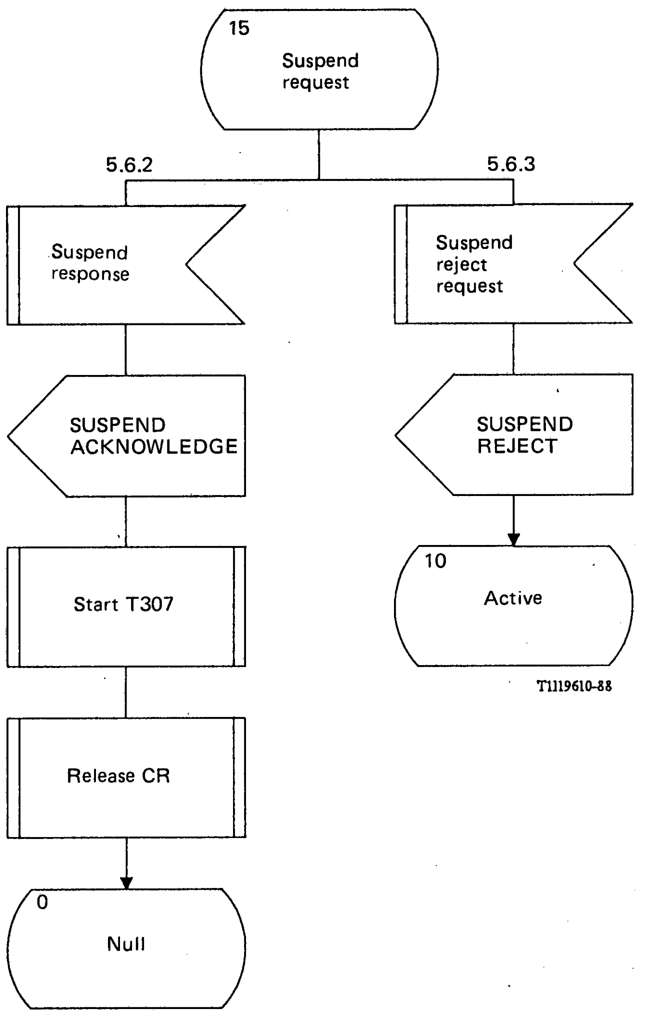


FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 16 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point

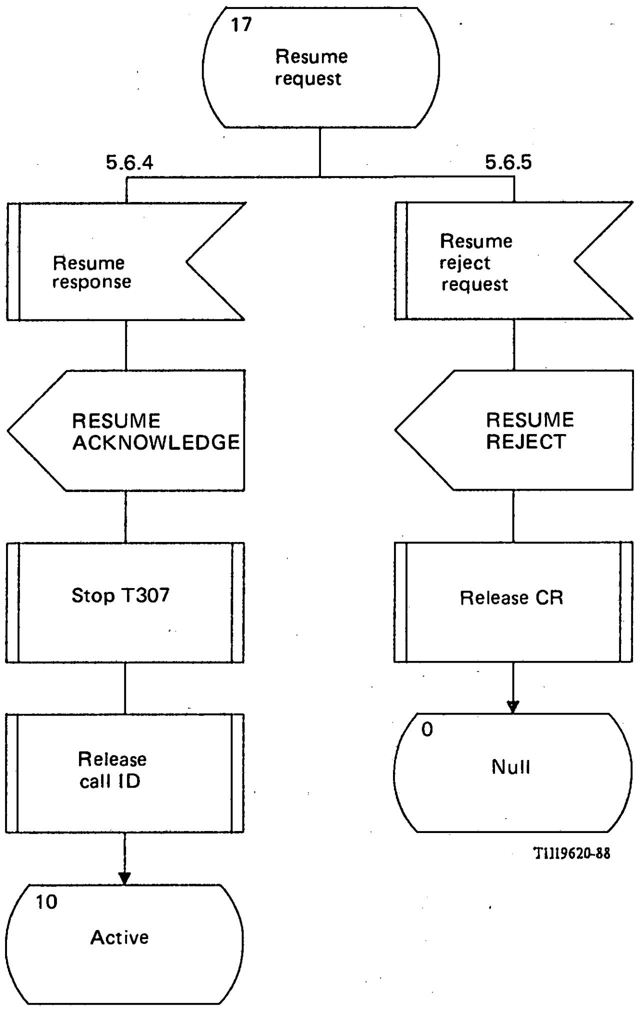


FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 17 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point

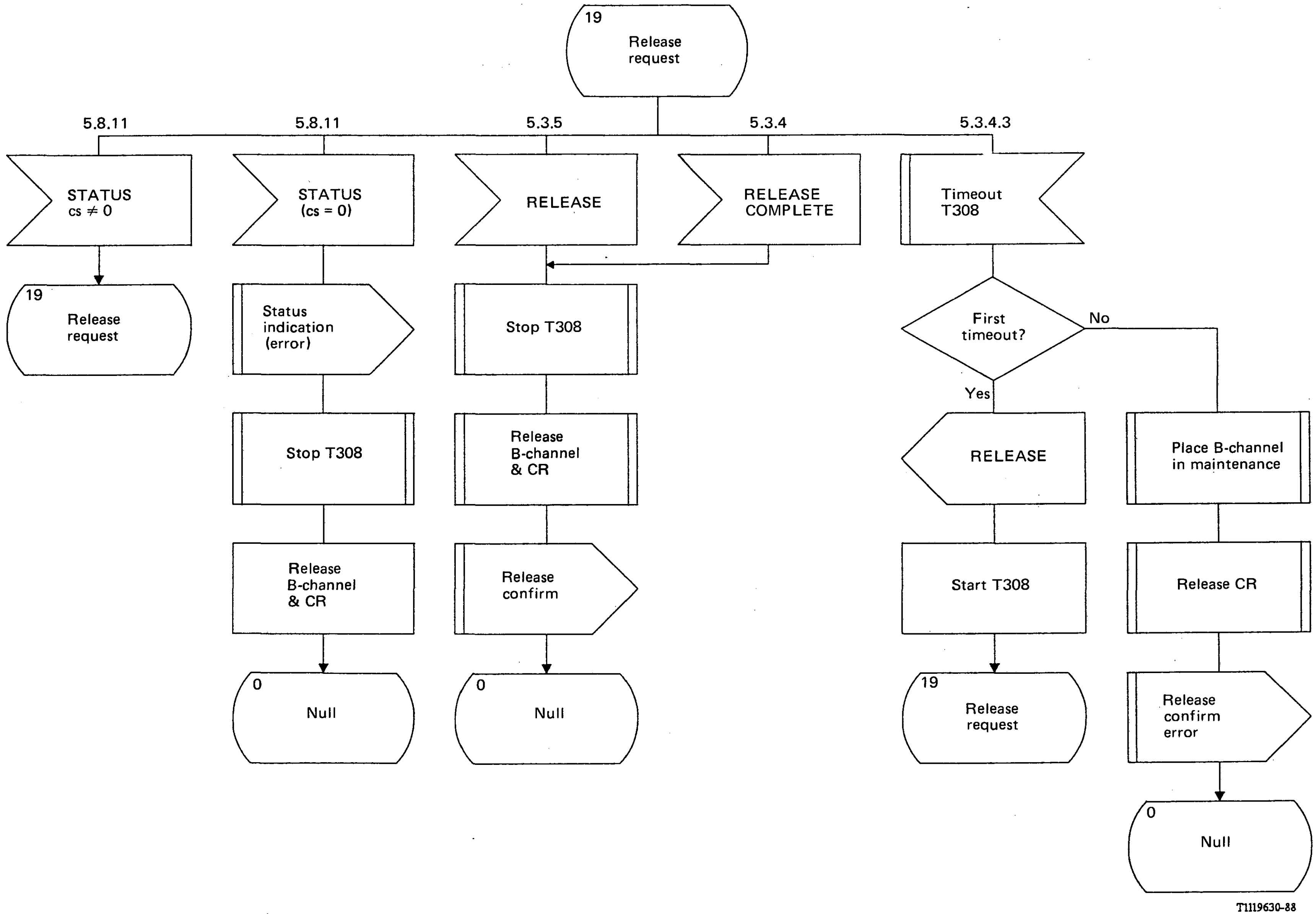
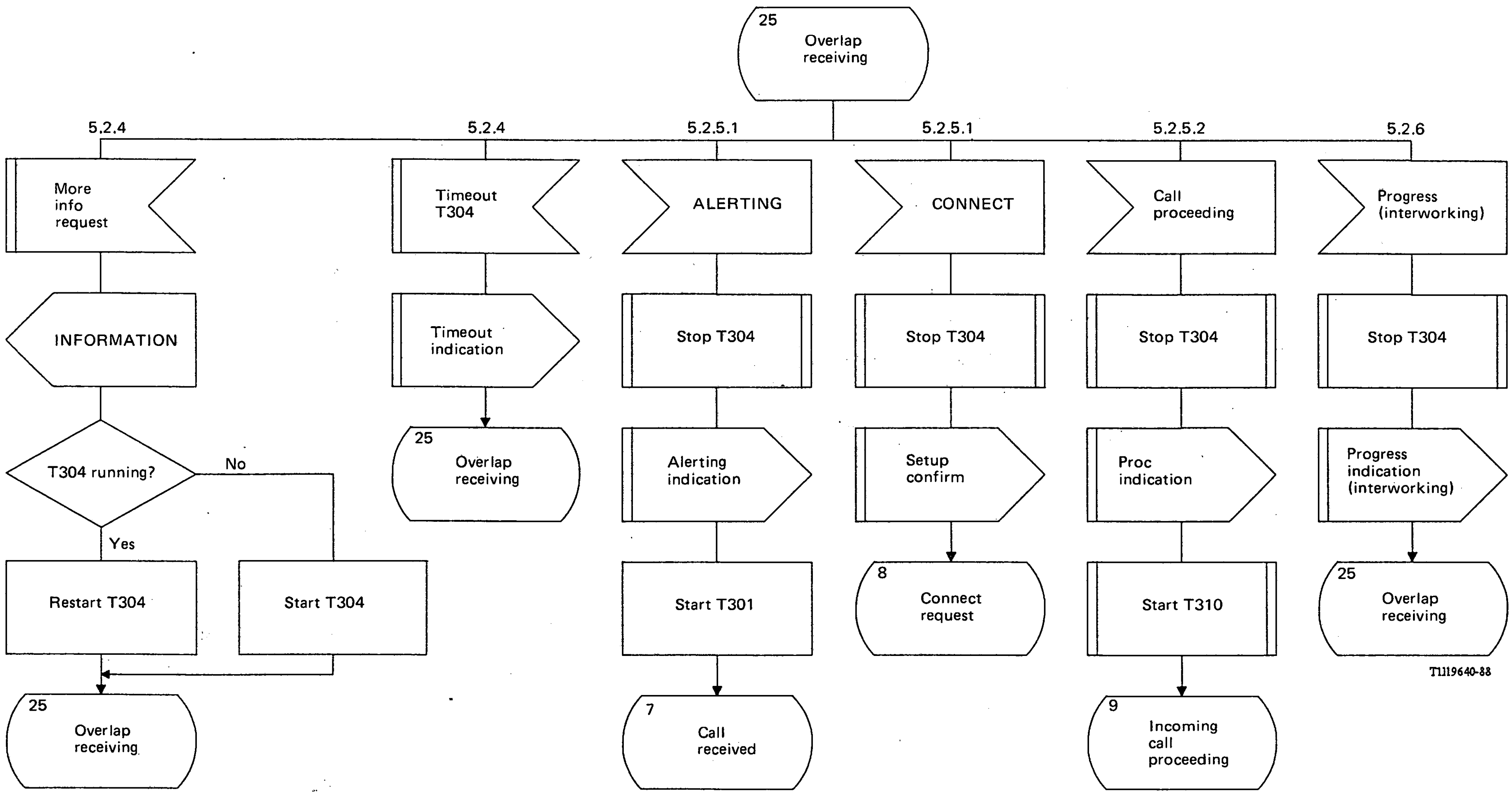


FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 18 of 27)

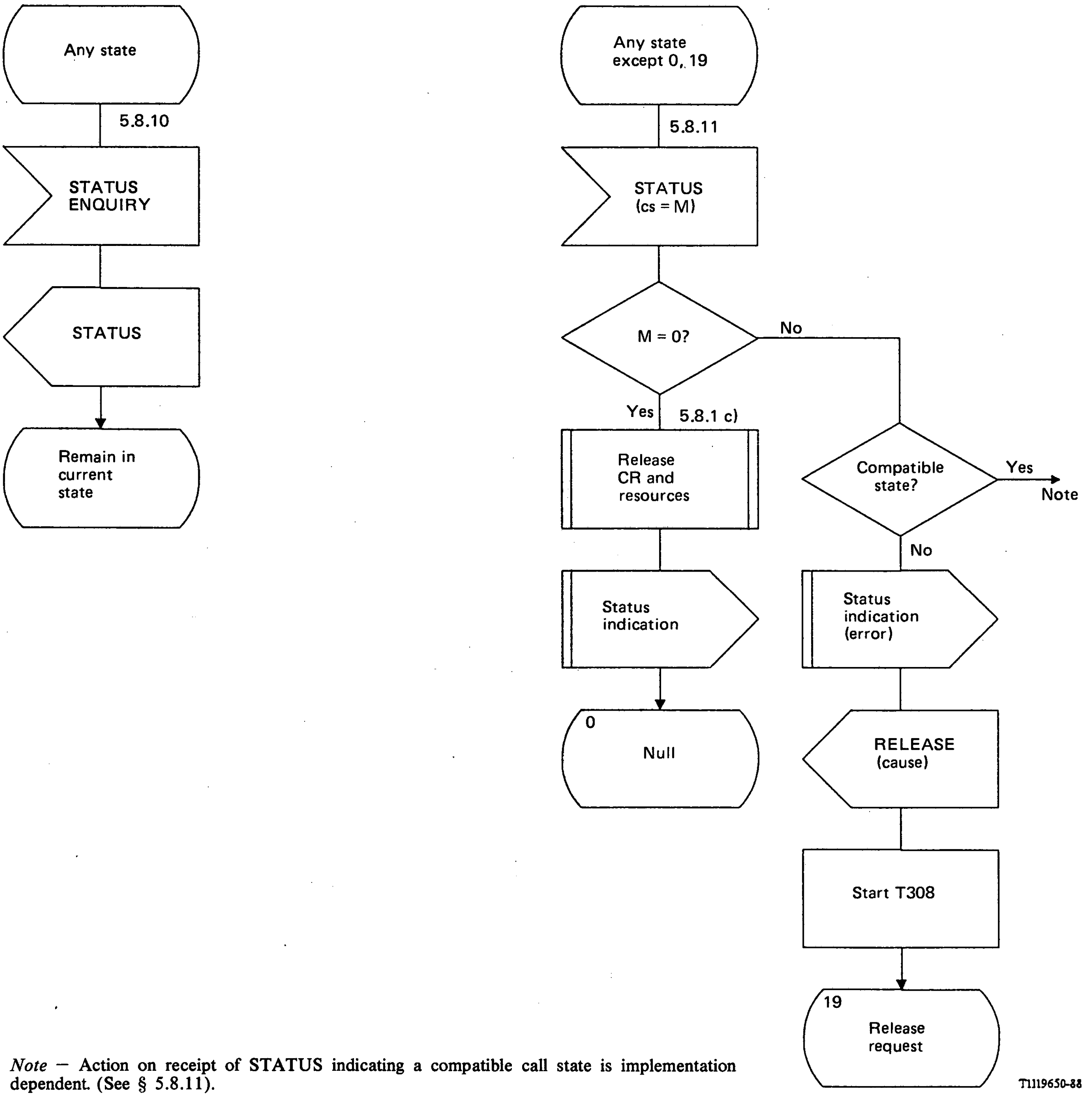
Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point



Note — T304 is optional (see § 9.1).

FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 19 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point



Note – Action on receipt of STATUS indicating a compatible call state is implementation dependent. (See § 5.8.11).

FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 20 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point

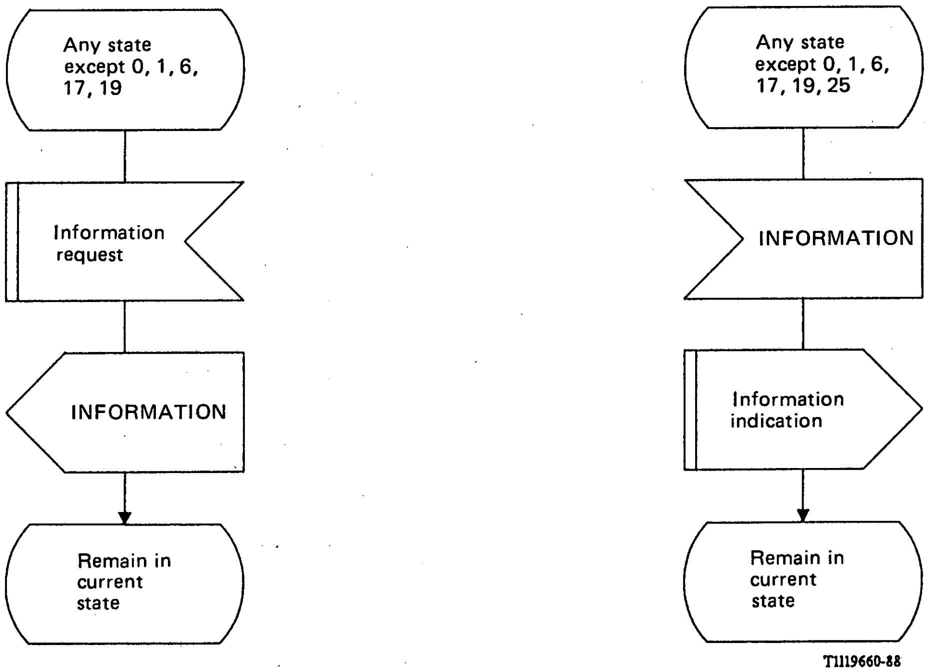
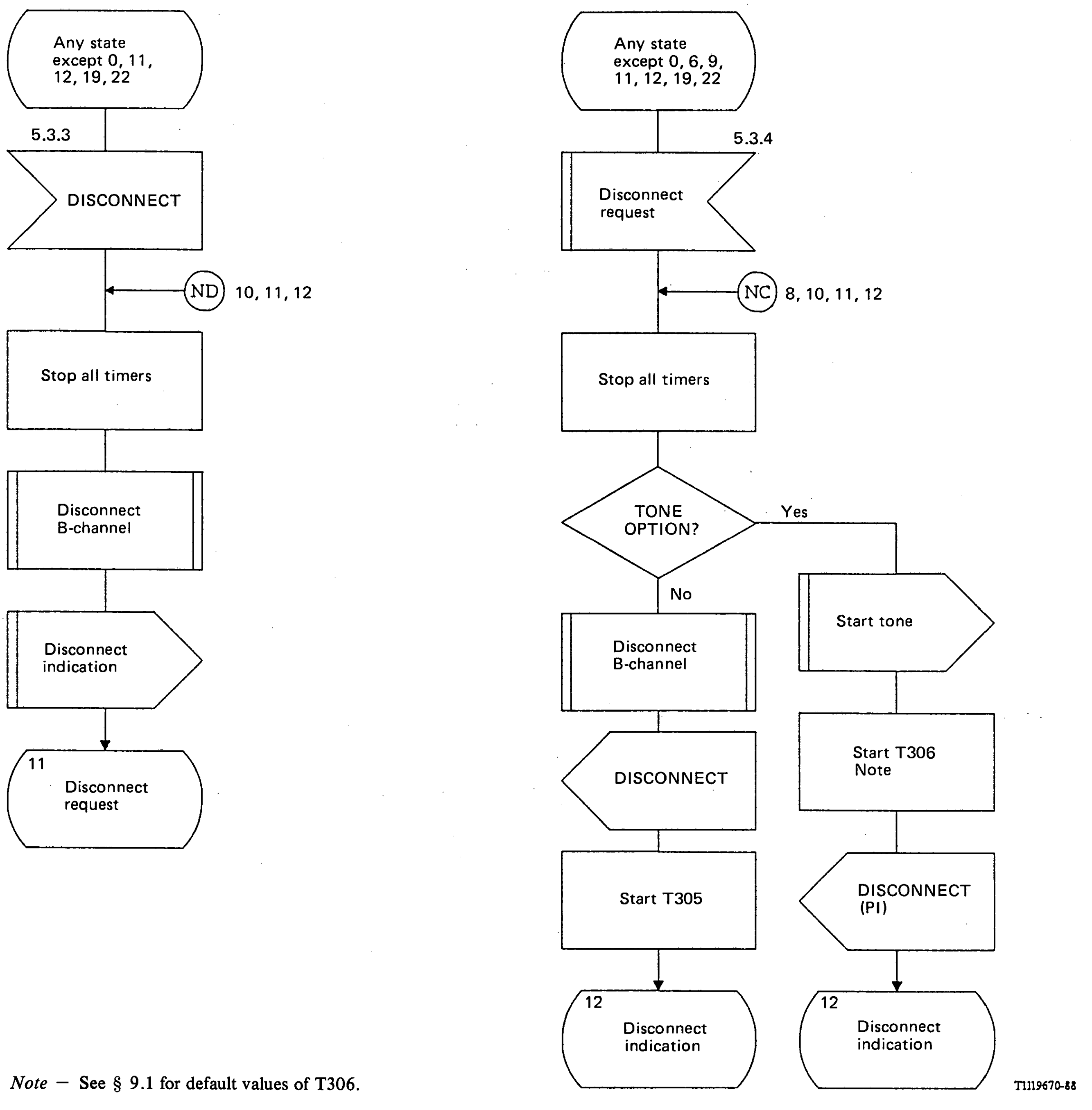


FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 21 of 27)

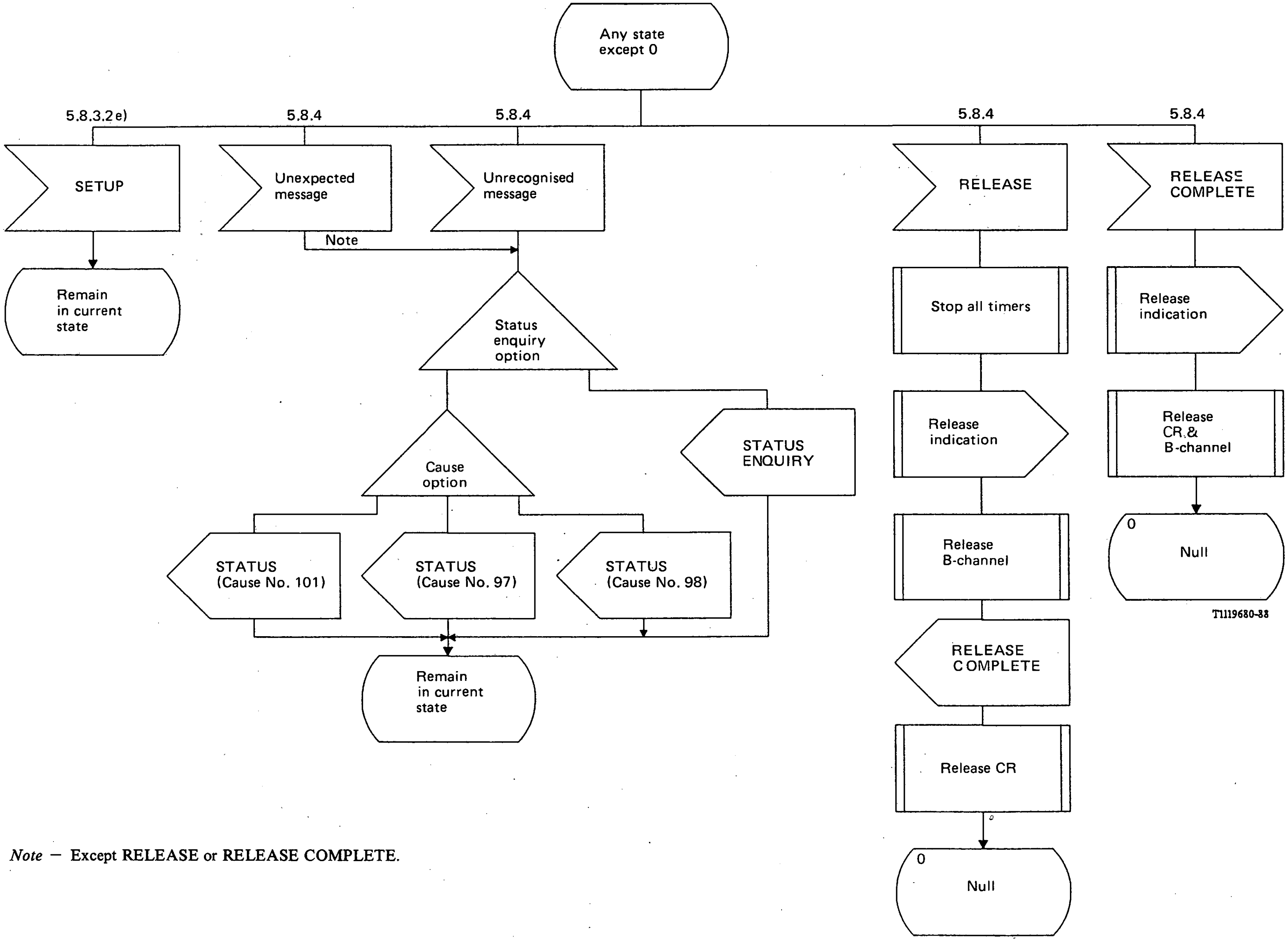
Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point



Note – See § 9.1 for default values of T306.

FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 22 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point

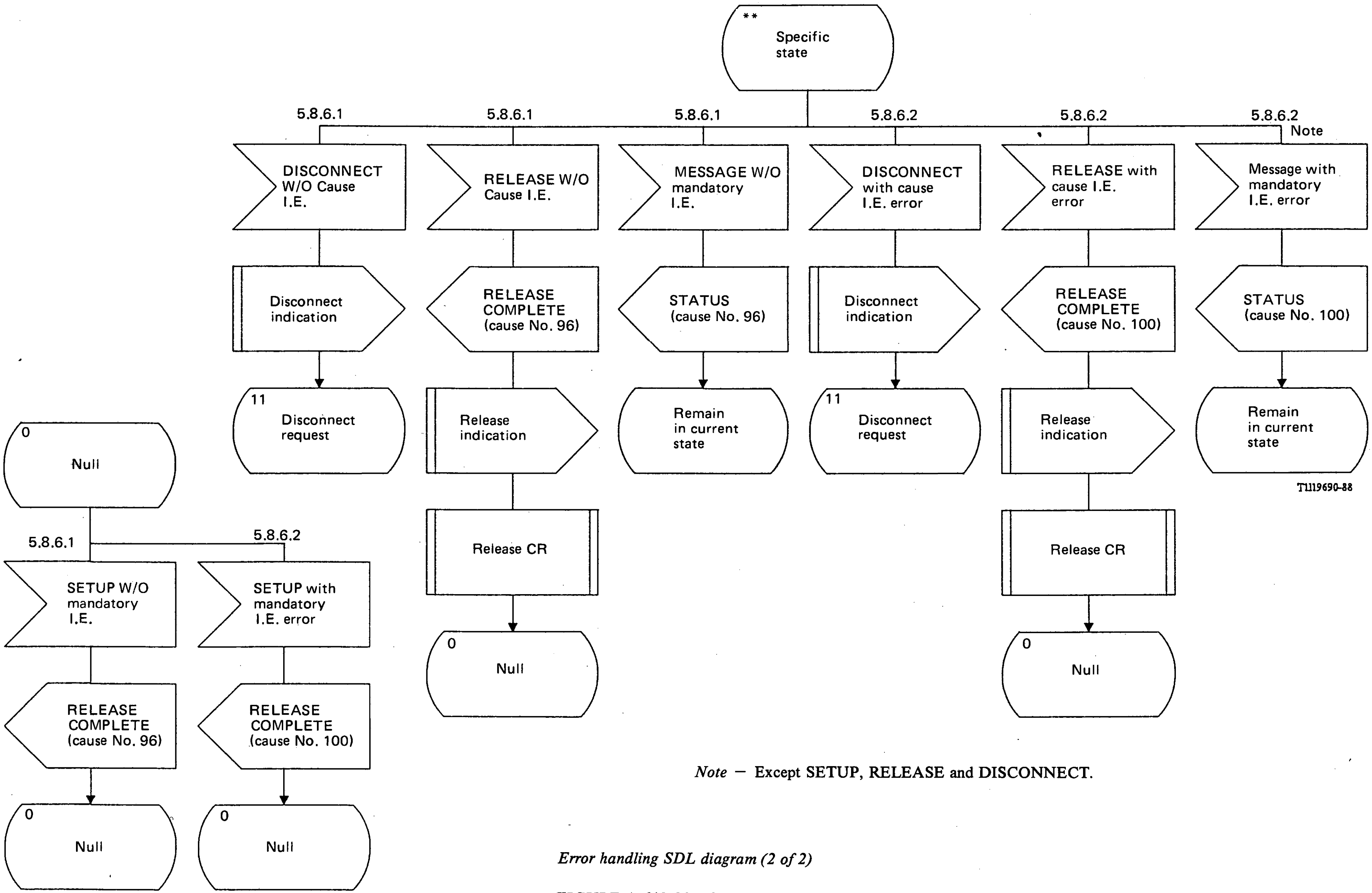


Note – Except RELEASE or RELEASE COMPLETE.

Error handling SDL diagram (1 of 2)

FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 23 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point

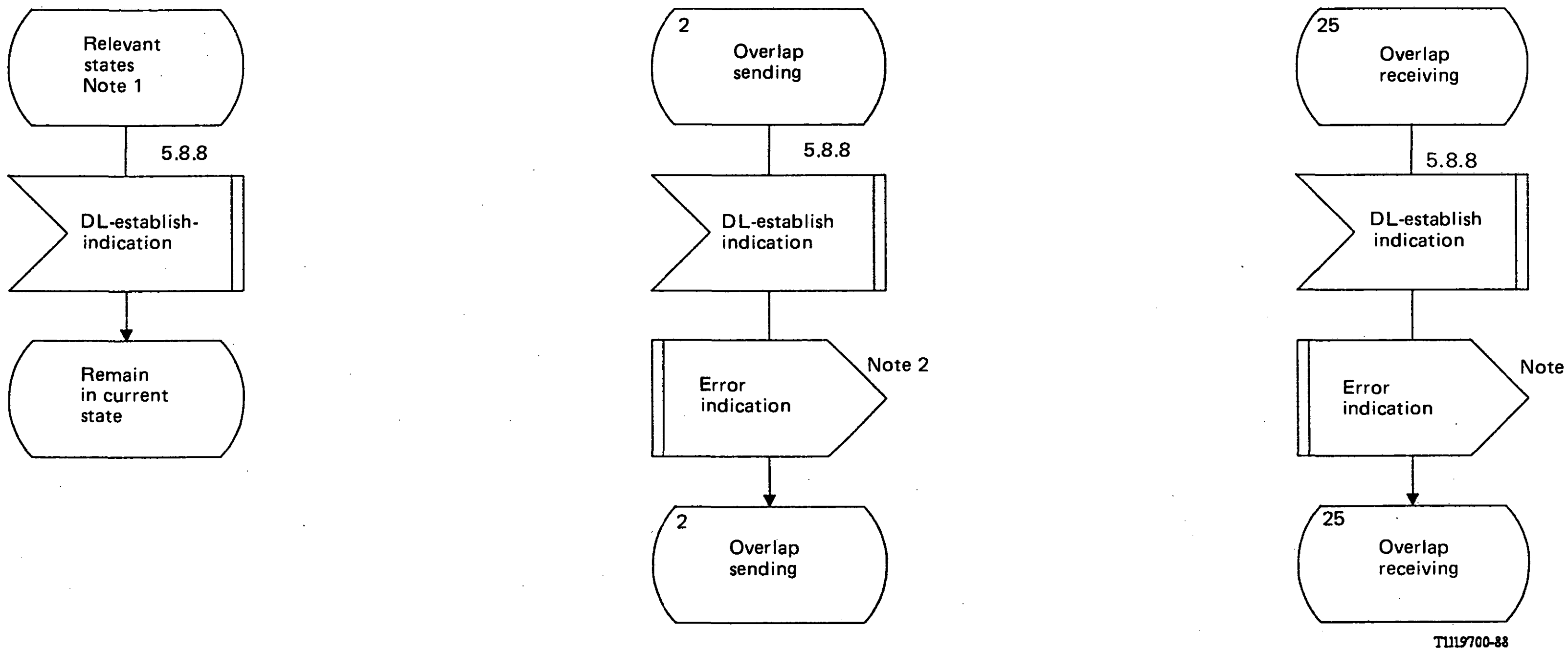


Note – Except SETUP, RELEASE and DISCONNECT.

Error handling SDL diagram (2 of 2)

FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 24 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point

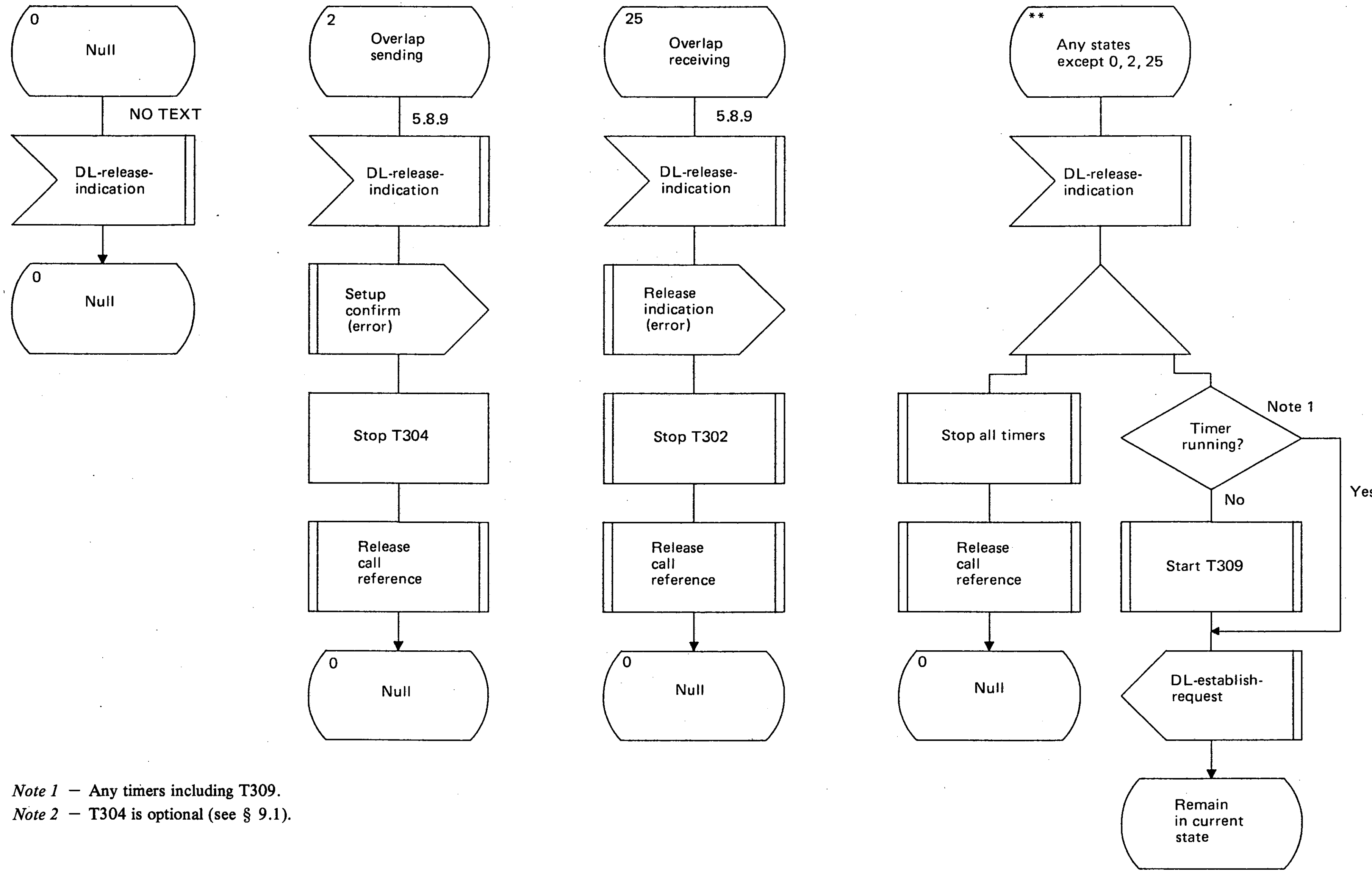


Note 1 – The relevant states are as follows: N1, N3, N4, N6 to N12, N15, N17, N19.

Note 2 – At the reception of this primitive, the call control should clear the call by sending disconnect request primitives.

FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 25 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point



Note 1 – Any timers including T309.
Note 2 – T304 is optional (see § 9.1).

FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 26 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point

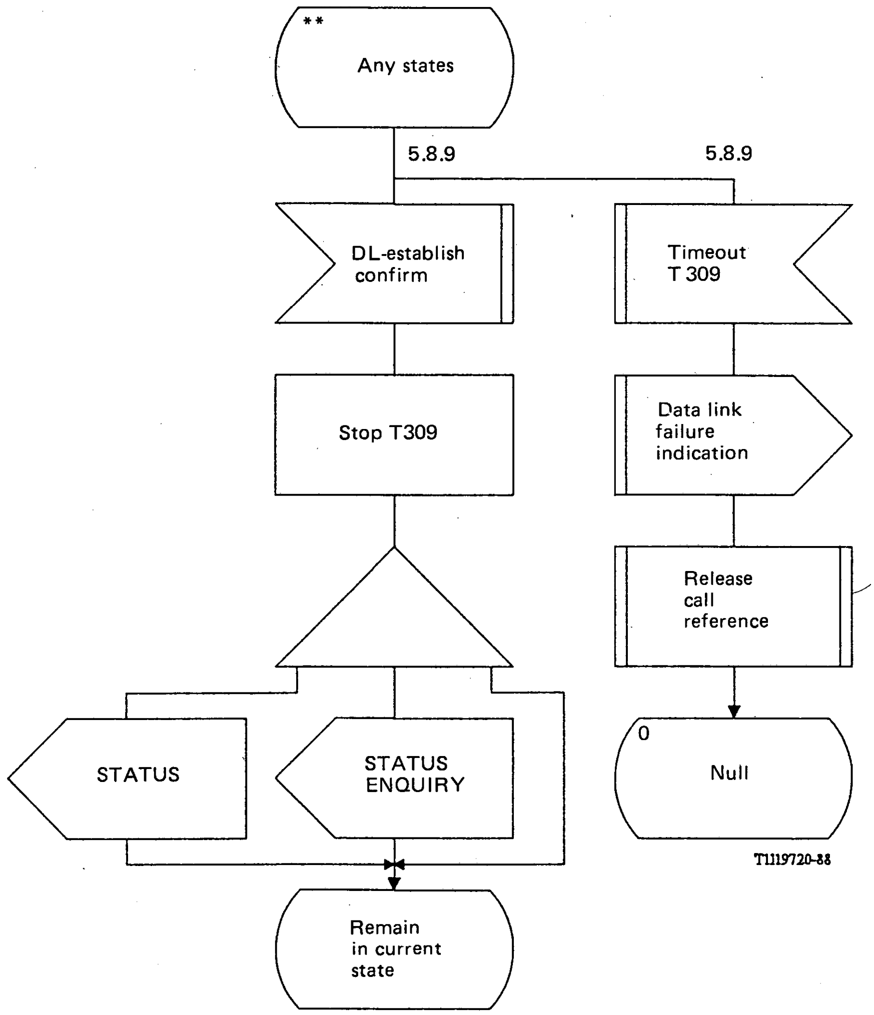


FIGURE A-6/Q.931 (Sheet 27 of 27)

Detailed protocol control (network side) point-point

ANNEX B

(to Recommendation Q.931)

Compatibility checking

B.1 *Introduction*

This Annex describes the various compatibility checks which should be carried out to ensure that the best matched user and network capabilities are achieved on a call within an ISDN.

This Annex also covers interworking with existing networks.

Three different processes of compatibility checking shall be performed:

i) at the user-to-network interface on the calling side (see § B.2);

ii) at the network-user interface on the called side (see § B.3.2); and

iii) user-to-user (see § B.3.3).

Note – In this context and throughout this Annex the term "called user" is the end point entity which is explicitly addressed. This may be an addressed interworking unit (IWU), see I.500-Series Recommendations.

For details on the coding of the information required for compatibility checking, see Annex L.

B.2 *Calling side compatibility checking*

At the calling side, the network shall check that the bearer service requested by the calling user in the Bearer capability information element matches with the bearer services provided to that user by the network. If a mismatch is detected, then the network shall reject the call using one of the causes listed in § 5.1.5.2.

Network services are described in Recommendations I.230 [47] and I.240 [48] as bearer services and teleservices, respectively.

B.3 *Called side compatibility checking*

In this section, the word "check" means that the user examines the contents of the specified information element.

B.3.1 *Compatibility checking with addressing information*

If an incoming SETUP message is offered with addressing information (i.e., either DDI or sub-addressing or the appropriate part of the called party number, e.g., for DDI) the following actions will occur:

a) if a number (e.g. for DDI) or sub-address is assigned to a user, then the information in a Called party number or Called party sub-address information element of the incoming call shall be checked by the user against the corresponding part of the number assigned to the user (e.g., for DDI) or the user's own sub-address. In the case of a mismatch, the user shall ignore the call. In the case of match, the compatibility checking described in §§ B.3.2 to B.3.3 will follow;

b) if a user has no DDI number or sub-address, then the Called party number and Called party sub-address information element shall be ignored. The compatibility checking described in §§ B.3.2 and B.3.3 will follow.

Note 1 – According to the user's requirements, compatibility checking can be performed in various ways from the viewpoint of execution order and information to be checked, e.g. first DDI number/sub-address and then compatibility or vice versa.

Note 2 – If an incoming call, offered with addressing information, is always to be awarded to the addressed user, all users connected to the same passive bus should have a DDI number or sub-address.

B.3.2 *Network-to-user compatibility checking*

When the network is providing a bearer service at the called side, the user shall check that the bearer service offered by the network in the Bearer capability information element matches the bearer services that the user is able to support. If a mismatch is detected, then the user shall either ignore or reject the offered call using cause No. 88, *incompatible destination.*

B.3.3 *User-to-user compatibility checking*

The called side terminal equipment shall check that the content of the Low layer compatibility information element is compatible with the functions it supports.

The Low layer compatibility information element (if available) shall be used to check compatibility of low layers (e.g., from layer 1 to layer 3, if layered according to the OSI model).

Note – The Bearer capability information element is also checked, see § B.3.2. Therefore, if any conflict from duplication of information in the Bearer capability and the Low layer compatibility information elements is detected, this conflict shall be resolved according to Annex L, e.g., the conflicting information in the Low layer compatibility information element shall be ignored.

If the Low layer compatibility information element is not included in an incoming SETUP message, the Bearer capability information element shall be used to check the compatibility of low layers.

The called terminal equipment may check the High layer compatibility information element (if present) as part of user-to-user compatibility checking procedures, even if the network only supports bearer services.

If a mismatch is detected in checking any of the information elements above, then the terminal equipment shall either ignore or reject the offered call using cause No. 88, *incompatible destination.*

With regard to the presence or absence of the High layer compatibility and Low layer compatibility information elements, two cases arise:

a) *Compatibility assured with the available description of the call*

   This is when all terminal equipment implement (i.e. understand the contents of) the High layer compatibility and Low layer compatibility information elements. Thus, based on the High layer compatibility and Low layer compatibility information element encoding, they are capable of accepting a call for which they have the requested functionality.

b) *Compatibility not assured with the available description of the call*

   This is when all or some of the terminal equipment do not recognize (i.e. ignore) either the High layer compatibility or Low layer compatibility information elements. Without careful configuration or administration at the user's installation, there is a danger that a terminal equipment which has incorrect functionality will accept the call.

Therefore, in order to assure compatibility with incoming calls, it is recommended that the terminal equipment check the Low layer compatibility and High layer compatibility information elements.

Note – Some terminal equipment, upon bilateral agreement with other users or in accordance with other standards (e.g., Recommendation X.213 [23]) may employ the User-user information element for additional compatibility checking. Such terminal equipment shall check the User-user information element in a manner identical to that described here for the High layer compatibility information element "compatibility assured" case.

B.3.4 *User action tables*

Tables B-1/Q.931, B-2/Q.931 and B-3/Q.931 show the action which shall be carried out as a result of compatibility checking with the calling user's request for a bearer service and/or teleservice.

TABLE B-1/Q.931

Bearer capability compatibility checking

BC mandatory info element	Point-to-point data link (Note 1)	Broadcast data link (Note 1)	
Compatible	Proceed	Proceed	
Incompatible	Reject (§ 5.2.5.1)	Ignore (§ 5.2.5.1 a)) (Note 2)	Reject (§ 5.2.5.1 b)) (Note 2)

TABLE B-2/Q.931

Low layer and high layer compatibility checking: compatibility assured with the available description of the call

LLC/HLC compatibility assured	Point-to-point data link (Note 1)		Broadcast data link (Note 1)		
Compatible	Accept		Accept		
Incompatible	Reject (§ 5.2.5.1)	Attempt low layer compatibility negotiation (Annex M)	Ignore (§ 5.2.5.1 a)) (Note 2)	Reject (§ 5.2.5.1 b)) (Note 2)	Attempt low layer compatibility negotiation (Annex M)

TABLE B-3/Q.931

Low layer and high layer compatibility checking: compatibility not assured with the available description of the call

LLC/HLC compatibility not assured	Point-to-point data link (Note 1)		Broadcast data link (Note 1)	
HLC or LLC present	Accept or reject (Note 3)	Attempt low layer compatibility negotiation (Annex M)	Accept or reject (Note 3)	Attempt low layer compatibility negotiation (Annex M)

Note 1 – For broadcast data link terminal equipment which are explicity addressed using sub-addressing or DDI, the point-to-point column in Tables B-1/Q.931, B-2/Q.931 and B-3/Q.931 shall be used.

Note 2 – When a terminal equipment on a broadcast data link is incompatible, an option of «ignore or reject» is permitted. (See § 5.2.2).

Note 3 – Some terminal equipment on this interface may understand the High layer compatibility or Low layer compatibility information element and would reject the call if incompatible.

B.4 *Interworking with existing networks*

Limitations in network or distant user signalling (e.g. in the case of an incoming call from a PSTN or a call from an analogue terminal) may restrict the information available to the called user in the incoming SETUP message. A called user should accept limited compatibility checking (e.g., without the High layer compatibility information element) if a call is routed from an existing network which does not support High layer compatibility information element transfer.

In cases where the network cannot provide all incoming call information, or where the network is not aware of the existence or absence of some service information (such as compatibility information), the incoming SETUP message includes a Progress indicator information element, containing progress indicator No. 1, *Call is not end-to-end ISDN, further call progress information may be available in-band*, or No. 3, *Origination address is non-ISDN* (see Annex I).

The terminal equipment receiving a SETUP with a progress indicator information element shall modify its compatibility checking, the terminal equipment should regard the compatibility as successful if it is compatible with the included information, which as a minimum, will be the bearer capability information element. A terminal equipment expecting information in addition to the Bearer capability information element in a full ISDN environment need not reject the call if such information is absent but a Progress indicator information element is included.

ANNEX C

(to Recommendation Q.931)

Transit network selection

This Annex describes the processing of the transit network selection information element.

C.1 *Selection not supported*

Some networks may not support transit network selection. In this case, when a Transit network selection information element is received, that information element is processed according to the rules for unimplemented non-mandatory information elements (see § 5.8.7.1).

C.2 *Selection supported*

When transit network selection is supported, the user identifies the selected transit network(s) in the SETUP message. One Transit network selection information element is used to convey a single network identification.

The user may specify more than one transit network. Each identification is placed in a separate information element. The call would then be routed through the specified transit networks in the order listed in the SETUP. For example, a user lists networks A and B, in that order, in two Transit network selection information elements within a SETUP message. The call is first routed to network A (either directly or indirectly), and then to network B (either directly or indirectly), before being delivered.

As the call is delivered to each selected network, the corresponding transit selection may be stripped from the call establishment signalling, in accordance with the relevant internetwork signalling arrangement. The Transit network selection information element(s) is/are not delivered to the destination user.

No more than four Transit network selection information elements may be used in a single SETUP message.

When a network cannot route the call because the route is busy, the network shall initiate call clearing in accordance with § 5.3 with cause No. 34, *no circuit/channel available.*

If a network does not recognize the specified transit network, the network shall initiate call clearing in accordance with § 5.3, with cause No. 2, *no route to specified transit network.* The diagnostic field shall contain a copy of the contents of the Transit network selection information element identifying the unreachable network.

A network may screen all remaining transit network selection information elements to:

a) avoid routing loops; or

b) ensure an appropriate business relationship exists between selected networks; or

c) ensure compliance with national and local regulations.

If the transit network selection is of an incorrect format, or fails to meet criteria a), b) or c), the network shall initiate call clearing in accordance with § 5.3, with cause No. 91, *invalid transit network selection.*

When a user includes the Transit network selection information element, pre-subscribed default Transit network selection information (if any) is overridden.

ANNEX D

(to Recommendation Q.931)

Extensions for symmetric call operation

D.1 *Additional message handling*

In symmetric applications, the SETUP message will contain a Channel Identification information element indicating a particular B-channel to be used for the call. A point-to-point data link shall be used to carry the SETUP message.

The procedure described in § 5 for the user side should normally be followed. Where additional procedures are required, they are detailed below.

D.1.1 *B-channel selection – symmetric interface*

Only B-channels controlled by the same D-channel will be the subject of the selection procedure. The selection procedure is as follows:

a) The SETUP message will indicate one of the following:

  1) channel is indicated, no acceptable alternative, or

  2) channel is indicated, any alternative is acceptable.

b) In cases 1) and 2), if the indicated channel is acceptable and available, the recipient of the SETUP message reserves it for the call. In case 2), if the recipient of the SETUP message cannot grant the indicated channel, it reserves any other available B-channel associated with the D-channel.

c) If the SETUP message included all information required to establish the call, the recipient of SETUP message indicates the selected B-channel in a CALL PROCEEDING message transferred across the interface and enters the Incoming Call Proceeding state.

d) If the SETUP message did not include all the information required to establish the call, B-channel is indicated in a SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE message sent across the interface. The additional call establishment information, if any, is sent in one or more INFORMATION messages transferred across the interface in the same direction as the SETUP message. When all call establishment information is received, a CALL PROCEEDING, ALERTING, or CONNECT message, as appropriate, is transferred across the interface.

e) In case 1) if the indicated B-channel is not available, or in case 2) if no B-channel is available, a RELEASE COMPLETE message with a cause value of No. 44, *requested circuit/channel not available,* or No. 34, *no circuit/channel available,* respectively is returned to the initiator of the call. The sender of this message remains in the Null state.

f) If the channel indicated in the CALL PROCEEDING or SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE message is unacceptable to the initiator of the call, it clears the call in accordance with § 5.3.

D.1.2 *Call confirmation*

Upon receipt of a SETUP message, the equipment enters the Call Present state. Valid responses to the SETUP message are a SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE, an ALERTING, a CALL PROCEEDING, a CONNECT, or a RELEASE COMPLETE message.

If the indicated channel is acceptable to the initiator of the call, the initiator shall attach to the indicated B-channel.

D.1.3 *Clearing by the called user employing user-provided tones/announcements*

In addition to the procedures described in § 5.3.3, if the bearer capability is either audio or speech, the called user or private network may apply in-band tones/announcements in the clearing phase. When in-band tones/announcements are provided, the DISCONNECT message contains progress indicator No. 8, *in-band information or appropriate pattern is now available*, and the called user or private network proceeds similarly as stipulated in § 5.3.4.1 for the network.

D.1.4 *Active indication*

Upon receipt of a CONNECT message, the initiator of the call shall respond with a CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message and enter the Active state.

D.2 *Timers for call establishment*

User end points implement the network side timers T301, T303 and T310 along with the corresponding network side procedures for actions taken upon expiration of these timers. See Table 9-2/Q.931 for the call establishment user-side timers and procedures.

D.3 *Call collisions*

In symmetric arrangements, call collisions can occur when both sides simultaneously transfer a SETUP message indicating the same channel. In the absence of administrative procedures for assignment of channels to each side of the interface, the following procedure is employed.

First, one side of the interface will be designated the *network* and the other side of the interface will be designated the *user.* Second, for the three possible scenarios where the same channel is indicated by combinations of preferred and exclusive from the user and network sides, the following procedure is used:

a) *network preferred, user preferred*:

   the network preferred channel is awarded and an alternate channel is indicated in the first response to the user SETUP message;

b) *network exclusive, user exclusive*:

   the network exclusive channel is awarded and the user SETUP message is cleared with a RELEASE COMPLETE message with cause No. 34, *no circuit/channel available*;

c) *network preferred, user exclusive; or network exclusive, user preferred*:

   the side of the interface with an exclusive indicator in a SETUP message is awarded the channel and an alternate channel is indicated in the first response to the side using a preferred indicator in the SETUP message.

Channel identification is allowed in both directions for ALERTING and CONNECT.

ANNEX E

(to Recommendation Q.931)

Network specific facility selection

This Annex describes the processing of the Network-specific facilities information element. The purpose of this information element is to indicate which network facilities are being invoked.

E.1 *Default provider*

When the length of the network identification field is set to zero in the Network-specific facilities information element, then the services identified in this information element are to be provided by the network side of the interface receiving the information element (default provider). If the Network-specific facilities information element is recognized but the network facilities are not understood, then this information element is processed according to rules for non-mandatory information element content error (see § 5.8.7.1).

E.2 *Routing not supported*

Some networks may not support the routing to the remote network of the contents of the Network-specific facilities information element. In this case, when a Network-specific facilities information element is received, that information element is processed according to the rules for unimplemented non-mandatory information elements (see § 5.8.7.1).

E.3 *Routing supported*

When Network-specific facility information element routing is supported, the user identifies the network provider in this information element in the Q.931 SETUP message. One Network-specific facility information element is used to identify a network provider.

The user may specify more than one network provider by repeating the Network-specific facilities information element. Each identification is placed in a separate information element. The information is routed to the indicated network provider as long as the call is also handled by the network provider (see Annex C, Transit network selection). For example, if the user lists network providers A and B in separate Network-specific facilities information elements in a call control message, there must be corresponding Transit network selection information elements in the SETUP message identifying those networks (or default call routing via A and B that was established prior to call establishment).

As the signalling messages containing Network-specific facilities information elements are delivered to the indicated remote network, they may be stripped from the signalling messages, in accordance with the relevant internetworking signalling arrangement. The Network-specific facilities information elements may be delivered to the identified user.

No more than four Network-specific facilities information elements may be used in a SETUP message. When the information element is repeated, the order of presentation of the elements in a message is not significant. Further, there does not have to be a one-to-one correspondence between Network-specific facilities information elements and Transit network selection information elements.

If a network cannot pass the information to the indicated network provider, either due to:

– the network indicated is not part of the call path, or

– no mechanism exists for passing the information to identified network,

the network shall initiate call clearing in accordance with § 5.3, with cause No. 2, *no route to specified transit network*. The diagnostic field may optionally contain a copy of the first 5 octets of the network-specific facilities information element.

When the user includes the Network-specific facilities information element in the SETUP message, pre-subscribed default service treatment (if any) is overridden.

ANNEX F

(to Recommendation Q.931)

D-channel backup procedures

F.0 *Foreword*

The procedure defined in this Annex can be used when non-associated signalling is applied to multiple primary rate access arrangements. This feature can be provided on a subscription basis and is network dependent.

F.1 *General*

In associated signalling, the D-channel signalling entity can only assign calls to channels on the interface containing the D-channel. When the D-channel signalling entity can assign calls to channels on more than one interface (including the one containing the D-channel), this is called non-associated signalling. Figure F-1/Q.931 is an example of associated signalling used on each of the three interfaces between a user (e.g., a PABX) and a network. Replacing associated signalling with non-associated signalling on these interfaces results in the example shown in Figure F-2/Q.931.

When non-associated signalling is employed, the reliability of the signalling performance for the ISDN interfaces controlled by the D-channel may be unacceptable. To improve the reliability, a D-channel backup procedure employing a standby D-channel is necessary. The next section describes the backup procedure which is optional for end-points that use non-associated signalling.

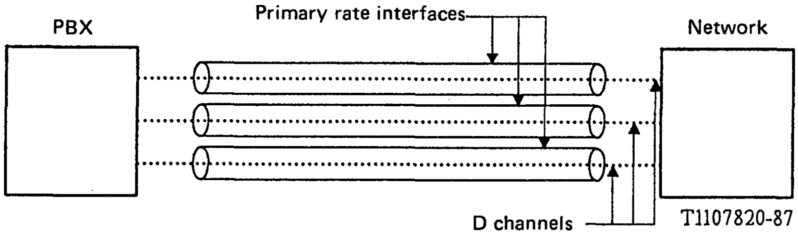


FIGURE F-1/Q.931

Example of associated signalling on each of three primary rate interfaces

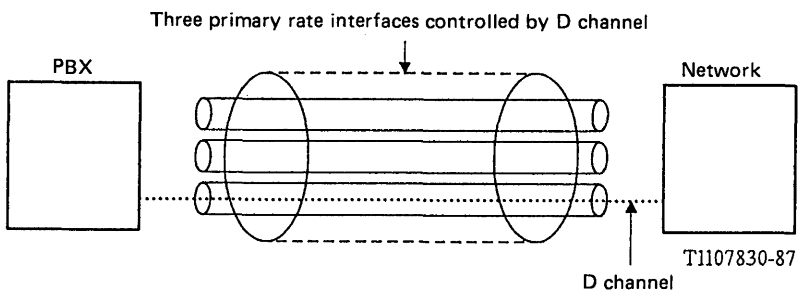


FIGURE F-2/Q.931

Example of non-associated signalling controlling three primary rate interfaces

F.2 *D-channel backup procedure*

F.2.1 *Role of each D-channel*

When two or more interfaces connect a network and a user, a primary D-channel (labelled "one") is always present on one interface. On a different interface, a secondary D-channel (labelled "two") is present that can also send signalling packets. Figure F-3/Q.931 shows the addition of a secondary (i.e., backup) D-channel to the arrangement shown in Figure F-2/Q.931.

D-channel one is used to send signalling packets across the user-network interface for multiple interfaces including the interface containing D-channel two. D-channel two is in a standby role and is active at layer 2 only. All SAPI groups (e.g., 0, 16 and 63) are alive and can send packets. At periodic intervals determined by the appropriate layer 2 timer associated with SAPI 0, a link audit frame will be sent on the point-to-point signalling link with DLCI = 0 of D-channel two.

Since D-channel two is in a standby role, load sharing between D-channels one and two is not possible. Furthermore, D-channel two can not serve as a B-channel when it is in a standby role. Lastly, D-channel two can only back up the signalling functions provided by D-channel one and not some other D-channel on a different interface.

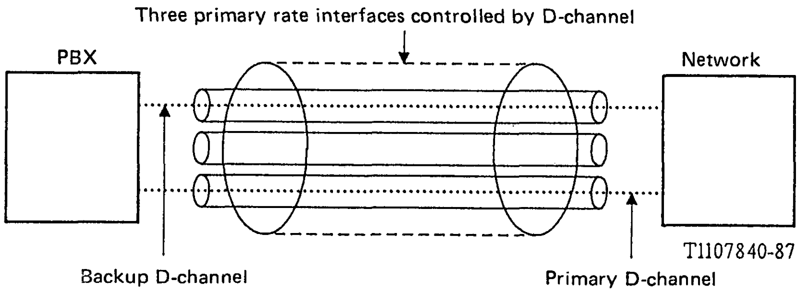


FIGURE F-3/Q.931

Example of non-associated signalling with backup D-channel controlling three primary rate interfaces

F.2.2 *Switchover of D-channels*

Failure of D-channel one is determined by the receipt of a DL_RELEASE_INDICATION primitive from the data link layer. At this point, optionally additional attempts to re-establish this D-channel may be initiated. Otherwise, it is assumed that D-channel one has failed.

Two states are defined for any D-channel in a backup arrangement. A D-channel is termed out-of-service when layer 2 remains in the TEI-assigned state, after being periodically requested by layer 3 to establish multiple-frame operation. A D-channel is termed maintenance busy when layer 2 is held in the TEI-assigned state by layer 3. While in the maintenance busy condition, the response to an invitation for link establishment is met with the transmission of a DM (Disconnected Mode).

When the D-channel one has failed and if D-channel two is not in an out-of-service condition, the layer 3 shall place D-channel one in a maintenance busy condition, start timer T321 and then issue a DL_ESTABLISH_REQUEST primitive to re-initialize SAPI 0 link 0 of D-channel two. Upon receipt of this primitive, the data link layer issues an SABME command. Timer T200 is started. The end receiving the SABME command on D-channel two follows the remainder of the Q.931 procedures for establishing logical link with DLCI = 0.

Once the logical link with DLCI = 0 in D-channel two is in the Link Established state, the procedure to establish layer 3 call control signalling can begin on the link.

To establish the backup D-channel for carrying call control signalling, layer 3 should issue an appropriate layer 3 message (e.g., a STATUS ENQUIRY on stable call reference numbers). Once a response to that layer 3 message is received, D-channel two is declared to be the active D-channel, normal layer 3 call control signalling may proceed, timer T321 is stopped, and D-channel one is moved to the out-of-service condition. If the maintenance busy timer T321 expires before a response is received to the layer 3 message, D-channel one is moved to the out-of-service condition and an attempt is made to establish the logical link with DLCI = 0 on D-channel one and D-channel two.

If the logical link with DLCI = 0 of both D-channel one and D-channel two are initialized simultaneously, the designated primary shall be chosen as the D-channel for carrying call control signalling. The designated primary D-channel is agreed upon at subscription time by both sides of the interface.

After a switchover, old D-channel two becomes the new D-channel one and old D-channel one becomes the new D-channel two.

Upon completion of appropriate maintenance activity to D-channel two, the logical links for SAPI = 0 and 63 are made active at layer 2 and the D-channel is removed from the out-of-service condition.

D-channels may only be switched again by a failure of D-channel one or a routing or maintenance request from a peer entity.

ANNEX G

(to Recommendation Q.931)

Cause definitions

This Annex provides definitions to the causes in § 4.5.12. A Table is provided in Appendix I to indicate how these causes are used in the call control procedures.

G.1 *Normal class*

G.1.1 *Cause No. 1: unallocated (unassigned) number*

This cause indicates that the destination requested by the calling user cannot be reached because, although the number is in a valid format, it is not currently assigned (allocated).

G.1.2 *Cause No. 2: no route to specified transit network*

This cause indicates that the equipment sending this cause has received a request to route the call through a particular transit network which it does not recognize. The equipment sending this cause does not recognize the transit network either because the transit network does not exist or because that particular network, while it does exist, does not serve the equipment which is sending this cause.

This cause is supported on a network-dependent basis.

G.1.3 *Cause No. 3: no route to destination*

This cause indicates that the called user cannot be reached because the network through which the call has been routed does not serve the destination desired.

This cause is supported on a network-dependent basis.

G.1.4 *Cause No. 6: channel unacceptable*

This cause indicates the channel most recently identified is not acceptable to the sending entity for use in this call.

G.1.5 *Cause No. 7: call awarded and being delivered in an established channel*

This cause indicates that the user has been awarded the incoming call, and that the incoming call is being connected to a channel already established to that user for similar calls (e.g., packet-mode X.25 virtual calls).

G.1.6 *Cause No. 16: normal call clearing*

This cause indicates that the call is being cleared because one of the users involved in the call has requested that the call be cleared.

Under normal situations, the source of this cause is not the network.

G.1.7 *Cause No. 17: user busy*

This cause is used when the called user has indicated the inability to accept another call.

It is noted that the user equipment is compatible with the call.

G.1.8 *Cause No. 18: no user responding*

This cause is used when a user does not respond to a call establishment message with either an alerting or connect indication within the prescribed period of time allocated (defined in Recommendation Q.931 by the expiry of either timer T303 or T310).

G.1.9 *Cause No. 19: no answer from user (user alerted)*

This cause is used when a user has provided an alerting indication but has not provided a connect indication within a prescribed period of time.

Note – This cause is not necessarily generated by Q.931 procedures but may be generated by internal network timers.

G.1.10 *Cause No. 21: call rejected*

This cause indicates that the equipment sending this cause does not wish to accept this call, although it could have accepted the call because the equipment sending this cause is neither busy nor incompatible.

G.1.11 *Cause No. 22: number changed*

This cause is returned to a calling user when the called party number indicated by the calling user is no longer assigned. The new called party number may optionally be included in the diagnostic field. If a network does not support this capability, cause No. 1, *unassigned (unallocated) number* shall be used.

G.1.12 *Cause No. 26: non-selected user clearing*

This cause indicates that the user has not been awarded the incoming call.

G.1.13 *Cause No. 27: destination out of order*

This cause indicates that the destination indicated by the user cannot be reached because the interface to the destination is not functioning correctly. The term "not functioning correctly" indicates that a signalling message was unable to be delivered to the remote user; e.g., a physical layer or data link layer failure at the remote user, user equipment off-line, etc.

G.1.14 *Cause No. 28: invalid number format (address incomplete)*

This cause indicates that the called user cannot be reached because the called party number is not a valid format or is not complete.

G.1.15 *Cause No. 29: facility rejected*

This cause is returned when a facility requested by the user can not be provided by the network.

G.1.16 *Cause No. 30: response to STATUS ENQUIRY*

This cause is included in the STATUS message when the reason for generating the STATUS message was the prior receipt of a STATUS ENQUIRY message.

G.1.17 *Cause No. 31: normal, unspecified*

This cause is used to report a normal event only when no other cause in the normal class applies.

G.2 *Resource unavailable class*

G.2.1 *Cause No. 34: no circuit/channel available*

This cause indicates that there is no appropriate circuit/channel presently available to handle the call.

G.2.2 *Cause No. 38: network out of order*

This cause indicates that the network is not functioning correctly and that the condition is likely to last a relatively long period of time; e.g., immediately re-attempting the call is not likely to be successful.

G.2.3 *Cause No. 41: temporary failure*

This cause indicates that the network is not functioning correctly and that the condition is not likely to last a long period of time; e.g., the user may wish to try another call attempt almost immediately.

G.2.4 *Cause No. 42: switching equipment congestion*

This cause indicates that the switching equipment generating this cause is experiencing a period of high traffic.

G.2.5 *Cause No. 43: access information discarded*

This cause indicates that the network could not deliver access information to the remote user as requested: i.e., a user-to-user information, low layer compatibility, high layer compatibility, or sub-address as indicated in the diagnostic.

It is noted that the particular type of access information discarded is optionally included in the diagnostic.

G.2.6 *Cause No. 44: requested circuit/channel not available*

This cause is returned when the circuit or channel indicated by the requesting entity can not be provided by the other side of the interface.

G.2.7 *Cause No. 47: resource unavailable, unspecified*

This cause is used to report a resource unavailable event only when no other cause in the resource unavailable class applies.

G.3 *Service or option not available class*

G.3.1 *Cause No. 49: Quality of Service not available*

This cause is used to report that the requested Quality of Service, as defined in Recommendation X.213, cannot be provided (e.g., throughput or transit delay cannot be supported).

G.3.2 *Cause No. 50: requested facility not subscribed*

This cause indicates that the requested supplementary service could not be provided by the network because the user has not completed the necessary administrative arrangements with its supporting networks.

G.3.3 *Cause No. 57: bearer capability not authorized*

This cause indicates that the user has requested a bearer capability which is implemented by the equipment which generated this cause but the user is not authorized to use.

G.3.4 *Cause No. 58: bearer capability not presently available*

This cause indicates that the user has requested a bearer capability which is implemented by the equipment which generated this cause but which is not available at this time.

G.3.5 *Cause No. 63: service or option not available, unspecified*

This cause is used to report a service or option not available event only when no other cause in the service or option not available class applies.

G.4 *Service or option not implemented class*

G.4.1 *Cause No. 65: bearer capability not implemented*

This cause indicates that the equipment sending this cause does not support the bearer capability requested.

G.4.2 *Cause No. 66: channel type not implemented*

This cause indicates that the equipment sending this cause does not support the channel type requested.

G.4.3 *Cause No. 69: requested facility not implemented*

This cause indicates that the equipment sending this cause does not support the requested supplementary service.

G.4.4 *Cause No. 70: only restricted digital information bearer capability is available*

This cause indicates that one equipment has requested an unrestricted bearer service but that the equipment sending this cause only supports the restricted version of the requested bearer capability.

G.4.5 *Cause No. 79: service or option not implemented, unspecified*

This cause is used to report a service or option not implemented event only when no other cause in the service or option not implemented class applies.

G.5 *Invalid message (e.g., parameter out of range) class*

G.5.1 *Cause No. 81: invalid call reference value*

This cause indicates that the equipment sending this cause has received a message with a call reference which is not currently in use on the user-network interface.

G.5.2 *Cause No. 82: identified channel does not exist*

This cause indicates that the equipment sending this cause has received a request to use a channel not activated on the interface for a call. For example, if a user has subscribed to those channels on a primary rate interface numbered from 1 to 12 and the user equipment or the network attempts to use channels 13 through 23, this cause is generated.

G.5.3 *Cause No. 83: a suspended call exists, but this call identity does not*

This cause indicates that a call resume has been attempted with a call identity which differs from that in use for any presently suspended call(s).

G.5.4 *Cause No. 84: call identity in use*

This cause indicates that the network has received a call suspended request. The call suspend request contained a call identity (including the null call identity) which is already in use for a suspended call within the domain of interfaces over which the call might be resumed.

G.5.5 *Cause No. 85: no call suspended*

This cause indicates that the network has received a call resume request. The call resume request contained a Call identity information element which presently does not indicate any suspended call within the domain of interfaces over which calls may be resumed.

G.5.6 *Cause No. 86: call having the requested call identity has been cleared*

This cause indicates that the network has received a call resume request. The call resume request contained a Call identity information element which once indicated a suspended call; however, that suspended call was cleared while suspended (either by network timeout or by remote user).

G.5.7 *Cause No. 88: incompatible destination*

This cause indicates that the equipment sending this cause has received a request to establish a call which has low layer compatibility, high layer compatibility, or other compatibility attributes (e.g., data rate) which cannot be accommodated.

G.5.8 *Cause No. 91: invalid transit network selection*

This cause indicates that a transit network identification was received which is of an incorrect format as defined in Annex C/Q.931.

G.5.9 *Cause No. 95: invalid message, unspecified*

This cause is used to report an invalid message event only when no other cause in the invalid message class applies.

G.6 *Protocol error (e.g., unknown message) class*

G.6.1 *Cause No. 96: mandatory information element is missing*

This cause indicates that the equipment sending this cause has received a message which is missing an information element which must be present in the message before that message can be processed.

G.6.2 *Cause No. 97: message type non-existent or not implemented*

This cause indicates that the equipment sending this cause has received a message with a message type it does not recognize either because this is a message not defined or defined but not implemented by the equipment sending this cause.

G.6.3 *Cause No. 98: message not compatible with call state or message type non-existent or not implemented*

This cause indicates that the equipment sending this cause has received a message such that the procedures do not indicate that this is a permissible message to receive while in the call state, or a STATUS message was received indicating an incompatible call state.

G.6.4 *Cause No. 99: information element non-existent or not implemented*

This cause indicates that the equipment sending this cause has received a message which includes information elements not recognized because the information element identifier is not defined or it is defined but not implemented by the equipment sending the cause. However, the information element is not required to be present in the message in order for the equipment sending the cause to process the message.

G.6.5 *Cause No. 100: invalid information element contents*

This cause indicates that the equipment sending this cause has received an information element which it has implemented; however, one or more of the fields in the information element are coded in such a way which has not been implemented by the equipment sending this cause.

G.6.6 *Cause No. 101: message not compatible with call state*

This cause indicates that a message has been received which is incompatible with the call state.

G.6.7 *Cause No. 102: recovery on timer expiry*

This cause indicates that a procedure has been initiated by the expiry of a timer in association with Q.931 error handling procedures.

G.6.8 *Cause No. 111: protocol error, unspecified*

This cause is used to report a protocol error event only when no other cause in the protocol error class applies.

G.7 *Interworking class*

G.7.1 *Cause No. 127: interworking, unspecified*

This cause indicates that there has been interworking with a network which does not provide causes for actions it takes, thus, the precise cause for a message which is being sent cannot be ascertained.

ANNEX H

(to Recommendation Q.931)

Examples of information elements coding

This Annex gives examples on the detailed coding of the following information elements:

– bearer capability information element;

– channel identification information element;

– called/calling party sub-address.

H.1 *Bearer capability information element*

H.1.1 *Coding for speech*

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1
	Bearer Capability Information element identifier							
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	2
Length								
1 Ext.	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	3
	CCITT		Speech					
1 Ext.	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	4
	Circuit mode		64 kbit/s					
1 Ext.	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	5
	Layer 1		G.711 [10] μ-law or					
			0	0	0	1	1	
			G.711 A-law					

H.1.2 *Coding for 3.1 kHz audio*

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	Bearer capability 0	0	0	0	1	0	0 Information element identifier	1
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1 Length	2
1 Ext.	0 CCITT	0	1	0	0 3.1 kHz Audio	0	0	3
1 Ext.	0 Circuit mode	0	1	0	0 64 kbit/s	0	0	4
1 Ext.	0 Layer 1	1	0 0	0 0	0 G.711 [10] μ-law or 0 G.711 A-law	1 1	0 1	5

H.1.3 *Coding for unrestricted digital information*

Type 1: Synchronous 64 kbit/s working

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	Bearer capability 0	0	0	0	1	0	0 Information element identifier	1
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0 Length	2
1 Ext.	0 CCITT	0	0	1	0 Unrestricted digital information	0	0	3
1 Ext	0 Circuit mode	0	1	0	0 64 kbit/s	0	0	4

Type 2: Synchronous rates less than 64 kbit/s with CCITT standardized rate adaption V.110 [7]/X.30 [8]; in-band negotiation not possible.

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	0 Bearer capability / Information element identifier	0	0	0	1	0	0	1
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	2
Length								
1 Ext.	0 CCITT	0	0 Unrestricted digital information	1	0	0	0	3
1 Ext.	0 Circuit mode	0	1 64 kbit/s	0	0	0	0	4
0 Ext.	0 layer 1	1	0 Rate adaptation	0	0	0	1	5
1 Ext.	0 Synch.	0 Negot.	User rate					5a

H.1.4 *Coding for case B X.31 packet mode access connections*

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	0 Bearer capability / Information element identifier	0	0	0	1	0	0	1
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	2
Length								
1 Ext.	0 CCITT	0	0 Unrestricted digital information	1	0	0	0	3
1 Ext.	1 Packet mode	0	0	0	0	0	0	4
1 Ext.	1 Layer 2	0	0 X.25 [5] link level	0	1	1	0	6
1 Ext.	1 Layer 3	1	0 X.25 packet layer	0	1	1	0	7

H.2 *Channel identification information element*

H.2.1 *Basic interface, circuit mode, B-channel*

Example a)

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1
	Channel identification / Information element identifier							
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	2
Length								
1 Ext.	0 Int. id. present	0 Int. type	0 Spare	0 Pref./ Excl.	0 D-ch. id.	0 Ch. sel.	1	3

- Channel B1 preferred.
- Channel is located in same interface which includes the D-channel.

Example b)

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1
	Channel identification / Information element identifier							
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	2
Length								
1 Ext.	0 Int. id. present	0 Int. type	0 Spare	0 Pref./ Excl.	0 D-ch. id.	1 Ch. sel.	1	3

- Any B-channel.

H.2.2 *Primary rate interface, circuit mode, B-channel*

Example a)

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	Channel identification 0	0	1	1	0	0	0 Information element identifier	1
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1 Length	2
1 Ext.	0 Int. id. present	1 Int. type	0 Spare	0 Pref./Excl.	0 D-ch. id.	0 Ch. sel.	1	3
1	0 Coding standard	0	0 No./Map	0 Ch. type/Map type	0	1	1	3.2
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1 Ch. number/Slot map	3.3

- The channel is a B-channel.
- The indicated channel is preferred.
- The channel is located in the same interface which includes the D-channel.
- The channel is identified by the channel number.

Example b)

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
	Channel identification							
0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1
	Information element identifier							
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	2
Length								
1 Ext.	0 Int. id. present	1 Int. type	0 Spare	0 Pref./ Excl.	0 D-ch. id.	0 Ch. sel.	1	3
1	0 Coding standard	0	1 No./Map	0 Ch. type/Map type	0	1	1	3.2
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	3.3.1
Ch. number/Slot map								
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	3.3.2
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	3.3.3

– Same as a) but the channel is identified by slot-map (1544 kbit/s primary rate interface).

Example c)

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
	Channel identification							
0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1
	Information element identifier							
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	2
Length								
1 Ext.	0 Int. id. present	1 Int. type	0 Spare	0 Pref./ Excl.	0 D-ch. id.	1 Ch. sel.	1	3

– Same as a) but the channel may be any channel.

H.2.3 *Primary rate interface, circuit mode, H0-channel*

Example a)

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	Channel identification 0	0	1	1	0	0	0 Information element identifier	1
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1 Length	2
1 Ext.	0 Int. id. present	1 Int. type	0 Spare	0 Pref./Excl.	0 D-ch. id.	0 Ch. sel.	1	3
1	0 Coding standard	0	0 No./Map	0 Ch. type/Map type	1	1	0	3.2
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1 Ch. number/Slot map	3.3

– The channel is a H0-channel.

– The indicated channel is preferred.

– The channel is located in the same interface as the D-channel.

– The channel is identified by the channel number.

Example b)

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	Channel identification 0	0	1	1	0	0	0 Information element identifier	1
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1 Length	2
1 Ext.	0 Int. id. present	1 Int. type	0 Spare	0 Pref./Excl.	0 D-ch. id.	0	1 Ch. sel.	3
1	0	0 Coding standard	1 No./Map	0	1	1	0 Ch. type/Map type	3.2
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0 Ch. number/Slot map	3.3

– As for a) but channel indicated by slot map.

Example c)

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	Channel identification 0 0 1 1 0 0 0 Information element identifier							1
0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1 Length								2
1 Ext.	0 Int. id. present	1 Int. type	0 Spare	0 Pref./ Excl.	0 D-ch. id.	0 1 Ch. sel.		3
1	0 0 Coding standard		1 No./Map	0 0 1 1 Ch. type/Map type				3.2
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 Ch. number/Slot map								3.3.1
0	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	3.3.2
0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	3.3.3

– The channels are B-channels (6 B-channels to form a H0-channel).

– Channels indicated by slot-map (1544 kbit/s primary rate system).

– Otherwise as for a).

Example d)

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	Channel identification 0	0	1	1	0	0	0 Information element identifier	1
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0 Length	2
1 Ext.	1 Int. id. present	1 Int. type	0 Spare	0 Pref./ Excl.	0 D-ch. id.	1 Ch. sel.	1	3
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0 Interface identifier	3.1

– Any channel.

– Any interface (int. id. present = 1 and interface identifier = all "0".

H.3 *Called/calling party sub-address information element*

H.3.1 *Coding of IA5 sub-address digits*

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
0	1	1	1	0	0	0	1	1
	Called party sub-address Information element							
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	2
Length								
1	0	0	0		0	0	0	3
Ext.	NSAP (X.213/ISO 8348 AD2)			Odd/even indication (Note 4)	Spare			
AFI (Note 1)								
0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	4
IA5 character (Note 2)								5
IA5 character								6
IA5 character								7

Note 1 – AFI code 50 (in BCD) indicates that the sub-address consists of IA5 characters (see ISO Standard 8348 AD2) [24].

Note 2 – IA5 character according to CCITT Recommendation T.50 [49]/ ISO 646 [50].

Note 3 – The number of IA5 characters shown above is just an example. There may be up to 19 IA5 characters.

Note 4 – The value of this bit has no significance when the type of sub-address is "NSAP".

ANNEX I

(to Recommendation Q.931)

Use of progress indicators

This Annex describes the use of the different progress indicator values defined in § 4.5.22. Examples of use are given.

Progress indicator No. 1 indicates that interworking with a non-ISDN has occurred within the network or networks through which the call has traversed.

Progress indicator No. 2 indicates that the destination user is not ISDN.

Progress indicator No. 3 indicates that the origination user is not ISDN.

Progress indicator No. 4 indicates that a call which had left the ISDN has returned to the ISDN at the same point it had left due to redirection within the non-ISDN. This progress indicator would be employed when a prior Recommendation Q.931 message resulted in a progress indicator No. 1, *call is not end-to-end ISDN* being delivered to the calling user.

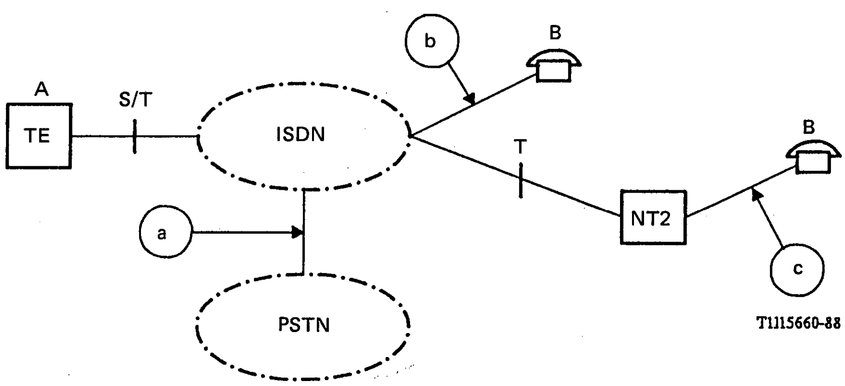
The use of progress indicators Nos. 1, 2 and 3 is exemplified in the following.

Three interworking situations are identified in the figure below:

a) interworking with another network;

b) interworking with a non-ISDN user connected to ISDN;

c) interworking with non-ISDN equipment within the calling or called user's premises.



As regards calls from A the following applies:

case a) – progress indicator No. 1 sent to A;

case b) – progress indicator No. 2 sent to A;

case c) – progress indicator No. 2 sent to A (location sub-field = private network).

As regards calls towards A the following applies:

case a) – progress indicator No. 1 sent to A;

case b) – progress indicator No. 3 sent to A;

case c) – progress indicator No. 3 sent to A (location sub-field = private network).

The use of progress indicator No. 8, *in-band information or appropriate pattern now available*, is described in § 5.

ANNEX J

(to Recommendation Q.931)

Examples of cause value and location for busy condition

This Annex gives examples on the detailed cause value and location to be sent in a Cause information element for the busy condition.

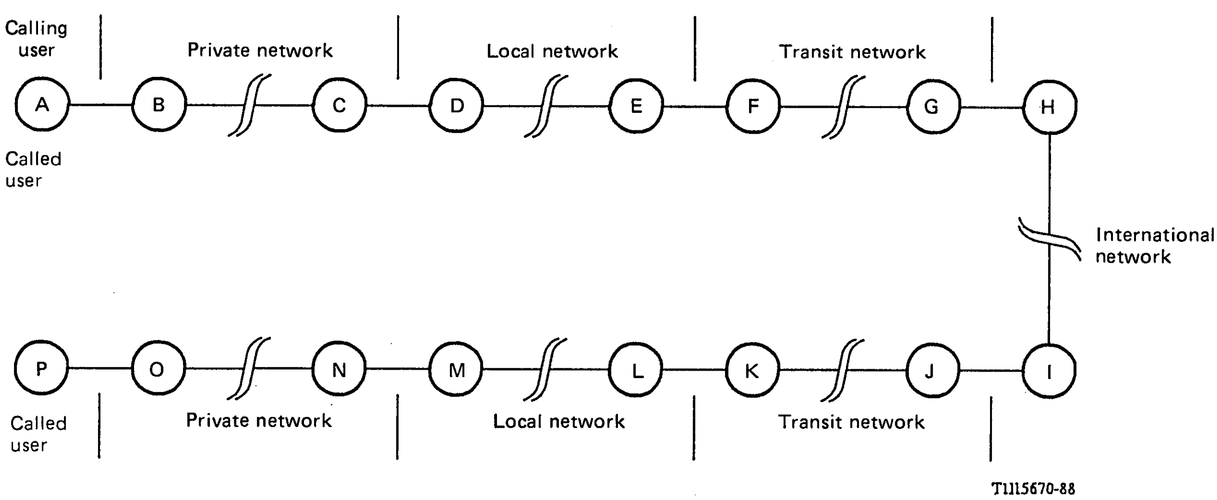
Figure J-1/Q.931 shows the reference configuration which identifies nodes where busy condition may occur and therefore a cause should be generated.

Table J-1/Q.931 shows:

a) a cause value and location to be generated at the point where the busy condition occurs; and

b) a cause value and location to be delivered to the user (indicated as A) for each location (B – P) where the busy condition occurs.

As is indicated in the Table, the cause value is not changed but the location may be changed in the receiving exchange, when the cause value crosses a network boundary.



Note – The interface A-B, C-D, M-N and O-P are assumed to be Q.931.

FIGURE J-1/Q.931

Examples of cause values and location for busy condition

TABLE J-1/Q.931

Location where busy occurs and the cause codings

Location where busy occurs	Cause at the point of generation		Cause received by user A	
B incoming circuit	No. 34 or No. 44	LPN	The same as left	
B outgoing circuit	No. 34	LPN		
C outgoing circuit	No. 34	LPN		
D incoming circuit	No. 34 or No. 44	LN		
D outgoing circuit	No. 34	LN		
E outgoing circuit	No. 34	LN		
F outgoing circuit	No. 34	TN		
G outgoing circuit	No. 34	TN		
H outgoing circuit	No. 34	INTL		
I outgoing circuit	No. 34	INTL		
J outgoing circuit	No. 34	TN	No. 34	TN
K outgoing circuit	No. 34	TN	No. 34	TN
L outgoing circuit	No. 34	LN	No. 34	RLN
M outgoing circuit	No. 17	LN	No. 17	RLN
N incoming circuit	No. 34 or No. 44	LPN	No. 34 or No. 44	RPN
N outgoing circuit	No. 34	LPN	No. 34	RPN
O outgoing circuit	No. 17	LPN	No. 17	RPN
P incoming circuit	No. 34 or No. 44	U	No. 34 or No. 44	U
P call control	No. 17	U	No. 17	U

LPN Private network serving the local user

LN Public network serving the local user

TN Transit network

INTL International transit network

RLN Public network serving the remote user

RPN Private network serving the remote user

U User

Table J-1/Q.931 is for further study.

ANNEX K

(to Recommendation Q.931)

Message segmentation procedures

K.1 *Introduction*

Layer 3 messages that are longer than the length of frames that the data link layer can support may be partitioned into several segments.

Message segmentation shall only be used when the message length exceeds N.201 (defined in Recommendation Q.921 [3]). These procedures are optional and may not be supported by all equipment.

The architectural relationship to other Recommendation Q.931 functions is shown in Figure K-1/Q.931. These procedures apply only within a specific data link connection and do not impact the procedures in operation on other parallel data link connections.

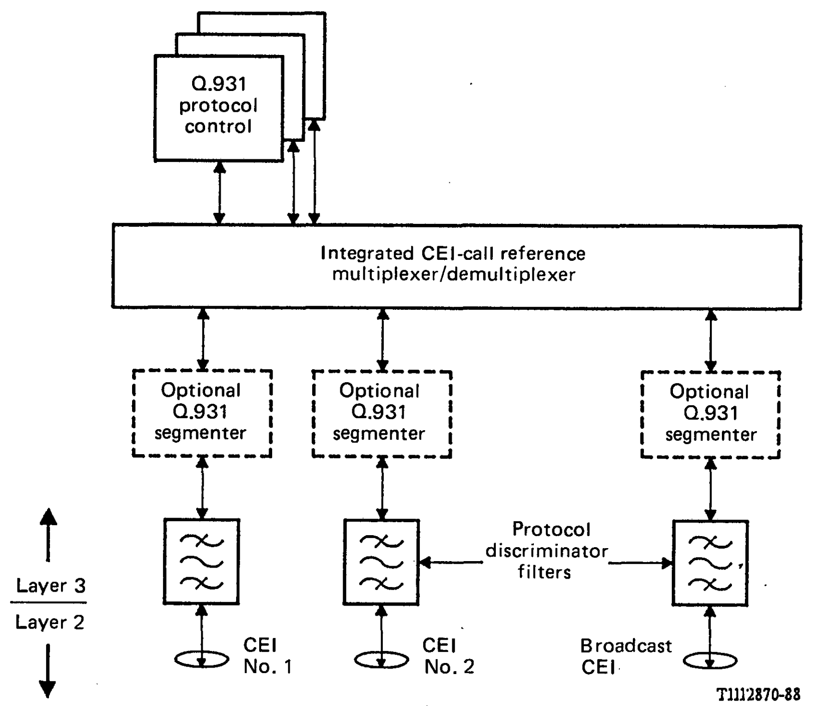


FIGURE K-1/Q.931

Logical architecture containing segmentation function

K.2 *Message segmentation*

The following rules apply when Recommendation Q.931 messages are to be segmented for transmission:

a) the default maximum number of message segments is eight. If the message is too long to be segmented then a local maintenance activity shall be notified;

b) the first message segment shall begin with the protocol discriminator immediately followed by the Call reference, the segment message type, the Segmented message information element, and one or more other information elements;

c) each subsequent message segment shall begin with the protocol discriminator immediately followed by the call reference, the segment message type, the Segmented message information element and one or more other information elements;

d) the first segment indicator field of the Segmented message information element shall be set to indicate the first segment of a segmented message, and not set in any other segment;

e) the number of segments remaining field of the Segmented message information element shall be set to indicate how many more segments are to be sent, see Figure K-2/Q.931;

f) the Message type information element shall be coded to indicate a segment message, and the Segmented message information element shall indicate the message type of the original message;

g) the transmission of a segmented message may be aborted by: sending a message or message segment containing a different call reference; sending a message with the message type not coded "segment message" or stopping the transmission of subsequent message segments pertaining to the same message;

h) once the first segment has been transmitted on a particular data link connection, then all remaining segments of that message shall be sent (in order) before any other message (segmented or not) for any other call reference is sent on that data link connection;

i) messages shall be segmented only at information element boundaries; i.e., no information element shall be separated into two segments;

j) the information element order as a whole is preserved for the Segmented message regardless of segment boundary.

K.3 *Reassembly of segmented messages*

The following rules apply to the receipt and reassembly of segmented Q.931 messages:

a) a reassembly function, on receiving a message segment containing the Segmented message information element with the first segment indicator indicating "first message", and containing the call reference and message type (coded as "segment message" shall enter the Receiving Segmented Message state and accumulate message segments;

b) timer T314, shall be initialized or reinitialized upon receipt of a message segment containing the Segmented message information element with a non-zero number of segments remaining field. Timer T314 shall be stopped upon receipt of the last segment; i.e., a message segment containing the segmented message information element with the number of segments remaining field coded zero. Timer T314 shall not be initialized or reinitialized if error procedures as identified in rules below are initiated;

c) a reassembly function receiving a message segment with a segmented message information element should wait for receipt of the last message segment pertaining to the same message i.e., containing the segmented message information element with the number of segments remaining field coded zero before delivering the message for further Q.931 processing as specified in § 5.8. The reassembly function shall enter the Null state;

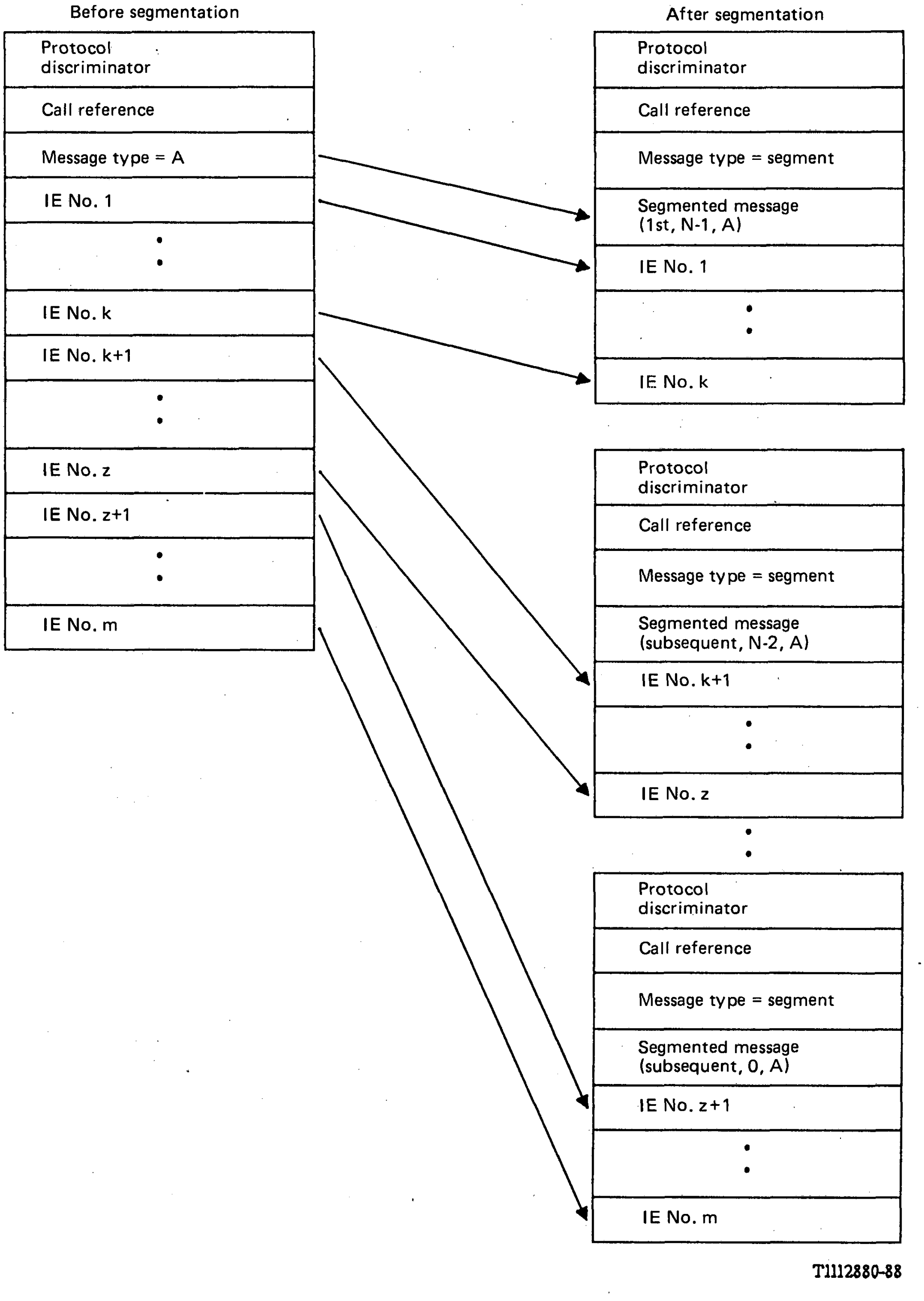
d) upon expiry of timer T314, the reassembly function shall: discard all segments of this message so far received; notify the layer 3 management entity for the data link connection that message segments have been lost; and enter the Null state.

   Note – Subsequent message segments relating to the same message shall be discarded according to rule f).

e) a reassembly function, upon receiving eight message segments of the same segmented message without receiving a message segment with a number of segments remaining field of the Segmented message information element coded zero, shall: discard all message segments so far received; notify the layer 3 management entity for the data link connection that messages have been discarded; and enter the Null state;

   Note – Subsequent message segments relating to the same message shall be discarded according to rule f).

f) a reassembly function, on receiving a message segment containing a Segmented message information element, but with no call reference or Message type information element, while in the Null state shall discard that message segment and remain in the Null state;



IE information element

FIGURE K-2/Q.931

Relation between message and segments

g) a reassembly function, on receiving a message segment containing a Segmented message information element, while in the Receiving Segmented Message state with the number of segments remaining field that is not decremented from the number of segments remaining field in the Segmented message information element of the previous message segment, shall discard all segments of this message so far received; and enter the Null state;

   Note – Subsequent message segments relating to the same message shall be discarded according to rule f).

h) if there is a DL_RELEASE_INDICATION primitive or DL_ESTABLISH_INDICATION primitive received while in the Receiving Segmented Message state, the reassembly function shall: discard all received message segments so far received; forward the DL_RELEASE_INDICATION primitive or DL_ESTABLISH_INDICATION primitive for further Q.931 processing, and enter the null state;

i) a reassembly function, upon receiving a message segment with the first segment indicator of the Segmented message information element indicating "subsequent", while in the Null state, shall: discard that message segment; and remain in the Null state.

Block diagram

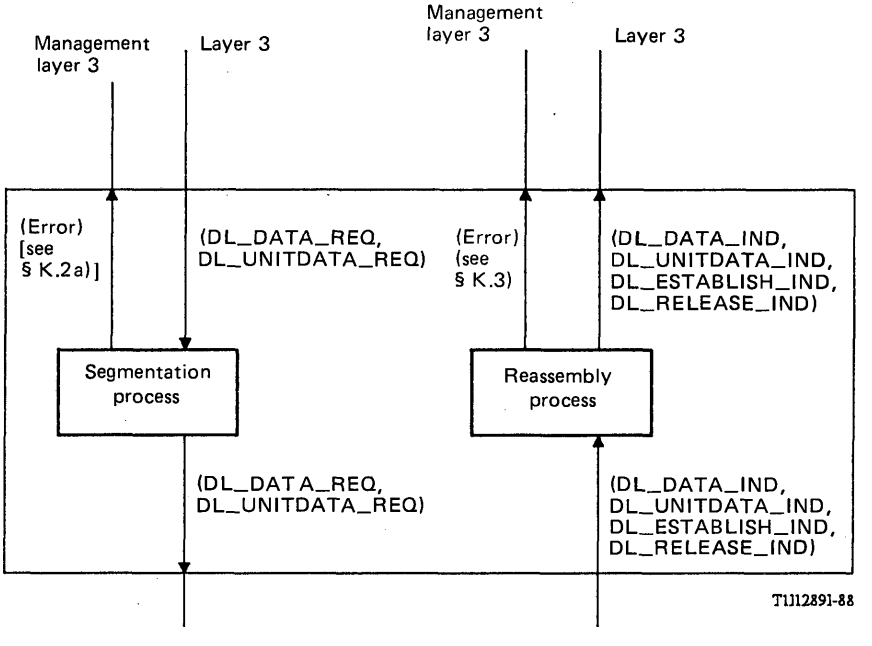


FIGURE K-3/Q.931

Segmentation functional interaction diagram

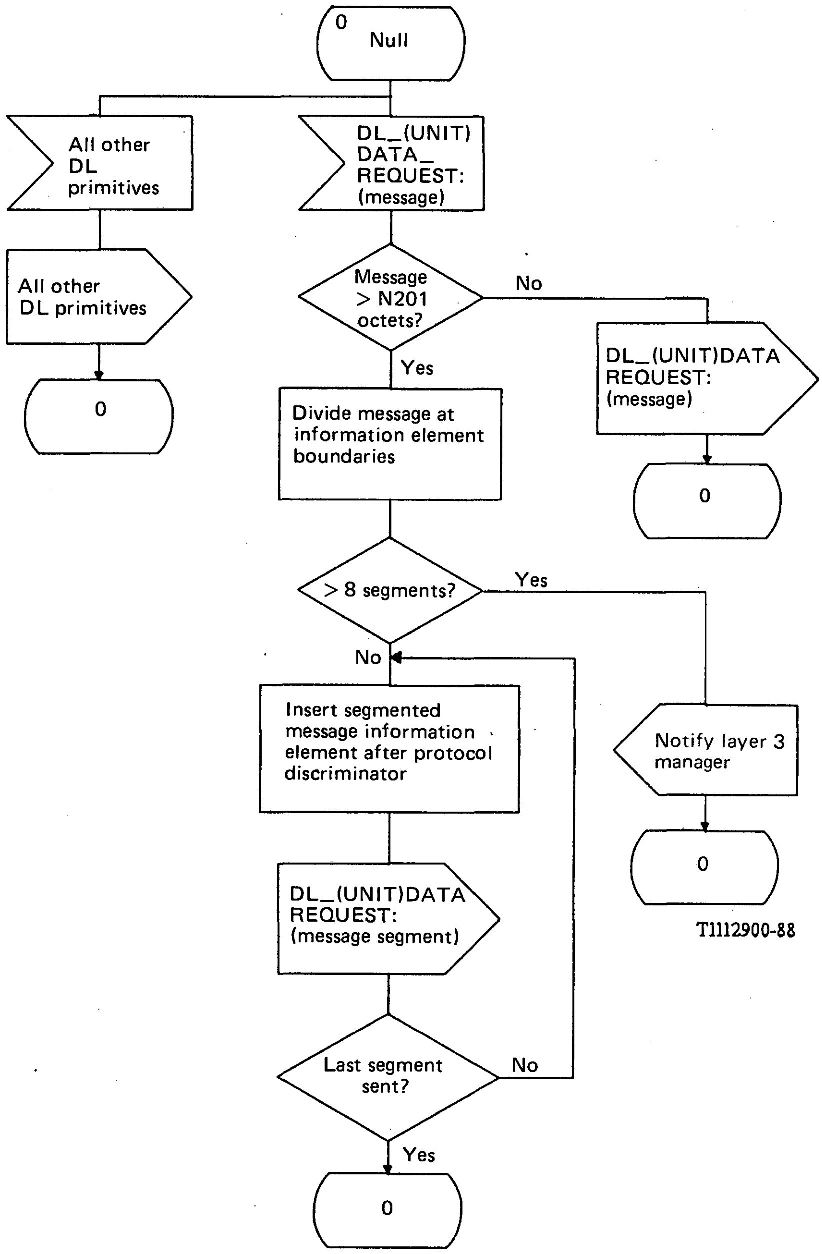


FIGURE K-4/Q.931

Message segmenter SDL

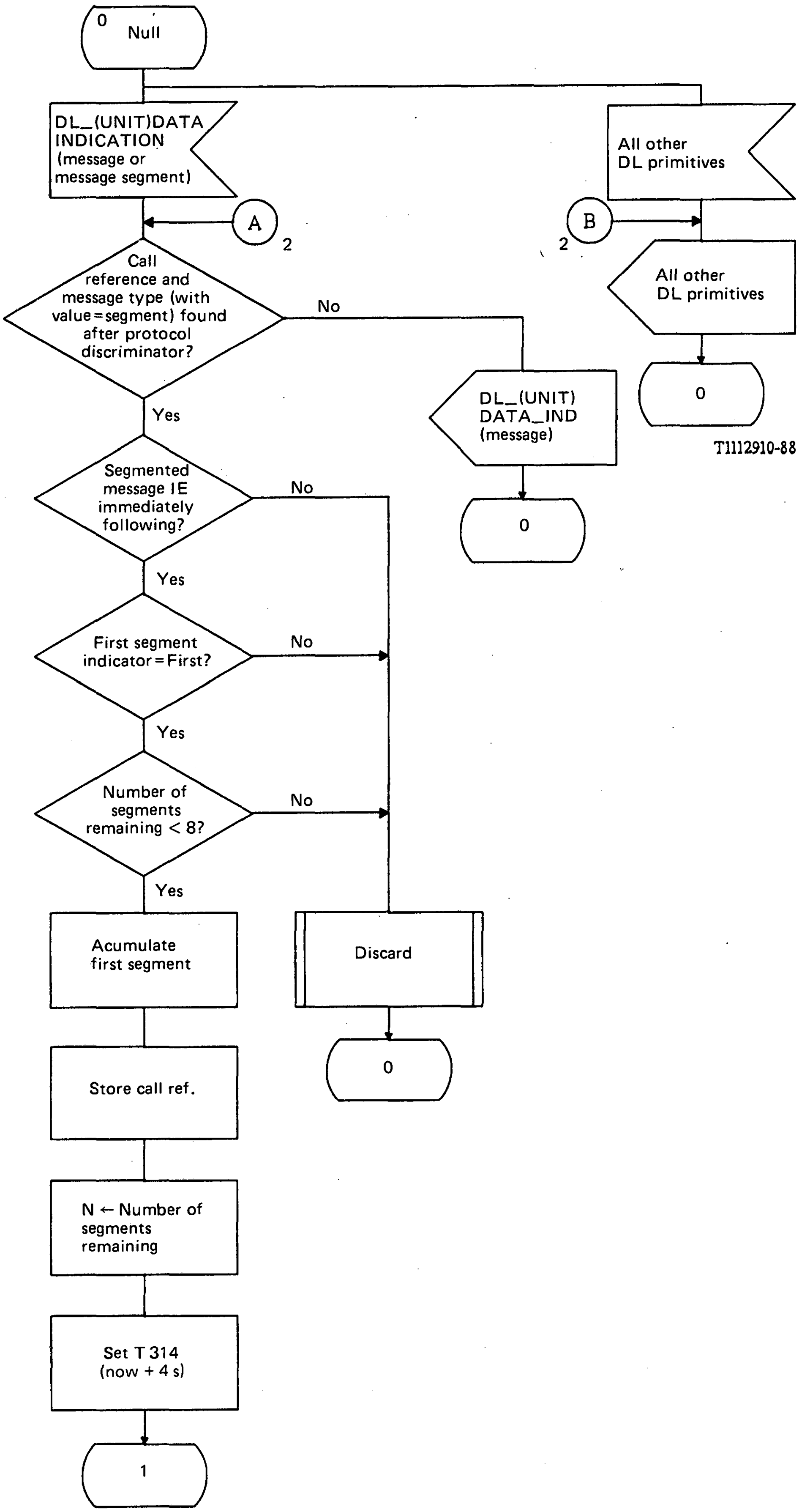


FIGURE K-5/Q.931 (Sheet 1 of 3)

Message reassembler SDL

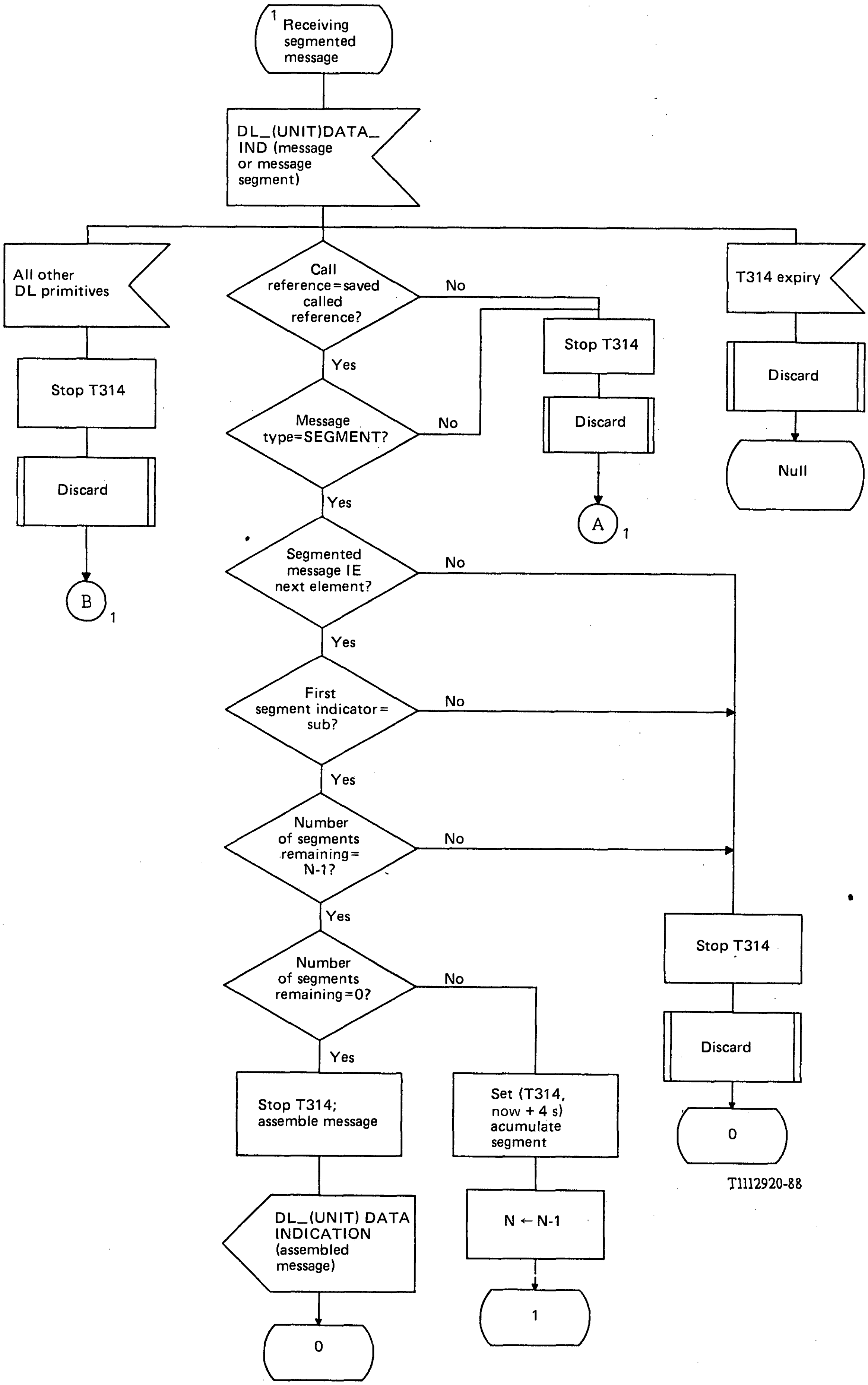


FIGURE K-5/Q.931 (Sheet 2 of 3)

Message reassembler SDL

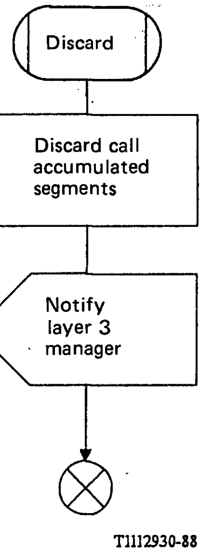


FIGURE K-5/Q.931 (Sheet 3 of 3)

Message reassembler SDL

ANNEX L

(to Recommendation Q.931)

Low layer information coding principles

L.1 *Purpose*

This Annex describes principles that shall be used when the calling user specifies information during call setup regarding low layer capabilities required in the network and by the destination terminal.

Note – In this context and throughout this Annex the term "called user" is the end point entity which is explicitly addressed. This may be an addressed interworking unit (IWU) (see I.500-Series Recommendations [51] and X.31 [14] case A).

L.2 *Principles*

L.2.1 *Definitions of types of information*

There are three different types of information that the calling ISDN user may specify during call setup to identify low layer capabilities needed in the network and by the destination terminal:

a) **type I information** is information about the calling terminal which is only used at the destination end to allow a decision regarding terminal compatibility. An example would be modem type. This information is encoded in octets 5 to 7 of the Low layer compatibility information element;

b) **type II information** is the selection of bearer service from the choices of bearer services offered by the network to which the calling user is connected. This type of information is present even if no interworking occurs. An example is unrestricted digital information (UDI). This information is coded in:

   i) octets 3 and 4 (including octets 4a and 4b if necessary) of the Bearer capability information element when the transfer mode required by the calling user is circuit mode,

   ii) octets 3, 4, 6 and 7 (including 4a and 4b if necessary) of the Bearer capability information element when the transfer mode required by the calling user is packet mode;

c) **type III information** is information about the terminal or intended call which is used to decide destination terminal compatibility and possibly to facilitate interworking with other ISDNs or other dedicated networks. An example is A-law encoding. This information is encoded in octet 5 of the Bearer capability information element.

L.2.2 *Examination by network*

Type I information is user-to-user (i.e. not examined by network) while both types II and III should be available for examination by the destination user and the network. The Low layer compatibility information element is an information element which is not examined by the network while the Bearer capability information element is an information element which is examined by the user and the network.

L.2.3 *Location of type I information*

Type I information (i.e. terminal information only significant to the called user) shall, when used, be included in the Low layer compatibility information element.

L.2.4 *Location of types II and III information*

Type II (i.e. bearer selection) information shall be included in the Bearer capability information element. Type III information, when used, is included in the Bearer capability information element. The network may use and modify the information (e.g. to provide interworking). The rationale for the user including some terminal related information in the type III information (interworking related) is shown by the following example.

Normally with UDI, the rate adaption technique chosen is related to the terminal. The specification of a particular rate adaption scheme with a UDI bearer service could allow a compatibility decision by the destination terminal in a purely ISDN situation. However, it could also conceivably be used to allow interworking with a PSTN, assuming that the appropriate functions (i.e., data extraction, modem pool) are available at the interworking unit.

If the rate adaption information is carried in the Low layer compatibility information element, and not in the Bearer capability information element, then interworking by the network providing the bearer capability would not be possible. However, if the rate adaption information is carried in the Bearer capability information element, interworking would be possible.

Hence, there is some terminal related information which may be considered interworking related. The consequence for the calling user of not including such terminal related information in the Bearer capability information element is that the call may not be completed if an interworking situation is encountered.

L.2.5 *Relationship between Bearer capability and Low layer compatibility information elements*

There shall be no contradiction of information between the Low layer compatibility and the Bearer capability at the originating side. However, as some Bearer capability code points may be modified during the transport of the call, this principle implies that there should be minimal duplication of information between Bearer capability information element and Low layer compatibility information element.

Note – If as a result of duplication, a contradiction occurs between the Bearer capability information element and the Low layer compatibility information element at the terminating side, the receiving entity shall ignore the conflicting information in the Low layer compatibility information element.

The following example, dealing with the specification of the encoding scheme used by the terminal for the speech or 3.1 kHz audio bearer services, shows the consequences of duplication.

It is expected that some ISDNs will support only A-law and some only μ-law, with conversion provided by the μ-law network. (See Recommendation G.711.) If the encoding scheme is specified in both the Bearer capability information element and the Low layer compatibility information element, interworking between two ISDNs might require a change of the user information layer 1 protocol in the Bearer capability information element (e.g. from A-law to μ-law), while the encoding scheme specified in the Low layer compatibility information element would presumably be forwarded to the destination unchanged. Since, to determine compatibility, the destination terminal examines both the Bearer capability information element and the Low layer compatibility information element, it would receive conflicting information regarding the encoding scheme used.

L.3 *Information classification*

The following are the examples of classifying low layer information currently identified. This information is provided to facilitate understanding of the characteristics of types II and III information.

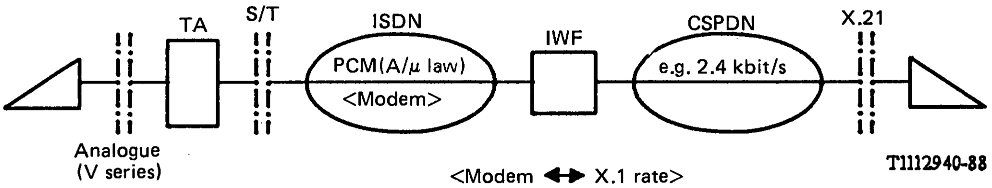
L.3.1 *Examples for speech and 3.1 kHz audio bearer services*

a) Type II information (common to all applications using these bearer services):
   - information transfer capability = speech or 3.1 kHz audio;
   - information transfer mode = circuit;
   - information transfer rate = 64 kbit/s;
   - user information layer 1 protocol = A/μ law.

b) Type III information for interworking with CSPDN (3.1 kHz audio applications are assumed) – Figure L-1/Q.931:
   - user information layer 1 protocol = rate adaption + user rate (Note);

   Note – Only those profiles conforming to CCITT standardized rate adaption are allowed when only the above information is provided.

c) Type III information for interworking with PSTN:
   i) voice applications: Figure L-2/Q.931:
      - user information layer 1 protocol = A/μ law;
   ii) voice band data applications: Figure L-3/Q.931:
      - user information layer 1 protocol = A/μ law.



Note – Is user rate sufficient to specify the type of modem at IWF?

FIGURE L-1/Q.931

BC = 3.1 kHz audio, voice band data → CSPDN

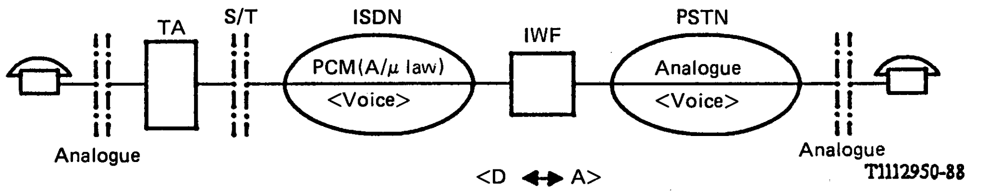


FIGURE L-2/Q.931

BC = 3.1 kHz audio, voice → PSTN

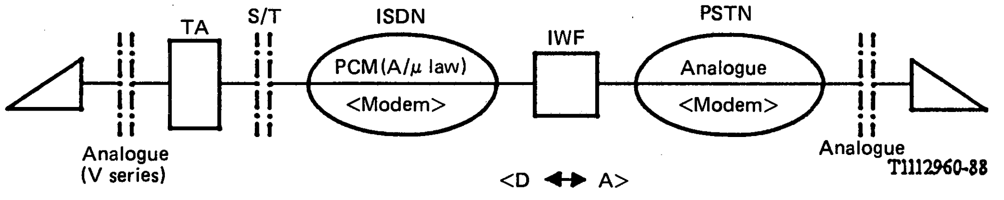


FIGURE L-3/Q.931

BC = 3.1 kHz audio, voice band data → PSTN

L.3.2 *Examples for 64 kbit/s UDI circuit mode bearer service*

a) Type II information (common):
   - information transfer capability = unrestricted digital information;
   - information transfer mode = circuit;
   - information transfer rate = 64 kbit/s.

b) Type III information for interworking with PSPDN (packet applications): Figure L-4/Q.931:
   - no type III information is required.

c) Type III information for interworking with PSTN:
   i) voice applications: Figure L-5/Q.931:
      - no type III information is required;
   ii) rate-adapted data applications: Figure L-6/Q.931
      - no type III information is required.

d) Type III information for interworking with PSTN with end-to-end digital connectivity (data applications) Figure L-7/Q.931:
   - user information layer 1 protocol = rate adaption + user rate (Note).

   Note – The profile described in I.463 [52] is allowed.

L.3.3 *Examples for ISDN virtual-circuit bearer service*

a) Type II information (common):
   - information transfer capability = unrestricted digital information;
   - information transfer mode = packet;
   - information transfer rate = – – –;

– user information layer 1 protocol = rate adaption + user rate (Note 1);
– user information layer 2 protocol = LAPB (Note 2);
– user information layer 3 protocol = X.25 [5] packet layer protocol (Note 2).

Note 1 – This parameter is included only when user packet information flow is rate adapted. Only those profiles conforming to X.31 are allowed when only the above information is provided for layer 1 protocol.

Note 2 – Only those profiles conforming to X.31 are used. See Figures L-8/Q.931, L-9/Q.931 and L-10/Q.931.

b) Type III information for interworking with PSPDN, CSPDN, PSTN:
– no type III information is necessary.

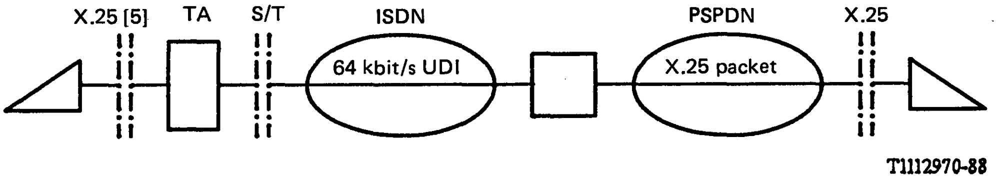


FIGURE L-4/Q.931

BC = 64 kbit/s UDI, packet application → PSPDN

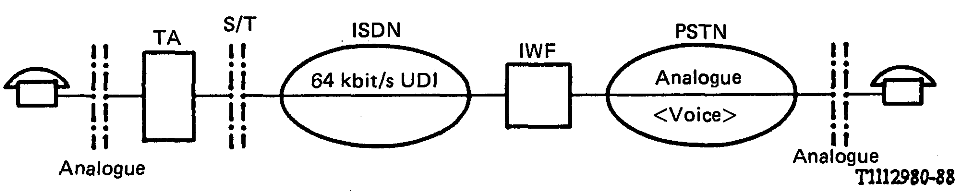


FIGURE L-5/Q.931

BC = 64 kbit/s UDI, voice → PSTN

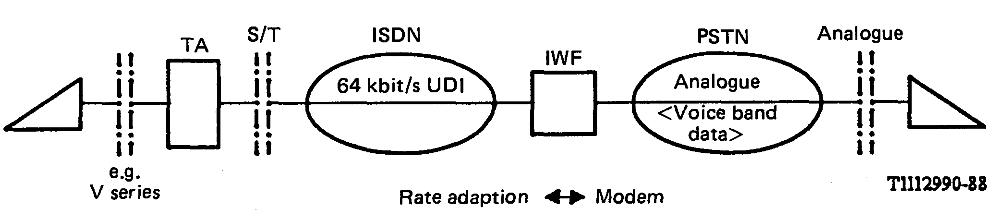


FIGURE L-6/Q.931

BC = 64 kbit/s UDI, rate adapted data → PSTN

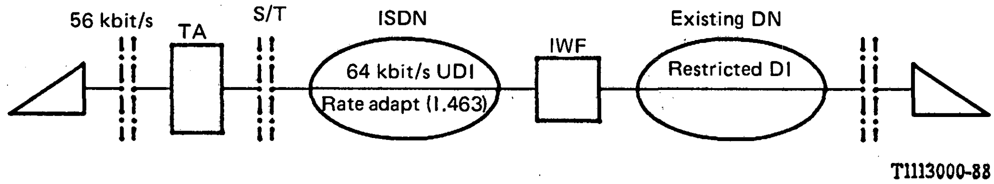


FIGURE L-7/Q.931

BC = 64 kbit/s UDI, → existing digital network

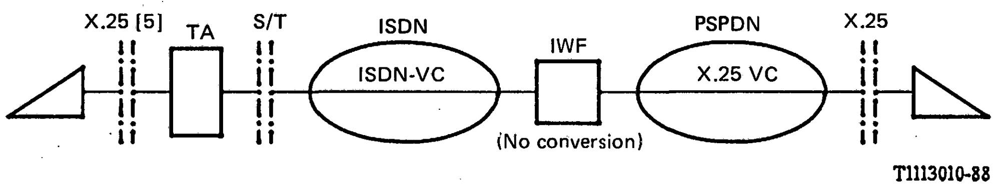


FIGURE L-8/Q.931

BC = ISDN virtual circuit (VC) → PSPDN

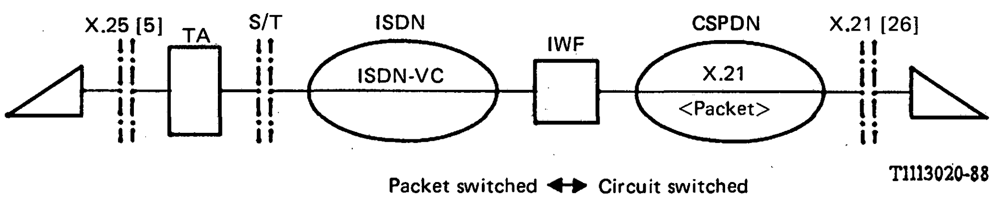


FIGURE L-9/Q.931

BC = ISDN virtual circuit (VC) → CSPDN

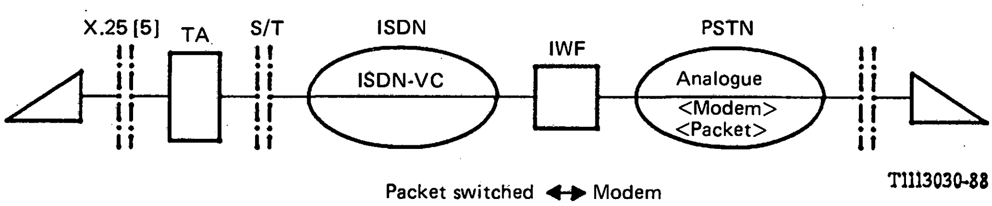


FIGURE L-10/Q.931

BC = ISDN virtual circuit (VC) → PSTN

L.4 *Scenarios outside the scope of ISDN standardization*

L.4.1 *Examples for speech and 3.1 kHz audio bearer services*

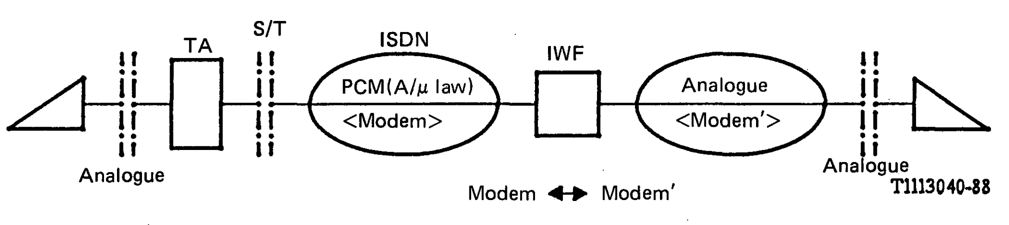
a) Type II information (common):
   - information transfer capability = speech or 3.1 kHz audio;
   - information transfer mode = circuit;
   - information transfer rate = 64 kbit/s;
   - user information layer 1 protocol = A/μ law.

b) Type III information for interworking with PSTN – voice band data applications – modem type conversion occurs: Figure L-11/Q.931:
   - user information layer 1 protocol = rate adaption + user rate + other attributes (if required).

L.4.2 *Examples for 64 kbit/s UDI circuit mode bearer services*

a) Type II information (common):
   - information transfer capability = unrestricted digital information;
   - information transfer mode = circuit;
   - information transfer rate = 64 kbit/s.

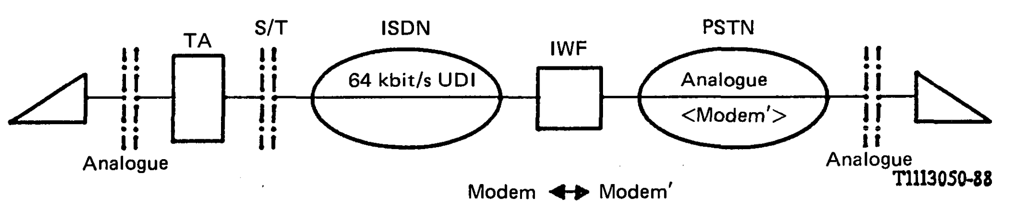
b) Type III information for interworking with PSTN – voice band data applications – Figure L-12/Q.931:
   - no type III information is required.



Note – This scenario seems to be a part of PSTN services.

FIGURE L-11/Q.931

BC = 3.1 kHz audio, voice band → PSTN



Note – This scenario seems to be a combination of interworking with PSTN and a part of PSTN services.

FIGURE L-12/Q.931

BC = 64 kbit/s UDI, voice-band data → PSTN

ANNEX M

(to Recommendation Q.931)

Low layer compatibility negotiation

This Annex describes an additional low layer compatibility checking procedure that may be applied by the user. However, this is a network option and may not be supported by all networks.

M.1 *General*

The purpose of the Low layer compatibility information element is to provide a means which should be used for compatibility checking by an addressed entity (e.g., a remote user or an interworking unit or high layer function network node addressed by the calling user). The Low layer compatibility information element is transferred transparently by an ISDN between the call originating entity (e.g., the caller user) and the addressed entity.

The user information protocol fields of the Low layer compatibility information element indicate the low layer attributes at the call originating entity and the addressed entity. This information is not interpreted by the ISDN and therefore the bearer capability provided by the ISDN is not affected by this information. The call originating entity and the addressed entity may modify the low layer attributes by the negotiation described below if that can be supported by the bearer capability actually provided by the ISDN.

The Low layer compatibility information element is coded according to § 4.5.18.

M.2 *Low layer compatibility notification to the called user*

When the calling user wishes to notify the called user of any information transfer attribute (contained octet 3 to 4b) different from the ones contained in the Bearer capability information element or of any low layer protocol to be used during the call and not already identified in the Bearer capability information element, then the calling user shall include a Low layer compatibility information element in the SETUP message; this element is conveyed by the network and delivered to the called user. However, if the network is unable to convey this information element, it shall act as described in § 5.8.7.1 (unrecognized information element).

M.3 *Low layer compatibility negotiation between users*

If the negotiation indicator (see § 4.5) of the Low layer compatibility information element included in the SETUP message is set to "Out-band LLC negotiation allowed", then one or more of the low layer protocol attribute(s) may be negotiated. In this case, the called user responding positively to the call may include a Low layer compatibility information element in the CONNECT message. This element will be conveyed transparently by the network and delivered to the calling user in the CONNECT message.

Note – Only the low layer protocol attributes may be negotiated and therefore the information transfer attributes (octets 3 to 4), if returned by the called user in the CONNECT message, will be identical to the ones received in the Low layer compatibility information element contained in the SETUP message.

If, for any reason, the network is unable to convey this information element, it shall act as described in § 5.8.7.1 (unrecognized information element). Users are advised not to include in the Low layer compatibility information element sent from the called user to the calling user, attributes which would have the same value as the ones contained in the Low layer compatibility information element received from the calling party.

M.4 *Low layer compatibility negotiation options*

The Low layer compatibility information element contains a negotiation indicator which may have one of the following values:

a) low layer compatibility negotiation not allowed (default): then the called user shall not invoke negotiation;

b) out-band low layer compatibility negotiation allowed: the called user may then invoke low layer compatibility negotiation, as needed, according to § M.3;

c) in-band negotiation allowed: the called user may then invoke low layer compatibility negotiation using the supported in-band negotiation, according to service or application requirements;

d) either in-band or out-band negotiation allowed: the called user may invoke one or the other low layer compatibility negotiation procedures according to its requirements. If the call is end-to-end ISDN, and the out-band low layer compatibility negotiation is supported by both parties, then this method of negotiation is preferred.

ANNEX N

(to Recommendation Q.931)

Procedures for establishment of bearer connection prior to call acceptance

N.1 *General*

For some applications, it is desirable to allow the completion of the transmission path associated with a bearer service prior to receiving call acceptance. In particular, the completion of the backward direction of the transmission path prior to receipt of a CONNECT message from the called user may be desirable to:

a) allow the called user to provide internally-generated tones and announcements that are sent in-band to the calling user prior to answer by the called user; or

b) avoid speech clipping on connections involving an NT2 where delays may occur in relaying the answer indication within the called user equipment.

The procedures described in this Annex are only applicable to the speech and 3.1 kHz audio bearer services.

Note – The definition of necessary mechanisms (if any) with Signalling System No. 7 to avoid any potential undesirable charging implications remains for further study.

N.2 *Procedures*

As a network option, completion of the transmission path prior to receipt of a call acceptance indication may be provided in one of three ways:

a) on completion of successful channel negotiation at the destination interface; or

b) on receipt of a message containing an indication that in-band information is being provided; or

c) not at all: i.e., this option is not supported by the network.

When criteria a) is used to determine that transmission path should be established, the network shall connect, as a minimum, the backward side of the transmission path upon receipt of either a CALL PROCEEDING message or an ALERTING message containing an acceptable B-channel indication.

When criteria b) is used to establish the transmission path, the network shall connect, as a minimum, the backward side of the transmission path upon receipt of either an ALERTING message or a PROGRESS message containing progress indicator No. 8, *in-band information or appropriate pattern now available*, or progress indicator No. 1, *call is not end-to-end ISDN; further call progress information may be available in-band*, respectively.

The network providing the early completion of the transmission path in the backward direction may choose to support only one of methods a) or b) above. The network may choose to further restrict which message(s) will result in establishment of the transmission path. These restrictions may be imposed on a per interface basis to provide an administrative means for limiting potential misuse of the early connection capabilities.

ANNEX O

(to Recommendation Q.931)

Optional procedures for bearer service change

The procedure for bearer service change may not be provided on all networks. On those networks that support it, a user may use this procedure after making a suitable subscription-time arrangement.

Note 1 – The definition of necessary mechanisms (if any) within Signalling System No. 7 to support this procedure, including any undesirable charging implications, is for further study.

When a bearer service requested in an originator's SETUP message cannot be provided by the network, the network would reject the call or, under some circumstances, the network may change the bearer service and provide bearer service change notification. These procedures are currently applicable only to a change from 64 kbit/s unrestricted to 64 kbit/s restricted, and from 64 kbit/s restricted to 64 kbit/s restricted with rate adaption.

Note 2 – During an interim period some networks may only support restricted 64 kbit/s digital information transfer capability, i.e., information transfer capability solely restricted by the requirement that the all-zero octet is not allowed. For interworking the values given in Appendix I of Recommendation I.340 should apply. The interworking functions have to be provided in the network restricted capability. The ISDN with 64 kbit/s transfer capabilities will not be offered by this interworking, other than by conveying the appropriate signalling message to or from the ISDN terminal.

Note 3 – The possibility of changing from 3.1 kHz audio to speech is for further study.

Up to three Bearer capability information elements may be present in the SETUP message from the originating user, corresponding to the allowed bearer service modifications given above. The Bearer capability information element shall be immediately preceded by the Repeat indicator information element with the meaning field specifying *Prioritized list for selecting one possibility*. Hence, the order of Bearer capability information elements would indicate order of bearer service preference.

If the SETUP message contains Bearer capability information elements not agreeing with any of the permissible ordered combinations listed above, the network will reject the call attempt.

After sending a CALL PROCEEDING message, when the originating network or terminating premises equipment determines that the preferred bearer service cannot be provided, it sends a NOTIFY message toward the call orginator. The NOTIFY message contains a Notification indicator information element with a coding which indicates to the originating party the change in bearer service and also contains a Bearer capability information element specifying the attributes of the new bearer service.

Receipt of the NOTIFY message is not acknowledged. The call originator may allow the call to continue or may initiate call clearing in accordance with § 5.

APPENDIX I

(to Recommendation Q.931)

Usage of cause values

Table I-2/Q.931 indicates the usage of cause values within Recommendation Q.931. Other usage may be provided within other Recommendations, e.g., Q.700-Series and Q.699. Other causes may also be used by Q.931 entities where this is not precluded by the procedures defined elsewhere in Q.931.

Table I-1/Q.931 defines the key for the location of generation in Table I-2/Q.931. For more precise usage of the location codes in the cause information element, see Annex J/Q.931.

TABLE I-1/Q.931

Key for the location of the generation in Table I-2/Q.931

LU	Local user
LN	Local network
TN	Transit network
RN	Remote network
RU	Remote user
LPE	Local peer entity (for symmetrical operation, see Annex D/Q.931)

The following abbreviations to message types are used in Table I-2/Q.931

CON CON	CONGESTION CONTROL
DISC	DISCONNECT
REL	RELEASE
REL COM	RELEASE COMPLETE
RES REJ	RESUME REJECT
STAT	STATUS
SUSP REJ	SUSPEND REJECT

TABLE I-2/Q.931

Usage of cause values

Cause No.	Class	Value	Cause name	Diagnostics	Section cross-reference	Typical location of generation	Typical carrying message as identified by receiving side	
							At remote interface	At local interface
1	000	0001	Unassigned (unallocated) number	Condition	5.1.4	LN		REL COM DISC
					5.2.4	RU	REL COM DISC	
2	000	0010	No route to specified transit network	Transit network identity/network specific facilities info. elements	C.2	TN		DISC
					E.3	LN		REL COM
3	000	0011	No route to destination	Condition	5.1.4	LN		DISC REL COM
					5.2.4	RU	REL COM DISC	DISC
6	000	0110	Channel unacceptable	–	5.2.3.1 c) 5.3.2 d) 6.2.2.3.1	LN		REL
7	000	0111	Call awarded and being delivered in an established channel	–	6.2.2.3.1	LN		REL
16	001	0000	Normal call clearing	Condition		RU	DISC	DISC
17	001	0001	User busy	–	5.2.5.1 5.2.5.4 b)	RU	REL COM	DISC
					No procedure	RN		DISC

TABLE I-2/Q.931 *(cont.)*

Cause No.	Class	Value	Cause name	Diagnostics	Section cross-reference	Typical location of generation	Typical carrying message as identified by receiving side	
							At remote interface	At local interface
18	001	0010	No user responding	–	5.2.5.3	RN		DISC
19	001	0011	User alerting, no answer	–	5.2.5.3	RN		DISC
21	001	0101	Call rejected	Condition: user supplied diagnostic	5.2.5.1 5.2.5.4 b)	RU	REL COM.	DISC
22	001	0110	Number changed	New destination number	5.1.4	LN		DISC REL COM
					5.2.4	RU	REL COM DISC	DISC
26	001	1010	Non-selected user clearing	–	5.3.2 b) 6.2.2.3.1	LN		REL
27	001	1011	Destination out of order	–	5.8.9	RN		DISC
28	001	1100	Invalid number format (incomplete number)	–		LN		REL + DISC COM
					5.2.4	RU	DISC REL COM	DISC
					5.1.5.2	LN		DISC
					5.2.4	RN		DISC
					5.1.4	LN		DISC REL COM

TABLE I-2/Q.931 *(cont.)*

Cause No.	Class	Value	Cause name	Diagnostics	Section cross-reference	Typical location of generation	Typical carrying message as identified by receiving side	
							At remote interface	At local interface
29	011	1101	Facility rejected	Facility identification	No procedure in Q.931	LN		REL COM DISC
						RN		DISC
						RU	REL COM DISC	
30	001	1110	Response to STATUS ENQUIRY	–	5.8.10	LU, LN		STAT
31	001	1111	Normal, unspecified	–	5.8.4	RN		REL COM DISC
34	010	0010	No circuit/channel available	–	5.1.1 5.1.2	LN		REL COM
					5.2.3.1 b) 5.2.3.1 e) 5.2.3.2 6.2.2.3.1	RU	REL COM.	DISC
					C.2	LN	REL COM, DISC	REL COM, DISC
					C.2	TN		DISC
					D.1.1 e) D.3 b)	LPE		REL COM
38	010	0110	Network out of order	–	No procedure			

TABLE I-2/Q.931 *(cont.)*

Cause No.	Class	Value	Cause name	Diagnostics	Section cross-reference	Typical location of generation	Typical carrying message as identified by receiving side	
							At remote interface	At local interface
41	010	1001	Temporary failure	–	5.8.8	LU, LN		DISC
					5.8.10	LN, RU, RN	DISC	DISC
42	010	1010	Switching equipment congestion	–	No procedure			REL REL COM
43	010	1011	Access information discarded	Discarded into element identifier(s)	7.1.5.7	RU, LN, RU		CON CON
					7.1.6.1	LN		STAT
					5.8.7.2	LN, LU		STAT
44	010	1100	Requested circuit/channel not available	–	5.1.2	LN		REL COM
					5.2.3.1 e) 5.2.3.2 6.2.3.3.1	RU	REL COM.	DISC
					D.1.1 e)			REL COM
47	010	1111	Resource unavailable, unspecified	–	No procedure			
49	011	0001	Quality of service unavailable	Condition	6			REL REL COM
50	011	0010	Requested facility not subscribed	Facility identification	7.1.3.6	RU	DISC REL COM	DISC
					7.1.4.3 7.1.5.3	RN		DISC
					7.1.7.4	LN		REL COM

TABLE I-2/Q.931 *(cont.)*

Cause No.	Class	Value	Cause name	Diagnostics	Section cross-reference	Typical location of generation	Typical carrying message as identified by receiving side	
							At remote interface	At local interface
57	011	1001	Bearer capability not authorized	Attributes of bearer capability	5.1.5.2	LN		DISC REL COM
					7.2.2	LN		REL REL COM
58	011	1010	Bearer capability not presently available	Attributes of bearer capability	5.1.5.2	LN		DISC REL COM
					7.2.2	LN		REL REL COM
63	011	1111	Service or option not available, unspecified	–	5.1.5.2	LN		DISC REL COM
65	100	0001	Bearer capability not implemented	Attributes of bearer capability	5.1.5.2	LN		DISC REL COM
					6.1	LN		REL COM
66	100	0010	Channel type not implemented	Channel type	No procedure			
69	100	0101	Resquested facility not implemented	Facility identification	7.1.3.6	RU	DISC REL COM	DISC
					7.1.4.3 7.1.5.3	RN		REL DISC
					7.1.7.4	LN		REL REL COM

TABLE I-2/Q.931 *(cont.)*

Cause No.	Class	Value	Cause name	Diagnostics	Section cross-reference	Typical location of generation	Typical carrying message as identified by receiving side	
							At remote interface	At local interface
70	100	0110	Only restricted digital information bearer capability is available	–	No procedure (network dependent option)			
79	100	1111	Service or option not implemented, unspecified					
81	101	0001	Invalid call reference value	–	5.8.3.2 a)	LU, LN		REL REL COM
					5.8.3.2 b)	LU, LN		REL COM
					5.8.3.2 f)	LU, LN		STAT
82	101	0010	Identified channel does not exist	Channel identity	No procedure			REL COM
83	101	0011	A suspended call exists, but this call identity does not	–	5.6.5	LN		RES REJ
84	101	0100	Call identity in use	–	5.6.3	LN		SUSP REJ
85	101	0101	No call suspended	–	5.6.5	LN		RES REJ
86	101	0110	Call having the requested call identity has been cleared		5.6.5	LN		RES REJ

TABLE I-2/Q.931 *(cont.)*

Cause No.	Class	Value	Cause name	Diagnostics	Section cross-reference	Typical location of generation	Typical carrying message as identified by receiving side	
							At remote interface	At local interface
88	101	0111	Incompatible destination	Incompatible parameter	5.2.2 5.2.5.1 5.2.5.3 a) B.3.2 B.3.3	RU	REL COM	DISC
91	101	1011	Invalid transit network selection	–	C.2	TN		DISC
						LN		DISC REL REL COM
95	101	1111	Invalid message, unspecified	Message type	5.8	LN		REL COM STAT
96	110	0000	Mandatory information element is missing	Information element identifier(s)	5.8.6.1	LN, LU		REL REL COM STAT
					5.8.11	LN, LU		STAT
97	110	0001	Message type non-existent or not implemented	Message type	5.8.4 5.8.10 5.8.11	LU, LN		STAT
98	110	0010	Message not compatible with call state or message type non-existent or not implemented	Message type	5.8.4	LU, LN		STAT
99	110	0011	Information element non-existent or not implemented	Information element identifier(s)	5.8.7.1 5.8.11	LU, LN		STAT
					5.8.7.1	LN		REL REL COM

TABLE I-2/Q.931 *(end)*

Cause No.	Class	Value	Cause name	Diagnostics	Section cross-reference	Typical location of generation	Typical carrying message as identified by receiving side	
							At remote interface	At local interface
100	110	0100	Invalid information element contents	Information element identifier(s)	5.8.6.2	LU, LN		STAT REL REL COM
					5.8.7.2 5.8.11	LU, LN		STAT
101	110	0101	Message not compatible with call state	Message type	5.8.4	LN, LU		STAT
					5.8.11	LN, LU		DISC REL REL COM
102	110	0110	Recovery on time expiry	Timer number	5.2.4 5.2.5.3 5.6.5 5.4.1	LN		DISC
					5.3.3 5.3.4	LN		REL
					5.3.2 f) 5.3.3 5.6.5	LU		REL
111	110	1111	Protocol error, unspecified		5.8.4	RN		DISC
127	111	1111	Interworking, unspecified		No explicit procedure			

APPENDIX II

(to Recommendation Q.931)

Example message flow diagrams and example conditions for cause mapping

II.1 *Example message flow diagrams*

Examples of the procedures for the use of the B and D channel network connection types and the selection of the appropriate channel types are summarized in Figures II-1/Q.931 to II-7/Q.931. These figures are intended to complement the description in the preceding text and do not illustrate all possible situations.

Note – Not all frames that may be sent across the TA interface may be represented in the following figures.

II.1.1 *Key to the figures*

Q.931 messages

[ ]	Layer 3
C	CONNECT
CA	CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE
CP	CALL PROCEEDING
D	DISCONNECT
R	RELEASE
RC	RELEASE COMPLETE
S	SETUP

X.25 layer 3 messages

Any layer 3 message preceded by X.25 indicates an X.25 layer 3 packet (e.g. X.25 CR means X.25 *call request*).

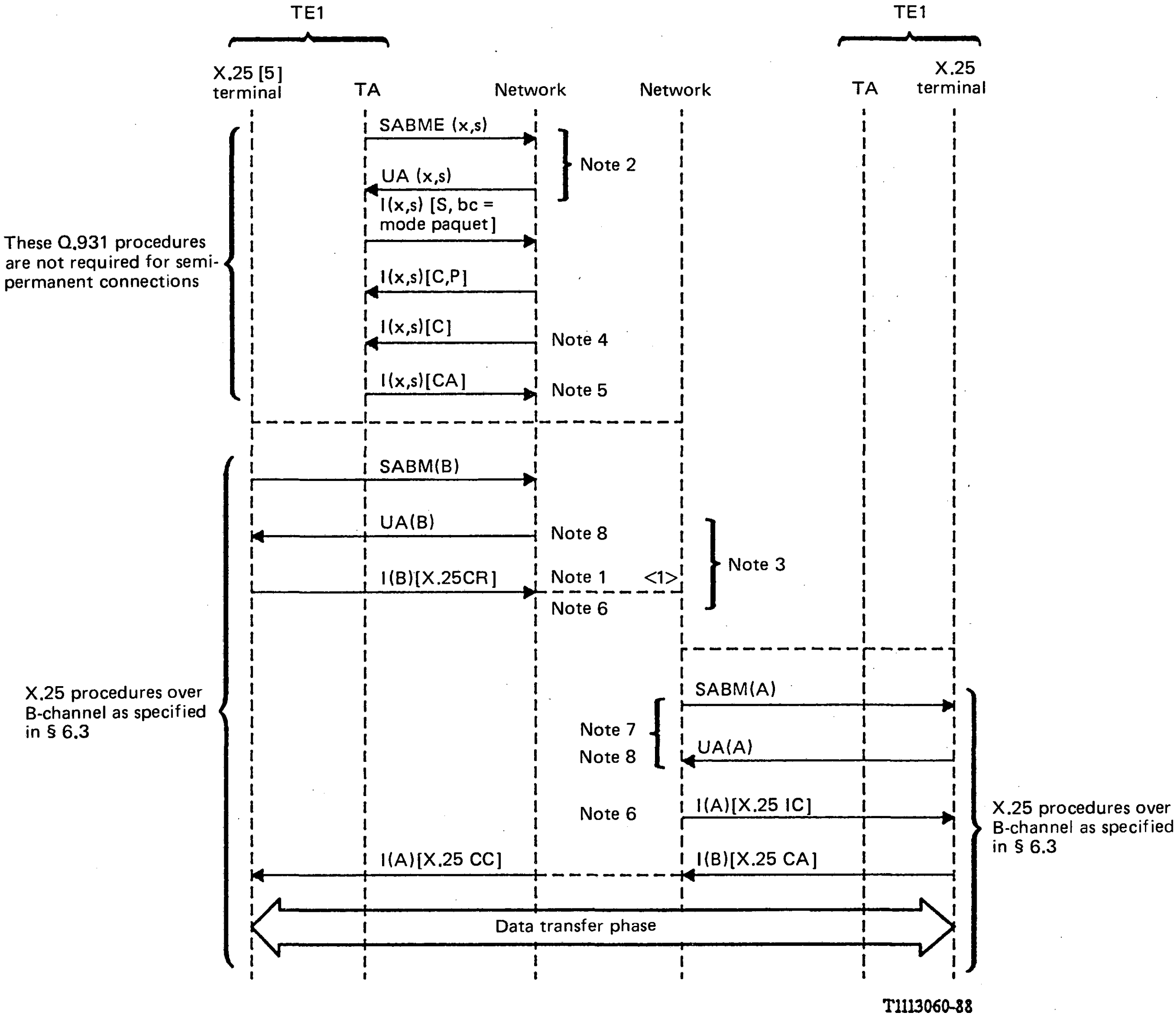
CA	call accepted
CC	call connected
CLC	clear confirmation
CLI	clear indication
CLR	clear request
CR	call request
IC	incoming call

Layer 2 frames

( )	Layer 2
GTEI	Group TEI (127)
A.B	X.25 layer 2 addresses (includes command and response)
SABM	Set asynchronous balance mode
SABME	Set asynchronous balance mode extended.
UA	Unnumbered acknowledgement frame
UI	Unnumbered information frame (i.e. using unacknowledged information transfer at layer 2)
I	Information frame
DISC	Disconnect frame

Layer 2 addresses marked (x, p) indicates that the SAPI element of the frame address is coded for packet type (SAPI = 16) information as described in Recommendation Q.921. Layer 2 addresses marked (x, s) refer to signalling type (SAPI = 0) information.

II.1.2 *Example message flow diagrams*



Note 1 – When the called side establishes the call using D-channel access, the message sequence will continue as from point <3> in Figure II-3/Q.931.

Note 2 – If signalling link is not already established.

Note 3 – For packet call offering, the incoming call may be offered to the TA and a B-channel established using the procedure shown in Figures II-5/Q.931 and II-6/Q.931.

Note 4 – The network starts timer T320, if implemented.

Note 5 – This message is optional.

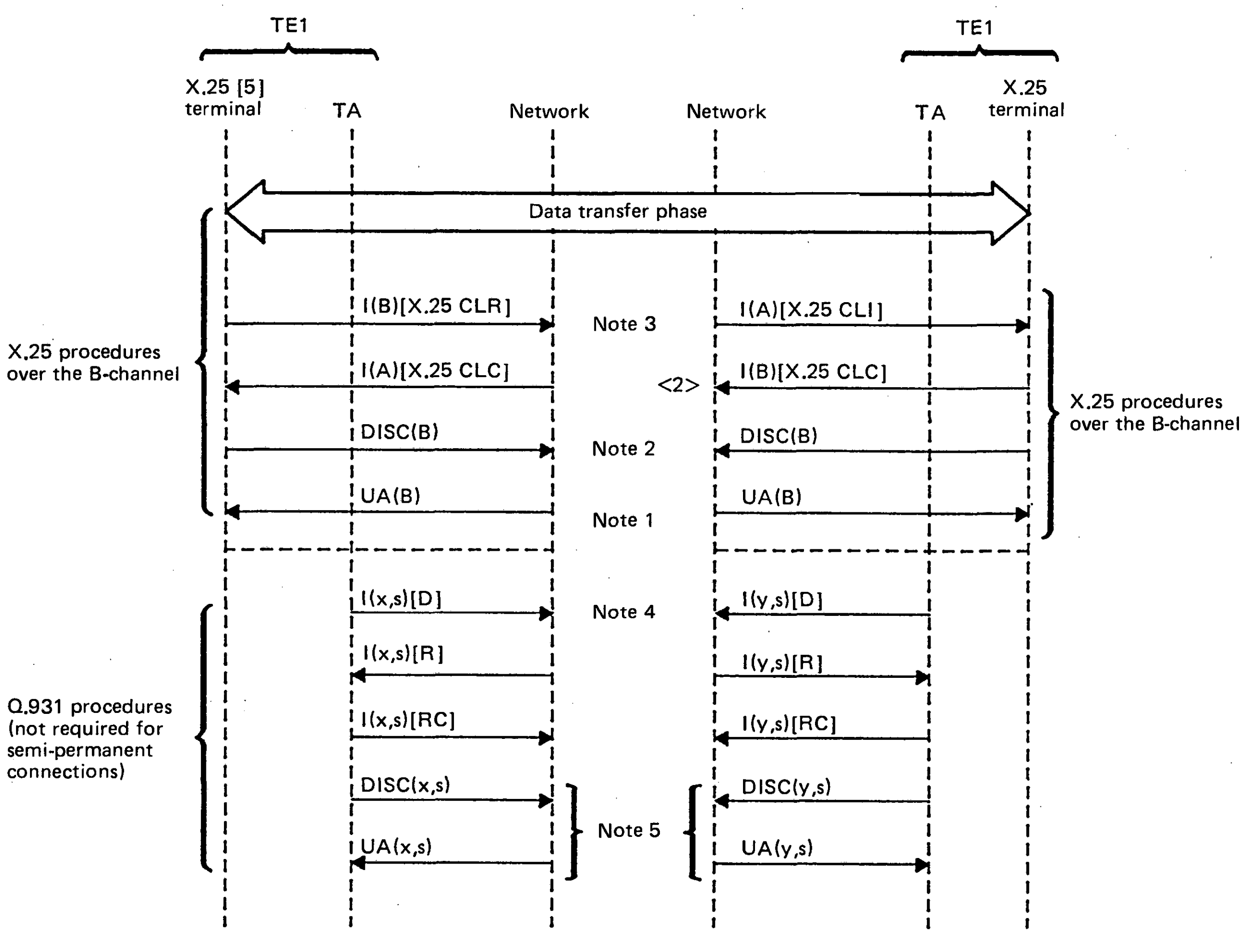
Note 6 – The network cancels timer T320, if implemented and running.

Note 7 – The network establishes the link layer on the B-channel, if it is not already established as specified in § 6.3.

Note 8 – Not shown in the diagram; is a possible X.25 restart procedure performed after link set up.

FIGURE II-1/Q.931

Example message sequence for the ISDN virtual circuit service B-channel access, first virtual call set-up in this channel



Note 1 – When the cleared side has set up the call using D-channel access, the message sequence at the cleared side will be as from point <4> in Figure II-4/Q.931.

Note 2 – Clearing of the B-channel may be initiated by the network upon expiry of timer T320, if implemented. See § 6.4.

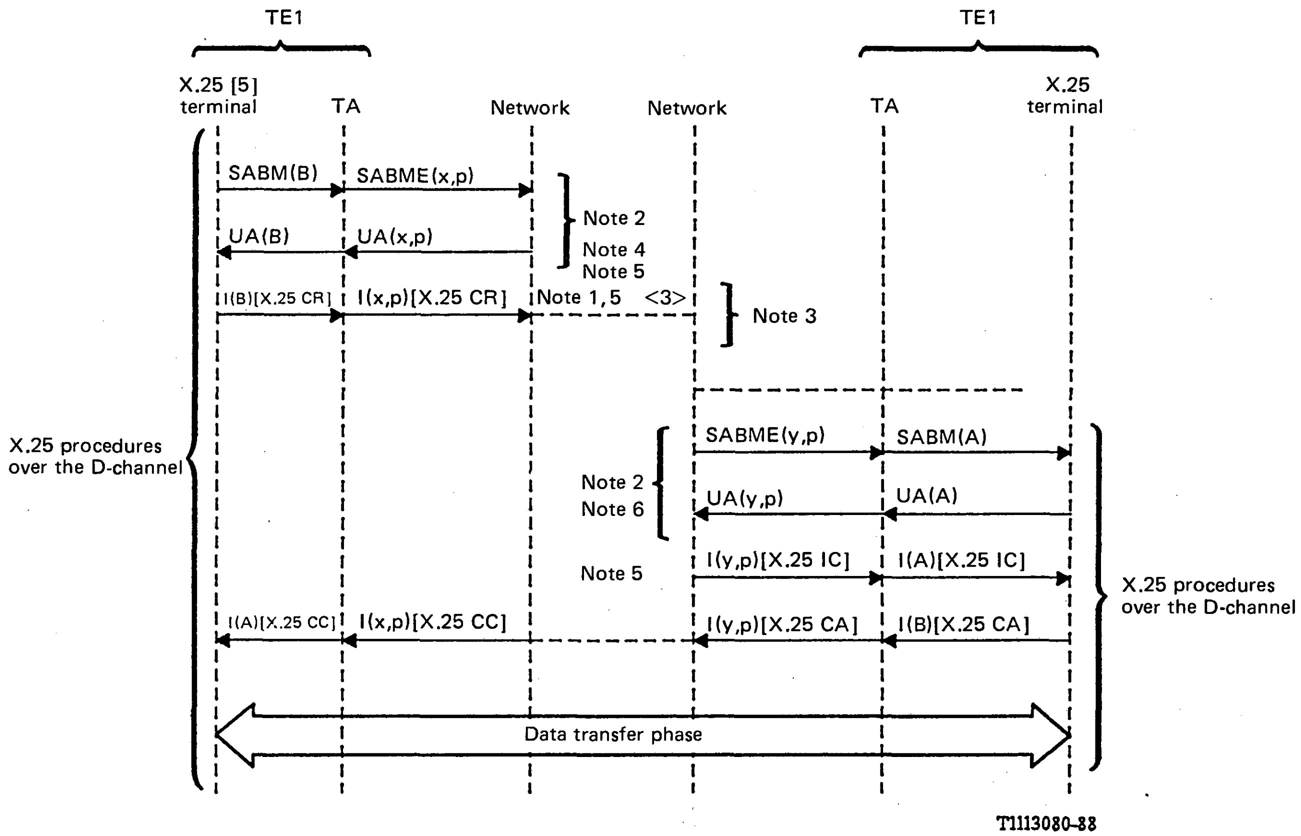
Note 3 – The network starts timer T320, if implemented.

Note 4 – The network cancels timer T320, if implemented and running.

Note 5 – This sequence is only required if the terminal does not wish to continue with further communication.

FIGURE II-2/Q.931

Example message sequence for the ISDN virtual circuit service B-channel access, last virtual call cleared in this channel



Note 1 – When the called side establishes the call using B-channel access, the message sequence will continue as from point <1> in Figure II-1/Q.931.

Note 2 – If SAPI=16 link is not already established.

Note 3 – The incoming call may be offered to the TA using the procedures shown in Figure III-5/X.31 and III-7/X.31.

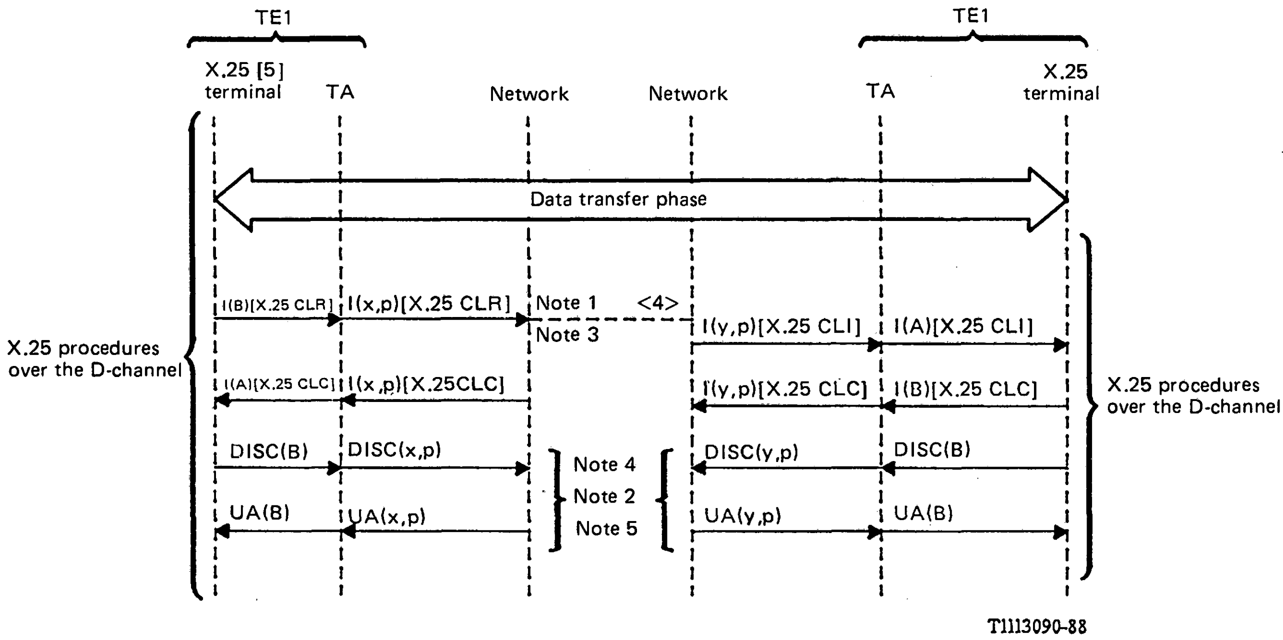
Note 4 – The network starts timer T320, if implemented.

Note 5 – The network stops timer T320, if implemented and running.

Note 6 – Not shown in the diagram; is a possible X.25 restart procedure performed after link set up.

FIGURE II-3/Q.931

Example message sequence for the ISDN virtual circuit service D-channel access, first virtual call set-up in this SAPI=16 link



Note 1 — When the cleared side has set up the call using B-channel access, the message sequence at the cleared side will be as from point <2> in Figure II-2/Q.931.

Note 2 — This sequence is only required if the X.25 DTE does not wish to continue with further communications.

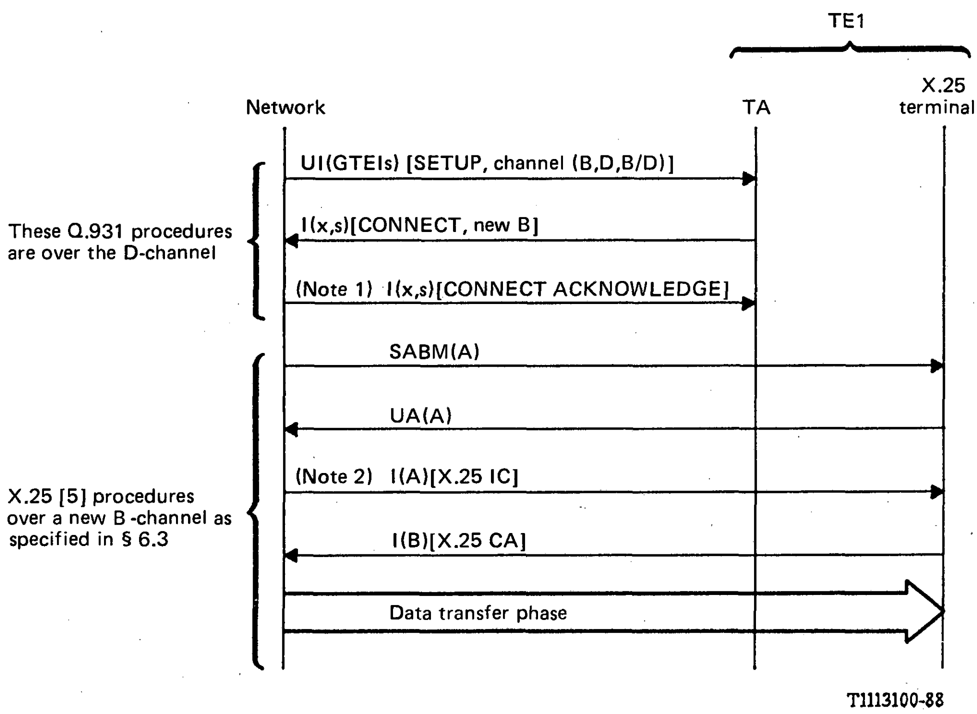
Note 3 — The network starts timer T320, if implemented.

Note 4 — The network cancels timer T320, if implemented and running.

Note 5 — Link layer release may be initiated by the network upon expiry of timer T320, if implemented. See § 6.4.

FIGURE II-4/Q.931

Example message sequence for the ISDN virtual circuit service D-channel access, last virtual call cleared in this SAPI=16 link

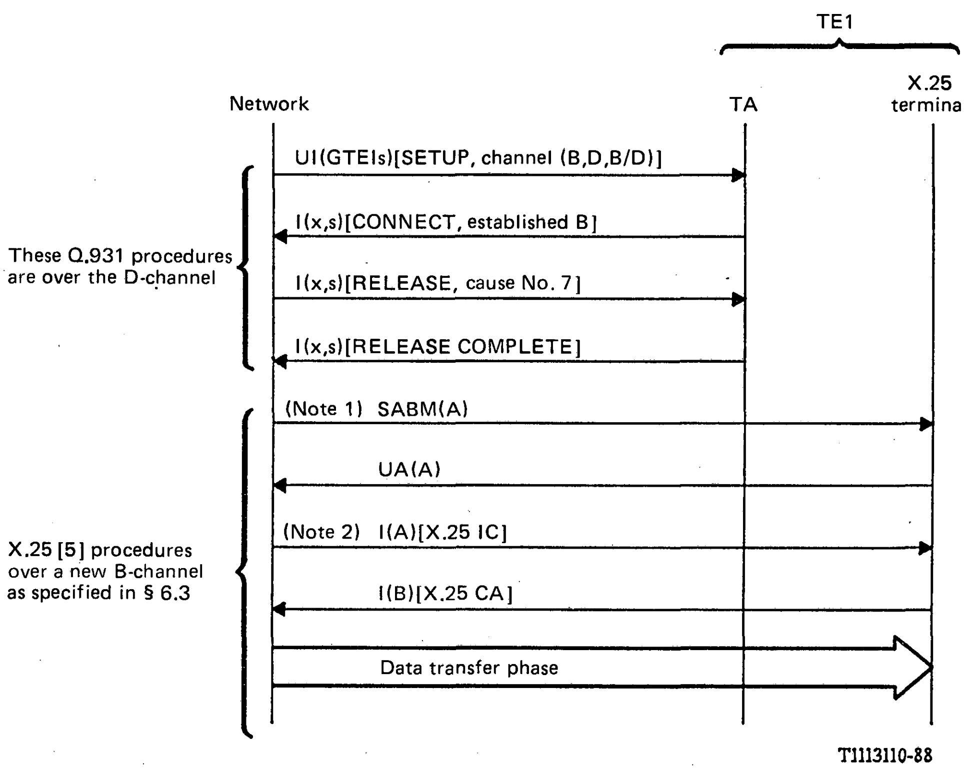


Note 1 – The network starts timer T320, if implemented.

Note 2 – The network cancels timer T320, if implemented and running.

FIGURE II-5/Q.931

Example of incoming call offering procedures using signalling on SAPI=0 link: Terminal accepts call on a new B-channel

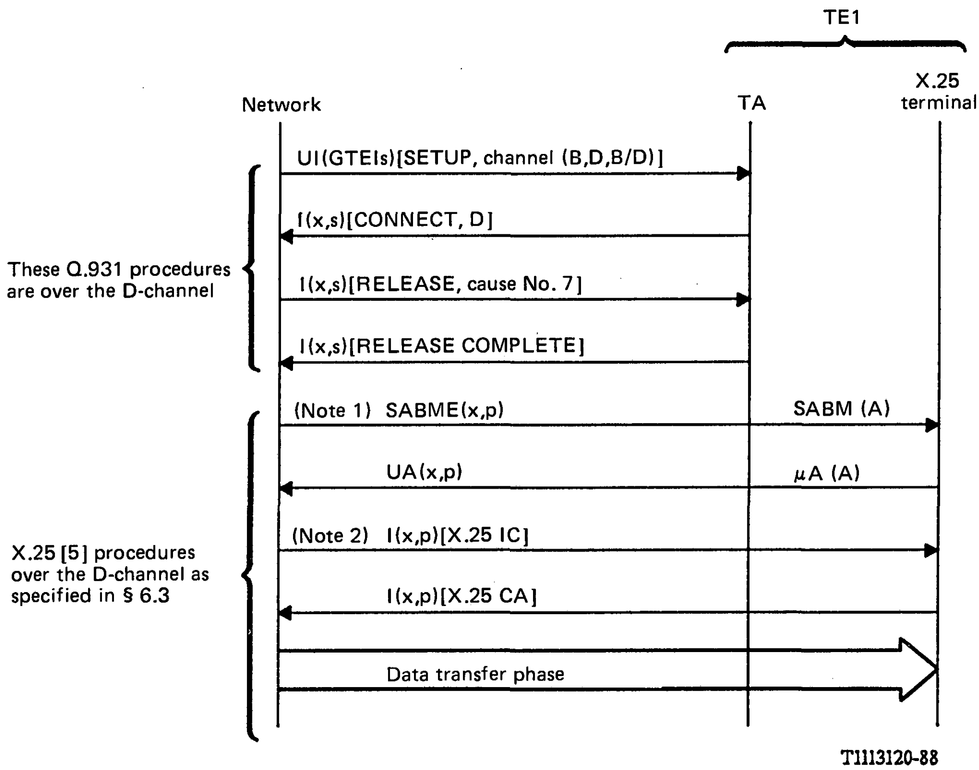


Note 1 – The network establishes the link layer in the B-channel if it is not already established. See § 6.3.

Note 2 – The network cancels timer T320, if implemented and running.

FIGURE II-6/Q.931

Example of incoming call offering procedures using signalling on SAPI=0 link: Terminal accepts call on an established B-channel



Note 1 – The network establishes the link layer in the D-channel if it is not already established. See § 6.3. The network starts timer T320, if implemented.

Note 2 – The network cancels timer T320, if implemented and running.

FIGURE II-7/Q.931

Example of incoming call offering procedures using signalling on SAPI=0 link: Terminal accepts call on the D-channel

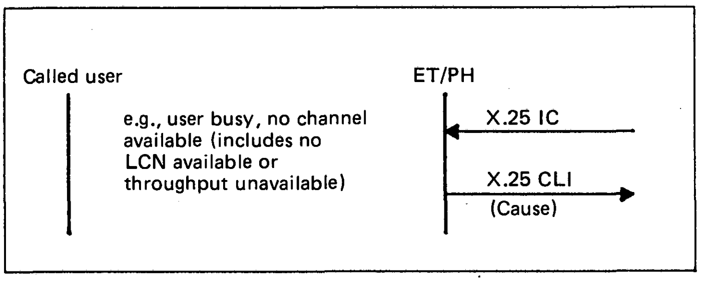
II.2 *Example conditions for cause mapping*

Figures II-8/Q.931 through II-16/Q.931 show example conditions when cause mappings would be utilized between Q.931 and X.25 [5] messages and utilize the specific mappings of Table 6-5/Q.931 and Table 6-6/Q.931 as shown below:

Figure	*Reference Table*	
Q.931 failures during call establishment		
II-8	Table 6-5/Q.931	
II-9	Table 6-5/Q.931	
II-10	Table 6-5/Q.931	
II-11	Table 6-5/Q.931	
II-12	Table 6-5/Q.931	
User side failures during X.25 data transfer phase		
II-13	Table 6-5/Q.931	*Note 1*
II-14	Table 6-5/Q.931	*Note 2*
Network side premature clearing		
II-15	Table 6-6/Q.931	
II-16	Table 6-6/Q.931	

Note 1 – This mapping is only needed in the case of the Q.931 message arriving prior to the clearing of the last virtual circuit.

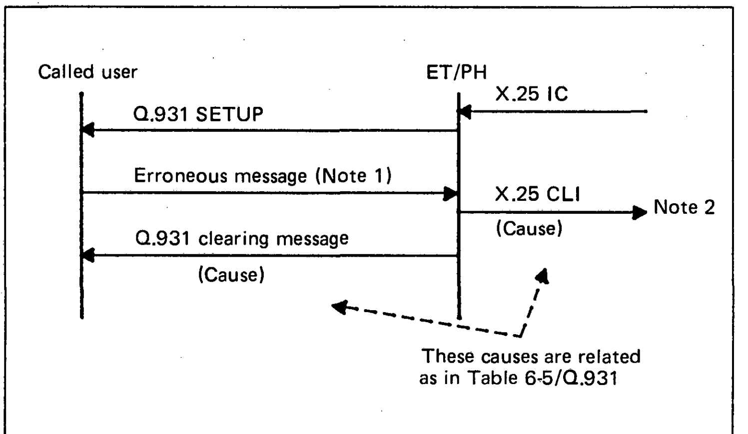
Note 2 – This situation always results in either an X.25 *clear indication* packet with cause No. 9, *out of order* for switched virtual circuits, or an X.25 *reset* packet with cause No. 9, *out of order* for permanent virtual circuits.



T1113130-88

FIGURE II-8/Q.931

Undeliverable call



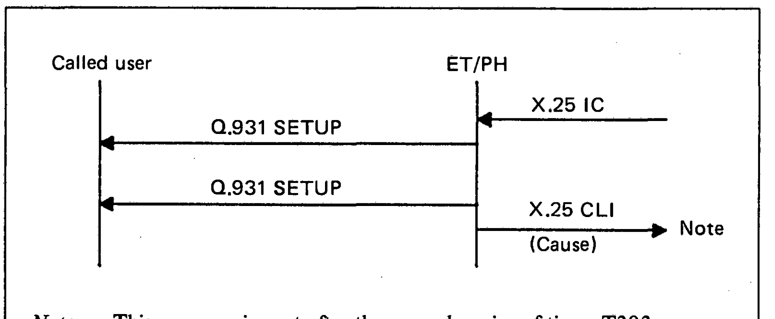
Note 1 – This figure only applies to the case where the erroneous message results in a Q.931 clearing message. See § 6.4.3 for more information.

Note 2 – This message would be sent after the expiry of timer T303 on a multipoint interface.

T1113140-88

FIGURE II-9/Q.931

Erroneous message (e.g., format error)

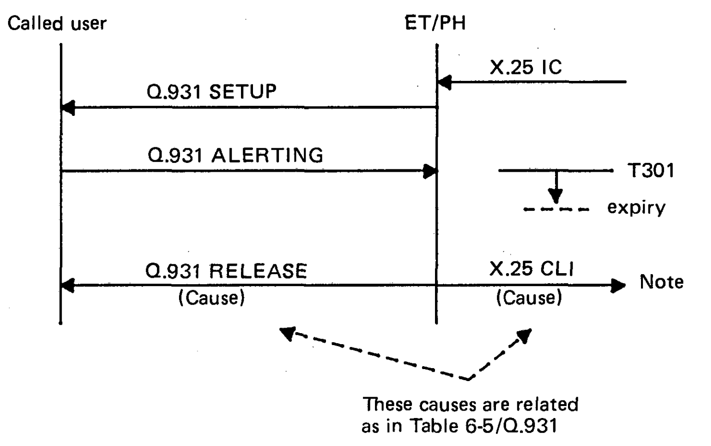


Note – This message is sent after the second expiry of timer T303.

T1113150-88

FIGURE II-10/Q.931

No responding user

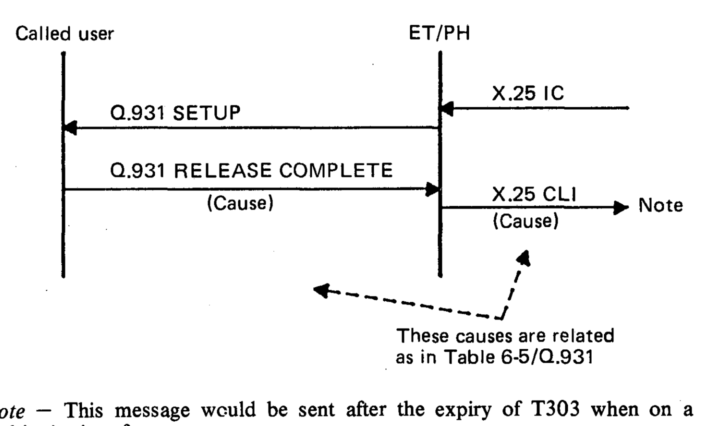


Note – This message is sent after the expiry of timer T301.

T1113160-88

FIGURE II-11/Q.931

Expiry of timer T301

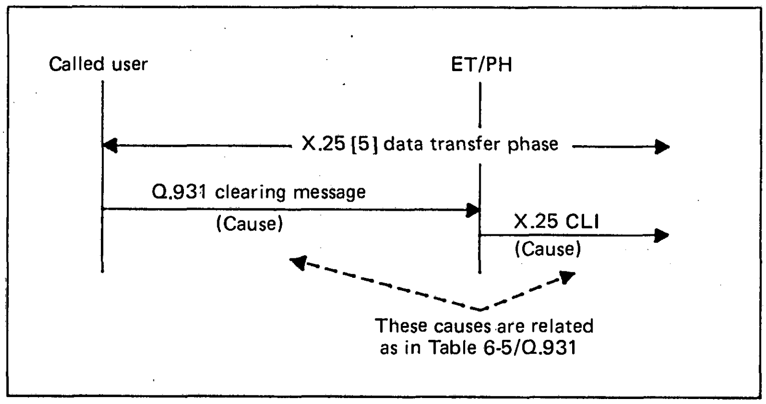


Note – This message would be sent after the expiry of T303 when on a multipoint interface.

T1113170-88

FIGURE II-12/Q.931

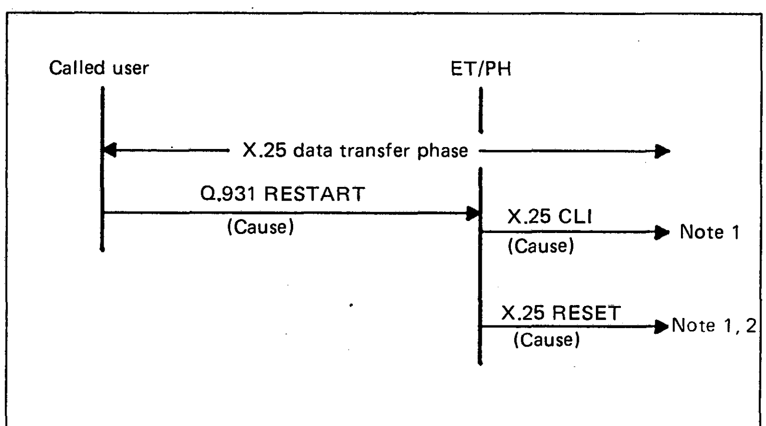
Call rejection by called party



T1113180-88

FIGURE II-13/Q.931

Q.931 clearing during X.25 data transfer phase



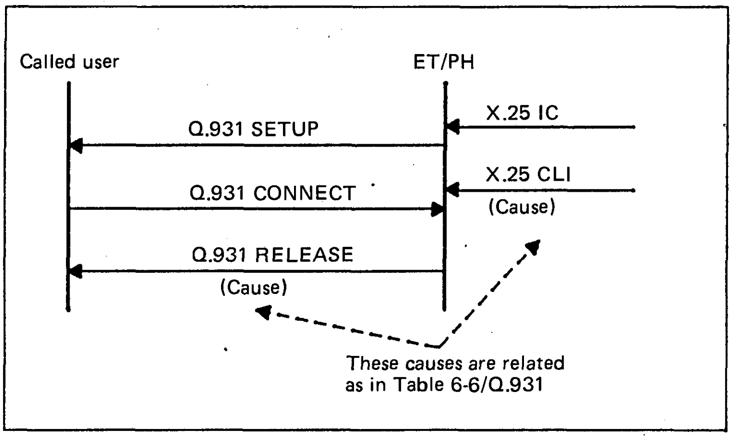
Note 1 – The cause parameter in the X.25 CLI packet will indicate *out of order* with diagnostic value 0.

Note 2 – For permanent virtual circuits only.

T1113190-88

FIGURE II-14/Q.931

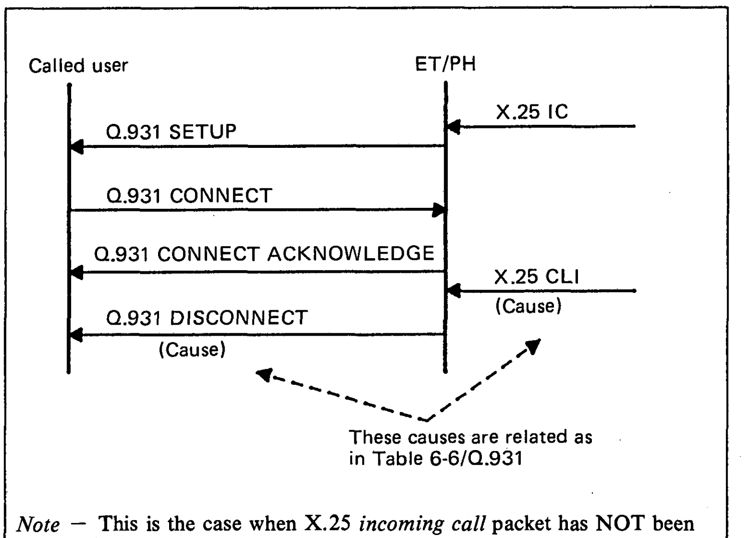
Q.931 RESTART during X.25 data transfer phase



T1113200-88

FIGURE II-15/Q.931

Premature clearing of the virtual circuit (e.g., expiry of X.25 timer T21)



Note – This is the case when X.25 *incoming call* packet has NOT been delivered.

T1113210-88

FIGURE II-16/Q.931

Premature clearing of the virtual circuit

APPENDIX III

(to Recommendation Q.931)

Summary of assigned information element identifier and message type code points for the Q.93x-Series of Recommendations

TABLE III-1/Q.931

Information element code points

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1		Recommendation reference
1	:	:	:	–	–	–	–	*Single octets information elements:*	
	0	0	0	–	–	–	–	Reserved	
	0	0	1	–	–	–	–	Shift	Q.931
	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	More data	Q.931
	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	Sending complete	Q.931
	0	1	1	–	–	–	–	Congestion level	Q.931
	1	0	1	–	–	–	–	Repeat indicator	Q.931
0	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	*Variable length information elements:*	
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Segmented message	Q.931
	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	Bearer capability	Q.931
	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	Cause	Q.931
	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	Call identity	Q.931
	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	Call state	Q.931
	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	Channel identification	Q.931
	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	Facility	Q.931
	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	Progress indicator	Q.931
	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	Network specific facilities	Q.931
	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	Notification indicator	Q.931
	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	Display	Q.931
	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	Date/time	Q.931
	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	Keypad facility	Q.931
	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	Information request	Q.932 [4]
	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	Signal	Q.931
	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	Switchhook	Q.931
	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	Feature activation	Q.931
	0	1	1	1	0	0	1	Feature indication	Q.931
	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	Service profile identification	Q.932
	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	Endpoint identifier	Q.932
	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	Information rate	Q.931
	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	End-to-end transit delay	Q.931
	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	Transit delay selection and indication	Q.931
	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	Packet layer binary parameters	Q.931
	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	Packet layer window size	Q.931
	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	Packet size	Q.931
	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	Minimum throughput class	Q.931
	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	Calling party number	Q.931
	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	Calling party sub-address	Q.931
	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	Called party number	Q.931
	1	1	1	0	0	0	1	Called party sub-address	Q.931
	1	1	1	0	1	0	0	Redirecting number	Q.931
	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	Transit network selection	Q.931
	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	Restart indicator	Q.931
	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	Low layer compatibility	Q.931
	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	High layer compatibility	Q.931
	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	User-user	Q.931
	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	Escape for extension	Q.931
All other values are reserved (Note)									

Note – All reserved values with bits 5-8 coded "0000" are for future information elements for which comprehension by the user is required (see § 5.8.7.1).

TABLE III-2/Q.931

Message type code points

Bits 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1		Recommendation reference
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	Escape to nationally specific message types	Q.931
0 0 0 - - - - -	*Call establishment messages:*	
0 0 0 0 1	– ALERTING	Q.931
0 0 0 1 0	– CALL PROCESSING	Q.931
0 0 0 1 1	– PROGRESS	Q.931
0 0 1 0 1	– SETUP	Q.931
0 0 1 1 1	– CONNECT	Q.931
0 1 1 0 1	– SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE	Q.931
0 1 1 1 1	– CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE	Q.931
0 0 1 - - - - -	*Call information phase messages:*	
0 0 0 0 0	– USER INFORMATION	Q.931
0 0 0 0 1	– SUSPEND REJECT	Q.931
0 0 0 1 0	– RESUME REJECT	Q.931
0 0 1 0 0	– HOLD	Q.932 [4]
0 0 1 0 1	– SUSPEND	Q.931
0 0 1 1 0	– RESUME	Q.931
0 1 0 0 0	– HOLD ACKNOWLEDGE	Q.932
0 1 1 0 1	– SUSPEND ACKNOWLEDGE	Q.931
0 1 1 1 0	– RESUME ACKNOWLEDGE	Q.931
1 0 0 0 0	– HOLD REJECT	Q.932
1 0 0 0 1	– RETRIEVE	Q.931
1 0 0 1 1	– RETRIEVE ACKNOWLEDGE	Q.932
1 0 1 1 1	– RETRIEVE REJECT	Q.932
0 1 0 - - - - -	*Call clearing messages:*	
0 0 1 0 1	– DISCONNECT	Q.931
0 0 1 1 0	– RESTART	Q.931
0 1 1 0 1	– RELEASE	Q.931
0 1 1 1 0	– RESTART ACKNOWLEDGE	Q.931
1 1 0 1 0	– RELEASE COMPLETE	Q.931
0 1 1 - - - - -	*Miscellaneous messages:*	
0 0 0 0 0	– SEGMENT	Q.931
0 0 0 1 0	– FACILITY	Q.931
0 0 1 0 0	– REGISTER	Q.932 [4]
0 1 1 1 0	– NOTIFY	Q.931
1 0 1 0 1	– STATUS ENQUIRY	Q.931
1 1 0 0 1	– CONGESTION CONTROL	Q.931
1 1 0 1 1	– INFORMATION	Q.931
1 1 1 0 1	– STATUS	Q.931

TABLE III-3/Q.931

Operation values assigned within the invoke component of the facility information element

Bits 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1	
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1	User-user service

ACRONYMS USED IN RECOMMENDATION Q.931

English	French	Spanish	Meaning
ABM	ABM	ABM	Asynchronous Balanced Mode (of HDLC)
ACK	ACK	ACU	Acknowledgement
ADPCM	MICDA	MICDA	Adaptative Differential Pulse Code Modulation
AFI	AFI	IAF	Authority and Format Identifier
ARM	ARM	ARM	Asynchronous Response Mode (of HDLC)
AU	AU	UA	Access Unit
BC	MFS	CP	Bearer Capability
BCD	BCD	DCB	Binary Coded Decimal
Bi	Bi	Bi	Indicated B Channel
Bi′	Bi′	Bi′	An idle B Channel Bi
Bj	Bj	Bj	A B Channel in use
CEI	CEI	IPEC	Connection Endpoint Identifier
CES	CES	SEC	Connection Endpoint Suffix
CSPDN	RPDCC	RPDCC	Circuit Switched Public Data Network
D	D	D	The D Channel
DDI	SDA	MDE	Direct Dialling In
DLCI	DLCI	ICED	Data Link Connection Identifier (See Recommendations Q.920/Q.921)
DTE	ETTD	ETD	Data Terminal Equipment
HDLC	HDLC	HDLC	High Level Data Link Control (procedures)
HLC	CCS	CCA	High Layer Compatibility
I	I	I	Information (frame)
IA5	AI5	AI5	International Alphabet No. 5 (defined by CCITT)
IE	EI	EI	Information Element
ISDN	RNIS	RDSI	Integrated Services Digital Network
ISO	ISO	ISO	International Standard Organization
IWF	IWF	FIF	Interworking Function
IWU	UIF	UIF	Interworking Unit
LAN	RLE	RAL	Local Area Network
LAPB	LAPB	LAPB	Link Access Protocol-Balanced
LAPD	LAPD	LAPD	Link Acces Protocol on the D Channel
LLC	CCI	CCB	Low Layer Compatibility
LLI	LLI	IEL	Logical Link Identifier (See Recommendation Q.921)
NACK	NACK	ACUN	Negative Acknowledgement
NIC	NIC	RIR	Network Independent Clock
NRM	NRM	NRM	Normal Response Mode (of HDLC)
NSAP	NSAP	PASR	Network Service Access Point
NT2	NT2	TR2	Network Termination of type two
OSI	OSI	ISA	Open System Interconnection
PABX	PABX	CAP	Private Automatic Branch Exchange
PCM	MIC	MIC	Pulse Code Modulation

PH	PH	MP	Packet Handler
PSPDN	RPDCP	RPDCP	Packet Switched Public Data Network
PSTN	RTPC	RTPC	Public Switched Telephony Network
PVC	CVP	CVP	Permanent Virtual Circuit
RDTD	RDTD	RDR	Restricted Differential Time Delay
SABME	SABME	SABME	Set Asynchronous Balanced Mode Extended (frame)
SAPI	SAPI	IPAS	Service Access Point Identifier (See Recommendation Q.921)
TA	AT	AT	Terminal Adaptor (See Recommendation I.411)
TE1	TE1	ET1	Terminal Equipment of type 1 (See Recommendation I.411)
TE2	TE2	ET2	Terminal Equipment of type 2 (See Recommendation I.411)
TEI	TEI	IET	Terminal Endpoint Identifier (See Recommendations Q.920 and Q.921)
UDI	UDI	IDSR	Unrestricted Digital Information
UI	UI	UI	Unnumbered Information (frame)
VC	CV	CV	(Switched) Virtual Circuit

References

[1] CCITT Recommendation *ISDN user-network interface layer 3 – General aspects,* Vol. VI(III), Rec. Q.930(I.450).

[2] CCITT Recommendation *ISDN user-network interfaces – Interface structures and access capabilities,* Vol. III, Rec. I.412.

[3] CCITT Recommendation *ISDN user-network interface – Data link layer specification,* Vol. VI(III), Rec. Q.921(I.441).

[4] CCITT Recommendation *Generic procedures for the control of ISDN supplementary services,* Vol. VI, Rec. Q.932.

[5] CCITT Recommendation *Interface between data terminal equipment (DTE) and data circuit terminating equipment (DCE) for terminals operating in the packet mode and connected to public data networks by dedicated circuit,* Vol. VIII, Rec. X.25.

[6] CCITT Recommendation *Circuit mode bearer service categories,* Vol. III, Rec. I.231.

[7] CCITT Recommendation *Support of data terminal equipments (DTEs) with V-series type interfaces by an integrated services digital network (ISDN),* Vol. VIII, Rec. V.110.

[8] CCITT Recommendation *Support of X.21, X.21 bis and X.20 bis based data terminal equipments (DTEs) by an integrated services digital network (ISDN),* Vol. VIII, Rec. X.30.

[9] CCITT Recommendation *Support by an ISDN of data terminal equipment with V-series type interfaces with provision for statistical multiplexing,* Vol. VIII, Rec. V.120.

[10] CCITT Recommendation *Pulse code modulation (PCM) of voice frequencies,* Vol. III, Rec. G.711.

[11] CCITT Recommendation *32 kbit/s adaptive differential pulse code modulation (ADPCM),* Vol. III, Rec. G.721.

[12] CCITT Recommendation *7 kHz audio coding within 64 kbit/s,* Vol. III, Rec. G.722.

[13] CCITT Recommendation *Codec for audiovisual services AT n × 384 kbit/s,* Vol. III, Rec. H.261.

[14] CCITT Recommendation *Support of packet mode terminal equipment by an ISDN,* Vol. VIII, Rec. X.31.

[15] CCITT Recommendation *Multiplexing rate adaptation and support of existing interfaces,* Vol. III, Rec. I.460.

[16] CCITT Recommendation *Standardization of data signalling rates for synchronous data transmission on leased telephone-type circuits*, Vol. VIII, Rec. V.6.

[17] CCITT Recommendation *International user classes of service in public data networks and integrated services digital networks (ISDNs)*, Vol. VIII, Rec. X.1.

[18] CCITT Recommendation *ISDN numbering and addressing principles*, Vol. III, Rec. I.330.

[19] CCITT Recommendation *Numbering plan for the ISDN era*, Vol. II, Rec. E.164.

[20] CCITT Recommendation *Numbering plan for the international telephone service*, Vol. III, Rec. E.163.

[21] CCITT Recommendation *International numbering plan for public data networks*, Vol. VIII, Rec. X.121.

[22] CCITT Recommendation *Plan for telex destination codes*, Vol. II, Rec. F.69.

[23] CCITT Recommendation *Network service definition for open systems interconnection (OSI) for CCITT applications*, Vol. VIII, Rec. X.213.

[24] ISO Standard 8348 Addendum 2 *Information processing systems – Data communications – Network service definition.*

[25] CCITT Recommendation *Principles relating ISDN numbers/subaddress to the OSI reference model network layer addresses*, Vol. III, Rec. I.334.

[26] CCITT Recommendation *Interface between data terminal equipment (DTE) and data circuit-terminating equipment (DCE) for synchronous operation on public data networks*, Vol. VIII, Rec. X.21.

[27] CCITT Recommendation *Primary rate user-network interface – Layer 1 specification*, Vol. III, Rec. I.431.

[28] CCITT Recommendation *Control procedures for teletex and Group 4 facsimile services*, Vol. VII, Rec. T.62.

[29] CCITT Recommendation *A document application profile for the interchange of Group 4 facsimile documents*, Vol. VII, Rec. T.503.

[30] CCITT Recommendation *A document application profile MM for the interchange of formatted mixed mode documents*, Vol. VII, Rec. T.501.

[31] CCITT Recommendation *Document application profile PM1 for the interchange of processable form documents*, Vol. VII, Rec. T.502.

[32] CCITT Recommendation *Network-independent basic transport service for the telematic services*, Vol. VII, Rec. T.70.

[33] CCITT Recommendation *Document application profile for videotex interworking*, Vol. VII, Rec. T.504.

[34] CCITT Recommendation *Teleservices supported by an ISDN*, Vol. III, Rec. I.241.

[35] CCITT Recommendation *System aspects of the use of the 7 kHz audio codec within 64 kbit/s*, Vol. III, Rec. G.725.

[36] ISO Standard 1745 *Information processing – Basic mode control procedures for data communication systems.*

[37] CCITT Recommendation *Link access protocol balanced (LAPB) extended for half-duplex physical level facility*, Vol. VII, Rec. T.71.

[38] ISO Standard 4335 *Data communication – High-level data link control procedures – Consolidation of elements of procedures.*

[39] ISO Standard 8802-2 *Information processing systems – Local area networks – Part 2: Logical link control.*

[40] CCITT Recommendation *Packet switched signalling system between public networks providing data transmission services*, Vol. VIII, Rec. X.75.

[41] ISO Standard 8208 *Information processing systems – Data communications – X.25 packet level protocol for data terminal equipment.*

[42] ISO Standard 8348 *Information processing systems – Data communications – Network service definition.*

[43] ISO Standard 8473 *Information processing systems – Data communications protocol for providing the connectionless-mode network service.*

[44] CCITT Recommendation *Procedure for the exchange of protocol identification during virtual call establishment on packet switched public data networks,* Vol. VIII, Rec. X.244.

[45] CCITT Recommendation *ISDN user-network interface data link layer – General aspects,* Vol. VI(III), Rec. Q.920(I.440).

[46] CCITT Recommendation *Basic user-network interface – Layer 1 specification,* Vol. III, Rec. I.430.

[47] CCITT Recommendation *Definition of bearer service categories,* Vol. III, Rec. I.230.

[48] CCITT Recommendation *Definition of teleservices,* Vol. III, Rec. I.240.

[49] CCITT Recommendation *International Alphabet No. 5,* Vol. VII, Rec. T.50.

[50] ISO Standard 646 *Information processing – ISO 7-bit coded character set for information interchange.*

[51] CCITT Recommendations on *Integrated services digital network (ISDN),* Vol. III.

[52] CCITT Recommendation *Support of data terminal equipments (DTEs) with V-series type interfaces by an integrated services digital network (ISDN),* Vol. III, Rec. I.463.

Recommendation Q.932

GENERIC PROCEDURES FOR THE CONTROL OF ISDN SUPPLEMENTARY SERVICES

1 General

This Recommendation defines the generic procedures applicable for the control of supplementary services at the user-network interface. These procedures may be used for the invocation and operation of supplementary services in association with existing calls or outside any existing calls.

The detailed procedures applicable to individual supplementary services are outside the scope of this Recommendation. However, typical examples of the application of these generic procedures to some supplementary services are provided in Appendix I to this Recommendation for explanatory and illustrative purposes only. The application of the Functional protocol defined in § 6, to the operation of individual supplementary services will be the subject of future Recommendations in this series.

2 Overview of the generic protocols and of their scope

Three generic protocols are defined for the control of supplementary services at ISDN user-network interfaces. These protocols operate at layer 3 of the control plane at the S/T reference points, and assume that the use of layers 1 and 2 conforms to Recommendations I.430 [1], I.431 [2] and Q.921 [3]. In addition, the three generic protocols assume the existence of an established data link and use the acknowledged information transfer service available at the layer 2 to layer 3 interface.

2.1 *Three generic protocols*

Three generic protocols are defined for the control of supplementary services, two of which are stimulus, the third being functional; these protocols are:

- the Keypad protocol;
- the Feature key management protocol;
- the Functional protocol.

2.1.1 *Keypad protocol*

The Keypad protocol is based on the use of the Keypad facility and Display information elements. The Keypad facility information element may be included in the SETUP and INFORMATION messages. The Display information element may be included in any message sent by the network to the user according to Recommendation Q.931[4].

This protocol applies to supplementary service invocation in the user-to-network direction, and the keypad facility codes used for the invocation of individual supplementary services are network dependent.

The protocol is stimulus in the sense that it does not require any knowledge about the invoked supplementary service by the user equipment. It may be used in any state of a call and in association with a call for supplementary service invocation and is applicable to both the basic and primary rate access structures. Paragraph 4 contains a detailed specification of this generic protocol.

2.1.2 *Feature key management protocol*

The Feature key management protocol is based on the use of two information elements that are specified in § 8: the Feature activation and Feature indication information elements. The Feature activation information element may be included in the SETUP and in the INFORMATION messages in the user-to-network direction. The Feature indication information element may be included in various basic call control messages in the network-to-user direction.

This protocol typically applies to supplementary service operation during calls but also allows for non-call related supplementary service control. Non-call related supplementary service control is accomplished by sending an INFORMATION message with the dummy call reference value and which contains a Feature activation information element. The user may send a Feature activation request at any time, and the network may send a Feature indication information element at any time. The supplementary service associated with the Feature identifier is service provider dependent and must be coordinated between the user and the service provider at subscription time. As a service provider option, more than one service profile may be allocated to an interface, but in this case the terminal identification procedures as defined in Annex A must be used in order to relate an appropriate service profile to a particular user.

Note – The term "service profile" refers to the information that the network maintains for a given user to characterize the service offered by the network to that user. A portion of this may contain the association of feature identifiers to specific supplementary services. A service profile is normally allocated to an interface but may optionally be allocated to a particular user's terminal equipment or to a group of user's terminal equipment using the procedures as defined in Annex A.

This protocol is stimulus in the sense that it does not require knowledge of the invoked supplementary service by the user's terminal equipment. Knowledge of the service profile contained in the network and of the association of Feature keys to specific supplementary service invocations is required to unambiguously define the requested supplementary service. This protocol is typically applicable to the basic rate access structure. A detailed description of this protocol is contained in § 5.

2.1.3 *Functional protocol*

The Functional protocol is based on the use of the Facility information element and the FACILITY message, as well as of other specific functional messages specified in § 7. This protocol is symmetrical, and is applicable to both the basic and primary rate access structures.

This protocol is functional in the sense that it requires the knowledge of the related supplementary service by the user equipment supporting it. This facilitates user equipment operation without human intervention by defining semantics for the protocol elements which user equipment can process on its own.

Functional procedures may follow a Keypad or a Feature key management supplementary service invocation. Messages that are specific to a function are used to invoke supplementary services that require synchronization of resources at both sides of an interface. The common generic message (i.e., the FACILITY message) is used to invoke supplementary services that do not require such resource synchronization.

2.2 *Support of the various generic protocols*

Networks may support more than one of these generic protocols for the control of supplementary services. The support of multiple generic protocols is a network option. Users shall be informed by the service provider at subscription time of the supplementary services available, and of the generic protocols supported on their access.

2.3 *Co-existence of generic protocols*

As a general rule, the Functional protocol shall be used unless the network specifies the use of a stimulus protocol for the invocation of certain supplementary services, or the users have subscribed to a Feature key management facility and service profile.

Networks may support one or more of the three generic protocols; it is a network option as to whether one or more generic protocols are supported on a given access.

In general, the Keypad protocol and Feature key management protocol have only local significance while the Functional protocol may have other than local significance.

For a given call instance, the protocol applied at a local interface may be different from the one applied at a remote user's interface. For example, one of the two stimulus protocols may be used at the requesting user's interface, while a functional procedure will, in general, be applied at the remote user's interface unless a network chooses, as an option, to use the Keypad protocol or Feature key management protocol for supplementary service indication or notification in the network-to-user direction.

3 Arrangements by which co-existence of protocols may be supported by a network

Some networks may support only one of the generic protocols per user access for the invocation of supplementary services. Other networks may choose to support a single generic protocol for the control of supplementary services, depending on the user access interface type (e.g., Feature key or Keypad on the basic access, Functional on the primary access). This has to be arranged at subscription time.

Networks supporting multiple generic protocols per access in the user-to-network direction (i.e., for the supplementary service invocation) will implicitly recognize the protocol option chosen by the user on the basis of the received message type or information element type.

Networks supporting more than one generic protocol per access in the network-to-user direction (i.e., at the remote user interface) may choose to apply a particular protocol depending on the supplementary service characteristics involved. In a case where, for a given supplementary service, more than one protocol can be supported, then the use of the terminal identification procedure as described in Annex A may have to be used in order to determine the protocol supported by that user's terminal equipment, as registered at subscription time.

User service profile procedures, as described in Annex A of this Recommendation, provide a means of characterizing the service(s) offered to different groups of one or more terminals on the same user access interface. A network may, therefore, use a parameter within a user service profile to determine the appropriate procedures for network initiated supplementary services towards the associated group of one or more terminals.

4 Keypad protocol

The Keypad protocol is based on the use of the Keypad facility and Display information elements. While the generic procedures associated with Keypad invocation are specified in this section, the allocation of the access codes used to request/indicate a supplementary service are not to be standardized within the CCITT.

An example of the use of the Keypad protocol is given in Appendix I.

4.1 *General*

This generic procedure is based on the use of:

- the Keypad facility information element by the user to invoke a supplementary service from the network by providing access codes using either en-bloc or overlap sending; and
- the Display information element by the network to give an indication to the local or remote user regarding a supplementary service being invoked. This procedure may be complemented in the case of calls where the Bearer capability information element in the SETUP message is coded indicating "speech" or "3.1 kHz audio", by the provision of in-band tones/announcements to the user.

Note – As a network option, the Keypad facility information element may be used by the network to give an indication to the user when the network expects an automatic reaction to the received information to acknowledge an invoked supplementary service. As the semantics of the Keypad facility information element are not standardized the use of the Keypad facility information element in the network-to-user direction may inhibit terminal portability since for a terminal to operate successfully on more than one network it must be capable of interpreting various different semantics as assigned by the network to the Keypad facility information. In any case, user equipment not supporting this option shall follow the error recovery procedures defined in § 5.8 of Recommendation Q.931 of receipt of the Keypad facility information element.

The Keypad protocol may be used in conjunction with the Feature key management (§ 5) or Functional protocol (§ 6) during the invocation of a supplementary service.

The Keypad protocol is based on the use of the Keypad facility information element within the INFORMATION or SETUP messages during the establishment, active and clearing phases of a call.

4.2 *Messages used in the Keypad protocol*

As specified in Recommendation Q.931, the Keypad facility information element may be included in both the SETUP and INFORMATION messages and may be sent in the user-to-network direction.

4.3 *Coding of the Keypad facility information element*

The contents of the Keypad facility information element are a string of IA5 characters. The syntax of the IA5 character string and the allocation of values for given supplementary services are not subject to CCITT standardization.

4.4 *Elements of procedure*

4.4.1 *General*

The Keypad protocol includes the following aspects:

1) the Keypad protocol may be used during the call establishment, active, and clearing phases of a call to invoke supplementary services. Supplementary service information is conveyed in Keypad facility information elements sent in either SETUP or INFORMATION messages;
2) supplementary service information can be sent from the user to the network either en-bloc or using overlap sending;
3) the network may prompt the user to send the required information using the Display information element and/or in-band tones or announcements. Whether this action shall occur or not is supplementary service and network specific. In any case, in-band tones or announcements shall only be used when the Bearer capability information element indicates "speech" or "3.1 kHz audio";
4) there may be different combinations of user provided information followed by network prompts. Examples of such possible combinations are shown in Table 4-1/Q.932, where the term "stage" is used to refer to information sent by the user between network prompts (if any).

TABLE 4-1/Q.932

Example of stages for sending of information

Number of stages	Sending information
1	All information sent en-bloc
1	All information sent overlap
2	Overlap . . . . Prompt . . . . Overlap
2	En-bloc . . . . Prompt . . . . En-bloc
2	Overlap . . . . Prompt . . . . En-bloc
2	En-bloc . . . . Prompt . . . . Overlap
3	Overlap . . . . Prompt . . . . Overlap . . . Prompt . . . . Overlap, etc.

Note – The number of possible stages is network dependent and may also be dependent on the specific supplementry service being invoked.

4.5 *Procedures at the invocation interface*

4.5.1 *User procedures*

The procedures below define how information (using either en-bloc or overlap sending) may be sent in a single stage from the user to the network. The procedures are applicable for each stage of user-to-network information sending.

4.5.1.1 *En-bloc sending of access codes*

En-bloc sending of supplementary service information is accomplished by sending the "complete" supplementary service information in:

- the SETUP message, if the supplementary service is being invoked during the call establishment; or
- the INFORMATION message, if the supplementary service is being invoked from the active phase of the call or during the clearing phase of a call.

The term "complete" supplementary service information means that sufficient supplementary service information is sent to the network to specify a service without any additional network prompting being required. The network determines that the supplementary service information is "complete" by either:

- analysis of the information contents of the Keypad facility information element; or
- the presence of a "sending complete" indication (see Recommendation Q.931, § 5.1.3).

If the network determines that the information contents of the Keypad facility information element are invalid, the network shall use the error procedures specified in § 4.5.2.3.

If the network determined that the information contents are valid and that the user is allowed to invoke the requested service, the network shall respond using the procedures as specified in § 4.5.2.1.

4.5.1.2 *Overlap sending of access codes*

Overlap sending of supplementary service information is the sending of the "complete" supplementary service information (see § 4.5.1.1 for the definition of complete) segmented such that a number of Recommendation Q.931 messages are used to convey the "complete" supplementary service information. The possible combination of messages:

a) for supplementary services invoked during call establishment, consists of using the SETUP message plus one or more INFORMATION messages which will be sent in the overlap sending state; or
b) for supplementary services invoked in the active or clearing phases of the call, consists of using two or more INFORMATION messages.

For case a), normal overlap sending procedures, as specified in Recommendation Q.931, § 5.1.3, shall be used.

For case b), the transmission or receipt of INFORMATION messages shall not cause any change to the Recommendation Q.931 call state.

The network shall respond to valid supplementary service information with one of the network responses as described in § 4.5.2.1. If the supplementary service information is invalid, then the error procedures as described in § 4.5.2.3 shall apply.

4.5.2 *Network procedures*

4.5.2.1 *Network responses to user requests*

After receiving information from the user, the network may take one of the following actions. Items 1)-4) are applicable in the cases of both en-bloc and overlap sending; item 5) is applicable only in the case of information sent using overlap sending.

1) Clear the call reference via the normal call clearing procedures (see Recommendation Q.931, § 5.3) including the appropriate Cause and optional Display information element(s).
2) Send a CALL PROCEEDING message to the user.

   Note – This network response is only applicable in a case where the supplementary service is being invoked during call establishment and not in the cases of the supplementary service being invoked from the active or clearing phases of the call.

3) Send an INFORMATION or clearing message to the user that includes a Display information element containing an appropriate response to the request for a supplementary service. The receipt of an INFORMATION message by the user shall not cause any change to the Recommendation Q.931 call state.

4) Prompt the user for more information using the procedures as specified in § 4.5.2.2. This further information could be additional, or new information input by the user or another attempt by the user to re-input the original information correctly. Such procedures are network dependent and may be supplementary service specific.

5) Wait for more overlap information. The allowed waiting period is governed by timer T302 in the case of information sent in the overlap sending state and call control timers for overlap information sent during other phases of the call.

The precise action to be taken is dependent on the specific supplementary service being invoked.

4.5.2.2 *Network prompting and in-band tone/announcement control*

The network may prompt the user for more information or may provide in-band tones or announcements regardless of whether or not the Keypad facility information element was included in the initial SETUP message. The network shall determine whether prompting and/or in-band tone or announcement control should occur. Possible factors governing the provision of prompting and in-band information are:

- the nature of the supplementary service;
- the value of the inter-digit timer;
- the type of interface; and
- the current status or progress of the supplementary service request.

Simultaneously with the application of in-band tones or announcements, the network may send a PROGRESS message containing a Progress indicator information element with the progress descriptor No. 8, *In-band information or appropriate pattern now available.*

The network may, in addition to an audible prompt (i.e., tone or announcement), request information from the user by sending an INFORMATION message which contains the Display and/or Signal information elements (but shall not contain the Called party number information element).

The sending of the INFORMATION message by the network does not result in a change to the Recommendation Q.931 call state. However, when this message is sent in the network overlap sending state, timer T302 shall be re-initialized.

The network may prompt the user more than once (i.e., multiple stages may occur), but the network should not prompt the user again prior to the user's response, or, when in the overlap sending state, prior to the expiry of timer T302. This is to avoid situations where a user's response could be related to two unacknowledged network prompts.

Note – As a network option, the Information Request procedures described in Annex B of this Recommendation may be used to prompt the user for additional information related to a given service request.

4.5.2.3 *Error conditions and treatment*

An error condition exists in the following circumstances:

a) timer T302 expires and complete information has not been received;

b) information containing a "sending complete" indication indicating en-bloc sending, but the user information sent is not complete;

c) information received by the network (complete or incomplete) is invalid. Invalid information is information sent with incorrect format or containing invalid facility identifier or parameter codes;

d) the user attempts to invoke a supplementary service to which the user has not subscribed or to which the user is not allowed access.

The action to be taken by the network in these situations is as follows.

Note – The text below identifies possible actions that may be taken in an error situation. The specific action to be taken is network and supplementary service dependent.

4.5.2.3.1 *Supplementary service being invoked during call establishment*

The network shall take one of the following actions:

i) In-band tones or announcements are applied. If a SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE message has not already been sent, the network shall send a CALL PROCEEDING message to the user, indicating the B-channel to be used and including the Progress indicator information element with progress descriptor No. 8, *In-band information or appropriate pattern is now available.*

   If a SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE message has already been sent, the network shall send a PROGRESS message to the user, including the Progress indicator information element with the progress descriptor No. 8, *In-band information or appropriate pattern is now available.*

   The network may prompt the user using the procedures as specified in § 4.5.2.2 to re-input the required information. Otherwise, after the in-band tone or announcement has been applied, the call reference shall be cleared by either the user initiating call clearing or the network initiating call clearing at the expiry of a tone or announcement timer. Both the network and the user shall use the clearing procedures as specified in Recommendation Q.931, § 5.3.

ii) No in-band tones or announcements are to be applied. The call reference shall be cleared by the network initiating call clearing procedures as specified in Recommendation Q.931, § 5.3.

4.5.2.3.2 *Supplementary service being invoked from the active state or during the call clearing phase*

The network shall take one of the following actions:

i) In-band tones or announcements are applied. The network may prompt the user using the procedures as specified in § 4.5.2.2 to re-input the request. Otherwise, depending on the specific supplementary service being invoked, the call shall either be cleared or remain in the same call state. In the case where the call is cleared, clearing shall occur after the in-band tone or announcement has been applied. Clearing shall occur either by the user initiating call clearing or by the network initiating call clearing at the expiry of a tone or announcement timer. Both the network and the user shall use the clearing procedures as specified in Recommendation Q.931, § 5.3.

ii) No in-band tones or announcements are to be applied. Depending on the specific supplementary service being invoked, the call shall either be cleared or remain in the same call state. In the case where the call is to be cleared, the call reference shall be cleared by the network initiating call clearing using the procedures as specified in Recommendation Q.931, § 5.3. If the call remains in the same call state, the user may be informed that the supplementary service request was unsuccessful by the network sending an INFORMATION message in accordance with § 4.5.2.1, item 3).

4.6 *Procedures at the remote interface*

The Display and/or Signal information elements can be used for the purpose of providing notification to the remote user from the network. In this case, however, this information is used simply for the purpose of informing the human user, and no automatic reaction to the received information is to be performed by the user's equipment itself.

5 Feature key management protocol

The Feature key management protocol is a mechanism allowing users to invoke network supplementary services. As these are stimulus procedures, the protocol elements do not, in and of themselves, identify the service invoked. To determine the service invoked requires knowledge of the user's service profile maintained in the network. No call state changes directly occur by these procedures.

The Feature key management protocol is based on two information elements: Feature activation and Feature indication. The Feature activation information element is the means by which a user requests a supplementary service. The Feature activation information element contains a feature identifier number which the network then maps to the corresponding service as indicated by that user's service profile. The user's equipment need not have any knowledge of what service is being indicated by the feature identifier number and the user may send a feature request at any time.

Feature indication is the means by which a response to a feature activation is indicated by the network. The feature identifier number correlates the network's response with a user's request and/or an indicator associated with a user's equipment. The Feature indication information element also contains a status indicator. The status indicator indicates the status of the requested service and may be used by the user's equipment as appropriate with its man-machine interface.

5.1 *Messages*

The Feature activation and Feature indication information elements may be present in several of the messages defined in Recommendation Q.931. The Feature activation information element may appear in the following messages in the user-to-network direction:

a) SETUP

b) INFORMATION.

The Feature indication information element may be sent in the network-to-user direction in the following messages:

a) SETUP

b) SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE

c) CONNECT

d) CALL PROCEEDING

e) ALERTING

f) INFORMATION

g) DISCONNECT

h) RELEASE

i) RELEASE COMPLETE.

5.2 *Procedures*

5.2.1 *Assumptions and restrictions*

a) These procedures assume that only one Feature activation request will appear in a message.

b) The phrase "call associated services" used herein is defined as services which act upon or relate to an existing call (as defined by the existence of a call reference).

c) These procedures are used for the invocation of supplementary services which relate to predefined specific bearer capabilities and/or are context dependent. Hence the capability to include protocol elements to indicate the bearer capability that the supplementary service is to act upon is not provided.

5.2.2 *Invocation of supplementary services*

The user may request a feature by including a Feature activation information element in the messages defined in § 5.1. If the INFORMATION message is used, it may be sent at any time. The user will indicate the desired feature by specifying the appropriate value in a feature identifier number.

5.2.2.1 *Determination of call reference in the INFORMATION message*

When the Feature activation information element is sent in the INFORMATION message, then the following rules apply:

a) if no call references exist, then the dummy call reference must be used (for this non-call associated service type);

b) if a call reference(s) has been established, then that value may be used regardless of whether the service type is call associated or non-call associated;

c) if a call reference(s) has been established, the dummy call reference may be used only if the service type is non-call associated. If the service type is call associated, then the appropriate call reference must be used. An exception to this rule is when only one call is established. In this instance it is permissible for the user to use the dummy call reference for either service type.

This is summarized in Figure 5-1/Q.932.

Service type	No calls exist	Call(s) exist
Non-call associated	Use dummy call reference	Use dummy or active call reference
Call associated	Error; not allowed	Use an active call reference (Note)

Note – The dummy call reference value may be used if only one call is established.

FIGURE 5-1/Q.932

Use of the call reference in an INFORMATION message

It is always correct for the user's equipment to use the dummy call reference when no calls exist, or to use an established call reference if one exists, independent of the service type.

5.2.3 *Network responses*

The network may respond to a Feature activation request in several ways. This action will be supplementary service and network specific.

5.2.3.1 *Normal responses*

5.2.3.1.1 *Return of a Feature indication*

The network may return a Feature indication information element in an INFORMATION message or any other appropriate call control message as defined in § 5.1. The feature indication may or may not have the same feature identifier number as was present in the original feature activation request. The status indicator will be provided as appropriate to the specific supplementary service requested.

5.2.3.1.2 *Prompting for further information*

The network may prompt the user for more information. When in the overlap sending state, it may do so using the information request procedures (described in Annex B).

The user's response shall follow normal overlap sending procedures as defined in Recommendation Q.931. As a network option, the information request procedures described in Annex B of this Recommendation may be used to prompt the user for additional information related to a given service request.

5.2.3.1.3 *Implicit response*

The network, under certain situations, may not return any explicit indication to the user after a feature activation request. In this case the response is implicit, such as the acknowledgement inherent in providing the service.

5.2.3.1.4 *Return of Signal, Cause, or Display information elements*

The network may return any combination of Signal, Cause, or Display information elements in conjunction with the responses as described in § 5.2.3.1. The use of these information elements is supplementary service and network specific. Coding and the appropriate messages that may contain these information elements are as defined in Recommendation Q.931.

5.2.3.2 *Responses during error conditions*

When an error condition exists (as defined in § 5.2.5), the network may:

a) Respond with one or more of the following options:
   1) return a Feature indication information element;
   2) prompt for further information (see Annex B);
   3) provide an implicit response; or
   4) return Signal, Cause, or Display information elements.

b) Ignore the Feature activation request and not respond at all.

c) Clear appropriate existing calls in conjunction with the above actions.

5.2.4 *General aspects*

5.2.4.1 *Use of Feature indication information elements independent of a feature request*

The network may choose to send Feature indication information at any time independent of the status of any call(s). Multiple Feature indication information elements may be returned in an INFORMATION message or in an appropriate call control message if more than one indicator is to be updated.

5.2.4.2 *Deactivation procedures*

When explicitly deactivating a supplementary service, two methods may be used:

a) sending of a feature activation request with the same feature identifier may deactivate the supplementary service. Some supplementary services may be "toggled" on and off;

b) sending of a feature activation request with a different feature identifier which is explicitly defined (between the user and network) as the deactivator for that particular supplementary service.

5.2.4.3 *Clearing of a call*

If a Feature activation information element is sent using the call reference of an active call, and that call is cleared for some reason, then there does not exist a call reference with which to correlate the feature indication. If a Feature indication information element is to be returned, then one of the following options may be used:

a) the network may send a Feature indication information element in one of the call clearing messages (i.e., DISCONNECT, RELEASE, or RELEASE COMPLETE);

b) the network may send a Feature indication information element in an INFORMATION message after clearing has occurred using the dummy call reference.

5.2.5 *Error conditions*

5.2.5.1 *Invalid feature activation request*

If a user requests a feature using an invalid feature identifier number, the network may take actions specified in § 5.2.3.2 as appropriate. An invalid feature identifier number is one in which the user has not subscribed to a corresponding service, or the value is not understood by the service provider (e.g., out of range).

5.2.5.2 *Invalid call reference*

If a user violates the use of the call reference as stated in § 5.2.2.1, the network should not provide the service and should respond as indicated in § 5.2.3.2.

5.2.5.3 *Sending of multiple feature activation requests*

If a sequence of feature activation requests is received in separate messages so rapidly that the network cannot respond to the first feature activation request prior to receiving a subsequent feature activation request, the network may take one of the following actions:

a) act upon all feature activation requests by returning multiple Feature indication information elements (or other responses as detailed in § 5.2.3.1). These may be sent in a single message or in multiple messages;

b) act upon the first feature activation request by returning a single response. This response should correspond to the first feature activation request. Feature activation requests after the first request are discarded and ignored by the network.

The determination of which action to take is network and supplementary service specific.

6 Functional protocol

6.1 *General*

6.1.1 *Introduction*

This section specifies the functional signalling procedures for the control of supplementary services at the user-network interface. This generic protocol utilizes functions and services provided by Recommendations Q.930 [5] and Q.931 [4] basic call control procedures and the functions of the data link layer as defined in Recommendations Q.920 [6]/Q.921 [3].

6.1.2 *Scope of the procedures*

The procedures defined in § 6 specify the basic methodology for the control (e.g., invocation, notification, cancellation, etc.) of supplementary services. The procedures are independent of whether or not the user-network interface is a basic or primary rate interface.

6.1.3 *Categories of procedures*

Two categories of procedures are defined for the functional signalling for supplementary services. The first category, called the separate message approach, utilizes separate message types to indicate a desired function. The HOLD and RETRIEVE set of messages are identified for this category.

The second category, called the common information element procedure, utilizes the Facility information element and applies only to supplementary services that do not require synchronization of resources between the user and the network.

Both categories are specified in a symmetrical manner and can be signalled both in the network-to-user and the user-to-network directions.

6.1.4 *Supplementary service functions*

The control of supplementary services by either the network or the user includes the following cases:

a) the invocation of supplementary services during the establishment of a call;

b) the invocation of supplementary services during the clearing of a call;

c) the invocation of call related supplementary services during the active state of a call;

d) the invocation or registration of supplementary services independent from an active call;

e) the invocation of multiple, different supplementary services within a single message;

f) the invocation of supplementary services related to different calls;

g) cancellation of invoked supplementary services and notification to the initiator of the supplementary service.

The correlation of a call related supplementary service and the call which it modifies is provided by use of the call reference [cases a), b), c), e), f) and g) listed above].

The correlation of call independent supplementary service invocations and their responses, is provided by the combination of the call reference of the message containing the Facility information element and the invoke identifier present within the Facility information element itself [refer to cases d), e) and g)].

The identification of different supplementary service invocations within one single message is provided by the invoke identifier of the corresponding Facility information element [refer to cases e) and g)]. The identification of supplementary service invocations related to different calls is provided by different messages with the corresponding call reference of the appropriate call [refer to case f)], i.e., different call reference values are used to identify each call individually.

6.2 *Separate messages category*

The messages defined in this section are specified as separate functional messages for invoking specific functions which require changes of the resources and auxiliary state and also require synchronization of the peer-to-peer state machines. Therefore, these functions cannot be performed in conjunction with the call establishment and clearing procedures but may be used in conjunction with various supplementary services. The functions of these messages are not to be duplicated or overlapped by those of the Facility information element.

The following individual messages are defined:

HOLD

HOLD ACKNOWLEDGE

HOLD REJECT

RETRIEVE

RETRIEVE ACKNOWLEDGE

RETRIEVE REJECT.

6.2.1 *Hold and Retrieve functions*

The Hold function is used to put an existing call which is in the establishment or in the active phase in the Call Held auxiliary state. By default, it reserves the B-channel in use (if any) or any other B-channel (if none was already reserved) for that user which is identified by a Connection Endpoint Suffix (CES), as defined in Recommendation Q.921. In addition, the call reference of the held call shall be retained for possible subsequent call retrieval and channel reconnection.

As an option, based on a subscription arrangement between the user and the service provider, the B-channel may be released for subsequent re-use by the network for another call.

On receipt of a HOLD message the user or the network shall return a HOLD ACKNOWLEDGE message, provided that the requested function can be performed. The network disconnects any B-channel allocated to the call in progress or active when putting that call in the Call Held auxiliary state.

Note 1 – Generally, only one B-channel is reserved for each user having put one (or more) call(s) on hold. However, as a subscription option, a network may reserve more than one B-channel to a user.

Note 2 – Enhancements to the procedures may be required for users requesting the non-reservation of the B-channel, on a per call basis.

The HOLD ACKNOWLEDGE message puts the call in the held auxiliary state and indicates that the Hold function has been performed. The HOLD REJECT message indicates that the hold request was denied and returns the call to the condition it was in prior to the hold request. The HOLD REJECT message contains the Cause information element with e.g., cause No. 29, *Facility rejected*, or No. 50, *Requested facility not subscribed*, or No. 69, *Requested facility not implemented*.

The Retrieve function reconnects the user to the requested B-channel. The RETRIEVE message requests that a call be retrieved. The RETRIEVE ACKNOWLEDGE message indicates that the Retrieve function has been performed. The RETRIEVE REJECT message indicates that the retrieve request was denied. The RETRIEVE REJECT message contains the Cause information element with e.g., cause No. 44, *Requested channel not available*, or No. 34, *no channel available*.

The HOLD and RETRIEVE families of message may be used in a symmetrical manner.

6.2.2 *Hold procedures*

The Hold function should be invoked in association with an existing call (i.e., during the establishment or active phase of a call).

The invocation of the Hold function does not affect the existing Recommendation Q.931 call states but does affect the auxiliary state. The request for placing a call on hold places the auxiliary state in the Hold Request state. The responding entity will acknowledge this request with a HOLD ACKNOWLEDGE message if this operation was successful. This will result in the auxiliary state being put in the Call Held state. If the requested Hold function cannot be obtained, then a HOLD REJECT message will be returned with the appropriate cause. This will result in the auxiliary state returning to the Idle state.

6.2.3 *Retrieve procedures*

The Retrieve function is requested by sending a RETRIEVE message. This message may be sent while the auxiliary state is in the Call Held state.

The RETRIEVE message may indicate a preferred, any, or exclusive channel. Procedures for the use of the Channel identification information element are as defined for basic call control. Upon the sending of the RETRIEVE message, the auxiliary state of the initiator's terminal would be the Retrieve Request state.

If the Retrieve request is successful, the RETRIEVE ACKNOWLEDGE message will be returned with the selected B-channel indicated. The initiator should not assume that call retrieval has occurred until it receives this message. The auxiliary state would then return to the Idle state.

If the Retrieve request is not successful, the RETRIEVE REJECT message will be returned with an appropriate cause. The auxiliary state machine would then remain in the Call Held state.

6.2.4 *Auxiliary states for hold and retrieve*

It is possible to place a call on hold in the Outgoing Call Proceeding, Call Delivered, or the Active state. The concept of dimensioned state space is being introduced to ensure state synchronization between the user and the network. This concept suggests dimensioning the call state machine into two dimensions. In other words, there would be two states associated with each call. The first would be a Recommendation Q.931 call state and the second would be an auxiliary state associated with Hold. Suppose the dimensioned state space is represented by two coordinates: one is a Recommendation Q.931 call state coordinate and the other is a Hold coordinate. If a Recommendation Q.931 call state transition occurs, the former coordinate is updated. If a call is put on hold, the hold coordinate is updated. When the held call is reconnected, the hold coordinate is again updated.

There are four auxiliary states associated with the Hold and Retrieve functions:

i) Idle;

ii) Hold Request – A request has been made for the Hold function;

iii) Call Held – The call is held;

iv) Retrieve Request – A request has been made for the Retrieve function.

6.2.5 *An example of dimensioned state space*

Suppose a call is in the Outgoing Call Proceeding state. The dimensioned state space would be:

(Outgoing Call Proceeding, Idle)

Now the user requests the Hold function. The dimensioned state space would become:

(Outgoing Call Proceeding, Hold Request)

The call is then put on Hold. The user becomes aware of this upon receiving the HOLD ACKNOWLEDGE message from the network. The dimensioned state space would now be:

(Outgoing Call Proceeding, Call Held)

The user may receive subsequent call progress messages changing the dimensioned state space to:

(Active, Call Held)

Now the user requests the Retrieve function. The dimensioned state space would become:

(Active, Retrieve Request)

When a call is reconnected, the dimensioned state space would be:

(Active, Idle)

6.3 *Common information element category*

The Common information element category applies only to supplementary services where no synchronization of resources is required between the two signalling entities. However, the user equipment is required to have the capability to track the operation of the supplementary service procedures through various Recommendation Q.931 call states. The procedures are symmetrical and applicable to both user-network and NT2-NT2 applications.

A REGISTER, a FACILITY or an existing Recommendation Q.931 call control message is used to carry the Facility information element which requests the desired supplementary service.

This functional procedure provides a flexible and open ended approach to the provision of supplementary service protocols and:

- allows new services to be easily introduced;
- allows multiple supplementary service invocations within one message;
- supports supplementary services with a large number of variants without a proliferation of new messages;
- supports non-call associated supplementary services.

In addition, the use of the FACILITY message allows the actions and events related to supplementary services to be clearly separated from those associated with basic call control, hence providing improved stability to the basic call control procedures of Recommendation Q.931.

6.3.1 *Call related supplementary service procedures*

For call related supplementary service procedures initiated at call establishment or call clearing, the procedures for call control as specified in §§ 5 and 6 of Recommendation Q.931 are utilized. This enables, for example, the originating user to send a supplementary service invocation within a SETUP message and to receive from the remote user a return result, return error, or reject component type in the Facility information element within an ALERTING message, CONNECT message, or any other appropriate message from the service provider. If for some reason the network or user is not able to process the call related invocation of a supplementary service contained in an outgoing SETUP message, then the following options apply:

1) the network or user may clear the call request and reject the supplementary service invocation by means of a RELEASE COMPLETE message which contains the Cause information element and a return error or reject component type with the appropriate parameters in the Facility information element;
2) the network or user may continue to process the call request according to normal Recommendation Q.931 call control procedures, and reject the supplementary service invocation by including a return error or reject component type with an appropriate data element in the Facility information element by means of a FACILITY message or in any appropriate Recommendation Q.931 message;
3) the network or user may continue to process the call request according to the Recommendation Q.931 call control procedures, and ignore the supplementary service invocation.

The option to be used depends on the individual supplementary service procedures, which are the subject of other Recommendations.

For call related supplementary service invocations during the Active state of a call, the FACILITY message is used for the exchange of the Facility information elements over the existing signalling connection. This signalling connection is identified by the call reference of the corresponding active call.

The call reference provides the means to correlate FACILITY messages belonging to the same signalling transaction. In the case of call related invocations, the call reference correlates with the appropriate call transaction. When a supplementary service affects more than one call, different call references are used to identify each call individually. This implies the use of different FACILITY messages in order to manage each call separately.

If a call related FACILITY message is sent using the call reference of a call in progress or of an active call, and this call is cleared due to call related causes, then the call reference may not be cleared simultaneously in call cases.

Depending upon the supplementary service invoked, one of the following will occur:

- the network or user may retain both the connection and the call reference association and may send a response within a Facility information element in a FACILITY message prior to the initiation of the normal call clearing procedures; or
- the network or user may send a response within a Facility information element in the first clearing message (i.e., DISCONNECT, RELEASE, or RELEASE COMPLETE message).

6.3.2 *Call independent supplementary service procedures*

For supplementary service procedures independent of an active call, the initiating side must first establish a reliable data link connection between the network and the user according to the data link services described in Recommendation Q.921. Once the data link connection is established the user or the network starts the establishment of the signalling connection by transferring a REGISTER message across the user-network interface. This signalling connection is identified by the call reference associated with the REGISTER message. The requested supplementary service is identified by the operation value within the Facility information element. This signalling connection may be released by the exchange of return result, return error or reject component types contained in the Facility information element within a RELEASE COMPLETE message.

Examples of message exchange for supplementary service control for various scenarios is described by means of arrow diagrams in Appendix I.

To assign a call reference value and convey the supplementary service invocation, a REGISTER message with an optional Facility information element is used. The Facility information element present either in the REGISTER message or in a subsequent message identifies the supplementary service involved and the type of operation (i.e., invoke, return result, return error or reject component). One of the following will occur:

1) When the REGISTER message contains a Facility information element and the requested service is available, a FACILITY message containing the Facility information element may be returned. One or more exchanges of FACILITY messages may subsequently occur. To terminate the service interaction and release the call reference value, a RELEASE COMPLETE message is sent by either side of the interface. The RELEASE COMPLETE message may also contain the Facility information element.

2) If the content of the Facility information element is not understood, then a FACILITY message or a RELEASE COMPLETE message with the Facility information element is returned with the Reject component type. When the rejection has been returned in a FACILITY message, the Facility information element can be re-sent in another FACILITY message or the request can be cleared and the call reference value released with a RELEASE COMPLETE message.

3) If the content of the Facility information element is understood, but the supplementary service request cannot be provided, then a FACILITY message or a RELEASE COMPLETE message with the Facility information element is returned with the component return error. When the rejection has been returned in a FACILITY message, the Facility information element can be re-sent in another FACILITY message or the request can be cleared and the call reference value released with a RELEASE COMPLETE message.

6.3.3 *Responses to multiple supplementary service invocations*

The possible correlation of responses to multiple supplementary service invocations is the subject of future Recommendations.

6.3.4 *Coding of the call reference*

For general rules, format and coding of call reference values, § 4.3 of Recommendation Q.931 is applicable. For the functional supplementary service control, the dummy call reference is not applicable.

7 **Message functional definitions and content**

This section should be read in conjunction with § 3 of Recommendation Q.931. All messages are additional to those defined in that section and the following tables should be interpreted according to the introduction of § 3 of Recommendation Q.931.

7.1 *Messages for supplementary service control*

Table 7-1/Q.932 summarizes the messages specific to supplementary service control procedures.

TABLE 7-1/Q.932

Messages specific to supplementary service control

	Reference
FACILITY	7.1.1
HOLD	7.1.2
HOLD ACKNOWLEDGE	7.1.3
HOLD REJECT	7.1.4
REGISTER	7.1.5
RETRIEVE	7.1.6
RETRIEVE ACKNOWLEDGE	7.1.7
RETRIEVE REJECT	7.1.8

7.1.1 *FACILITY*

This message may be sent to request or acknowledge a supplementary service. The supplementary service to be invoked, and its associated parameters, are specified in the Facility information element (see Table 7-2/Q.932).

For the use of this message, see § 6.

TABLE 7-2/Q.932

FACILITY message content

Message type: FACILITY
Significance: local (Note 1)
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2/Q.931	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3/Q.931	both	M	2 - *
Message type	8.1/Q.932	both	M	1
Facility	8.2/Q.932	both	M	8 - *
Display	4.5/Q.931	n → u	O (Note 2)	(Note 3)

M Mandatory
O Optional

Note 1 – This message has local significance; however, it may carry information of global significance.

Note 2 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 3 – The minimum length is 2 octets. The maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

7.1.2 *HOLD*

This message is sent by the network or the user to request the hold function for an existing call (see Table 7-3/Q.932).

For the use of this message, see § 6.

TABLE 7-3/Q.932

HOLD message content

Message type: HOLD
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2/Q.931	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3/Q.931	both	M	2 - *
Message type	8.1/Q.932	both	M	1
Display	4.5/Q.931	n → u	O (Note 1)	(Note 2)

Note 1 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 2 – The minimum length is 2 octets. The maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

7.1.3 *HOLD ACKNOWLEDGE*

This message is sent by the network or the user to indicate that the hold function has been successfully performed (see Table 7-4/Q.932).

For the use of this message, see § 6.

TABLE 7-4/Q.932

HOLD ACKNOWLEDGE message content

Message type: HOLD ACKNOWLEDGE
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2/Q.931	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3/Q.931	both	M	2 - *
Message type	8.1/Q.932	both	M	1
Display	4.5/Q.931	n → u	O (Note 1)	(Note 2)

Note 1 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 2 – The minimum length is 2 octets. The maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

7.1.4 *HOLD REJECT*

This message is sent by the network or the user to indicate the denial of a request to hold a call (see Table 7-5/Q.932).

For the use of this message, see § 6.

TABLE 7-5/Q.932

HOLD REJECT message content

Message type: HOLD REJECT
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2/Q.931	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3/Q.931	both	M	2 - *
Message type	8.1/Q.932	both	M	1
Cause	4.5/Q.931	both	M	4 - 32
Display	4.5/Q.931	n → u	O (Note 1)	(Note 2)

Note 1 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 2 – The minimum length is 2 octets. The maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

7.1.5 *REGISTER*

This message is sent by the user or the network to assign a new call reference for non-call associated transactions (see Table 7-6/Q.932).

For the use of this message, see § 6.

TABLE 7-6/Q.932

REGISTER message content

Message type: REGISTER
Significance: local (Note 1)
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2/Q.931	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3/Q.931	both	M	2 - *
Message type	8.1/Q.932	both	M	1
Facility	8.2/Q.932	both	O (Note 4)	2 - *
Display	4.5/Q.931	n → u	O (Note 2)	(Note 3)

Note 1 – This message has local significance; however, it may carry information of global significance.

Note 2 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 3 – The minimum length is 2 octets. The maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

Note 4 – Included if the network or the user provides supplementary service information.

7.1.6 *RETRIEVE*

This message is sent by the network or the user to request the retrieval of a held call (see Table 7-7/Q.932). For the use of this message, see § 6.

TABLE 7-7/Q.932

RETRIEVE message content

Message type: RETRIEVE
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2/Q.931	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3/Q.931	both	M	2 - *
Message type	8.1/Q.932	both	M	1
Channel identification	4.5/Q.931	both	O (Note 1)	2 - *
Display	4.5/Q.931	n → u	O (Note 2)	(Note 3)

Note 1 – If not included, its absence is interpreted as any channel acceptable.

Note 2 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 3 – The minimum length is 2 octets. The maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

7.1.7 *RETRIEVE ACKNOWLEDGE*

This message is sent by the network or the user to indicate that the retrieve function has been successfully performed (see Table 7-8/Q.932).

For the use of this message, see § 6.

TABLE 7-8/Q.932

RETRIEVE ACKNOWLEDGE message content

Message type: RETRIEVE ACKNOWLEDGE
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2/Q.931	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3/Q.931	both	M	2 - *
Message type	8.1/Q.932	both	M	1
Channel identification	4.5/Q.931	both	O (Note 1)	2 - *
Display	4.5/Q.931	n → u	O (Note 2)	(Note 3)

Note 1 – Mandatory in all cases except when the sender accepts the specific B-channel indicated in the RETRIEVE message. If included, a channel is indicated and specified as exclusive.

Note 2 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 3 – The minimum length is 2 octets. The maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

7.1.8 *RETRIEVE REJECT*

This message is sent by the network or the user to indicate the inability to perform the requested retrieve function (see Table 7-9/Q.932).

For the use of this message, see § 6.

TABLE 7-9/Q.932

RETRIEVE REJECT message content

Message type: RETRIEVE REJECT
Significance: local
Direction: both

Information element	Reference	Direction	Type	Length
Protocol discriminator	4.2/Q.931	both	M	1
Call reference	4.3/Q.931	both	M	2 - *
Message type	8.1/Q.932	both	M	1
Cause	4.5/Q.931	both	M	4 - 32
Display	4.5/Q.931	n → u	O (Note 1)	(Note 2)

Note 1 – Included if the network provides information that can be presented to the user.

Note 2 – The minimum length is 2 octets. The maximum length is network dependent and is either 34 or 82 octets.

8 General message format and information element coding

This section should be read in conjunction with § 4 of Recommendation Q.931 and contains the coding of the information elements specifically used by the procedures described in this Recommendation.

8.1 *Message type*

The following additional codings are defined in Table 8-1/Q.932 for message type.

8.2 *Other information elements*

These information elements are coded according to the general coding rules as defined in § 4.5.1 of Recommendation Q.931.

Note – The value used for Protocol discriminator shall be as defined for messages used in Recommendation Q.931.

Table 8-2/Q.932 contains the codepoints allocated to the information elements defined in this Recommendation.

8.2.1 *Endpoint identifier*

The purpose of the Endpoint identifier information element is:

- to indicate the user service identifier and terminal identifier for the purpose of terminal identification; and
- to indicate a specific terminal for the purpose of terminal selection.

(See Annex A for the associated procedures.)

The Endpoint identifier information element is coded as shown in Figure 8-1/Q.932 and Table 8-3/Q.932.

The default maximum length of the Endpoint identifier information element is four octets.

8.2.2 *Facility*

This section defines only the structure and the coding of the Facility information element. Specific procedures that will be required are subject to further study in relation to future Recommendations on specific supplementary services.

The purpose of the Facility information element is to indicate the invocation and operation of supplementary services, identified by the corresponding operation value within the Facility information element. The Facility information element is defined in Figures 8-2/Q.932 to 8-5/Q.932 and Tables 8-4/Q.932 to 8-20/Q.932.

The Facility information element may be repeated in a given message.

The maximum length of the Facility information element is application dependent consistent with the maximum length of the message.

8.2.2.1 *Component (Octets 4, etc.)*

This specification makes use of and is a subset of Recommendations X.208 [7] (Specification of Abstract Syntax Notation One (ANS.1)), X.209 [8] (Specification of basic encoding rules for Abstract Syntax Notation One (ANS.1)), X.219 [9] (Remote operations: model, notation and service definition) and X.229 [10] (Remote operations: protocol specification). Based on Recommendations X.208 and X.209, the following specific encoding apply.

A component is a sequence of data elements each of which is made up of a tag, a length and a contents. The component type is indicated by the first octet of the Facility information element component. The component types defined for the Facility information element are:

- Invoke
- Return result
- Return error
- Reject.

Note 1 – Recommendation X.229 which defines the Remote Operations Service Element (ROSE) uses the term Application Protocol Data Unit (APDU) in place of component. However since this protocol element may be applied to the support of network layer services and of application layer services, the term "component" is more appropriate in the context of this Recommendation.

Tables 8-5/Q.932 to 8-8/Q.932 show the structure of these component types.

Note 2 – See Appendix III for a general description of the component coding and formatting principles.

TABLE 8-1/Q.932

Q.932 message types

Bits 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1	
0 0 1 - - - - -	(Q.931 call information phase message group)
0 0 1 0 0	HOLD
0 1 0 0 0	HOLD ACKNOWLEDGE
1 0 0 0 0	HOLD REJECT
1 0 0 0 1	RETRIEVE
1 0 0 1 1	RETRIEVE ACKNOWLEDGE
1 0 1 1 1	RETRIEVE REJECT
0 1 1 - - - - -	(Q.931 miscellaneous message group)
0 0 0 1 0	FACILITY
0 0 1 0 0	REGISTER

TABLE 8-2/Q.932

Information elements specific to supplementary service control

Bits 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1		Reference §	Maximum length (octets) (Note 1)
0 : : : : : : :	*Variable length information elements:*		
0 0 1 1 1 0 0	Facility	8.2.2	Note 3
0 1 1 0 0 1 0	Information request	8.2.5	3
0 1 1 1 0 0 0	Feature activation	8.2.3	4
0 1 1 1 0 0 1	Feature indication	8.2.4	5
0 1 1 1 0 1 0	Service profile identification	8.2.6	32
0 1 1 1 0 1 1	Endpoint identifier	8.2.1	4
All other values are reserved (Note 2)			

Note 1 – The length limits described for the variable length information elements below take into account only the present CCITT standardized coding values. Future enhancements and extensions to this Recommendation will not be restricted to these limits.

Note 2 – The reserved values with bits 5-8 coded "0000" are for future information elements for which comprehension by the receiver is required (see § 5.8.7.1 of Recommendation Q.931)

Note 3 – The maximum length of the Facility information element is application dependent consistent with the maximum length of the message.

Bits								
8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Octets
	Endpoint identifier							
0	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	1
	Information element identifier							
Length of endpoint identifier contents								2
1 Ext.	User service identifier							3
1 Ext.	Interpreter	Terminal identifier						4*

* This octet is optional.

FIGURE 8-1/Q.932

Endpoint identifier information element

TABLE 8-3/Q.932

Endpoint identifier information element

User service identifier (USID) (octet 3) The USID is a selection parameter which identifies a group of terminals on an interface which share a common service profile and which may be addressed together. Upon receipt of this element, a terminal will consider itself as being addressed if the value received matches its stored value or if the value received is coded as all "1"s (127). When USID is coded as 127, octet 4 is not used.
Interpreter (octet 4) Bit 7 of octet 4 indicates how a terminal is to interpret the TID field received. When set to "0", the terminal is being addresses only if the TID matches (see TID definition following). When set to "1", the terminal is being addressed only if the TID received is not 63 and does not match. In the user-to-network direction, this bit is set to "0".
Terminal identifier (TID) (octet 4) The TID is a selection parameter which identifies a single terminal within a group designated by a USID value. For USID = 127, the TID does not apply. Upon receipt to this field, a terminal will consider itself addressed if one of the following is true: – the interpreter bit = "0" and the value received matches the terminal's stored value; – the interpreter bit = "1" and the value received does not match the terminal's stored value; – the value received is coded all "1"s (63).

<table>
<tr><td colspan="8" align="center">Bits</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td>Octets</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="7" align="center">Facility
0 0 1 1 1 0 0
Information element identifier</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8" align="center">Length of facility contents</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
Ext.</td><td colspan="2" align="center">0 0
Spare</td><td colspan="5" align="center">Service discriminator</td><td>3</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8" align="center">Component(s) (Note)</td><td>4, etc</td></tr>
</table>

Note – One or more components may be included depending on specific service requirements.

FIGURE 8-2/Q.932

Facility information element

TABLE 8-4/Q.932

Facility information element

Service discriminator

Bits 5 4 3 2 1	
1 0 0 0 1	Discriminator for supplementary service applications

All other values are reserved and their usage is the subject of other Recommendations.

TABLE 8-5/Q.932

Invoke component

Invoke component	Reference §	Mandatory indication	Octet group
Component type tag Component length (Note 1)	8.2.2.3 8.2.2.2	Mandatory	4 5
Invoke identifier tag Invoke identifier length Invoke identifier	8.2.2.4 8.2.2.2	Mandatory	6 7 8
Linked identifier tag Linked identifier length Linked identifier	8.2.2.4 8.2.2.2	Optional	9 10 11
Operation value tag Operation value length Operation value	8.2.2.5 8.2.2.2 (Note 3)	Mandatory	12 13 14
Argument (Note 2)	8.2.2.8 (Note 3)	Optional	15, etc.

Note 1 – The component length is coded to indicate the number of octets contained in the component (excluding the component type tag and the component length octets).

Note 2 – This is a parameter of the invoke component type.

Note 3 – The coding is supplementary service specific and the subject of other Recommendations.

TABLE 8-6/Q.932

Return result component

Return result component	Reference §	Mandatory indication	Octet group
Component type tag Component length (Note 3)	8.2.2.3 8.2.2.2	Mandatory	4 5
Invoke identifier tag Invoke identifier length Invoke identifier	8.2.2.4 8.2.2.2	Mandatory	6 7 8
Sequence tag Sequence length (Note 4)	8.2.2.8 8.2.2.2	Optional (Note 1)	9 10
Operation value tag Operation value length Operation value	8.2.2.5 8.2.2.2 (Note 6)	Optional (Note 2)	11 12 13
Result (Note 5)	8.2.2.8 (Note 6)	Optional	14, etc.

Note 1 – If the return result component does not include any result, then the sequence and operational value shall be omitted. Table 8-19/Q.932 indicates the encoding for the sequence tag.

Note 2 – If a result is included, then the operation value is mandatory and is the first element in the sequence.

Note 3 – The component length is coded to indicate the number of octets contained in the component (excluding the component type tag and the component length octets).

Note 4 – The sequence length is coded to indicate the number of octets contained in the sequence (excluding the sequence type tag and the sequence length octets).

Note 5 – This is parameter of the return result component type.

Note 6 – The coding is supplementary service specific and the subject of other Recommendations.

TABLE 8-7/Q.932

Return error component

Return error component	Reference §	Mandatory indication	Octet group
Component type tag Component length (Note 1)	8.2.2.3 8.2.2.2	Mandatory	4 5
Invoke identifier tag Invoke identifier length Invoke identifier	8.2.2.4 8.2.2.2	Mandatory	6 7 8
Error value tag Error value length Error value	8.2.2.6 8.2.2.2	Mandatory	9 10 11
Parameter (Note 2)	8.2.2.8 (Note 3)	Optional	12, etc.

Note 1 – The component length is coded to indicate the number of octets contained in the component (excluding the component type tag and the component length octets).

Note 2 – This is parameter of the return component type.

Note 3 – The coding is supplementary service specific and the subject of other Recommendations.

TABLE 8-8/Q.932

Reject component

Reject component	Reference	Mandatory indication	Octet group
Component type tag Component length (Note)	8.2.2.3 8.2.2.2	Mandatory	4 5
Invoke identifier tag Invoke identifier length Invoke identifier	8.2.2.4 8.2.2.2	Mandatory	6 7 8
Problem tag Problem length Problem	8.2.2.7 8.2.2.2 8.2.2.7	Mandatory	9 10 11

Note – The component length is coded to indicate the number of octets contained in the component (excluding the component type tag and the component length octets).

8.2.2.2 *Length of each component or of their data elements*

Lengths up to 127 octets are coded using the short form of Recommendation X.209: bit 8 is set to zero and the remaining seven bits are a binary encoding of the length, with bit 1 the least significant bit. (This length encoding is identical to that of Recommendation Q.931 for lengths up to 127 octets.) This is illustrated in Figure 8-3/Q.932.

Bits

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
0	Length of contents MSB						LSB

FIGURE 8-3/Q.932

Format of the length field (long form)

If the length of the contents is greater than 127 octets, then the long form of the length of the contents is used. The long form length is from 2 to 127 octets long. Bit 8 of the first octet is coded 1, and bits 1 to 7 of the first octet encode a number one less than the size of the length in octets as an unsigned binary number whose MSB and LSB are bits 7 and 1, respectively. The length itself is encoded as an unsigned binary number whose MSB and LSB are bit 8 of the second octet and bit 1 of the last octet, respectively. This binary number should be encoded in the fewest possible octets, with no leading octets having the value 0. This is illustrated in Figure 8-4/Q.932.

Bits

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
1	(Length of field size) – 1 MSB						LSB
MSB			Length of contents				LSB

Note – The application of the indefinite form of the length is not precluded depending on future applications (see § III.3 of Appendix III).

FIGURE 8-4/Q.932

Format of the length field (long form)

8.2.2.3 *Component type tag*

The coding of the component type tag is shown in Table 8-9/Q.932.

TABLE 8-9/Q.932

Component type tag

Component type tag	Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
Invoke	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	1
Return result	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	0
Return error	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	1
Reject	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	0

8.2.2.4 *Component identifier tags*

An invoke identifier is used to identify an operation invocation and is reflected in the return result or return error that responds to it. An invoke may refer to another invoke through the linked identifier. When a protocol error occurs, the invoke identifier is reflected in the reject component, but if it is not available, a null is returned. Invoke and linked identifiers are one octet long. The null has zero length. The coding of the component identifier tags is shown in Table 8-10/Q.932.

TABLE 8-10/Q.932

Coding of component identifier tag

	Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
Invoke identifier	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0
Linked identifier	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Null	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1

8.2.2.5 *Operation value tag*

The operation value specifies the facility or supplementary service application and operation being requested. Values are encoded as integers. The value of the operation value is supplementary service specific and will be specified in future Recommendations which contain the protocol for individual supplementary services. The coding for the operation value tag is shown in Table 8-11/Q.932.

TABLE 8-11/Q.932

Coding of operation value tag

	Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
Operation value tag	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0

8.2.2.6 *Error value tag*

Operations report errors as specified for each individual operation. Values are encoded as integers. The coding for the error value tag is shown in Table 8-12/Q.932.

TABLE 8-12/Q.932

Coding of error value tag

	Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
Error value tag	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0

8.2.2.7 *Problem tag*

Protocol problems are indicated in groups. Table 8-13/Q.932 indicates the tags for these groups. The contents for each of these tags is indicated in Tables 8-14/Q.932 to 8-17/Q.932. The contents of these tags are defined in Table 8-18/Q.932.

TABLE 8-13/Q.932

Coding of problem tags

Problem	Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
General problem	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Invoke problem	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
Return result problem	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0
Return error problem	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	1

TABLE 8-14/Q.932

Coding of general problem

	Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
Unrecognized component	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Mistyped component	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
Badly structured component	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0

Note – ROSE uses the term application protocol data unit (APDU) in place of component.

TABLE 8-15/Q.932

Coding of invoke problem

	Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
Duplicate invocation	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Unrecognized operation	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
Mistyped argument	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0
Resource limitation	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1
Initiator releasing	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0
Unrecognized linked identifier	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
Linked response unexpected	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0
Unexpected child operation	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1

TABLE 8-16/Q.932

Coding of return result problem

	Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
Unrecognized invocation	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Result response unexpected	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
Mistyped result	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0

TABLE 8-17/Q.932

Coding of return error problem

	Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
Unrecognized invocation	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Error response unexpected	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
Unrecognized error	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0
Unexpected error	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1
Mistyped parameter	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0

TABLE 8-18/Q.932

Problem code definitions

General-problem	
– unrecognized-component	signifies that the type of the component, as evidenced by its type identifier, is not one of the four defined by Recommendation X.229 [10]
– mistyped-component	signifies that the structure of the component does not conform to Recommendation X.229
– badly-structured-component	signifies that the struture fo the component does not conform to the standard notation and encoding, defined in Recommendations X.208 [7] and X.209 [8]
Invoke-problem	
– duplicate-invocation	signifies that the invoke-identifier parameter violates the assignment rules of Recommendation X.219 [9]
– unrecognized-operation	signifies that the operation is not one of those agreed between the user and the network
– mistyped-argument	signifies that the type of the operation argument supplied is not that agreed between the user and the network
– resource-limitation	the performing user or network is not able to perform the invoked operation due to resource limitation
– initiator-releasing	the association-initiator is not willing to perform the invoked operation because it is about to attempt to release the application-association
– unrecognized-linked-identifier	signifies that there is no operation in progress with an invoke-identifier equal to the specified linked-identifier
– linked-response-unexpected	signifies that the invoked operation referred to by linked-identifier is not a parent-operation
– unexpected-child-operation	signifies that the invoked child-operation is not one that the invoked parent-operation referred to by the linked-identifier allows
Return-result – -roblem	
– unrecognized-invocation	signifies that no operation with the specified invoke-identifier is in progress
– result-response-unexpected	signifies that the invoke operation does not report a result
– mistyped-result	signifies that the type of the result parameter supplied is not that agreed between the user and the network
Return-error-problem	
– unrecognized-invocation	signifies that no operation with the specified invoke-identifier is in progress
– error-response-unexpected	signifies that the invoked operation does not report failure
– unrecognized-error	signifies that the reported error is not one of those agreed between the user and the network
– unexpected-error	signifies that the reported error is not one that the invoked operation may report
– mistyped-parameter	signifies that the type of the error parameters supplied is not that agreed between the user and the network

Note – The former definitions are adapted from §§ 7.4.4.2 and 7.5.4.2 of Recommendation X.229 (Remote operations: protocol specification).

8.2.2.8 *Parameters*

The parameters included with a component (i.e., the argument with an invoke, the result with a return result or the parameter with a return error) are indicated in the specification of the operation. They may include optional and default parameters. Parameters shall be one of the following:

- a sequence of parameters
- a set of parameters
- a specific parameter with its own tag
- nothing at all (i.e., absent).

When more than one parameter is required, they shall follow a sequence or set tag as specified in the specification of the operation. (The usage of the sequence and set tags is defined in Recommendations X.208/X.209.)

Sequences and sets of parameters may contain further sequences and sets as specified for the operation to be performed. Table 8-19/Q.932 indicates the coding of the sequence and set tags.

TABLE 8-19/Q.932

Coding of sequence and set tags

	Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
Sequence tag	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0
Set tag	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1

8.2.2.9 *Treatment of existing Recommendation Q.931 information elements as parameters*

Supplementary service protocol specifications are expected to require new parameters to be defined and to require existing Recommendation Q.931 information elements (Note 1).

New parameters shall be defined using Recommendation X.209 coding if they do not appear elsewhere in Q.931 messages.

Supplementary service protocol specifiers may elect to encapsulate one or more existing Recommendation Q.931 information elements within a Recommendation X.209 data element, thereby retaining the Recommendation Q.931 coding for these information elements. When this option is chosen, all the Recommendation Q.931 information elements should be grouped together as the content following the Recommendation Q.931 information elements tag. This is illustrated in Figure 8-5/Q.932. The tag is defined in Table 8-20/Q.932. This data element may appear by itself or as a member of a sequence or set as indicated in § 8.2.2.8.

Note 1 – Encapsulation of the Facility information element within Facility information elements shall not be used.

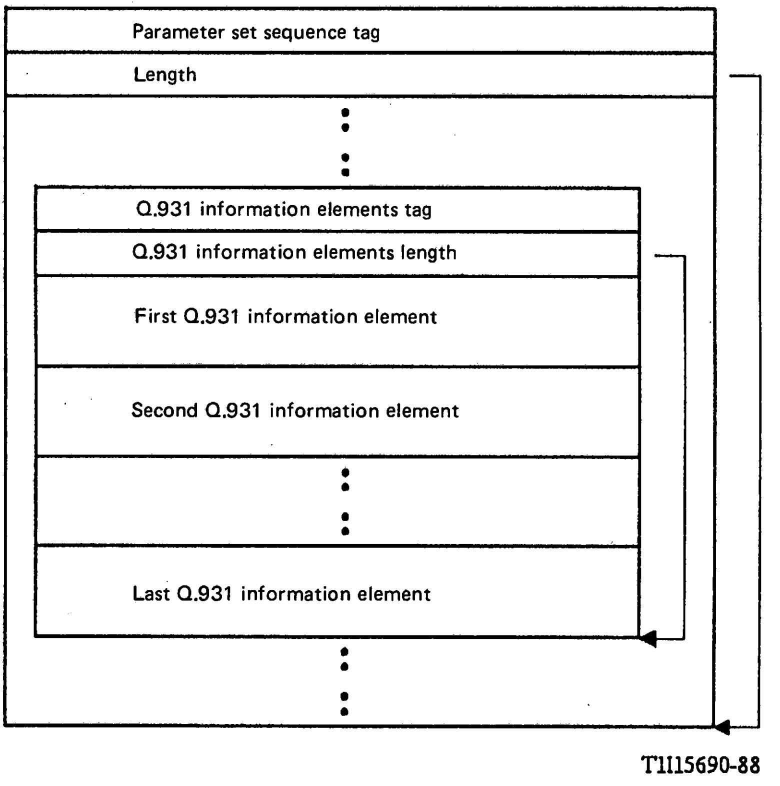


FIGURE 8-5/Q.932

Encapsulation of Q.931 information elements

TABLE 8-20/Q.932

Q.931 information elements tag

	Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
Q.931 information elements	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

Note – All other values are reserved but this approach may also be applied in the future to coding structures from other Recommendations by defining other tags as required.

8.2.3 *Feature activation*

The purpose of the Feature activation information element is to invoke a supplementary service as identified by the feature identifier number. The service associated with the feature identifier number is dependent on that particular user's service profile.

The maximum length of this information element is 4 octets.

The Feature activation information element is coded as shown in Figure 8-6/Q.932 and Table 8-21/Q.932.

<table>
<tr><td colspan="8" align="center">Bits</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td>Octets</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7" align="center">Feature activation
Information element identifier</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8" align="center">Length of feature activation contents</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>0/1
Ext.</td><td colspan="7" align="center">Feature identifier number</td><td>3</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
Ext.</td><td colspan="7" align="center">Feature identifier number (continuation)</td><td>3a</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 8-6/Q.932

Feature activation information element

TABLE 8-21/Q.932

Feature activation information element

Feature identifier number (octets 3 and 3a) The feature identifier number is a unique number assigned to a feature in a customer account that is coded as part of both the Feature activation and Feature indication information elements. This number identifies the feature that is being requested or updated. The association of a particular number to a particular feature may be different for each user. Bit 8 in octet 3 is used to extend the feature identifier field. If bit 8 is 0, then another octet follows; if bit 8 is 1, then octet 3 is the last octet. The identifier numbers for a one octet field range from 1 to 127. For a multi-octet field, the order of bit values progressively decrases as the octet number increases.

8.2.4 *Feature indication*

The purpose of the Feature indication information element is to allow the network to convey feature indications to the user regarding the status of a supplementary service.

The maximum length of this information element is 5 octets.

The coding of the Feature indication information element is shown in Figure 8-7/Q.932 and Table 8-22/Q.932.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="8">Bits</th><th></th></tr>
<tr><th>8</th><th>7</th><th>6</th><th>5</th><th>4</th><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th>Octets</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">0</td><td colspan="7">Feature indication</td><td rowspan="3">1</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">Information element identifier</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Length of feature indication contents</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>0/1
Ext.</td><td colspan="7">Feature identifier number</td><td>3</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
Ext.</td><td colspan="7">Feature identifier number (continuation)</td><td>3a</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0
Spare</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td colspan="4">Status indicator</td><td>4</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 8-7/Q.932

Feature indication information element

TABLE 8-22/Q.932

Feature indication information element

Feature identifier number (octets 3 and 3a)

These fields are coded as described in Table 8-21/Q.932.

Status indicator (octet 4)

The status indicator field identifies the current status of a supplementary service.

Bits 4 3 2 1	*Status*	*Meaning*	*Examples of possible user equipment implementation*
0 0 0 0	Deactivated	Feature is in the deactivated state	Lamp off
0 0 0 1	Activated	Feature is in the active state	Lamp steady on
0 0 1 0	Prompt	Feature prompt (waiting for user input)	Lamp steady flash
0 0 1 1	Pending	Feature is pending	Lamp steady wink

All other values are reserved.

8.2.5 *Information request*

The purpose of the Information request information element is to provide the capability for requesting additional information and signalling completion of the information request (see Annex B).

The Information request information element is coded as shown in Figure 8-8/Q.932 and Table 8-23/Q.932.

The default maximum length of the Information request information element is three octets.

<table>
<tr><td colspan="8">Bits</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td>Octets</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">Information request</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">Information element identifier</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Length of information request contents</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
Ext.</td><td colspan="2">Info. req. ind.</td><td colspan="5">Type of information</td><td>3</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 8-8/Q.932

Information request information element

TABLE 8-23/Q.932

Information request information element

Information request indicator (octet 3, bit 7)

Bit 7	
0	Information request completed
1	Prompt for additional information

Type of information (octet 3, bits 1-6)

Bits 6 5 4 3 2 1	
0 0 0 0 0 0	undefined
0 0 0 0 0 1	authorization code
0 0 0 0 1 0	address digits
0 0 0 0 1 1	terminal identification

All other values are reserved.

8.2.6 *Service profile identification*

The purpose of the Service profile identification information element is to allow the user to initiate automatic assignment of the user service identifier and terminal identifier (see Annex A).

The Service profile identification information element is defined in Figure 8-9/Q.932 and Table 8-24/Q.932.

The default maximum length of the Service profile identification information element is 32 octets.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="8">Bits</th><th></th></tr>
<tr><th>8</th><th>7</th><th>6</th><th>5</th><th>4</th><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th>Octets</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="7">Service profile identification
0 1 1 1 0 1 0
Information element identifier</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Length of service profile identification contents</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="7">SPID (IA5 characters)</td><td>3 etc.</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 8-9/Q.932

Service profile identification information element

TABLE 8-24/Q.932

Service profile identification information element

SPID (octet 3, etc.) The service profile identifier parameter is coded in IA5 characters, according to the format specified by the network.

ANNEX A

(to Recommendation Q.932)

User service profiles and terminal identification

A.1 *Introduction*

These optional procedures allow an ISDN to support identification and selection of specific terminals on a multi-point user-network interface to support multiple user service profiles in those cases in which Recommendation Q.931 information elements are not sufficient for such purposes.

A terminal or network which desires to support such multiple profiles for terminals which could not otherwise be distinguished, must support this additional identification procedure. Otherwise, it is completely optional.

TABLE A-1/Q.932

Terminology

Service profile	Service profile refers to the information that the network maintains for a given user to characterize the service offered by the network to that user. As an example, this may contain the association of feature identifiers to specific supplementary services. A service profile may be allocated to an access interface or to a particular user equipment or a group of user equipments.
SPID	The service profile identifier is a parameter carried in a service profile identification information element that is sent from the user to network to allow network assignment of a USID and TID. A user's SPID should uniquely identifiy a specific profile of service characteristics stored within the network. The SPID will allow the network to distinguish between different terminals that would otherwise be indistinguishable (e.g., same ISDN number). The SPID value is provided to the user at subscription time.
USID	User service identifier. A USID uniquely identifies a service profile on an access interface.
TID	Terminal identifier. A TID value is unique within a given USID. If two terminals on an interface subscribe to the same service profile, then the two terminals will be assigned the same service USID. However, two different TIDs are required to uniquely identify each of the two terminals.
EID	Endpoint identifier. The endpoint identifier information element is used for terminal identification. The endpoint identifier parameters contain a USID and TID and additional information used to interpret them.

Figure A-1/Q.932 shows examples of the relationships of terminals, SPIDs, USIDs, and TIDs and their dynamic relationship to TEIs. In this example, terminals 1, 3, 4 and 5 support the automatic endpoint identifier parameter assignment procedure and terminal 2 does not, but has the endpoint identifier parameters locally entered. Terminal 6 does not support terminal identification, therefore it utilizes the specified default service profile.

Note – Items in parentheses indicate values or relationships which are dynamically established by initialization procedures (see § A.4). Others are established via administrative actions and stored as a result of manual entry.

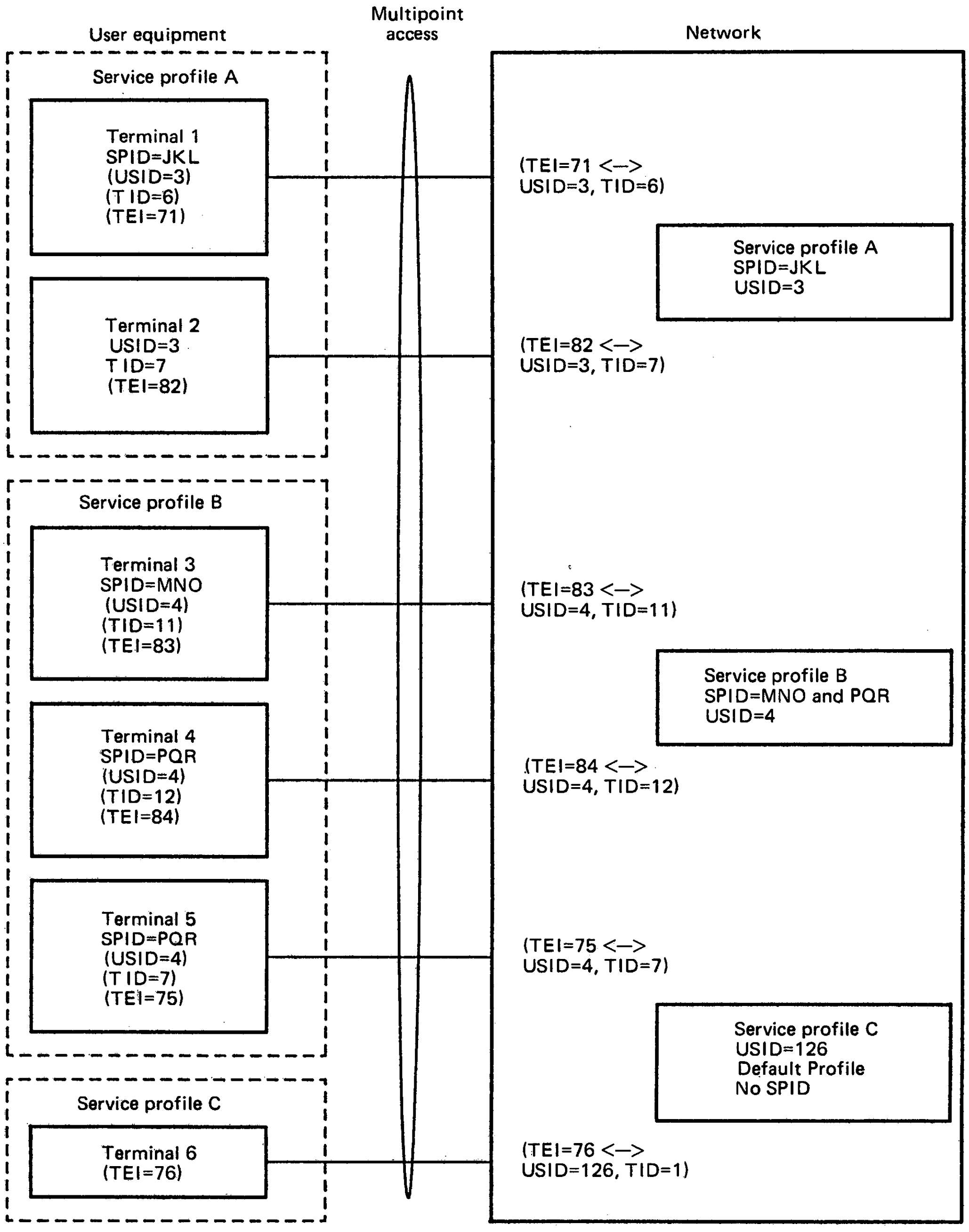


FIGURE A-1/Q.932

Relationship of service profile, SPID, USID, TID and TEI

A user or network that does not recognize the information elements used by this Annex shall, if these elements are received, apply the error procedures defined in § 5.8 of Recommendation Q.931.

A.2 *User service profiles*

The support of user service profiles requires that the service requests from a terminal are associated by the network with a specific profile. A USID is used to identify the profile on an access. The service profile is assigned to a data link connection so that the network can associate all of the service requests from the corresponding Connection Endpoint Suffix (CES) with the required profile (see Note). The assignment of a service profile to a data link connection minimizes the per-service request overhead of profile identification.

The procedures for assigning service profile to a data link connection are incorporated into the initialization procedures described in § A.4.

Note – CES along with SAPI constitute the CEI (Connection Endpoint Identifier) that is used to identify message units passed between the data link layer (as represented by the TEI) and Layer 3.

A.3 *Terminal identification*

The support of terminal identification requires that a call sent by the network can be addressed to:

– all of the terminals of a user service profile;

– one terminal of a user service profile; or

– all but one terminal of a user service profile.

A USID is used to identify the user service profile with a (set of) terminals on an access interface and a TID is used to identify individual terminals within a user service profile on an access.

The USID and TID may be entered into the terminal by the user as arranged at subscription time, or dynamically downloaded to the terminal from the network with an automatic assignment procedure.

The USID and TID parameters are used by the terminal to check the compatibility of a call offered by the network. The inclusion of a USID and TID with only access uniqueness minimizes the per-call overhead of supporting terminal addressing.

The procedures for downloading the USID and TID to a terminal are incorporated into the automatic endpoint identifier allocation and initialization procedures described in § A.4. The procedures for using a USID and TID for terminal identification in an offered call sent by the network are described in § A.5.

A.4 *Initialization*

The initialization procedure provides for the association by the network of the service requests from a terminal on a particular data link connection (as represented by the TEI) with a user service profile. A user requested automatic assignment procedure is described to also support automatic assignment of USID and TID parameters and their downloading by the network to a terminal.

Since initialization provides the basis for subsequent association of a service profile with a data link connection, normally, user equipment that supports initialization is expected to request the initialization procedure (e.g., on the first Layer 3 message after dynamic assignment of a TEI). However, a request for initialization is allowed at any time. The data link connection is always associated with the most recently identified service profile. Under some circumstances, the network may solicit terminal initialization.

A.4.1 *Terminal requested initialization*

a) Terminals may initialize by sending an Endpoint identifier information element (containing a USID and TID) in an INFORMATION message at any time to the network. Subsequent to this, the network may associate the service profile with the data link over which the message was sent.

b) For terminals which support automatic assignment of USID and TID parameters, initialization (that is, association of a service profile with a data link connection) is provided as part of the automatic assignment procedure described here.

   A user may initiate automatic assignment of the endpoint identifier by sending a Service profile identification information element in an INFORMATION message with the dummy call reference. The Service profile identification information element should contain the SPID parameter allocated at the time of subscription. The initialization is acknowledged with an INFORMATION message with the Endpoint identifier information element containing a USID and TID, the values of which are determined by the network. It results in an association of the data link over which it was received with the identified service profile.

   When a terminal determines that the initialization procedure has failed, it assumes that the network cannot support the procedure and does not repeatedly attempt initialization.

A.4.2 *Network solicited initialization*

The network may solicit a request for initialization on a data link connection by sending an Information request information element with codepoint "terminal identification" in an INFORMATION message with the dummy call reference. Upon receiving the request, the terminal may respond as described in the previous § A.4.1 a) or b).

When a network determines that the initialization procedure has failed, it assumes that the terminal cannot support the procedures and does not repeatedly request initialization.

A.4.3 *Collision*

When terminal initialization and network solicitation procedures collide, the terminal ignores the solicitation from the network and the network proceeds as normal upon receipt of the initialization request from the terminal.

A.5 *Identification procedures*

When the network offers a call using terminal addressing, the Endpoint identifier information element is included in the SETUP message.

When a terminal receives a SETUP message containing the Endpoint identifier information element, it shall:

- if it is not supported, handle the Endpoint identifier information element in accordance with § 5.8.7 of Recommendation Q.931 and complete normal compatibility checking procedures; or,
- test for an address compatibility with the Endpoint identifier information element if it is supported in addition to completing the normal compatibility checking procedures.

ANNEX B

(to Recommendation Q.932)

Information request procedures

B.1 *Introduction*

This Annex specifies optional procedures to allow a network to request additional information from a user. These procedures do not impact the Recommendation Q.931 call state. This capability shall only be allowed during the Null, Overlap Sending, Outgoing Call Proceeding, Call Delivered, and Activate call states.

The capability is intended for use with the Keypad and Feature key management protocols.

A user or network that does not recognize the information elements used by this Annex shall, if these information elements are received, apply the error recovery procedures defined in § 5.8 of Recommendation Q.931.

B.2 *Procedures*

B.2.1 *Normal procedures*

The network will send an INFORMATION message to the user to request additional information. The INFORMATION message will contain the Information request information element (see § 8), with the information request indicator set to "prompt for additional information" and type of information set to the appropriate value. After sending the INFORMATION message, the network will start timer T302. The network will restart timer T302 on the receipt of every INFORMATION message if the requested information is not complete.

No Recommendation Q.931 call state changes should occur when the INFORMATION message is sent or received.

The user may always send the requested information in keypad facility information elements contained in one or more INFORMATION messages. In addition, if the information requested was a called party number, then the user may also send the requested information in the called party number information element in one or more INFORMATION messages.

In both the call associated and non-call associated cases, when the network has determined that sufficient information has been received to proceed, it may send an INFORMATION message to the user, containing an Information request information element, with the information request indicator set to "information request completed" to signal the required information has been received correctly. If the additional information was requested during Overlap Sending state, and no additional information is required before the network can proceed with processing of the call, a CALL PROCEEDING message may suffice to signal the end of information sending.

In the call associated case, the network may also indicate that sufficient information has been received by initiating call clearing according to § 5.3 of Recommendation Q.931.

B.2.2 *Abnormal procedures*

If no response is received from the user, or if the information received is incomplete upon expiry of timer T302, or if the information provided by the user is invalid, then:

- in the call associated case, the network shall initiate call clearing according to § 5.3 of Recommendation Q.931;
- in the non-call associated case, the network shall return an INFORMATION message containing a Cause information element with an appropriate cause value.

In the non-call associated case, if the user responds with a RELEASE COMPLETE message to an INFORMATION message containing an Information request information element, then the procedure shall be considered as terminated.

APPENDIX I

(to Recommendation Q.932)

Illustration of the application of the three protocol types

I.1 *Introduction*

This Appendix is provided as an illustration of the application of the three protocol types defined in this Recommendation. The examples shown should not be taken as definitive examples, since the support of the Keypad and the Feature key management protocols are network dependent.

The signalling sequences shown are not exhaustive and are only intended to illustrate possible supplementary service control sequences.

I.2 *Example use of the Keypad protocol*

This example shows the application of the Keypad protocol using the Keypad facility and Display information elements to establish a second call while holding the first one. It should be noted that the Keypad protocol does not necessarily allow a supplementary service to be supported to the same degree of functionality as the approach based on the Functional protocol. In addition, this protocol does not impose a need for the terminal to be aware of any states other than those required for basic call control. An objective of the Keypad protocol is to provide for the support of supplementary services in circumstances where a reduced level of functionality can be tolerated.

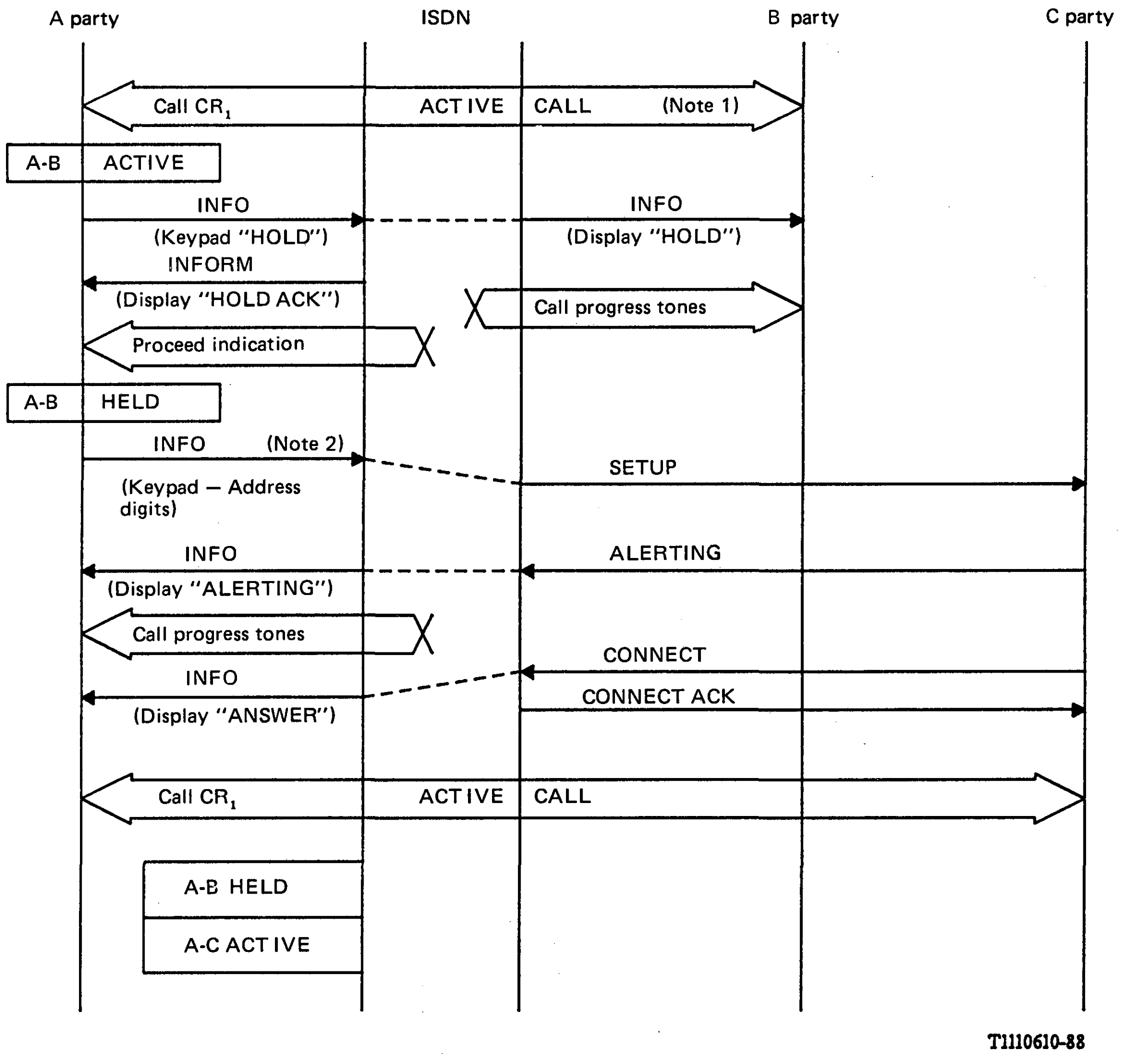
The example in Figure I-1/Q.932 illustrates a user feature request using the Keypad protocol. The network associates the contents of the Keypad information element with the appropriate feature. The user is shown to subsequently enter supplementary service parameters using the Keypad protocol. Feature status information may be provided by the network in the Display information element. The network completes feature processing and the user is shown to clear call reference. Alternatively, depending on the specific feature request, a CALL PROCEEDING message might be returned by the network and normal call processing procedures would continue.

The specific example shown in Figure I-2/Q.932 illustrates the support of a hold/retrieve function based on the use of INFORMATION messages for the conveyance of Keypad facility or Display information elements. An enquiry call is established through the conveyance of the called party address digits via a Keypad facility information element within INFORMATION messages. These address digits are sent after putting the existing call on hold through the transfer of a facility request via a Keypad facility information element within an INFORMATION message.

User	Signalling	Network
User establishes call reference "y" for service request.	SETUP (CR=y) →	
	SETUP ACK (CR=y) ←	
User requests service	INFO (CR=y, Keypad) →	
	. . .	
	INFO (CR=y, Keypad) →	Network interprets keypad protocol; provides information to user via display and signal information elements.
	INFO (CR=y, Signal, Display) ←	
User provides parameters required	INFO (CR=y, Keypad) →	
	. . .	
	INFO (CR=y, Keypad) →	
		Network completes service request.
User begins clearing	DISC (CR=y) →	
	REL (CR=y) ←	Network completes clearing.
	REL COM (CR=y) →	

FIGURE I-1/Q.932

A generic example of the use of the keypad protocol



Note 1 – The first call is established using the normal call establishment procedures specified in Recommendation Q.931.

Note 2 – The same call reference as that of the active call is used to establish the enquiry call. The characteristics of the second call are assumed to be identical to the first call (e.g. same bearer capability, high layer compatibility, low layer compatibility, transit network selection, information elements, etc.).

FIGURE I-2/Q.932

Specific example of establishing a second call while holding the first one using the Keypad protocol

I.3 *Example of use of the Feature key management protocol*

This example illustrates the use of the Feature key management protocol for the invocation of a supplementary service by a user having initiated a call establishment by sending a SETUP message with incomplete (or no) address information, after having entered the overlap sending state upon receipt of the SETUP ACKNOWLEDGE message. Figure I-3/Q.932 depicts the user providing supplementary service parameters. This is accomplished via the Keypad facility information element within INFORMATION messages after having invoked the request of a supplementary service by sending a Feature activation information element contained in an INFORMATION message to the network. The association of the feature identifier number (provided within the Feature activitation information element) with a given supplementary service has to be arranged between the user and the network at subscription time.

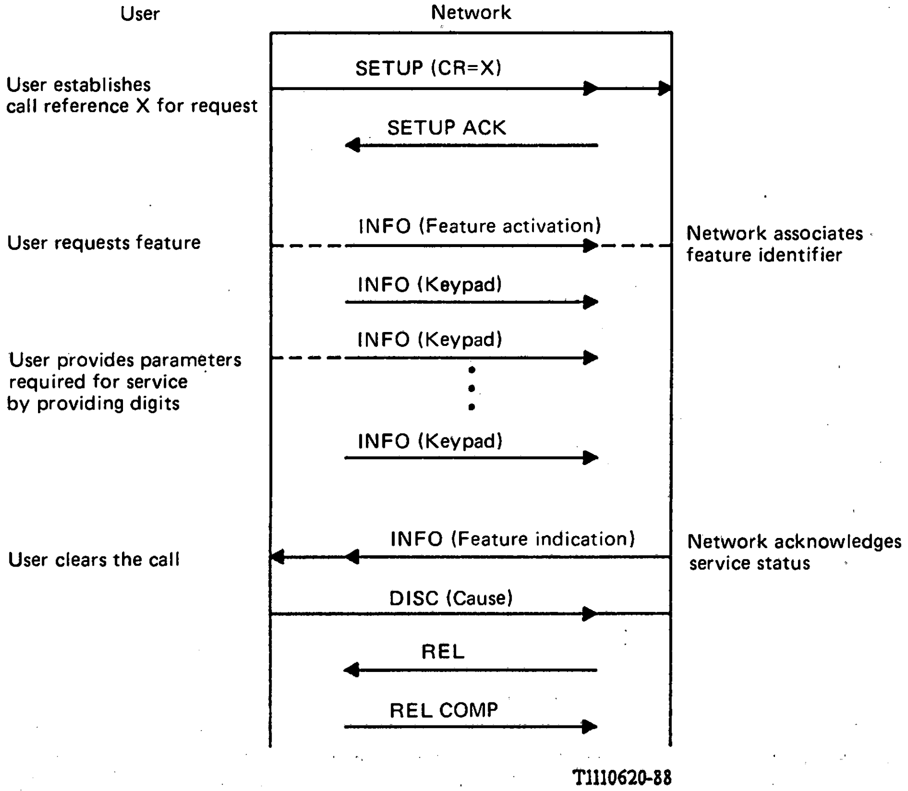


FIGURE I-3/Q.932

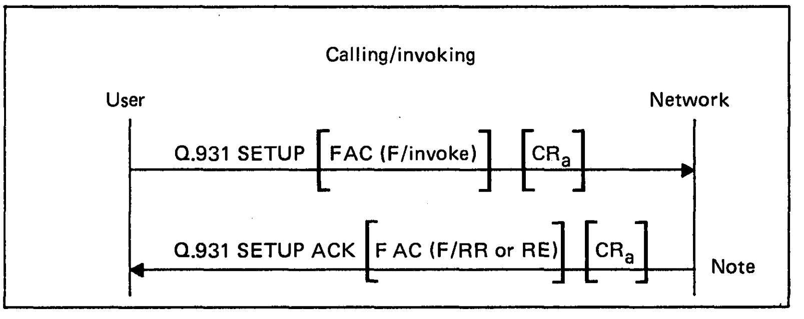
A generic example of the use of the Feature key management protocol

I.4 *Examples of use of the Functional protocol*

I.4.1 *Call related supplementary service procedures*

I.4.1.1 *Invocation with call establishment*

The example message sequence shows the initiation of a call establishment simultaneously with a supplementary service invocation.



T1110630-88

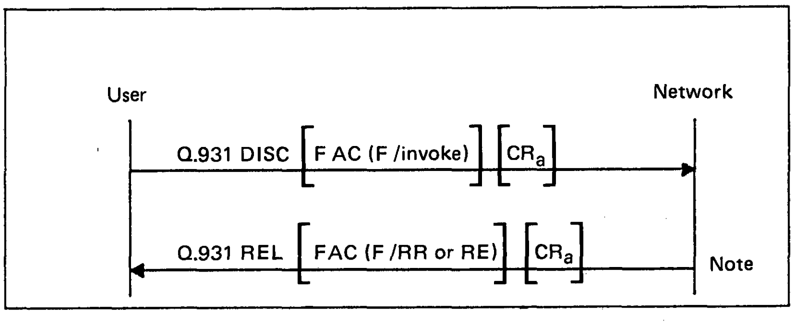
Note – Depending on the invoked supplementary service, and the basic call control procedure one of the Recommendation Q.931 messages in the network-to-user direction may be used to carry return result, return error or reject indication or even an invoke for further information.

FIGURE I-4/Q.932

Invocation with call establishment

I.4.1.2 *Invocation with call clearing*

The example message sequence shows the initiation of normal call clearing simultaneously with a supplementary service invocation.



T1110640-88

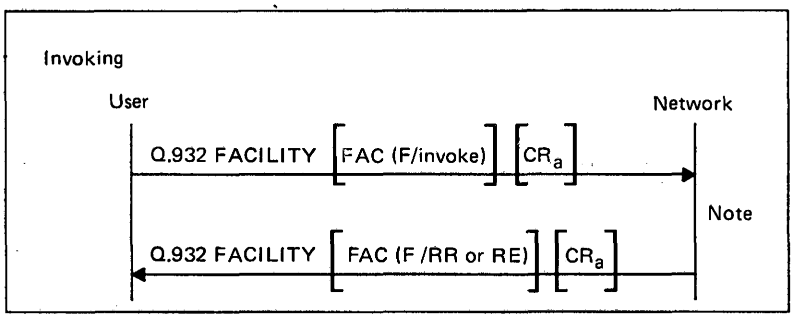
Note – Assume the signalling association CR_a can be cleared together with the connection for the invoked supplementary service, otherwise a FACILITY message may be used instead.

FIGURE I-5/Q.932

Invocation with call clearing

I.4.1.3 *Invocation during the active phase of a call*

The example message sequence shows the initiation of a supplementary service via the established signalling association CR_a at any time during the active phase of a call.



T1110650-88

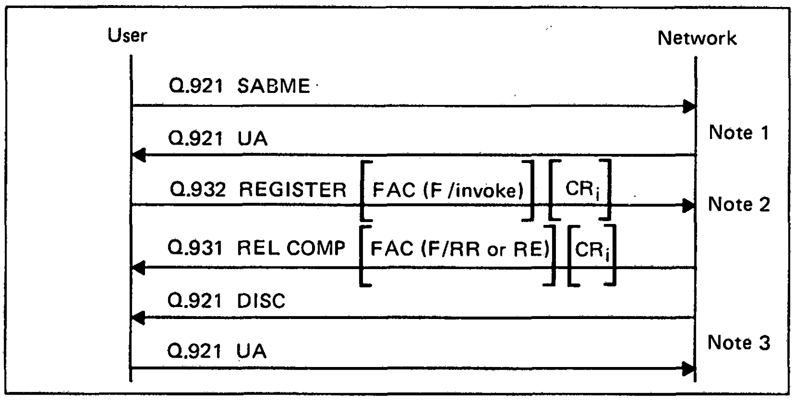
Note – This sequence may occur several times during the active phase of a call, utilizing the existing signalling association.

FIGURE I-6/Q.932

Invocation during the active phase of a call

I.4.2 *Call independent supplementary service procedures*

I.4.2.1 *Establishment of a user-to-network transaction for supplementary service control*



T1110660-88

Note 1 – Establishment of layer 2 connection if not yet established.

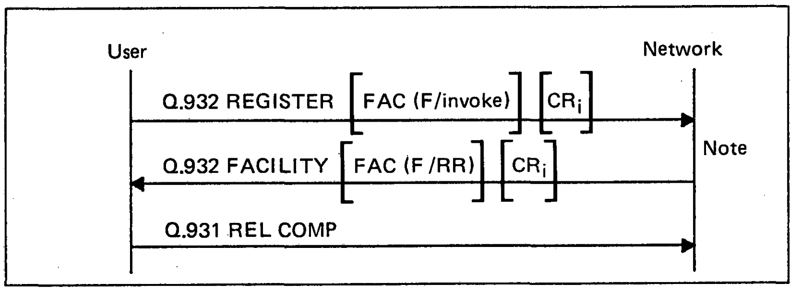
Note 2 – If the procedure is used in the network-to-user direction, additional address information may be required. This requires further study.

Note 3 – Depending on the invoked supplementary service, the layer 2 connection may be kept or cleared.

FIGURE I-7/Q.932

Establishment of an a user-to-network transaction for supplementary service control

I.4.2.2 *Clearing of a user-to-network transaction for supplementary service control*



T1110670-88

Note — After receiving the last return result the receiving side may initiate clearing of the layer 2 connection.

FIGURE I-8/Q.932

Clearing of a user-to-network transaction for supplementary service control

TABLE I-1/Q.932

Key to the Figures I-1/Q.932 to I-8/Q.932

Layer 2 frames:	
SABME	Set asynchronous balance mode extended
UA	Unnumbered acknowledgement frame
DISC	Disconnect frame
Layer 3 messages:	
INFO	Information
SETUP ACK	Setup acknolwledge
DISC	Disconnect
REL	Release
REL COMP	Release complete
Layer 3 message information elements/parameters:	
FAC	Facility information element
F	Facility identifier
Invoke	Invoke operation type
RR	Return result operation type
RE	Return error operation type
CR_a	Call reference of an active call
CR_i	Call reference assigned call independently

APPENDIX II

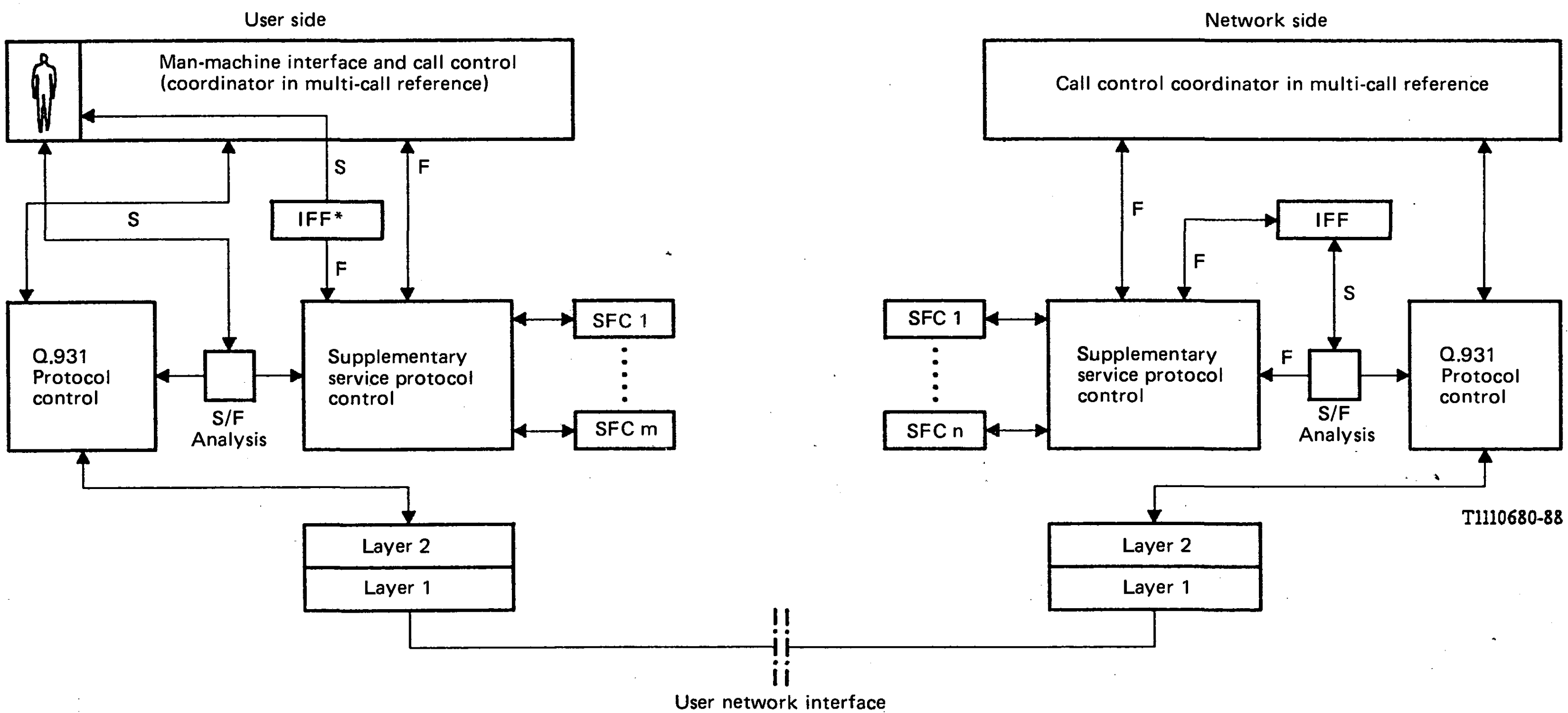
(to Recommendation Q.932)

Functional reference model for the operation of supplementary services

This Appendix provides a functional model intended to show how the supplementary services can be operated by combining stimulus or Functional protocol types to interact with a unique supplementary service protocol controller which interfaces with the relevant supplementary functional components which provides and coordinates the required functions associated to each supplementary service (e.g., control of resources).

The intermediate feature function performs the necessary conversions between stimulus protocols and the supplementary service functional primitives which are the only ones treated and known from the supplementary service protocol controller. As an example, the intermediate feature function translates an access code received within the Keypad facility information element or a feature identifier number within a Feature activation information element to a supplementary service priority such as hold or retrieve request.

Functional reference model



SFC Supplementary functional component
IFF Intermediate feature function
* This is optional at the user side and is implementation dependent
S Stimulus interaction
F Functional interaction

FIGURE II-1/Q.932

Protocol architecture model

APPENDIX III

(to Recommendation Q.932)

General description of component encoding rules

III.1 *General component structure*

Each data element within a component has the same structure. A data element consists of three fields, which always appear in the following order. The tag distinguishes one type from another and governs the interpretation of the contents. The length specifies the length of the contents. The contents is the substance of the data element, containing the primary information the data element is intended to convey. Figure III-1/Q.932 shows an overview of a component and a data element.

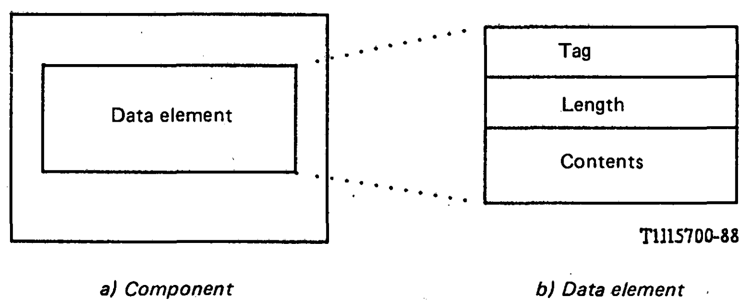


FIGURE III-1/Q.932

Structure of Component and data element

Each field is coded using one or more octets. Octets are labelled as shown in Figure III-2/Q.932. The first octet is the first transmitted. Bits in an octet are labelled as shown in Figure III-3/Q.932, with bit 1 the least significant and the first transmitted.

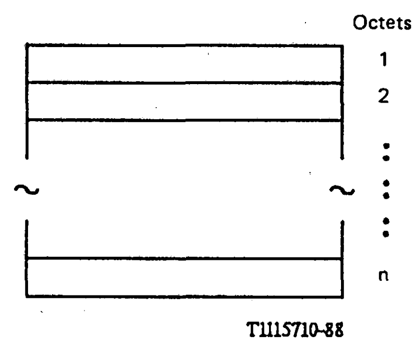


FIGURE III-2/Q.932

Octet labelling scheme

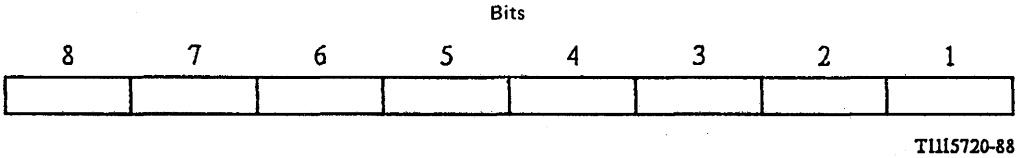
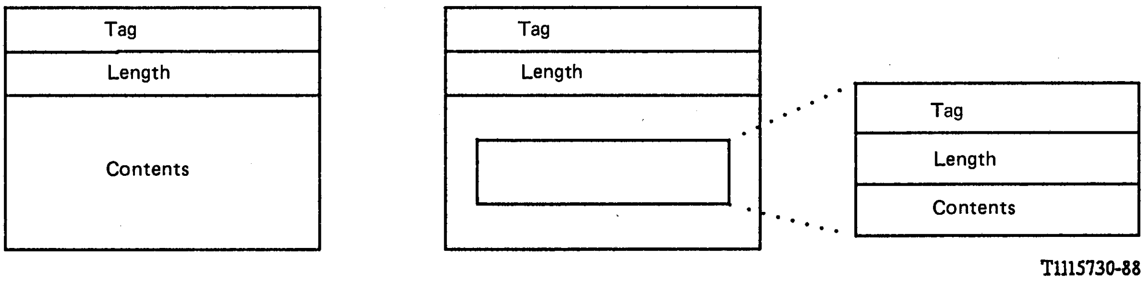


FIGURE III-3/Q.932

Bit labelling scheme

The contents of each data element is either one value (primitive) or one or more data elements (constructor), as shown in Figure III-4/Q.932.



a) Primitive b) Constructor

FIGURE III-4/Q.932

Types of contents

III.2 *Tag*

A data element is first interpreted according to its position within the syntax of the message. The tag distinguishes one data element from another and governs the interpretation of the contents. It is one or more octets in length. The tag is composed of “class”, “form” and “tag code”, as shown in Figure III-5/Q.932.

Bits

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
Class		Form	Tag code [a)]				

[a)] The tag code may be extended to the following octet(s) as discussed in section III.2.3.

FIGURE III-5/Q.932

Format of tag

III.2.1 *Tag class*

All tags use the two most significant bits (8 and 7) to indicate the tag class. These bits are coded as shown in Table III-1/Q.932.

TABLE III-1/Q.932

Coding of tag class

Class	Coding (87)
Universal	00
Application-wide	01
Context-specific	10
Private use	11

The universal class is used for tags that are exclusively standardized in Recommendation X.209 and are application independent types. Universal tags may be used anywhere a universal data element type is used. The universal class applies across all CCITT Recommendations, i.e., across Recommendation Q.932 facility information elements, CCITT Signalling System No. 7 ASEs, X.400 MHS, X.500 Directory Services, etc.

The application-wide class is used for data elements that are standardized across all applications (ASEs) using CCITT Recommendation Q.932 facility procedures for supplementary services.

The context-specific class is used for data elements that are specified within the context of the next higher construction and take into account the sequence of other data elements within the same construction. This class may be used for tags in a construction, and the tags may be re-used in any other construction.

The private use class is reserved for data elements specific to a nation, a network or a private user. Such data elements are beyond the scope of Recommendation Q.932.

The Tag codes of the application-wide class not assigned in Recommendation Q.932 are reserved for future use.

III.2.2 *Form of the data element*

Bit 6 is used to indicate whether the data element is "primitive" or "constructor", as shown in Table III-2/Q.932. A primitive element is one whose structure is atomic (i.e., one value only). A constructor element is one whose content is one or more data elements which may themselves be constructor elements.

Both forms of elements are shown in Figure III-4/Q.932.

TABLE III-2/Q.932

Coding of element form

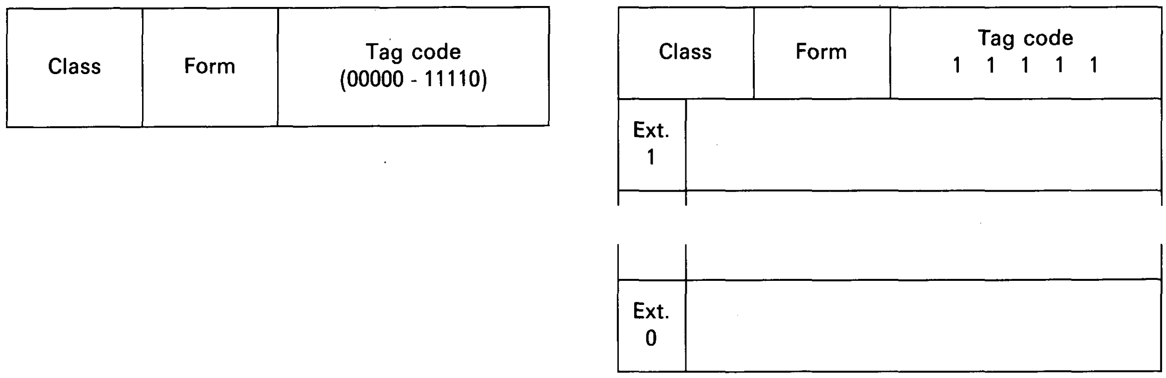
Element form	Coding (6)
Primitive	0
Constructor	1

III.2.3 *Tag code*

Bits 1 to 5 of the first octet of the tag plus any extension octets represent a tag code that distinguishes one element type from another of the same class. Tag codes in the range 00000 to 11110 (0 to 30 decimal) are provided in one octet.

The extension mechanism is to code bits 1 to 5 of the first octet as 11111. Bit 8 of the following octet serves as an extension indication. If bit 8 of the extension octet is set to 0, then no further octets for this tag are used. If bit 8 is set to 1, the following octet is also used for extension of the tag code. The resultant tag consists of bits 1 to 7 of each extension octet with bit 7 of the first extension octet being most significant and bit 1 of the last extension octet being least significant. Tag code 31 is encoded as 0011111 in bits 7 to 1 of a single extension octet. Higher tag codes continue from this point using the minimum possible number of extension octets.

Figure III-6/Q.932 shows the detailed format of the tag code.



a) One octet format *b) Extended format*

FIGURE III-6/Q.932

Format of the tag code

III.3 *Length of the contents*

The length of the contents is coded to indicate the number of octets in the contents. The length does not include the tag nor the length of the contents octets.

The length of the contents uses the short, long or indefinite form. If the length is less than 128 octets, the short form is used. In the short form, bit 8 is coded 0, and the length is encoded as a binary number using bits 1 to 7.

If the length of the contents is greater than 127 octets, then the long form of the length of the contents is used. The long form length is from 2 to 127 octets long. Bit 8 of the first octet is coded 1, and bits 1 to 7 of the first octet encode a number one less than the size of the length in octets as an unsigned binary number whose MSB and LSB are bits 7 and 1, respectively. The length itself is encoded as an unsigned binary number whose MSB and LSB are bit 8 of the second octet and bit 1 of the last octet, respectively. This binary number should be encoded in the fewest possible octets, with no leading octets having the value 0.

The indefinite form is one octet long and may (but need not) be used in place of the short or long form, whenever the element is a constructor. It has the value 10000000. When this form is employed, a special end-of-contents (EOC) indicator terminates the contents.

There is no notation for the end-of-contents indicator. Although considered part of the contents syntactically, the end-of-contents indicator has no semantic significance.

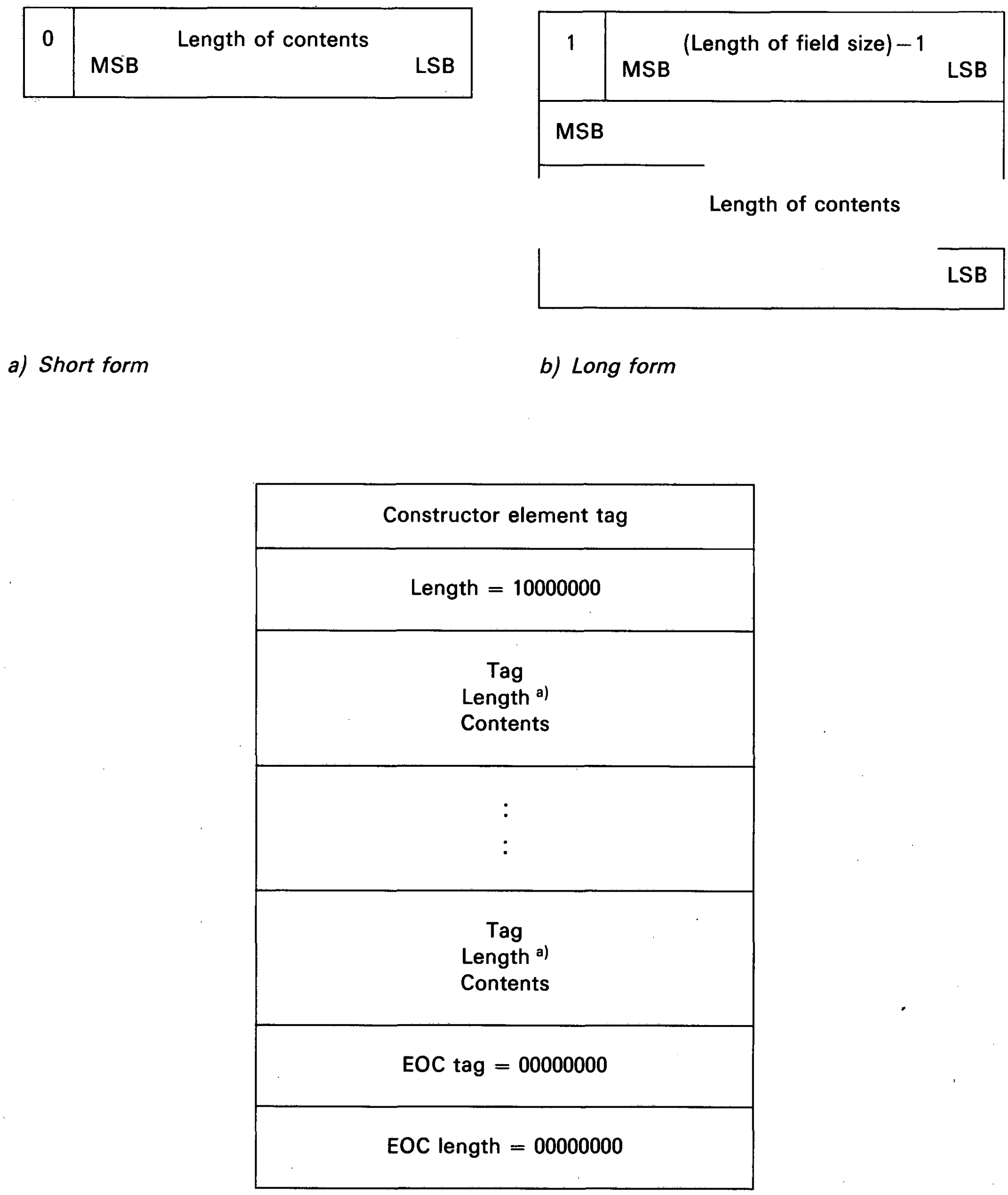
The representation for the end-of-contents indicator is an element whose class is universal, whose form is primitive, whose identifier code has the value 0, and whose contents is unused and absent (see Table III-3/Q.932).

TABLE III-3/Q.932

Representation for the end-of-contents indicator

EOC	Length	Contents
00 (hex)	00 (hex)	Absent

Figure III-7/Q.932 shows the formats of the length field described above. The maximum value that may be encoded is constrained by Q.931 information element size limitations.



c) Indefenite form

a) The length may take any of three forms: short, long and indefinite.

FIGURE III-7/Q.932

Format of length field

III.4 *Contents*

The contents is the substance of the data element and contains the information the data element is intended to convey. Its length is variable, but always an integral number of octets. The contents is interpreted in a type-dependent manner, i.e., according to the tag value.

Acronyms used in Recommendation Q.932

English	French	Spanish	Meaning
APDU	APDU	UDPA	Application Protocol Data Unit
ASN.1	ASN.1	NSA.1	Abstract Syntax Notation One (see Recommendations X.208/X.209)
CEI	CEI	IEC	Connection Endpoint Identifier (see Recommendation Q.920)
CES	CES	SEC	Connection Endpoint Suffix (see Recommendation Q.920)
IA5	IA5	AI5	International Alphabet No. 5
ISDN	RNIS	RDSI	Integrated Services Digital Network
LSB	LSB	BMenosS	Least Significant Bit
MSB	MSB	BMásS	Most Significant Bit
NT2	NT2	TR2	Network Termination Type Two (see Recommendation I.411)
ROSE	ROSE	ESOR	Remote Operations Service Element (see Recommendations X.219/X.229)
SAPI	SAPI	IPAS	Service Access Point Identifier (see Recommendation Q.920)
SPID	SPID	IDPS	Service Profile Identifier
TEI	TEI	IET	Terminal Endpoint Identifier (see Recommendation Q.920)
TID	TID	IDT	Terminal Identifier
USID	USID	IDSU	User Service Identifier

References

[1] CCITT Recommendation *Basic user-network interface – Layer 1 specification*, Vol. III, Rec. I.430.

[2] CCITT Recommendation *Primary rate user-network interface – Layer 1 specification*, Vol. III, Rec. I.431.

[3] CCITT Recommendation *ISDN user-network interface – Data link layer specification*, Vol. VI, Rec. Q.921.

[4] CCITT Recommendation *ISDN user-network interface layer 3 specification for basic call control*, Vol. VI, Rec. Q.931.

[5] CCITT Recommendation *ISDN user-network interface layer 3 – General aspects*, Vol. VI, Rec. Q.930.

[6] CCITT Recommendation *ISDN user-network interface data link layer – General aspects*, Vol. VI, Rec. Q.920.

[7] CCITT Recommendation *Specification of abstract syntax notation specification of abstract syntax notation one (ASN.1)*, Vol. VIII, Rec. X.208.

[8] CCITT Recommendation *Specification of basic encoding rules for abstract syntax notation one (ASN.1)*, Vol. VIII, Rec. X.209.

[9] CCITT Recommendation *Remote operations: model, notation and service définition*, Vol. VIII, Rec. X.219.

[10] CCITT Recommendation *Remote operations: protocol specification*, Vol. VIII, Rec. X.229.

PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

PAGE LAISSEE EN BLANC INTENTIONNELLEMENT

SECTION 2

USER-NETWORK MANAGEMENT

Recommendation Q.940

ISDN USER-NETWORK INTERFACE PROTOCOL
FOR MANAGEMENT – GENERAL ASPECTS

1 General

This Recommendation is one of a proposed series of Recommendations describing the management model, service elements and protocol to be provided at the ISDN user-network interface. These Recommendations also specify the management functions required to support the ISDN subscriber installation. This Recommendation describes the Management Architecture and provides a general overview of the management services and functions.

Other Recommendations in this series will specify the System Management Service Elements and Protocol and the procedures associated with management functions.

The management functions provided at the user-network interface have, as an objective, full alignment with the network management functions being addressed by the Telecommunications Management Network (TMN) and the Management Framework for Open System Interconnection (OSI). While the TMN defines management functions from a network perspective, this Recommendation describes the management functions from the subscriber perspective and provides for remote user management functions.

1.1 *Scope*

This series of Recommendations will provide for a common approach for management communications to support procedures used by a remote maintenance centre, internal or external to the network and those initiated locally.

These Recommendations deal with the specification of the following items:

a) the specification of a Management Architecture and identification of communications paths;

b) the specification of management functionality to be provided at the ISDN user-network interface;

c) the specification of an information exchange protocol for the exchange of management information between two peer system management application entities (SMAE);

d) the specification of primitives between the Management Application process (user) and the SMAE (i.e., the primitives at the systems management service interface (SMSI));

e) the specification of service primitives between the SMAE service element and the next lower layer service elements (i.e., primitives at the presentation layer service access point (PSAP));

f) the specification of a convergence function that may be required to permit the direct access of the SMAE service elements to services provided by layer 3 (i.e., the primitives at the network layer service access point (NSAP)).

1.2 *Field of application*

The protocols and procedures described in these Recommendations provide the means to support management functions at the ISDN user-network interface. Management activities that manage network services, operations such as network resource configuration, routing information and maintenance activities shall be supported by the functions and protocols defined in these Recommendations. In particular these management functions should be able to support specific requirements such as those defined in the I.60-Series of Recommendations (Subscriber Access and Installation Maintenance). These protocols make it possible to control loopbacks and diagnostic tests, initiate and terminate event reporting and to exchange management information across the ISDN user-network interface, i.e., between equipment connected to the S/T reference points.

The physical layer signals in the digital transmission section which are used to control maintenance functions are outside the scope of this Recommendation.

The protocols can be used on the D Channel of both the basic and primary rate interface structures and across both reference points S and T. The higher layer protocols can also be used on other ISDN channels and services.

The protocols and procedures described in these Recommendations take into account that interactions with the TMN will occur. It is, therefore, desirable that the services and protocols to be used to support access management are aligned, wherever possible, with those to be defined for the TMN and OSI management.

2 Categories of management information exchange

Management information exchanges may be categorized into the following three categories:

a) Event notification: information transfer initiated by one system reporting instantaneously the occurrence of an event (e.g., a fault occurrence) to another system.

b) Data transfer: information exchange initiated by one system in order to get management-related information from another system. These exchanges follow the "request followed by response" paradigm.

c) Control information: information exchanges which are of an executive nature, where one system requests that an action be performed by another system (e.g., for test access and downloading of parameters).

3 Management functions

Management functions may be classified in accordance with fields of application. The following major functions have been identified:

a) Fault management
   - Maintenance functions
   - Fault tracing
   - Spontaneous error reporting
   - Error threshold alarm reporting
   - Continuous monitoring
   - Diagnostic testing
   - Resource (re)initialization
   - Confidence testing
   - Resource identification
   - Trouble isolation.

b) Configuration management
   - Routing changes
   - Data base changes
   - Equipment identification
   - Network/equipment reconfiguration.

c) Accounting management
   - Reporting of billing data.

d) Performance management
   - Collecting and reporting of traffic data
   - Performance monitoring
   - Applying controls.

e) Security management.

4 Management reference models

4.1 *Communications path model*

Figure 1/Q.940 shows the entities which may contain System Management Entities (SME) which may require capability to communicate. System Management Entities may be located in the local exchanges, subscriber installations, remote management centres or network management centres.

The management functions supported by the various systems may differ depending on system requirements and may vary between different networks. However, the communications facilities provided by the systems management entities should be as common as possible.

The scope of this Recommendation covers those functions and protocols that have immediate impact on the user-network interface.

The system management entities may be in a TE, NT2 or management service provider. Although communication between any two management entities may be possible in the model, it does not imply that information held at a particular management entity is available to all other management entities. Security mechanisms may be used to restrict access to the information.

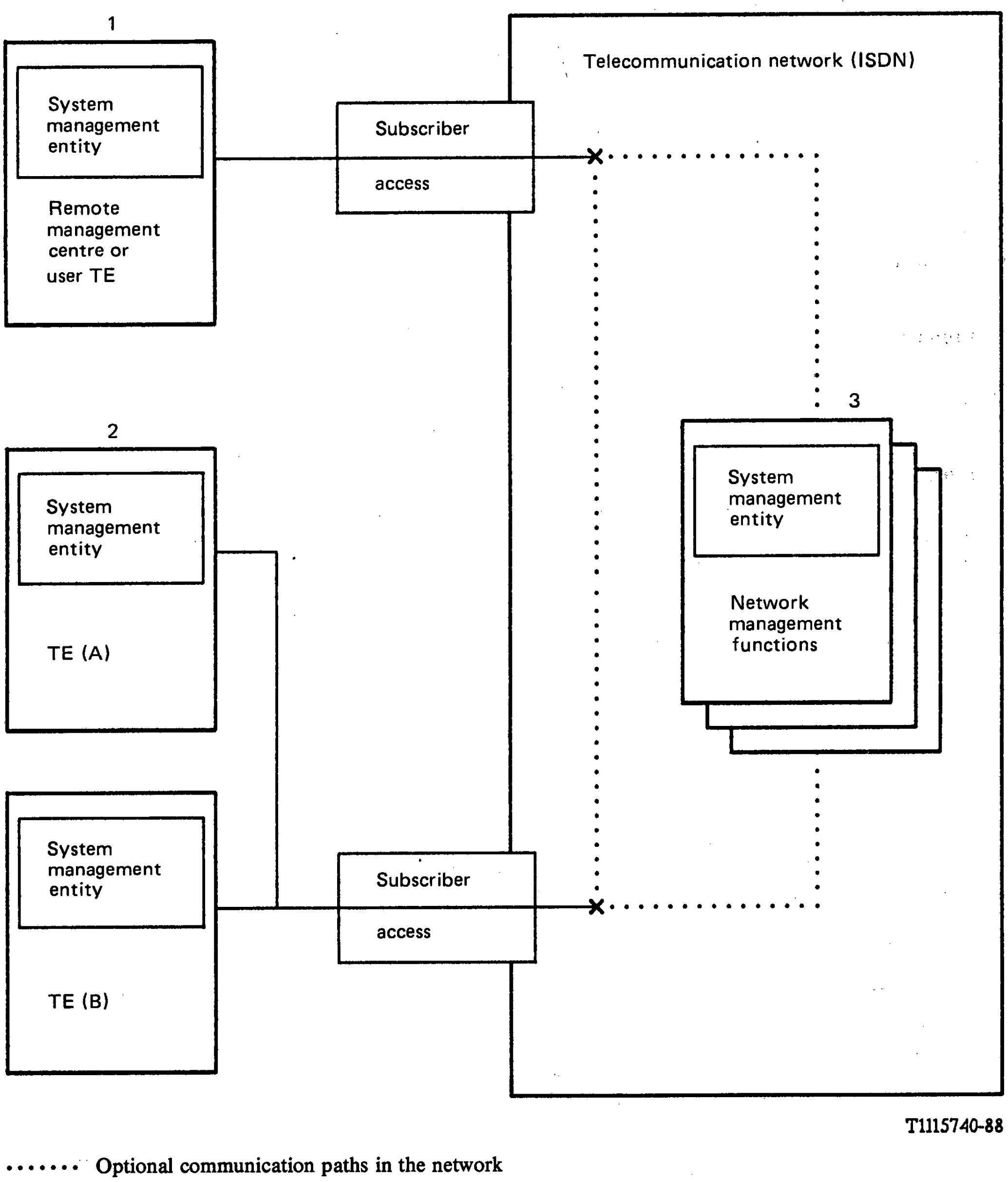


FIGURE 1/Q.940

Management communication model

Figure 1/Q.940 shows that three types of management communications can be accommodated:

a) TE (or Remote Management Centre) ⟷ TE (1 ⟷ 2);

b) TE ⟷ Network Management Function (1 ⟷ 3);

c) TE ⟷ Network Management Function ⟷ TE (1 ⟷ 3 ⟷ 2);

Types a) and b) are direct peer communication. In type c), the TE requests the Network Management Entity to act as an agent which then, on behalf of the requesting TE, communicates with another TE.

4.1.1 *Secure access to management and maintenance functions*

To facilitate maintenance procedures and fault sectionalization, maintenance entities located in different management domains may communicate. However, since management and maintenance information is of critical importance to system integrity, access to management functions and information is subject to prior authorization and security restrictions upon access.

The security restrictions are normally enforced by the recipient of the management information but may be enforced by the originator independently of any security imposed by the recipient. The security measures may include requirements for peer-entity authentication.

The use of adequate security mechanisms is especially important in the case of a network since many users may be affected by unauthorized access.

Whenever system management communication crosses an S or T reference point, the requirement for access authorization must be presumed.

Note – This does not preclude implicit actions on layer management parameters as specified within the relevant signalling protocols, e.g., Recommendations Q.921 and Q.931. These actions are, however, beyond the scope of this Recommendation.

4.2 *System management entity*

Figure 2/Q.940 shows the internal structure of the SME.

4.2.1 *System management application entity (SMAE)*

The SMAE is an application layer entity that supports system management functions. The SMAE is responsible for communication with peer systems.

The function of the SMAE is to provide the communications necessary to make a system management accessible to another SMAP. It is not necessary for the SMAE to be provided if only local system management is required.

4.2.2 **system management application process (SMAP)**

An SMAP is an application process of a system performing management functions. The SMAP controls the SMAE, and includes the Management Information Base (MIB) and may include one or more managers providing various functionalities.

4.2.3 **management information base (MIB)**

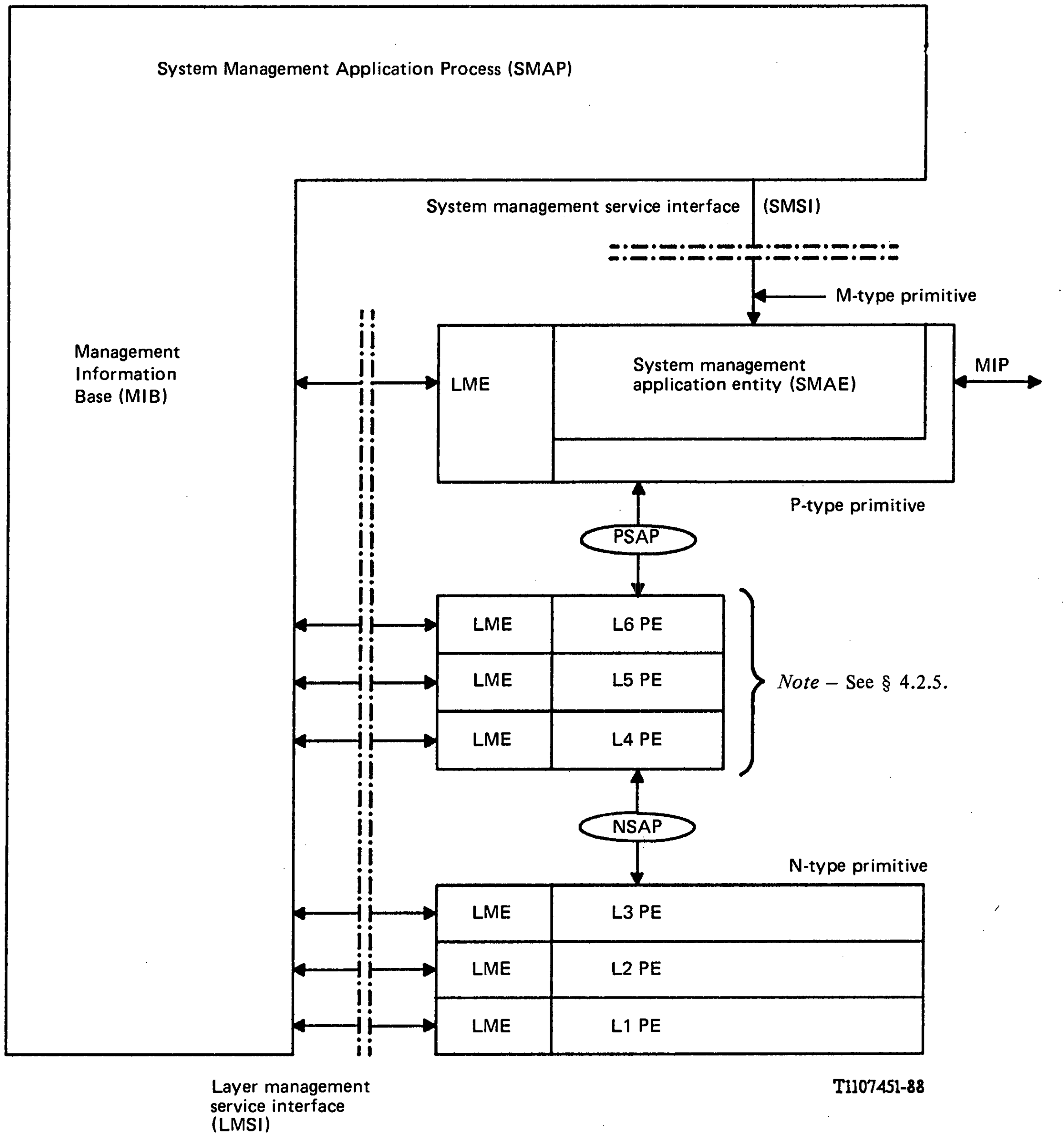
The MIB is the repository of all information relevant to the operation of a system. Both the SMAP and Layer Management Entities (LME) have access to the MIB.

4.2.4 **layer management entity (LME)**

The LME is that part of a Layer Entity which manages resources and parameters residing in its layer protocol entity.

4.2.5 **protocol entity (PE)**

The PE is that part of a layer entity which is dedicated to peer-to-peer communications. A layer PE provides services to the next upper layer and uses services of the next lower layer.



L1 Layer 1, etc.
MIP Management information protocol
LME Layer management entity
PE Protocol entity

FIGURE 2/Q.940

System management entity model

It should be noted that this model presently permits communication between peer management processes either by attaching to a Presentation Layer Access Point (PSAP) or by attaching directly to the Network Layer Service Access Point (NSAP). A convergence function may be provided as an alternative to the full seven layer OSI Reference Model (as specified in Recommendation X.200) to accommodate simple terminals that may be used in the ISDN environment. If provided, the functions will be kept to a minimum, i.e., the OSI layer services lost by elimination of layers 4-6 will not be recovered by the convergence function. Therefore, the use of all seven layers is to be preferred. This has the consequence that "convergence functions" may need to be specified.

4.2.6 *Management information protocol (MIP)*

The Management Information Protocol provides the support for information exchange between peer SMAEs.

4.3 *Managed objects: a hierarchical object model*

4.3.1 *Definitions*

4.3.1.1 **managed object**

A managed object is a collection of data objects and telecommunications or information processing resources that may be managed by means of the management protocol specified in this Recommendation.

4.3.1.2 A **data object** is an object that is the direct recipient of an action or generator of an event report.

4.3.2 *Hierarchical object model*

The maintenance functions are described as asymmetric functions using symmetrical communications paths. A maintenance activity is always started by an Invoker who is asking an Executor to manipulate event reports or data objects. These can be classified as belonging to individual managed objects. Each elementary operation that will have to access or refer to data objects will identify these by specifying first the managed object to which they belong and then identifying them within the managed object.

A hierarchical object model is defined that allows access to any individual data object in a simple way. When a given managed object may be duplicated, an instance identifier will help to resolve the ambiguity.

As an example, the model for user-network ISDN access interface is represented by the hierarchical tree of Figure 3/Q.940.

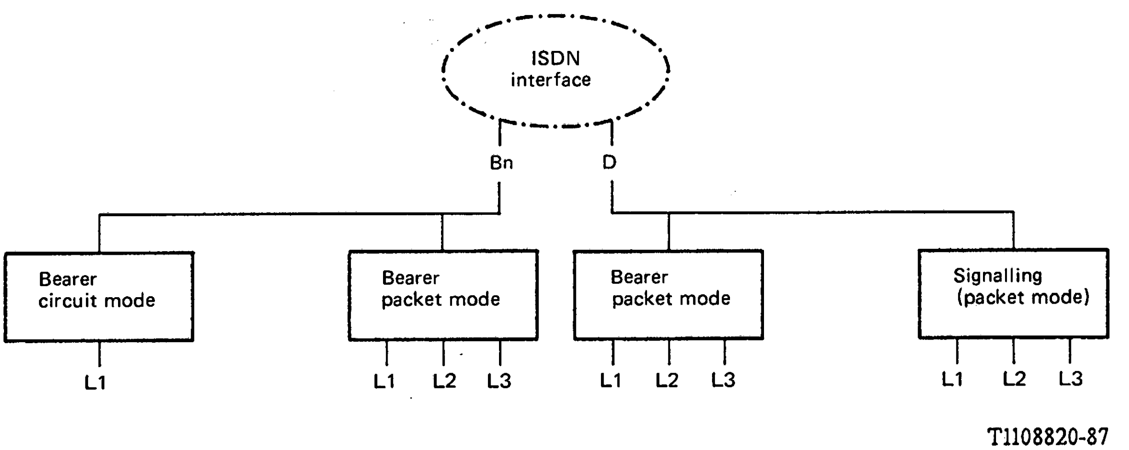


FIGURE 3/Q.940

Example hierarchical object tree

The parameters and event reports pertaining to a particular managed object can then be defined implicitly within the managed object. Some managed objects may be empty when no data object is identified within them. In this case they are only present as an indication of a hierarchical level.

It has to be noted that the ISDN user-network access interface model only contains managed objects that belong to the network access functions, i.e., that are involved in the provision of the required bearer service (signalling and lower layer protocols on the bearer channels). The protocols that are not involved in the provision of the bearer service are excluded from this model as they belong to the application part.

Note – The identity of an object at the executing end may not be known to the Invoker when it requests a maintenance action at the remote end of a connection. In this case the Executor will be able to identify the object by the context of the connection path used to convey the maintenance request.

As an example, remote maintenance may be required on an existing B Channel connection. The channel identity is only locally significant at each end. The maintenance request must be transmitted over the signalling connection that is used to control the B Channel associated with the existing call. The identity of the B Channel will be implied by the signalling connection used to convey the maintenance request.

5 Management structure and activities

This section considers the specific structure and activities of management in terms of system management, layer management and protocol processing for management purposes.

5.1 *System management*

This section introduces the concept of system management, its boundaries and other structures and activities related to management.

5.1.1 *Introduction*

The scope of system management is described in terms of the bounds of the SMAP. The boundaries show where the SMAP ends and other objects (either inside or outside the system) begin. The boundaries provide a sense of the relationship of the SMAP to other objects and therefore a sense of the SMAP scope.

5.1.2 *System management boundaries*

The boundaries of the SMAP are shown in Figure 4/Q.940.

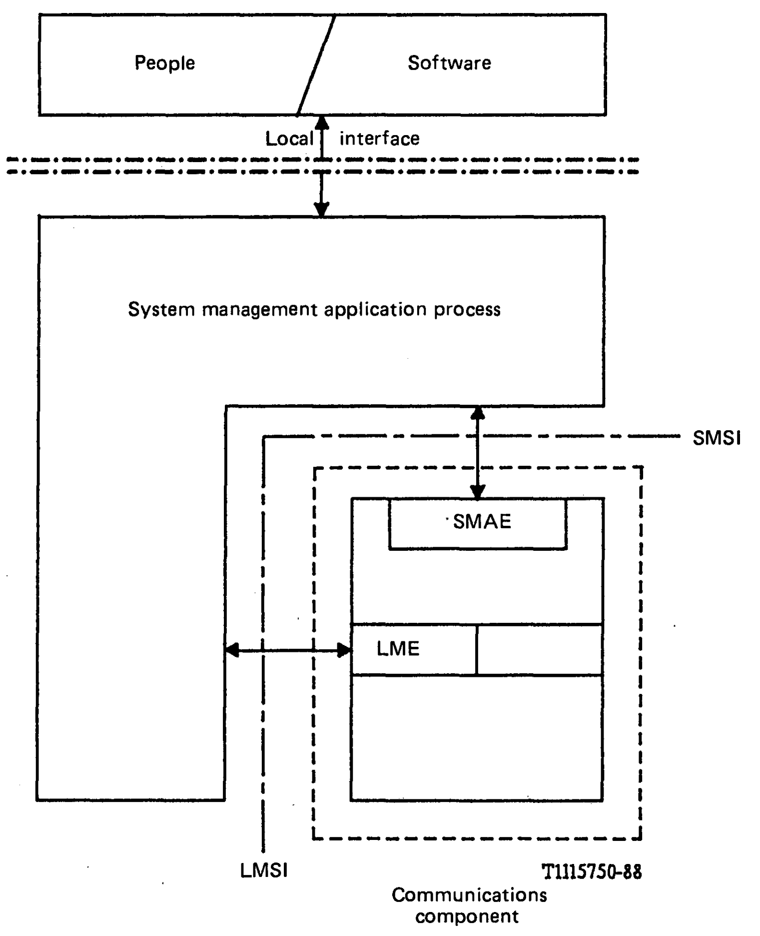


FIGURE 4/Q.940

SMAP Boundaries

This Figure shows the relationship between the SMAP and two other major components. The Communications component contains the seven layers of the reference model. The people and software component contains the people/software in the local environment that use the local systems manager.

The SMAE is the system management application entity, and (N)-LME represents the layer managers in the system.

5.1.2.1 *Local interface*

The local interface is located between the SMAP and the people and software that request services from the SMAP. Service request/responses pass through this boundary to invoke one or more system management functions. Local interfaces, when present, are beyond the scope of this Recommendation.

5.1.2.2 *Layer management service interface (LMSI)*

The Layer Management Service Interface is the boundary between the SMAP and the individual layer management [(N)-LMEs]. Data and control information pass through this boundary. The boundary provides a way for each layer manager to gain access to parameters within the scope of that layer. This service interface is not subject to standardization.

5.1.2.2.1 *From system management to layer management*

The boundary between system management and (N)-layer management supports the flow from system management to layer management of:

1) requests to read, set, and perform actions with respect to various values, counters, statuses, etc., within a given layer;
2) response to inquiries made by an (N)-layer management entity upon the system management function;
3) data from the (N)-layer management of other systems.

5.1.2.2.2 *From layer management to system management*

The boundaries between system management and (N)-layer management supports the flow from (N)-layer management to system management of:

1) responses to read, set and request for action that came from system management;
2) request to send data to (N)-layer management in another system;
3) requests to place data into the Management Information Base;
4) requests to obtain information from the Management Information Base.

5.1.2.3 **system management service interface (SMSI)**

The System Management Service Interface is the boundary between the SMAP and the SMAE. The SMAE is a type of application entity which communicates system management messages to its peer SMAE in another system. Data and control information to and from the SMAE pass through this boundary. A service definition defines this boundary, and this service boundary defines system management.

5.1.3 *System management functions*

The responsibilities of system management are considered from two points of view:

a) Local system responsibilities (included for completeness of description):
   - to initiate the (N)-layer manager for each layer, upon system activation;
   - to serve as the manager of information that is common to several layers or that is supplied externally.
b) Communications responsibilities:
   - to provide support for the exchange of information between the (N)-LMEs of a single layer so that the (N)-LMEs do not need to provide separate protocols for such exchanges;
   - to coordinate the activities of the various SMAPs within telecommunication networks and subscriber installations.

5.1.4 *Relationship to (N)-layer management*

System management provides the only vehicle for the exchange of information between layers. Direct communication of management information between layers is deliberately precluded in the reference model to prevent inter-layer dependencies from occurring.

Since inter-layer exchanges of information will have to occur (i.e., error statistics), system management has been designated as the vehicle through which this exchange will occur. Each layer will have defined sets of information it may make known or will need to acquire.

System management implements the means of acquiring and disseminating this information. This may require activities on the part of system management that span several systems.

System management maintains the MIB and provides the support of (N)-LME access to the MIB.

5.1.5 *Relationship to the Management Information Base*

The SMAP is responsible for the MIB and provides authorized access to the MIB across the system boundaries.

5.2 *Layer management*

This section introduces the concept of layer management and its relationships to other entities.

5.2.1 *Scope*

In keeping with the general principle that each layer is independent of all others, each layer has its own management functions. These layer management functions are described in this Recommendation as the (N)-LME.

The role of the (N)-LME is threefold. Firstly, it serves to coordinate the activities of the (N)-entities within the layer. Secondly, it serves as the "window" to system management for the entities within the layer. Thirdly, in conjunction with both system management and its peer LMEs it manages the layer.

The (N)-LMEs are restricted to activities within an (N)-layer. The (N)-LME must not interact directly with a layer manager of any other layer.

5.2.2 *Relationship to (N)-entities which operate protocols*

The (N)-LME is charged with coordinating the activities and relationships of various (N)-entities which operate the protocols within the layer.

The (N)-LME is responsible for accessing the MIB on behalf of the (N)-entities. It will access the MIB to retrieve external parameters that the (N)-entity will need to operate, and to store and retrieve operating data that is in external storage contained within the scope of the peer management entity. The (N)-LME is also the focus for control of the (N)-entities by system management.

5.2.3 *Relationship between peer (N)-LMEs*

The (N)-LMEs will frequently need to exchange information. This exchange ordinarily will be accomplished through the peer SMAPs. However, in some cases, layer management protocols are necessary. These cases are limited to the following:

1) where the exchange of information, or the circumstances under which such information might be exchanged would necessarily interfere with the support of the SMAE by the lower layers: for example, loop testing at layer 1 might be supported by a layer 1 management protocol, and exchange of routing information might be supported by a layer 3 management protocol;
2) where layer management protocols already exist; for example, see Recommendation Q.921.

In no event may a layer management protocol interact directly with any other layer. System management provides the only means for data transfer.

5.2.4 *Relationship to system management*

The (N)-LMEs rely upon services from system management for three purposes. These are to provide communication for intra-layer management activities, to coordinate inter-layer management activities and to serve as a general repository for management information.

As system management is the supervisor for any action on layer management, the service request/response for external action (e.g., parameter manipulation, statistic gathering, etc.,) will use the SMAP as defined in § 6.1.

5.3 *Protocol processing for management purposes*

5.3.1 *Scope*

On occasion, the (N)-entities do participate in the management process. This occurs when the protocol has embedded within itself information that must be made known to other entities and when events occur that must be made known to other entities.

5.3.2 *Relationship of (N)-entities to (N)-LMEs*

The (N)-entities rely upon the (N)-LME to provide coordination between the various (N)-entities in the (N)-layer, and access to data and services that come from outside the (N)-layer. There is, therefore, a flow of control information between the (N)-entities and the (N)-LME.

Since the (N)-entities exist independently of the other (N)-entities within the (N)-layer, they are dependent upon the (N)-LME to coordinate activities between the various (N)-entities within the sub-system. As an example the (N)-entities rely upon the (N)-LME to determine when requests for connection are being made to establish the association between the connection request at a connection endpoint and the (N)-entity. The (N)-LME also controls the instantiation of (N)-entities at the time of connection requests.

6 Overview of services required by the SMAP

6.1 *High layer context management*

When the two SMAPs are involved in a management dialogue, they may want to establish a context that will be maintained during the life of the dialogue. In this sense two SMAPs typically work in a connection-oriented mode. The SMAE will provide services that will allow it to work in connection-oriented mode by providing the capability to establish and release associations between peer applications.

These services are to be described further in future Recommendations.

The use of a connectionless service is for further study.

6.2 *Definition of a set of generic functions*

As presented in § 5, management covers a large spectrum of applications. These applications may be implemented by dedicated SMAPs that can make use of a reduced set of generic functions. The generic functions are listed hereafter with examples for their use:

- Trigger an action (e.g., activate or deactivate loopbacks or internal tests);
- Event report (e.g., error reporting, alarm reporting);
- Get attributes (e.g., cumulative error counters, get parameter values);
- Set attributes (e.g., set or modify parameters, thresholds, etc.);
- Create and delete managed objects (e.g., create a routing table).

The SMAE provides facilities to allow the generic functions to be communicated between SMAPs.

7 Addressing for information exchange

The information flow takes place between two SMAPs and the originator must be able to address the destination SMAP.

Depending upon the location of the communicating SMAPs different addressing schemes may apply:

1) Explicit Addressing. In this case the remote entity is explicitly addressed by its ISDN address.
2) Implicit Addressing. Implicit addressing relies on mechanisms other than an explicit address in the maintenance message to identify the recipient of the information.

For system management two cases of implicit addressing may be identified:

a) permanent connections;
b) hot line service.

8 Terminal selection

In addition to the normal ISDN addressing mechanisms the maintenance procedures which require actions to perform to particular user equipment require the existence of an identification method that allows access to the unique piece of user equipment to be maintained.

Selection of a unique terminal is based on compatibility checking of various parameters. Compatibility is determined first on the basis of the ISDN address and then on the basis of service information (bearer capability, high layer compatibility, etc.). The service information alone is adequate to provide unique identification if a single unit of equipment satisfies this requirement.

When several TEs connected to the same access, sharing one ISDN address, provide the same functionality, and neither the NSAP nor service information are sufficient, then a unique equipment identifier must be used.

9 Access control

In many cases information accessible through the management function may be private or a management action may result in taking the equipment out of service. Access security to management and maintenance functions must, therefore, be provided.

Access controls may be applied both to the call establishment phase of the maintenance call and also within individual maintenance transactions.

The use of Calling Line Identity provides one method by which maintenance calls can be screened. Further access right discrimination can be performed on the basis of message type in which the management information is carried. Each message type may have its own implied access rights.

Additionally, specific access control can be performed on the basis of an explicit access control parameter. This parameter has the following characteristics:

1) access control mechanisms are defined as parameters of the primitives passed between system management and the service provider;
2) use of access control parameters is optional;
3) in addition to meeting compatibility requirements, management calls must also satisfy the access control requirements;
4) access control information may be encrypted.

ISBN 92-61-03551-5